Manchester
College Library
North Manchester, Indiana

Gift of

L.D. Ikenberry

Class Book

AMERICAN SCIENCE SERIES—ADVANCED COURSE

PHYSIOGRAPHY

BY

ROLLIN D. SALISBURY

Professor of Geographic Geology and head of the Department of Geology in the University of Chicago

THIRD EDITION, REVISED

NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

Copyright 1907, 1919
BY
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

December, 1926

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

551.4
Sa34p

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION

THIS volume is intended for students of early college or normal-school grade, mature enough for work in advance of that appropriate for the early years of the secondary schools, when physical geography usually is studied in secondary schools. It covers essentially the work done in the University of Chicago in a twelve weeks' course, for students in their first year of college work. The work outlined might appropriately be expanded to a half-year course, if that amount of time is available.

Effort has been made to shape the text in such a way as to lead the student into the subject under discussion, rather than to tell him the conclusions which have been reached by those who have made the subject their mature study. This point is illustrated, for example, by the treatment of isothermal maps. This method of work has been found by the author to be eminently successful in practice; but he is far from assuming that every teacher will approve of it, or that it is the best for every teacher. That method is best for any teacher which he can use most effectively. If some method other than that of this text leads to better results, the teacher who used the book should be free to follow it, for text-books should be servants, not masters.

The book contains no specific suggestions to teachers. It is the author's belief that if a text were to suggest the means which any ingenious teacher may devise for arousing and holding interest, it would attempt to do that which should be left to individual initiative. The author does suggest, however, that leading the student (1) to raise questions pertinent to the topic under discussion, (2) to formulate these questions into definite problems, and (3) to discover the means (*a*) of solving these problems, and (*b*) of testing the correctness of his solutions, must always be the province of the teacher, rather than the text-book; but no thoroughly successful teaching can leave these things undone. The text-book can, at best, hope merely to supply the setting for such problems and such work.

The map exercises suggested at various places in the book are essentially those which are used by the author and his col-

LIBRARY
27311

leagues. These exercises may be readily extended, if time permits. The publishers of the volume can supply the little laboratory manual for the map exercises.

Field work in connection with this subject should not be neglected. Such work must form a part of every good course in the subject. Directions for local field work cannot be outlined profitably in a text-book, for the work must be shaped with reference to the locality where the subject is studied. Both field work and map work should have for their aim the application of the principles studied, in such a way as to make the subject vital. Every laboratory exercise carried out in connection with this subject should either illustrate and enforce the principles developed in the classroom, or lead to them. No other laboratory exercise is worth development. The student who cannot apply what he has learned in the class-room to his out-of-door surroundings, has not secured the maximum good from his study.

It may seem to some teachers into whose hands this volume falls that some parts are unnecessarily simple, and especially that some things are introduced which the student should know before entering college. In the abstract, the author is in sympathy with this view: but it is to be remembered that large numbers of students enter colleges and normal schools without any knowledge of this subject except that acquired in connection with general geography, as studied in the elementary schools.

The writer is indebted to various colleagues for suggestions of one sort and another in the preparation of this volume. Many of the illustrations of the volume have been taken from the larger work on Geology by Professor T. C. Chamberlin and the author. Many others have been taken from the publications of the United States Geological Survey, and a few from other sources, acknowledged in the text.

The third edition has been revised throughout, and considerable parts have been rewritten, but the plan of the book has not been changed. In spite of the fact that some new matter has been added, the volume has been shortened somewhat. The changes which have been made will, it is believed, increase the usefulness of the volume as a text-book.

University of Chicago,
June, 1919.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

PART I
THE LITHOSPHERE

CHAPTER I
RELIEF FEATURES

PAGE

OF THE FIRST ORDER 5

The continental platforms, 9. Continuity and discontinuity of continental platforms and oceanic basins, 10. Grouping of the continents, 10. Origin of relief features of first order, 11.

OF THE SECOND ORDER 14

PLAINS 14

Coastal plains, 15. Explanation of Contour Map, 17. Contour-Map Exercise, 19. Interior plains, 20. Topography of plains, 22. Extent and habitability, 23.

PLATEAUS 26

Position and area of plateaus, 26. Relief of plateaus, 27. Other features of plateaus, 28. Origin, 30.

MOUNTAINS 31

Mountains in history, 35. Origin, 36.

SUBORDINATE TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES 36

DEVELOPMENT OF 39

Changes taking place on land, 39.

THE MATERIALS OF THE LAND 42

Mantle rock, 42. Rock, 43. Classes of solid rock, 45. Sedimentary rocks, 45. Igneous rocks, 48. Metamorphic rocks, 48.

CHAPTER II
WORK OF THE ATMOSPHERE

MECHANICAL WORK—THE WORK OF THE WIND . . . 49

DUST 49

Universality, 49. Sources of dust, 50. Volcanic dust, 50. Loess, 51. How dust is held in the air, 54. Distribution, 54. Gradational effect of winds, 55.

SAND 55

Sources of sand, 55. Lodgment of wind-blown sand, 55. Dunes, 56. Destructiveness of eolian sand, 57. Migration of dunes, 59. Eolian sand not dunes, 62. Ripple-marks on eolian sand, 62. Gradational effects of winds, 62. Abrasion by the wind, 63.

PAGE

CHEMICAL WORK OF CONSTITUENTS OF AIR 63
Weathering, 64.

CHANGES BROUGHT ABOUT UNDER INFLUENCE OF THE AIR 64
Freezing and thawing, 64. Expansion and contraction of rock; rock-breaking, 65.

SUMMARY 68

Chapter III
WORK OF GROUND WATER

GENERAL FACTS 70
Source of land-water, 70. The fate of rain-water, 70. Existence of ground-water, 72. Source of ground-water, 73. Descent of ground-water, 74. Ground-water surface, 74. Amount of ground-water, 75. Movement of ground-water, 75.

Springs 78
Temperature, 79. Mineral and medicinal springs, 79. Geysers, 80. Artesian and flowing wells, 83.

WORK OF GROUND-WATER 85
Chemical Work 85
Solution, 85. Deposition, 87. Other work, 92. Summary, 92.

Mechanical Work 92
Abrasion, 92. Slumping, sliding, etc., 93.

WEATHERING 95
Conditions affecting, 96.

Chapter IV
WORK OF RUNNING WATER

Sources of stream water, 100.

EROSIVE WORK OF STREAMS 103
Load and loading, 104. Carrying, 109. Amount of load, 110. Erosion defined, 111. Deposition a consequence of erosion, 111.

Changes Made by Rivers in Their Valleys 111
The deepening of valleys, 111. Depth-limit, 112. The widening of valleys, 113. Valley flats, 117. Lengthening of valleys, 120. Summary, 122.

History of a River System 122
Courses of valleys, 125. The permanent stream, 125. Not all valleys are grown-up gullies, 126. Growth of tributaries, 127. Stages in the history of a valley, 128. Cycle of erosion, 131. Peneplains, 131.

Rate of Land Degradation 132
Conditions affecting rate of erosion, 133.

Exceptional Features Developed by Erosion 134
Canyons and gorges, 134. Bad lands, 139. Natural bridges, 139.

PAGE

Effects of Inequalities of Hardness of Rock 141
Rapids and falls, 141. Narrows, 146. Rock terraces, 149. Monadnocks, rock ridges, etc., 149.

Accidents to Streams 150
Drowning, 150. Rejuvenation, 151. Ponding, 151. Piracy, 152.

Consequent and Antecedent Streams 153

DEPOSITION BY RUNNING WATER 154

Causes of Deposition 155
Loss of velocity, 155. Excess of load from tributaries, 156.

Location of Alluvial Deposits and the Topographic Forms . 157
At bases of steep slopes, 157. Ill-defined alluvium, 159. In valley bottoms, 159. Flood-plain meanders, 162. Fertility of alluvial plains, 165. River floods, 166. Alluvial terraces, 172. At debouchures, 172. Map work, 175.

Chapter V

WORK OF SNOW AND ICE

FORMS OF ICE 177
Ice beneath the surface, 177. Ice of lakes, 178. Ice on the sea, 180. Ice-foot, 182. Ice in rivers, 182. Ground-ice, 183. Snow, 184. Snow-fields, 185. Snow-line, 186. Ice-fields, 187.

GLACIERS 188
Types of glaciers, 188.

Valley Glaciers 192
Their surfaces, 192.

Movement 196
Waste and supply of ice, 196. Rate of movement, 197. Conditions affecting rate of movement, 197. Nature of glacier movement, 198. Size, 201.

Ice-caps 202

Piedmont Glaciers 206

THE WORK OF GLACIERS 207

Erosion 207
Materials gathered, 216. Transportation and disposition of débris in transit, 218.

Deposition by Glaciers 220
Terminal moraine, 220. Ground moraine, 222. Lateral moraines, 222. Distribution and disposition of drift, 224. Résumé, 226.

Fluvio-glacial Deposits 230

Icebergs 233

ANCIENT GLACIERS AND ICE-SHEETS 234

Cause of Glacial Epochs 237

CHANGES PRODUCED BY CONTINENTAL GLACIERS . . 237

PAGE

Changes Produced by Erosion 238
On elevations, 238. In valleys, 239. Rock surfaces, 239.

Changes Produced by Deposition 239
General distribution of the drift, 239. Terminal moraines, 240. The ground moraine, 241. Effect of drift on topography, 243. Map work, 244. Stratified drift, 249. Effects of glaciation on human affairs, 250. Map work, 251.

Chapter VI
LAKES AND SHORES

GENERAL FACTS 253
Definition, 253.

Distribution of Lakes 254
In latitude, 254. In mountains, 254. Along rivers, 254. Along coasts, 255. On coastal plains, 255. Glaciated plains and plateaus, 255. On plateaus, 255. Other situations, 256.

Area, Topographic Position, Depth, etc. 256
Area and topographic position, 256. Depth, 256. Volume, 259. Movements of lake water, 259. Changes of level, 259.

Conditions Necessary for the Existence of Lakes . . . 259
Sources of lake water, 260.

Changes Taking Place in Lakes 260
The filling of their basins, 260. The lowering of their outlets, 261. Fate of lakes, 261.

Origin of Lake Basins 262
Diastrophism, 262. Gradation, 264. River lakes, 264. Waves and shore currents, 269. Glacial lakes, 270. Lakes due to slumping, 271. Solution, weathering, wind, etc., 271. Glacial lakes an index of topographic age, 272.

SALT LAKES 272

Climatic Effects of Lakes 274

Economic Advantages and Disadvantages 274

TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES OF SHORES 275

Gradational Changes now Taking Place along Shores . . 276
Waves, Undertow, Shore Currents, 276. Erosive work of waves, 278. Deposition by waves, shore currents, etc., 281. Rivers, 285. Winds, 287. Glaciers, 287. Shore ice, 288.

EXTINCT LAKES 289

Chapter VII
VULCANISM

Examples of Active Volcanoes 294
Stromboli, 294. Vesuvius, 295. Krakatoa, 301. Mont Pelée and Soufrière, 302. La Soufrière, 308. Mt. Lassen, 309. Hawaiian volcanoes, 312. Common phenomena of an eruption, 317.

PAGE

PRODUCTS OF VOLCANOES 318
Lava, 318. Cinders, ashes, etc., 319. Gases and vapors, 319.

NUMBER, DISTRIBUTION, ETC. 319

IGNEOUS PHENOMENA NOT STRICTLY VOLCANIC . . . 322
Fissure eruptions, 322. Intrusions of lava, 325.

CAUSES OF VULCANISM 325

HEAT PRIMARY 326

HEAT SECONDARY 327
Conclusion, 327.

TOPOGRAPHIC EFFECTS OF VOLCANIC ACTION 328
Volcanic cones, 329. Destruction of volcanic cones, 331. Examples of fresh cones, 331. Examples of worn cones, 333. Mt. Shasta, 333. Mt. Ranier, 333. Mt. Hood, 333. The Marysville Buttes, 333. San Francisco Mountain, 334.

INDIRECT TOPOGRAPHIC EFFECTS OF VULCANISM 334
Volcanic necks, 334. Columnar structure, 336.

MUD VOLCANOES 338

CHAPTER VIII

CRUSTAL MOVEMENTS; DIASTROPHISM

SECULAR CHANGES 339

EVIDENCES OF (RELATIVE) ELEVATION OF LAND 340
Human structures, 340. Rocks, 340. Measurements, 340. Organic remains; fossils, 340. Raised beaches, etc., 341. Sea cliffs, 342. Sea caves, 342.

EVIDENCES OF RELATIVE DEPRESSION OF LAND 342
Human structures, 342. Submerged forests, 342. Submerged valleys, 342. An Italian temple, 344.

IS IT LAND OR SEA WHICH CHANGES ITS LEVEL? 344

WHY SEA-LEVEL CHANGES 346
Sedimentation, 346. Submarine volcanic extrusions, 347. Diastrophism, 347.

WHY LAND CHANGES LEVEL 348

CHANGES OF LEVEL IN INTERIORS OF CONTINENTS 348
General facts, 348. Extent, 349. Ancient changes of level, 349. Future changes of level, 350.

CRUSTAL DEFORMATION 350
Warping and folding, 351. Faulting, 352.

EARTHQUAKES 355
Definition, 355. Strength and destructiveness, 355. Examples, 358. Earthquakes starting beneath the sea, 366. The earthquake wave, 366. Frequency, 369. Distribution, 369. Causes of earthquakes, 370. Surface changes caused by earthquakes, 373.

Chapter IX

ORIGIN AND HISTORY OF PHYSIOGRAPHIC FEATURES

PAGE

PLAINS 375

PLATEAUS 377

MOUNTAINS 377

Distribution of mountains, 379. Heights, 379. Oceanic mountains, 380. Changes taking place in mountains, 380.

Origin of Mountains. 383

Volcanic mountains, 383. Mountains produced by erosion, 384. Intrusion and uplift, 385. Mountains produced by folding, 385. Mountains produced by faulting, 386. Summary, 387.

Effects of Mountains on Mankind 388

Climatic effects, 388. Mountains are barriers to transportation, 389. Mountains are barriers to animals and plants, 389. Mountains contain ores, 389. Agriculture in mountains, 391. Scenic effects, 391.

OUTLINES OF THE CONTINENTS 391

Size, 392. Position, 392. Relief, 394.

Distribution of various types of irregularities, 394. Agents of gradation, 396. Diastrophism, 396. Vulcanism, 397.

Application 397

Historical bearing, 398.

ISLANDS 399

By diastrophism, 399. By vulcanism, 400. By gradation, 400. By erosion, 400. By deposition, 400. By combinations of diastrophism, gradation, and vulcanism, 401. By organic processes, 402.

Chapter X

TERRESTRIAL MAGNETISM

General Facts 406

Dip, 409. Intensity, 409.

PART II

Chapter XI

EARTH RELATIONS

Form, 410. Size, 412.

Motions 412

Rotation, 412. Effect of rotation, 415. Revolution, 416.

Latitude, Longitude, and Time 417

Latitude, 417. Longitude, 418. Longitude and time, 419. Lengths of degrees, 421. Inclination of axis and its effects, 423. Apparent motion of the sun, 426. Latitude and sun altitude, 428.

The Solar System 430

PART III

THE ATMOSPHERE

Chapter XII

GENERAL CONCEPTION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

PAGE

Substantiality, 432. Relation to the rest of the earth, 433. Density, 433. Height, 434. Volume, 436. Mass, 436. History, 436.

Chapter XIII

CONSTITUTION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Principal constituents, 438. Minor constituents, 438. Impurities, 438. Relations of constituents to one another, 439.

Functions of the Atmospheric Elements 439

Nitrogen, 439. Oxygen, 439. Carbon dioxide, 440. Water vapor, 443. Dust, 443.

Chapter XIV

TEMPERATURE OF THE AIR

The thermometer, 445.

Heating of the Atmosphere 446

Sources of heat, 446. Sun heating; insolation, 446. Primary distribution of heat, 447. Heating and cooling, 450. Radiation, 451. Conduction, 451. Convection, 451. How the sun heats the atmosphere, 454. Heating and cooling of land and water, 454. Secondary distribution of heat, 455. The isothermal layer, 456.

THE SEASONS 456

Differences between summer and winter, 457. Why we have summer when we do, 458. Change of seasons, 458. Seasons in other latitudes, 460. Effect of varying distance of the sun, 462. Effect of altitude on temperature, 462.

Representation of Temperature on Maps 464

Isotherms, 464. Isothermal charts, 465. The positions and courses of isotherms, 466. Altitude, 471. Isothermal surfaces, 471.

Daily Range of Temperature 482

Seasonal Range of Temperature 485

Effect of Atmospheric Temperature on Atmospheric Movement 486

Land and sea breezes, 487. Monsoon winds, 487. Mountain and valley breezes, 488. Vertical movements and temperature, 488.

Chapter XV

THE MOISTURE OF THE AIR

Function of atmospheric moisture, 489. Sources of water vapor: evaporation, 490. Rate of evaporation, 491. Function of the atmosphere in evaporation, 493. Evaporation takes up heat, 493. Amount of water vapor in the air, 493. Distribution of water

PAGE

vapor, 494. Atmospheric moisture and atmospheric movements, 494. Saturation, 494. Humidity and dew-point, 495. Condensation 497. Condensation and temperature, 497. Dew and frost, 497. Clouds and fog, 498. Forms of clouds, 500. Precipitation, 501. Rainmaking, 504. Summary, 504.

Chapter XVI

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE

The barometer, 505. Air pressures unequal, 506.

Representation of Pressures on Maps and Charts . . . 506
Isobars, 506. Isobaric surfaces, 509. The courses of isobars, 511. Isobars and parallels, 511. Relation of isobars to land and water, 512. Isobars and temperature, 512. Isobars and humidity, 516. The high-pressure belts, 516. Permanent areas of low pressure, 518. Temporary and local variations of pressure, 518.

Chapter XVII

GENERAL CIRCULATION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Prevailing and Periodic Winds 520

The General Effect of Unequal Insolation 520

Effect of the Extra-tropical Belts of High Pressure . . 522

The High-latitude Areas of Low Pressure 523

Direction of Winds 524

Land and Water Circulation 528
Summary, 532. Gradient, velocity, and directions of wind, 533.

GENERAL CIRCULATION AND PRECIPITATION 535
Rainfall in the zones of trades, 536. Rainfall in the zones of prevailing westerlies, 538. Monsoon rains, 539.

Chapter XVIII

WEATHER MAPS; STORMS

Aperiodic Changes of Pressure 540
Isobars, 540. Wind, 542. Cloudiness, precipitation, etc., 543. Temperature, 543. Movements of cyclones and anticyclones, 549. Weather conditions of cyclones and anticyclones, 561. Origin of the cyclones and anticyclones of intermediate latitudes, 563. Tropical cyclones, 563. Weather predictions, 570. Failure of predictions, 572. Property saved by predictions of storms, frosts, floods, etc., 573. Thunder-storms, 576. Whirlwinds, 578. Tornadoes, 579. Waterspouts, 584. Foehn winds, Chinook winds, etc., 585.

Chapter XIX

CLIMATE

Definition, 586. Uniformity and variability, 587.

Classification of Climates 588

PAGE

Climatic Zones 588

Zones defined by latitude, 589. Tropical zone, 589. Intermediate zones, 589. Polar zones, 589. Zones defined by winds, 590. Zones defined by isotherms, 591. Oceanic climates, 592. Continental climates, 593. Mountain and plateau climates, 594. Climatic effect of forests, 594.

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF TROPICAL CLIMATES . 595

Seasons of rainfall, 596.

TYPES OF CLIMATE WITHIN THE TROPICS 597

Equatorial Climate (Latitude 0°–10° or 15° N. and S.) . . . 597

Temperature, 597. Rainfall, 597. Humidity and cloudiness, 598. Effects on life, 598.

Trade-wind Climate (Latitude 10° or 15°–25° or 30°) . . . 598

Winds and temperature, 598. Rainfall, 598. Cyclones, 599. Trade-winds and commerce, 600. Life in the trade-wind climate, 600.

Monsoon Climate 600

Rainfall, 600. Life responses, 601.

Climate in High Altitudes 601

Effect on temperature, 601.

CLIMATE IN THE INTERMEDIATE (TEMPERATE) ZONES 601

Extent of temperate zones, 601.

General Characteristics 602

Variability, 602. Sun influence, 603. Winds, 603. Temperature ranges, 603. North intermediate zone, 604. South intermediate zone, 604.

TYPES OF CLIMATE 604

Windward Coasts in Low (Below 40°) Latitudes 605

Character and distribution, 605. Southern California, 605. Temperatures, 605. Rainfall, 606. Plant life, 606.

Windward Coasts in Latitudes Above 40°; Marine Climate . 606

Location, 606. Temperatures, 608. Rainfall and humidity, 608.

Continental Climates 609

Regions affected, 609. Temperatures, 609. Cyclonic influence, 610. Rainfall, 610.
Arid and humid interiors, 610. . . . .

Continental Climates in the United States 611

The arid region, 611. The semi-arid region, 611. The humid region, 612.

Mountain Climates 613

Temperature, 613. Precipitation, 613.

CLIMATE OF POLAR REGIONS 614

General Considerations 614

Extent of polar regions, 614. General features of polar climate, 615. Temperature, 615. Humidity and precipitation, 615.

CHANGES OF CLIMATE 616

Within historic time, 616. In geologic time, 618.

PART IV
THE OCEAN

Chapter XX
GENERAL FACTS

PAGE

The sea-level, 620. What the physical geography of the sea includes, 622. Distribution of the ocean waters, 623. Depth, 624. Volume, 625. Mass, 625. Topography of the bottom, 625.

COMPOSITION OF SEA-WATER 628
Source of mineral matter, 628. Withdrawal of mineral matter from the sea, 629. The age of the ocean, 630. Gases in sea-water, 630. Salinity, density, and movement, 631.

Density of Water under Certain Conditions 632
Salinity and color, 632.

TEMPERATURE OF THE SEA 632
At the surface, 632. Temperature and movement, 633. Temperature beneath the surface, 633. The ice of the sea, 636.

Chapter XXI
MOVEMENTS OF SEA WATER

CAUSES OF MOVEMENTS 637
Movements due to inequalities of level, 637. Movements due to wind, 638. Movements due to differential attraction of sun and moon, 638. Movements due to occasional causes, 638.

TYPES OF MOVEMENT 639

Waves 639

Currents 639
Cause of ocean currents, 642. Climatic effects of ocean currents, 643. Gradational effects of ocean currents, 644. Historical suggestions, 644. Drift and creep, 644.

Tides 644
Periodicity and cause of tides, 646. Tides if the ocean were universal, 649. Solar tides, 650. Other variations in the height of high tides, 653. Successive high tides of a given place often are unequal, 654. Cotidal lines, 655. Rate of movement, 657. Effects of tides on shores, 657.

Chapter XXII
LIFE—SEDIMENTS—RELATIONS

MATERIALS OF THE SEA BOTTOM 661
Dredging, 661.

RELATION OF THE SEA TO THE REST OF THE EARTH . 663

PLATES

PLATE		FACING PAGE
I.	A narrow coastal plain in Oregon	following p. 18
II.	A well-drained plain in Kansas	preceding p. 19
III.	An ill-drained plain in Wisconsin	following p. 34
IV.	Fig. 1. The Canyon of the Yellowstone River	
	Fig. 2. The Grand Canyon of the Colorado River	preceding p. 35
V.	Fig. 1. Dunes on coast of New Jersey.	
	Fig. 2. Dunes along Arkansas River in Kansas.	
	Fig. 3. Dunes in plains of Nebraska	following p. 58
VI.	Limestone sinks due to solution by ground-water near Pikeville, Tenn.	preceding p. 59
VII.	Streams disappearing in the sand, gravel, etc., at the base of mountains in an arid region	following p. 114
VIII.	A stream widening its valley by lateral planation	preceding p. 115
IX.	Fig. 1. A meandering stream. The Missouri River.	
	Fig. 2. A further stage in the development of a meander. The Schell River, Missouri	
	Fig. 3. A plain in old age	following p. 130
X.	A well-developed river flat. Valley of the Mississippi, near Prairie du Chien, Wis.	following p. 130
XI.	Stream flats. The Missouri and Big Sioux Rivers	following p. 130
XII.	Fig. 1. Youthful Valleys. Shore of Lake Michigan just north of Chicago.	
	Fig. 2. A region in a mature state of erosion	following p. 130
XIII.	The Niagara Gorge	following p. 130
XIV.	Entrenched Meanders	preceding p. 131
XV.	A piedmont alluvial plain or compound alluvial fan in Southern California	following p. 162
XVI.	The alluvial plain of the Platte Rivers in Nebraska	preceding p. 163
XVII.	Glaciers on Glacier Peak, Washington	following p. 194
XVIII.	A portion of the Bighorn Mountains, showing glaciated valleys	preceding p. 195
XIX.	Characteristic drift topography	following p. 226
XX.	Fig. 1. Coastal lakes formed by the blocking of the ends of drowned valleys.	
	Fig. 2. A group of lakes on the coastal plain of Florida	following p. 258
XXI.	The upper end of Seneca Lake, New York	preceding p. 259
XXII.	Fig. 1. A coast line developed chiefly by wave erosion.	
	Fig. 2. An island tied to the mainland by a "beach"	following p. 290
XXIII.	A section of the California coast, showing lands, near the coast, which have recently emerged	following p. 354
XXIV.	Cushetunk and Round Mountains, New Jersey	preceding p. 355
XXV.	Dunning Mountain, Pennsylvania	following p. 386
XXVI.	An area southwest of Denver showing a mountain ridge dissected by erosion	preceding p. 387

PHYSIOGRAPHY

PHYSIOGRAPHY

INTRODUCTION

Definition. The science of *physiography* has been variously defined, and while there is still much difference of opinion as to the precise limits that should be set to it, there is a strong disposition, in the school world at least, to regard physiography as another name for physical geography. By some, physiography is restricted to narrower limits, being regarded as the physical geography of the land. In England, physiography is often regarded as a general introduction to science, and is made to include the elements of all the physical and biological sciences.

If physiography be regarded as another name for physical geography, it has to do with (1) the solid part of the earth, the *lithosphere*, (2) the water of the earth, the *hydrosphere*, and (3) the air or *atmosphere*. Physiography, however, does not deal with these several spheres exhaustively. The science of the atmosphere is *Meteorology;* the science of the ocean, which contains the larger part of the water of the hydrosphere, is *Oceanography;* and the science of waters in general is *Hydrography*. The complete study of the lithosphere includes several sciences, all of which may be considered as parts of the broad science of *Geology*, which has to do, to some extent, with the atmosphere and hydrosphere, as well as with the lithosphere.

Physiography may be said to deal with the atmosphere only in so far as the atmosphere affects land, water, and life, and it deals with the water primarily in its relations to land and life. So far as concerns the lithosphere, physiography deals with its surface only, though it is more than a mere description of the surface; it involves a consideration of the conditions and processes which have brought the surface to its present condition. The processes involved are largely the result of the activity of water and air, and of the life conditioned by them; but other factors, such as volcanic forces, and the forces which cause the slow warpings of

the outer part of the lithosphere, are also involved. In other words, *physiography has to do primarily with the surface of the lithosphere, and with the relations of air and water to it. Its field is the zone of contact of air and water and land.*

Physiography is not separated sharply from *geology*. Geology deals with the history of the earth, while physiography has to do with a late chapter only of that history,— the history of the present surface. Every period of the past has had its physiography, and the history of the successive physiographies, could they be fully known, would be, in large part, the history of the earth.

Physiography is also closely related to *geography*, but it departs from that science in that it has to do primarily with the relations of the lithosphere, atmosphere, and hydrosphere, and with the physical results of these relations, while geography, as distinct from physical geography, concerns itself primarily with the distribution and associations of life (including human industries) as affected by physical conditions, such as topography, climate, natural resources, etc. Physiography may be said to be a special phase of geography, namely, physical geography, and at the same time a special chapter of geology, namely, the latest. Since physical geography affects the distribution of life and all its activities, it is appropriate in its study, to keep in mind its biological and historical bearings.

Although the lithosphere, the hydrosphere, and the atmosphere seem very distinct from one another, they are in reality somewhat less sharply separated than they seem, for though the larger part of the hydrosphere is contained in the ocean, lakes, and rivers, a not inconsiderable part has sunk into the soil and rocks, while a smaller amount always exists in the form of vapor in the atmosphere. The water therefore invades both the lithosphere below and the atmosphere above. So, too, a part of the atmosphere penetrates the soil and the rocks of the land, and is mingled with the water of the ocean, lakes, and rivers. Again, solid matter from the lithosphere is found in suspension in streams, lakes, etc., often making them muddy, and dust is always present in the atmosphere. In spite of the interpenetration of the three spheres, they remain so distinct that the boundaries between them are, as a rule, sharply defined.

PART I

THE LITHOSPHERE

CHAPTER I

RELIEF FEATURES

The oceans cover nearly three-fourths (about 72 per cent) of the surface of the lithosphere, while but little more than one-fourth of it rises above the level of the seas, forming land. The volume of water in the oceans is so great that if the surface of the lithosphere were reduced to a common level, that is if the protuberant parts were planed down and the material deposited in the depressed areas, there would be no land at all, but a universal ocean nearly two miles deep. The existence of land therefore results from the fact that the surface of the solid part of the earth is uneven, and that the water has settled in the depressions.

It would help us to get a true picture of the surface of the solid part of the earth, if we could see it without the oceans; but since the oceans cannot be withdrawn, some conception of its surface may be gained from a relief model of the earth which does not represent the water (Figs. 1 and 2); or, if such a model is not available, relief maps and charts of the ocean are serviceable.

Relief Features of the First Order

The most significant feature in the surface of the lithosphere is the contrast between the great depressions, which we call the *ocean basins*, and the broad elevations, which we call the *continental platforms*. The continental platforms and the ocean basins are *topographic features of the first order*. The contrast between them is emphasized by the fact that there is almost everywhere a rather steep slope from the one to the other,— a steep descent from the continental platforms to the ocean basins, or, looked at from the other point of view, a steep ascent from the ocean basins to the continental platforms (Figs. 1, 2, and 3).

The ocean basins and the continental platforms divide the surface of the earth between them. Both the basins and the platforms are irregular in shape and irregular in distribution. The larger part of the elevated areas is in the northern hemisphere, while the depressed areas are far in excess in the southern.

The continental platforms are a little larger than the continents (Fig. 3), and the ocean basins are somewhat smaller than the oceans. The oceanic area (more than 143,000,000 square

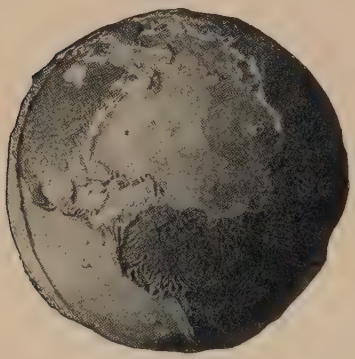


FIG. 1.

FIG. 2.

FIG. 1.—Photograph of the Jones Relief Globe, showing the North Atlantic Basin depressed notably below the continents about it. The vertical scale of the globe is exaggerated.

FIG. 2.—Photograph of the Jones Relief Globe, showing the basin of the Indian Ocean, with its distinctly marked borders on all sides but the south.

miles) is nearly three times the land area (nearly 54,000,000 square miles), but the area of the ocean basins proper (about 133,000,000 square miles), is only about twice as great as the area of the continental platforms (about 64,000,000 square miles). The discrepancy between the area of the oceans and that of the ocean basins results from the fact that there is more water on the earth than the true ocean basins will hold, and this excess overruns the rims of the basins, and spreads itself out on the low borders (the continental shelves) of the continental platforms (Fig. 4). Some 10,000,000 square miles about the borders of the continental platforms are thus covered by shallow water. The result is that the area of the continents falls short of the area of the continental platforms by this amount, while the area of the oceans correspondingly exceeds that of the ocean basins. The waters which

lie on the low borders of the continental platforms have been called *epicontinental* (upon the continent) *seas*.

If all lands were graded to a common level without increasing or decreasing either their area or the amount of material they

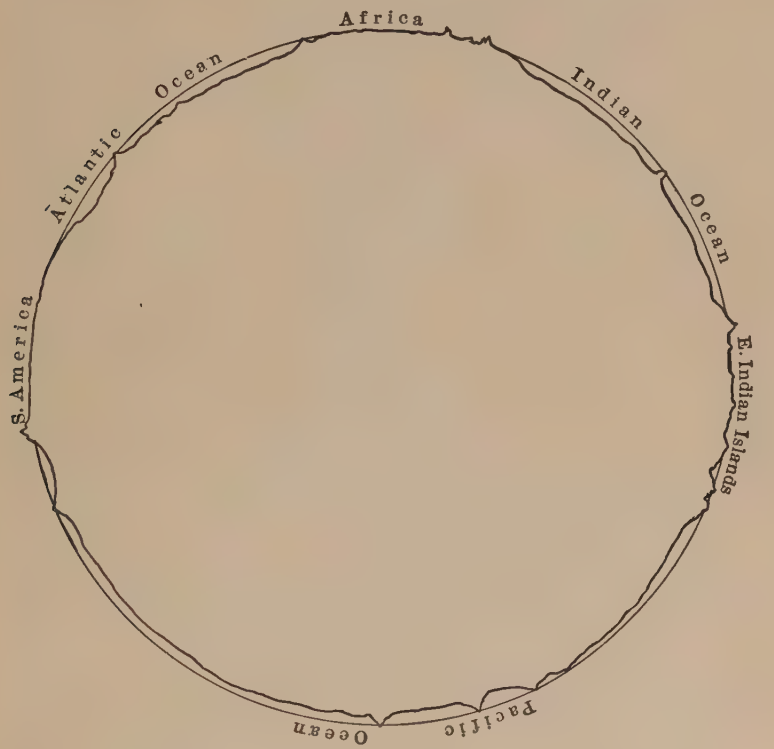


Fig 3.—A diagrammatic section of the earth about the equator, showing the elevated segments (continents) and the depressed segments (ocean basins). Vertical scale×40. (Based on section in Stanford's Atlas of Universal Geography.)

contain, their height above sea-level would be about 2300 feet. If the bottom of the sea were graded to a common level, its area remaining as now, the water would be between 12,000 and 13,000 feet deep everywhere. The average height of the land is therefore a little less than half a mile above sea-level, while the average depth of the ocean bottom is but little less than two and a half miles below sea-level. The difference between the average height

of continental platforms and ocean basins is therefore nearly three miles. In other words, *about two-thirds of the surface of the solid part of the earth is sunk about three miles below the other third.* Three miles is a little less than $\frac{1}{1800}$ of the radius of the earth.

The surfaces of both the continental platforms and the ocean basins are uneven, and as a result, the maximum unevenness, or relief, of the surface of the lithosphere is much more than three miles. Its lowest known point, near the Fiji Islands, is nearly six miles (about 31,000 feet) below the level of the sea, while its highest point (Mt. Everest in the Himalayas) is nearly as much (about 29,000 feet) above the same plane. The maximum relief of the lithosphere is therefore nearly twelve miles, or about $\frac{1}{830}$ of the earth's radius. The areas of those parts of the ocean basins which approach a depth of six miles are, however, very limited in extent, and the areas of land which approach the height of six miles are hardly more than points.

The following table gives some idea of the relief of the lithosphere:

	Approximate percent. of total area of the earth.
Area of land more than 6000 feet above sea-level.	2.3
Area of land between 6000 and 600 feet above sea-level	18.6
Area of land between 600 feet above sea-level and sea-level	6.9
Area of ocean where water is less than 600 feet deep	7.
Area of ocean where water is between 600 and 6000 feet deep	7.
Area of ocean where water is between 6000 and 12,000 feet deep	14.8
Area of ocean where water is between 12,000 and 18,000 feet deep	39.4
Area of ocean where the depth of the water exceeds 18,000 feet	3.1

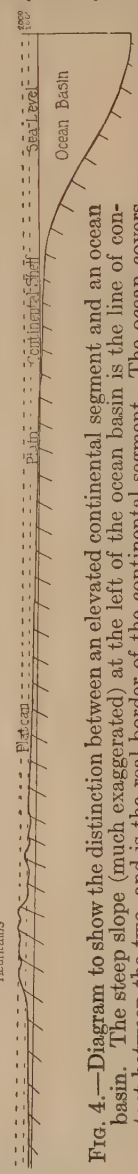


FIG. 4.—Diagram to show the distinction between an elevated continental segment and an ocean basin. The steep slope (much exaggerated) at the left of the ocean basin is the line of contact between the two, and is the real border of the continental segment. The ocean covers the lower part of the continental segment, namely, the *continental shelf*. The diagram also shows the general relation between low mountains, such as the Appalachians, a low plateau, and a coastal plain. The continental shelf is seen to be a continuation of the coastal plain.

This table shows that more than half the lithosphere is more than a mile below sea-level.

The following table shows the proportion of land at various elevations above the sea:

		Percent. of land.
Less than	600 feet	about 21.90
Between	600 and 1,500 feet	about 21.63
Between	1,500 and 3,000 feet	about 21.34
Between	3,000 and 6,000 feet	about 19.51
Between	6,000 and 12,000 feet	about 12.34
Between	12,000 and 18,000 feet	about 2.95
Above	18,000 feet	about .33

This table shows that nearly two-thirds of the land has an elevation of less than 3000 feet. About six-tenths of the land is less than 500 meters[1] (1640 feet) above sea-level, and upon it the larger part of the population of the earth lives. The facts shown in the above table are expressed diagrammatically by Fig. 5.

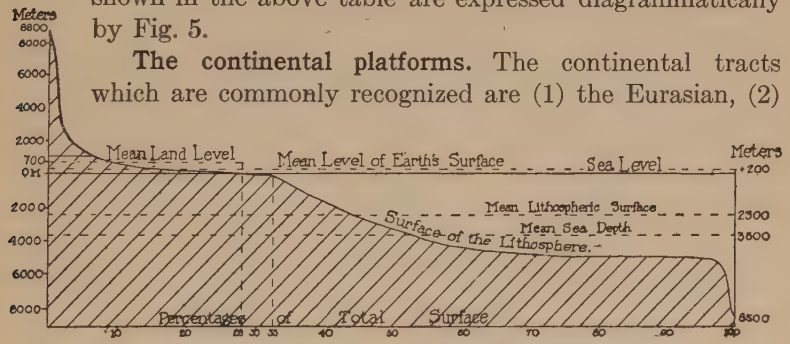


FIG. 5.—Diagram showing the relative areas of the lithosphere at various levels above and below sea-level. Less than 10 per cent of the lithosphere is as much as 700 meters above the sea, and only 28 percent. is above the sea. About half the total surface of the lithosphere is more than 3500 meters below sea-level. The diagram also shows that the mean surface of the lithosphere is about 2300 meters below sea-level, the mean ocean depth about 3500 meters, and the mean elevation of the land above the sea-level about 700 meters. (After Wagner.)

The continental platforms. The continental tracts which are commonly recognized are (1) the Eurasian, (2) the African, (3) the North American, (4) the South American, and (5) the Australian, which includes New Guinea on the north. Besides these elevated segments whose summits are the recognized continents, there are other lesser, though still great, segments not commonly recognized as continental. Of these the largest is (6) Antarctica, which probably should be regarded as a continent, and (7) Greenland, which is universally regarded as an island. Islands,

[1] It is serviceable to remember that 1 meter =3.281 (approximately) feet.

in general, are not to be looked upon as relief features of the first order, and will be referred to in other connections.

Continuity and discontinuity of continental platforms and oceanic basins. The great land areas are notably discontinuous, while the sea is continuous, though its parts bear separate names, as Atlantic, Pacific, etc. The continental platforms are much more nearly continuous than the continental lands, while the ocean basins are less continuous than the oceans. Thus the American continental protuberance is connected at the northwest with the Asian protuberance, and is but slightly disconnected at the northeast from the European, while the elevated Eurasian platform is connected with the Australian and the African. Of the continental protuberances, Antarctica alone seems to be really isolated. Of the ocean basins, the Arctic is measurably isolated. It is of interest to note that the most isolated basin is about one pole, and the most isolated protuberance about the other, so far as present knowledge of the polar regions allows of generalization. Some of the smaller deep basins, such as those of the Mediterranean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico, have some such measure of isolation as some of the larger islands, as, for example, Greenland and New Zealand.

Grouping of the continents. The northern hemisphere contains more than twice as much land as the southern. If the earth

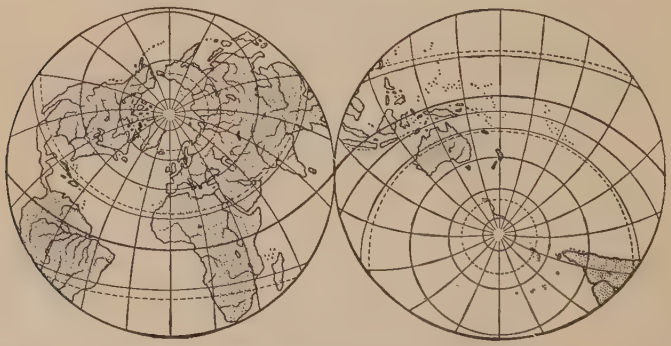


FIG. 6.—Land and water hemispheres. Stereographic projection.

be divided into two hemispheres having their poles in England and New Zealand, respectively (Fig. 6), the former would contain about $\frac{6}{7}$ of all the land, and might be called the land hemisphere,

while the latter, containing only about $\frac{1}{7}$ of the land, might be called the water hemisphere. Even in the land hemisphere, however, the water would cover rather more than $\frac{1}{2}$ the surface, while in the water hemisphere it would cover about $\frac{14}{15}$ of it (Fig. 6). Since the northern hemisphere contains $\frac{2}{3}$ of the land and a still higher proportion of the economically efficient land, it has always supported the larger part of the human race.

Taken together, the continents may be looked upon as forming a great horseshoe-shaped protuberance of the lithosphere, extending around the Atlantic from Cape Horn through the Americas and Europe to the Cape of Good Hope in Africa, with a spur stretching to the southeast to the East Indies and Australia.

If Europe and Asia be regarded as separate, the continents, except Antarctica, may be grouped in pairs. The Americas form one pair, Europe and Africa another, and Asia and Australia a third. Considered in this way, the longest line of each pair is in a general north and south direction. The continents often are said to be triangular in shape, with their broadest ends to the north, and their apexes to the south. This is conspicuously true of South America, and less conspicuously true of North America and Africa; but it is not true of Europe and Asia, either by themselves or combined, or of Australia or Antarctica.

Origin of relief features of the first order. The origin of the ocean basins and the continental platforms is not known with certainty. It is not certain that they have always existed, and it is not likely that the former have always been depressed as much as now below the latter, though apparently there has been little change for ages. The best opinion seems to favor the view that the sinking of the ocean basins, rather than the elevation of the continental masses, has been the important thing in the development of the topographic features of the first order. The chief reason for this view is the belief that the earth is shrinking. Shrinking means that the outside is getting nearer to the center. This must result in the depression of the surface on the average, though not necessarily at every point.

If the subsidence of the ocean basins be the principal factor in developing the great relief features of the lithosphere, we might think of the continental platforms as having been (1) wedged up (Fig. 7), or warped (Fig. 8) up between the sinking parts; (2) as having remained where they were before the sinking of the de-

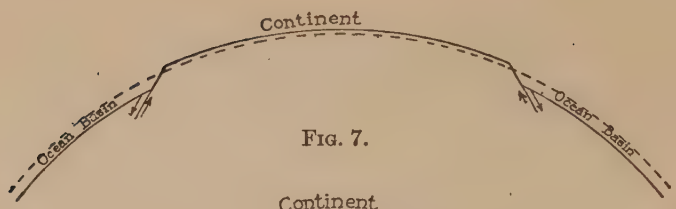


FIG. 7.

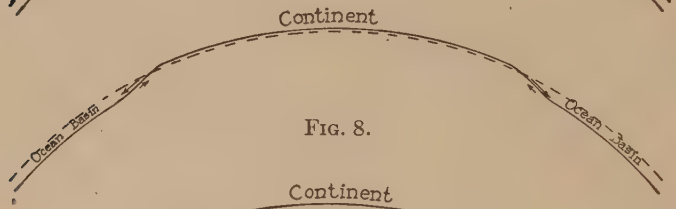


FIG. 8.

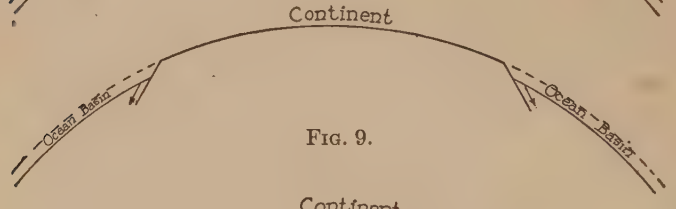


FIG. 9.

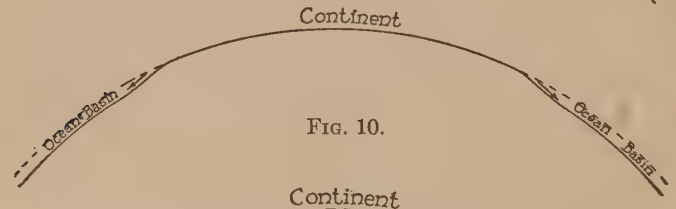


FIG. 10.

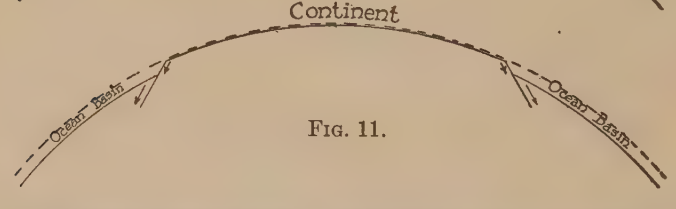


FIG. 11.

FIG. 7.—Expresses diagrammatically the hypothesis that the continents were elevated and the ocean basins depressed by movement along definite sliding planes or *fault planes*. The dotted line may be taken to represent a somewhat uniform original surface, which may be looked upon as a hypothetical surface before continents and ocean basins were developed. The diagram represents the conception that the continents have risen above this surface, while the ocean basins have sunk below it.

FIG. 8.—This diagram represents the same conception as Fig. 7, except that the movement was by warping instead of faulting.

FIG. 9.—This diagram represents the same conception as Fig. 7, except that the continental segment is represented as not having risen.

FIG. 10.—This diagram represents the same conception as Fig. 8, except that the continental segment has not risen.

FIG. 11.—This diagram represents the same conception as Fig. 9, except that both ocean basin and continental segment are represented as having sunk below the original level, the former much more than the latter.

pressed parts (Figs. 9 and 10); or (3) as having sunk, but as having sunk less than the basins (Fig. 11). All these conceptions imply change in the relative positions of continental platforms and ocean basins. All may have elements of truth in them, and all may have been combined, so far as now known, in the evolution of the continents. Present knowledge, however, does not permit of a definite statement of their relative value, nor does it exclude other conceptions of the origin of the topographic features of the first order. It is, for example, possible, or even probable, that the surface of the lithosphere never was uniform, and that the topographic features of the first order are not entirely the result of deformation.

One conception of the origin of ocean basins and continental platforms is based on the view that the earth grew to its present size from a smaller ancestral body by the ingathering of matter which was once outside itself, and that growth was not equal in all places. On this view, its surface may never have been smooth. Even if this conception be the true one, it is probable that movements in the outer parts of the earth have emphasized the difference between ocean basins and continental masses in the course of the long history of the earth.

Geological history reveals the fact that the areas of sea and land have changed somewhat from time to time, but it is not known that the relative positions of ocean basins and continental platforms have changed notably. If the bottom of the sea were to sink, the ocean basins would hold more water, and some part of the epicontinental sea would be drawn off the submerged parts of the continental platforms, that is off the continental shelves.

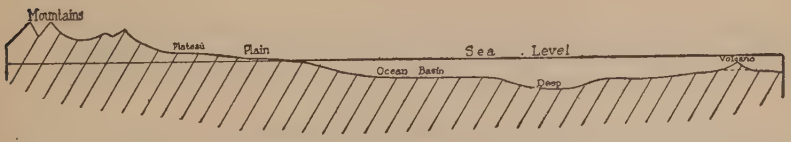


FIG. 12.—Diagram to illustrate the relations of mountain, plateau, plain, ocean basin, ocean deep, etc.

If the bottoms of the ocean basins were to sink about 600 feet, the water would be drawn off the continental shelves, and the continental lands would correspond with the continental platforms. If the continental tracts, on the other hand, were to sink, the waters of the sea would encroach upon their borders farther

than now, and the area of the land would be diminished. Geology teaches that such changes have taken place at various times in the past, so that the lower portions of the continental platforms have been alternately submerged, and converted into land.

Relief Features of the Second Order

The more strongly marked lineaments of continents and ocean basins are the relief features of the second order.

Great relief features of the land. The continental platforms are made up of *plains*, *plateaus*, and *mountains*. The plains are the lowlands of the continents, and the plateaus and mountains are the highlands; but no one of these types can be defined in terms of altitude alone. Most continental lands may be classed readily in some one of these three divisions, but many small islands do not seem referable to any one of them. The difficulties which they present need not, however, be considered at this point.

Plains

Plains are the lowlands of the earth, yet they can hardly be defined in terms of altitude above sea-level. Some of them are but a few feet above it, while others are thousands of feet above it. In the latter case, they are generally far from the sea, and distinctly lower than other lands on at least one side. Fig. 13 is intended to give some idea of the relations of large plains. It will be seen that plains may be as high above sea-level as low plateaus,

Fig. 13.—Diagram showing section across North America. The area between the Sierra and the Uinta Mountains is a great plateau, though with minor mountain ranges. The "Great Plains" are really a plateau, and are much higher than the Cumberland Plateau farther east. Parts of the Great Plains are higher than the Appalachian Mountains.

or even as low mountains; but they are never so high as plateaus or mountains in their own vicinity.

Plains differ widely among themselves, not only in height, but in position, in size, in topography, in fertility, in origin, and in various other ways. Various names are applied to various types of plains, the names being intended to direct attention to one or another distinctive feature. Only extensive plains are to be regarded as topographic features of the second order, and of such plains the most important classes are *Coastal Plains*, which border the sea, and *Interior Plains*, which are far from the sea, or separated from it by high lands.

Coastal Plains. These plains occur on the borders of many continents, as along the eastern coast of the United States south of New York. Some of them are narrow and some are wide. A narrow plain is shown in Fig. 14. It is low, and has a nearly plane surface which slopes gently toward the sea. Its surface is affected by the shallow valleys of the streams which flow across it. The inner edges of coastal plains are not always so clearly defined as in this illustration.

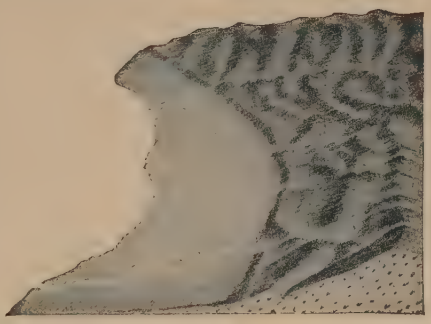


FIG. 14.—A narrow coastal plain.

Perhaps most coastal plains have originated in one of two ways: (1) By the withdrawal of the sea from a part of a former continental shelf; or (2) by the deposition of sediment washed down from the land into the shallow water of an epicontinental sea, building up (aggrading) its bottom above the surface of the water, converting it into land. Coastal plains have been made in both these ways, and both processes have been concerned in the making of some coastal plains. Coastal plains may be made also by the degradation of plateaus or mountains.

Plate I represents a part of the narrow coastal plain of Oregon. Since illustrations of this sort are used repeatedly in the following pages, the principles on which it is based must be understood.

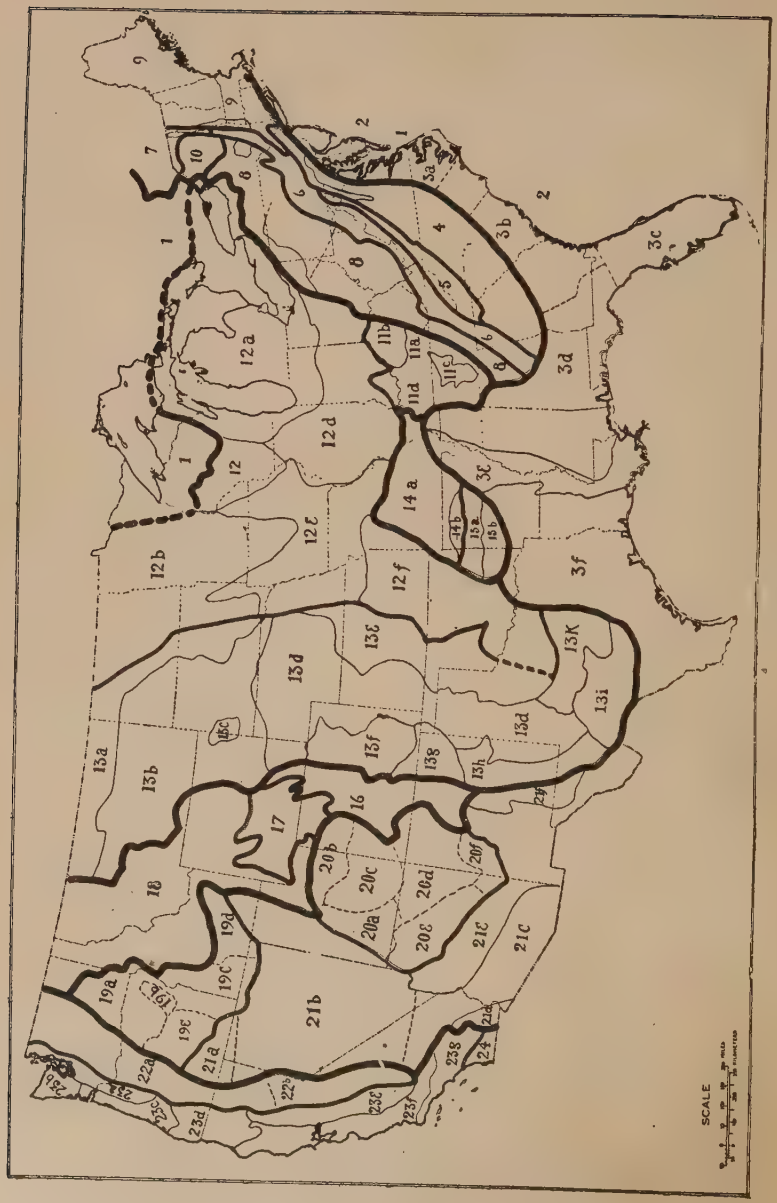


FIG. 15.

Physiographic divisions of the United States: Modified slightly from the map published in the Annals of the Association of American Geographers, Vol. VI., N. M. Fenneman, Chairman of Committee. The chief modifications consist in the expansion of the Interior highlands (14a) eastward to include the southern end of Illinois, and in the omission of a few minor subdivisions.

1, *Laurentian (Superior) upland. 2 and 3, Atlantic plain.* 2, *Continental shelf.* 3, *Atlantic coastal plain:* 3a, embayed section; 3b, sea island section; 3c, Floridian section; 3d, east Gulf coastal plain; 3e, Mississippi alluvial plain; 3f, west Gulf coastal plain. *4-10, Appalachian highlands:* 4, *Piedmont province.* 5, *Blue Ridge province.* 6, *Appalachian valley province,* including the Hudson valley. 7, *St. Lawrence valley.* 8, *The Appalachian plateaus.* Minor subdivisions indicated by broken lines. 9, New England province, subdivisions omitted. 10, Adirondack province. *11-13, Interior plains.* 11, *Interior low plateaus:* 11a, Highland rim plateau; 11b, Lexingtonplain; 11c, Nashville basin; 11d, Western section (unnamed). 12, *Central lowlands:* 12a, Eastern lake section; 12b, western lake section; 12c, western driftless section; 12d, till plains; 12e, dissected till plains; 12f, Osage plains. 13, *Great Plains province:* 13a, Missouri plateau, glaciated; 13b, Missouri plateau, unglaciated; 13c, Black Hills; 13d, high plains; 13e, border plains; 13f, Colorado piedmont; 13g, Raton section; 13h, Pecos valley; 13i, Edwards plateau; 13k, Texas hill section. *14 and 15, Interior highlands.* 14, *Ozark plateaus:* 14a, Springfield-Salem plateaus; 14b, Boston "Mountains." 15, *Ouachita province:* 15a, Arkansas valley; 15b, Ouachita mountains. *16-18, Rocky Mountain system.* 16, *Southern Rocky Mountains.* 17, *Wyoming basin.* 18, *Northern Rocky Mountains. 19-21, Intermontane plateaus.* 19, *Columbia plateaus,* various subdivisions. 20, *Colorado plateaus,* various subdivisions. 21, *Basin-and-range province,* various subdivisions. *22-24, Pacific mountain system.* 22, *Sierra-Cascade mountains:* 22a, *Cascades;* 22b, Sierra Nevada. 23, Pacific border province: 23a, Puget trough; 23b, Olympic Mountains, 23c, Oregon coast range; 23d, Klamath Mountains; 23e, California trough; 23f, California coast ranges; 23g, Los Angeles ranges. 24, *Lower Californian province.*

Explanation of Contour Map

"The features represented on the topographic map are of three distinct kinds: (1) inequalities of surface, called *relief*, as plains, plateaus, valleys, hills, and mountains; (2) distribution of water, called *drainage*, as streams, lakes, and swamps; (3) the works of man, called *culture*, as roads, railroads, boundaries, villages, and cities.

"**Relief.** All elevations are measured from mean sea-level. The heights of many points are accurately determined, and those which are most important are given on the map in figures. It is desirable, however, to give the elevation of all parts of the area mapped, to delineate the horizontal outline, or contour, of all slopes, and to indicate their grade or degree of steepness. This is done by lines connecting points of equal elevation above mean sea-level, the lines being drawn at regular vertical intervals. These lines are called *contours*, and the uniform vertical space between each two contours is called the *contour interval*. On the maps of the United States Geological Survey the contours and elevations are printed in brown (see Plate I).

"The manner in which contours express elevation, form, and grade is shown in the following sketch and corresponding contour map, Fig. 16.

"The sketch represents a river valley between two hills. In the foreground is the sea, with a bay which is partly closed by a hooked sand-bar. On each side of the valley is a terrace. From the terrace on the right a hill rises gradually, while from that on the left the ground ascends steeply in a precipice. Contrasted with this precipice is the gentle descent of the slope at the left. In the map each of these features is indicated, directly beneath its position in the sketch, by contours. The following explanation may make clearer the manner in which contours delineate elevation, form, and grade:

"1. A contour indicates approximately a certain height above sea-level. In this illustration the contour interval is 50 feet; therefore the contours are drawn at 50, 100, 150, 200 feet, and so on, above sea-level. Along the contour at 250 feet lie all points of the surface 250 feet above sea; and similarly with any other contour. In the space between any two contours are found all elevations above the lower and below the higher contour. Thus the contour at 150 feet falls just below the edge of the terrace, while that at 200 feet lies above the terrace; therefore all points on the terrace are shown to be more than 150 but less than 200 feet above sea. The summit of the higher hill is stated to be 670 feet above sea; accordingly the contour at 650 feet surrounds it. In this illustration nearly all the contours are numbered. Where this is not possible, certain contours—say every fifth one—are accentuated and numbered; the heights of others may then be ascertained by counting up or down from a numbered contour.

"2. Contours define the forms of slopes. Since contours are continuous horizontal lines conforming to the surface of the ground, they wind smoothly about smooth surfaces, recede into all reëntrant angles of ravines, and project in passing about prominences. The relations of contour curves and angles to forms of the landscape can be traced in the map and sketch.

"3. Contours show the approximate grade of any slope. The vertical space between two contours is the same, whether they lie along a cliff or on

a gentle slope; but to rise a given height on a gentle slope one must go farther along the surface than on a steep slope, and therefore contours are far apart on gentle slopes and near together on steep ones.

"For a flat or gently undulating country a small contour interval is used; for a steep or mountainous country a large interval is necessary. The smallest interval used on the atlas sheets of the Geological Survey is 5 feet. This is used for regions like the Mississippi delta and the Dismal Swamp. In

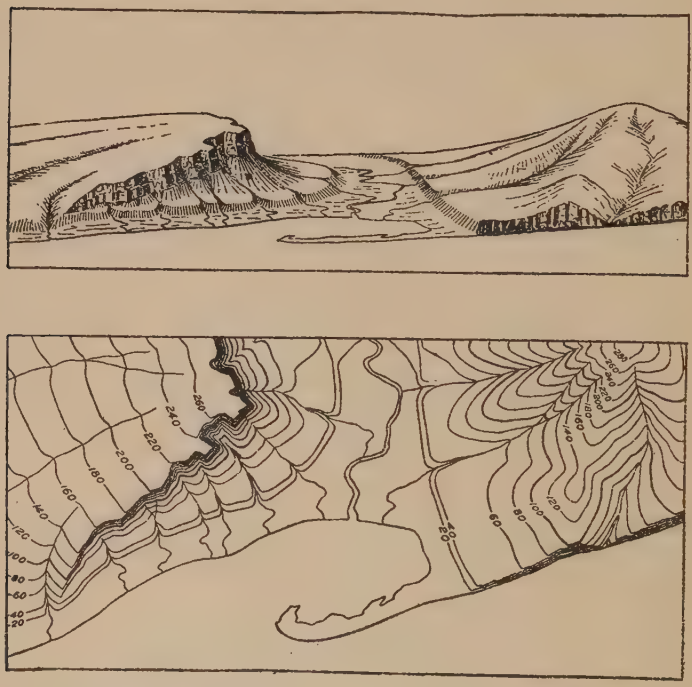
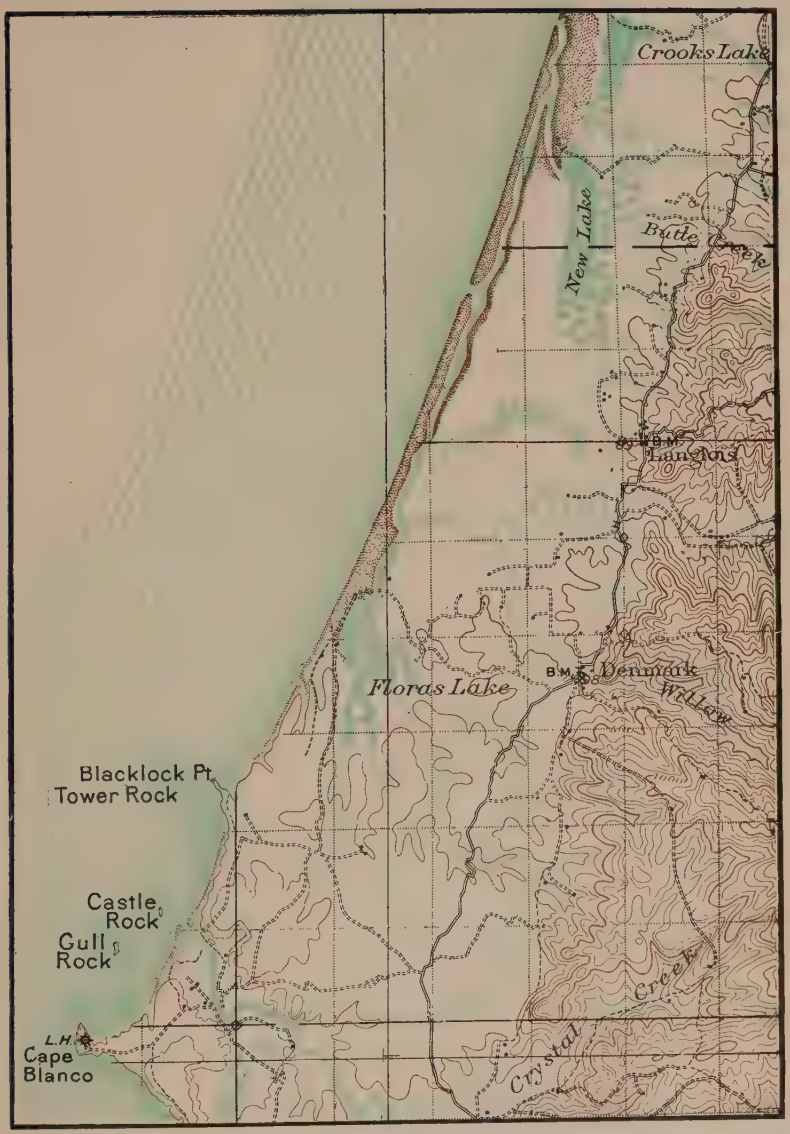


FIG. 16.—Sketch and map of the same area to illustrate the representation of topography by means of contour lines. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

mapping great mountain masses, like those in Colorado, the interval may be 250 feet. For intermediate relief contour intervals of 10, 20, 25, 50, and 100 feet are used.

"**Drainage.** Watercourses are indicated by blue lines. If a stream flows the year round the line is drawn unbroken, but if the channal is dry a part of the year the line is broken or dotted. Where a stream sinks and reappears at the surface, the supposed underground course is shown by a broken blue line. Lakes, marshes, and other bodies of water also are shown in blue, by appropriate conventional signs.



A narrow coastal plain in Oregon. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Port Orford Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

harder than those to the east. The landward margin of the Coastal Plain of the Gulf of Mexico west of Alabama is less well marked than that of the Atlantic border.

Such coastal plains as exist along the eastern side of North America north of New Jersey, and along the western coast of the continent, are narrow and discontinuous, and for considerable stretches are wanting altogether. Coastal plains are therefore to be looked upon as common, but not as universal, features of continental borders.

If the epicontinental seas were withdrawn from the submerged parts of the continental platforms, the coastal plains of the present land would be seen to be continuous, topographically, with the continental shelves. These submerged parts of the great continental protuberances of the lithosphere are therefore to be looked upon as *submerged coastal plains*. Many of the existing coastal plains of the land have emerged from the sea in very late stages of the earth's history. The submerged coastal plains are more nearly continuous about the continents than the coastal plains which are above sea-level.

Interior plains. Many of these plains are higher, and some of them much higher, than coastal plains. A large part of the great area between the Appalachian Mountains on the east, and the Rocky Mountains on the west, is an interior plain. *At the south* it is relatively low, and merges into the Coastal Plain bordering the Gulf. *At the north* this Interior Plain is much higher, attaining an elevation of more than 1000 feet; but its rise is so gradual that it nowhere ceases to have the general effect of a great lowland. *At the east*, also, it rises until the Appalachian Mountains are approached. Along the western border of these mountains there is a high area, about 1000 feet above sea-level, often known as the Cumberland, or Allegheny, Plateau (Fig. 15). This tract is called a plateau, rather than a part of the plain, not more because of its altitude than because it is in places somewhat distinctly set off from the lower area to the west. *To the west* the interior plain rises gradually, and without any conspicuous increase of slope, until it attains an altitude of several thousand feet. In spite of this very considerable elevation, far greater than that of the Cumberland Plateau, the area east of the Rocky Mountains is usually called the *Great Plains*. The western part of this region is perhaps more properly a plateau than a plain; but it is notably

lower than the mountains against which it abuts on the west, and between its higher parts next to the Rockies, and its lower parts, adjacent to the Mississippi, there is no abrupt change of slope. It is clearly a topographic unit. If the western part of this area be classed as plateau, the area affords a good illustration of the gradation of a plain into a plateau, for the line separating the plain-part from the plateau-part is an arbitrary one. Even if the higher western part of the Great Plains be regarded as plateau, it is still true that portions of the interior plain are higher than many areas which are called plateaus. Areas like the Great Plains are classed as *plains*, not primarily because of their altitude above sea-level, but because they do not stand conspicuously above their surroundings on any side.

The general topographic relations of the Great Plains are illustrated diagrammatically by Fig. 13. If the general slope of the area between the Rocky Mountains and the Mississippi River had been that of the dotted line shown in the middle of this figure, its western part would doubtless have been classed as a plateau, and the line of separation between plateau and plain would have been a natural one.

Here and there mountains, such as the Black Hills of South Dakota, the Ozark Mountains (plateau) of Missouri, and the Ouachita (pronounced Wash-i-ta) Mountains of Arkansas and Oklahoma, rise distinctly above the general level of this great Interior Plain. The Ozark and Ouachita Mountains do not attain an elevation equal to that of the western margin of the Great Plains, but the Ouachita Mountains at least are conspicuously above their immediate surroundings, and their summit areas are so limited that they cannot be regarded as a plateau. The Ozark tract, on the other hand, might better be called a plateau region than a mountain region. The Black Hills are higher than the Ouachita mountains or the Ozark plateau, and more distinctly set off from the plains. They are mountains, in spite of their name.

Interior plains have come into existence in various ways. Some of them are former coastal plains, now partially shut off from the sea by the development of highlands on their seaward borders. Some of them represent areas which were once high, but which have been worn down by the agents which degrade lands; others may have originated in other ways.

Topography of plains. The surfaces of plains are, on the whole, much less uneven than the surfaces of plateaus and mountains. The surfaces of plains may indeed be nearly flat, though

FIG. 17.—A plain with little relief. Valley plain of the Cimarron River, southwestern Kansas. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

more commonly they are somewhat uneven. The relief is in some cases slight, and in some considerable. In general, high plains are rougher than low ones. To this general statement there are,

FIG. 18.—A plain with notable relief. Iowa. (Calvin.)

however, local exceptions, for considerable areas of some high plains are nearly flat.

The unevennesses of surface differ in kind, as well as in amount. Thus in some plains, or in some parts of plains, all depressions

have outlets through which the surface water flows away, while in others numerous depressions have the form of basins which contain ponds and lakes. Plains of the former type are *well drained*, if the depressions are numerous, while those of the latter are *ill drained*. Well-drained areas (Pl. II) of plain prevail in the southern part of the United States, as south of the Ohio and the Missouri, while ill-drained areas (Pl. III) abound farther north. The topographic features of plains are relief features of the third order.

Extent and habitability. Plains constitute the larger part of the area of the land, and the larger part of the population of the earth lives upon them (Figs. 17 and 18). They are the principal theaters of human activity, partly because the climate is, on the whole, more favorable than in higher regions, and partly because there is a greater proportion of land which is nearly flat, or which has but gentle slopes. As compared with higher lands, a larger proportion of the surface of plains is arable, because (1) their flats and gentle slopes are more generally covered with soil than the steeper slopes of higher lands; and (2) a larger proportion of their surfaces is not too steep for cultivation. The larger part of the agriculture of the world is therefore on plains.

In 1900, the population of the United States was distributed as follows, with reference to altitude:[1]

Below	100 feet above sea level	about 15.9%
Between	100 and 500 feet	" 21.8%
"	500 " 1000 "	" 38.7%
"	1000 " 1500 "	" 14.7%
"	1500 " 2000 "	" 4.1%
"	2000 " 3000 "	" 2.1%
Above	3000 feet	2.7%

Plains also favor transportation and intercommunication, for (1) the construction of roads, railways, canals, etc., is vastly easier in plains than in higher and rougher regions, and (2) many streams in plains are navigable, and few of those in mountains and plateaus. For these reasons, and also because the larger part of the raw materials used in manufacturing is grown upon the plains, the larger part of the manufacturing of the world is on plains. It is noteworthy that the extensive plains most favored by climate

[1] 12th Census, Bull. No. 1, p. 10.

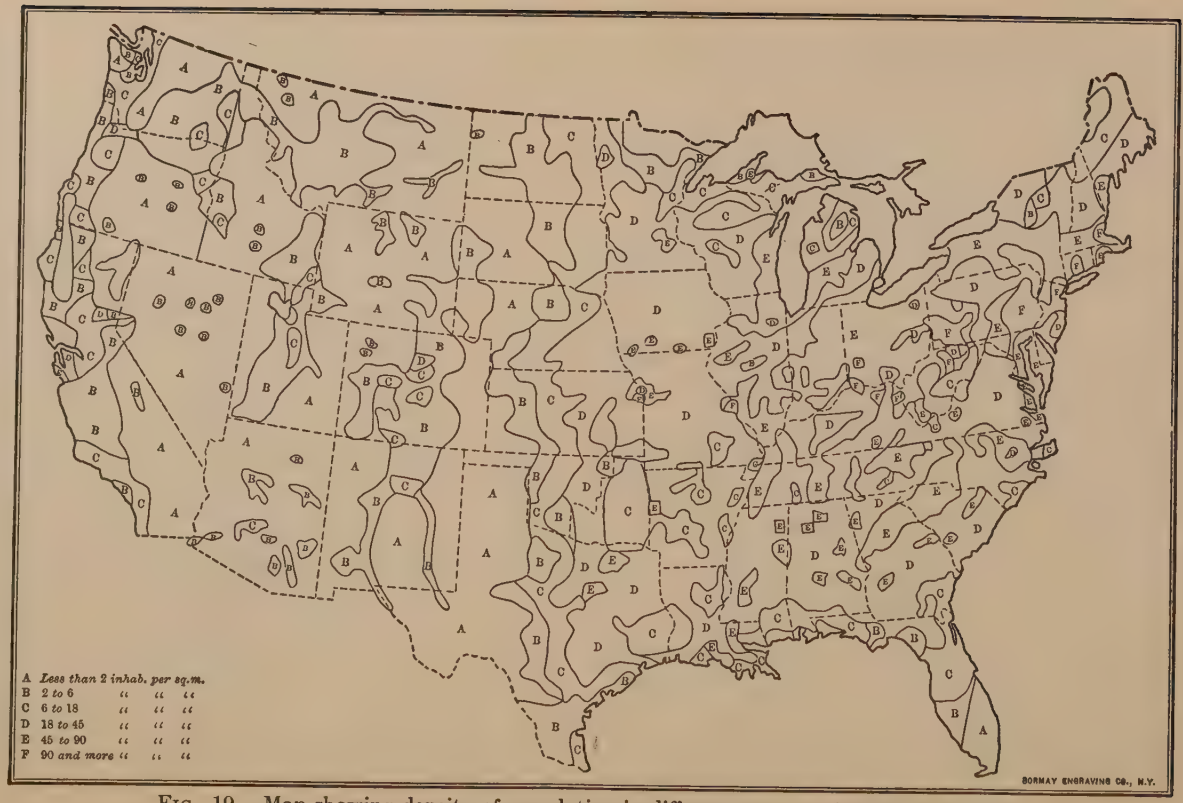


FIG. 19.—Map showing density of population in different parts of the United States.
(After Gannett. U. S. Census.)

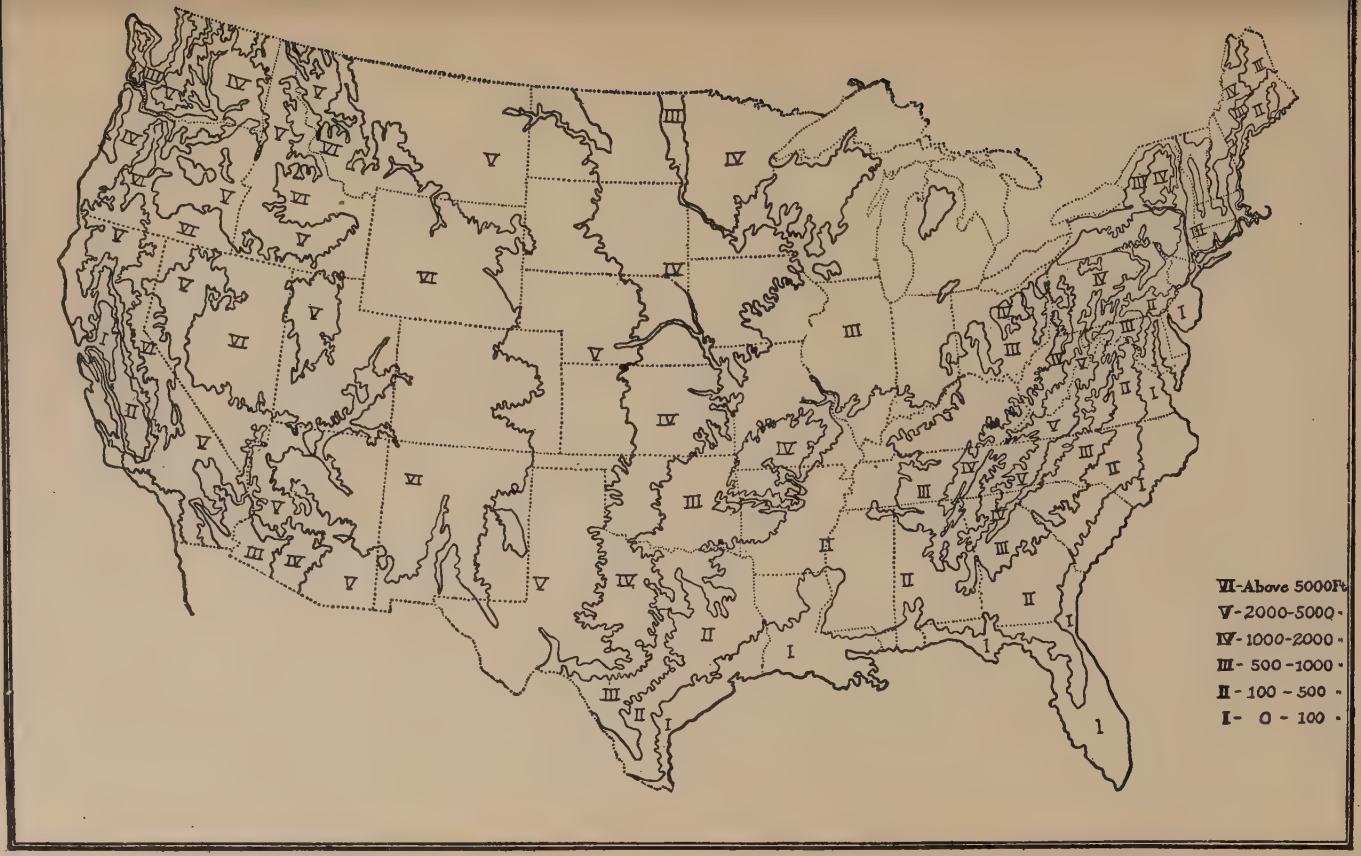


FIG. 20.—Relief-map of the United States.

and soil border the Atlantic Ocean, and, largely for this reason, the borders of this ocean have been the theatres of the world's culture and commerce.

Not all plains support an abundant population. Thus the northern parts of the great Eurasian and North American plains are too cold to be hospitable to varied industries or productions, and their populations are likely to remain small. Tropical plains have a climate which, up to the present time, has been thought disadvantageous.

Plateaus

Plateaus are tracts of land so situated as to appear high from at least one side, and which have, at the same time, considerable areas at or near their summit levels. Thus if a coastal plain rises gradually from the sea to a height of 200 feet, and then joins by a steep slope another tract of more or less level land which rises 100 or 200 feet higher (Fig. 4), the upper tract commonly would be called a plateau, not primarily because of its altitude above sea-level, but because of its distinct rise above the plain along one side of it. Traced landward, the low slope of the Atlantic Coastal Plain of the United States gives place to a steeper one at the Fall Line, and the tract above, beyond the Coastal Plain, is the *Piedmont Plateau*. The elevation of much of this plateau is, however, less than that of much of the great interior plain of the continent.

Though plateaus are on the whole higher than plains, it may be pointed out again that the distinction between them is not more one of elevation than of relations. A tract of land is rarely called a plateau unless it rises distinctly above adjacent land or adjacent water on one or more sides.

In spite of the broad distinction between plateaus and plains, these two great topographic types grade into each other so completely that it is hard to say in some cases whether a given region should be classed as the one or the other; and a tract which, in its surroundings, is a plateau, might in other surroundings be a plain. In many cases distinctions in nature are less sharp than we seem to make them by arbitrary (though necessary) definitions.

Position and area of plateaus. Some plateaus lie between mountains on the one hand and plains on the other, as in the case of the Piedmont and Cumberland plateaus already cited. They also lie between mountains, as the plateaus of Central Asia, Mexico, and the western part of the United States, and some of

them rise directly from the sea, as in the case of Greenland and parts of Africa (Fig. 22).

The aggregate area of plateaus is less than that of plains, though they constitute a very considerable fraction of the land.

Fig. 21.—Relief-map of the Northern Appalachians and their surroundings. (U. S. Geol. Surv).

Relief of plateaus. The surfaces of most plateaus have greater relief than the surfaces of plains, because the valleys are deeper. The plateau of the Colorado in northern Arizona has an elevation of about 7000 feet, and a relief of a mile or more, for the Colorado

River has a valley (canyon) of that depth (Figs. 24 and 25). From the bottom of this valley, its slopes look like mountains. They are indeed much higher and bolder than many mountains;

FIG. 22.—Section across Africa along the parallel of 10° S. Vertical scale exaggerated about fifty times.

but since there are great stretches of land about the canyon at about the elevation of the tops of these slopes, the area is a plateau. No plain has such great relief as this plateau.

Other features of plateaus. Except for the greater average relief of plateaus, their surfaces have much in common with the surfaces of plains. There are flat plateaus, broken plateaus, rolling plateaus, etc., and these topographic terms are in some cases

FIG. 23.—A valley (canyon) in a plateau. Snake River below the mouth of Rattlesnake Creek. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

applicable to different parts of the same plateau. There are plateaus which are well drained, and plateaus which are ill drained; there are plateaus which are relatively fertile, and plateaus which are essentially desert. The relief features of plateaus, like those of plains, are relief features of the third order.

The climate of plateaus, especially of high ones, is distinctly colder than that of plains in similar latitudes, and their precipita-

FIG. 24.—Sketch of a part of the Grand Canyon of the Colorado. A glimpse of the river is to be had at the left. (Holmes, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

tion is generally less. Except in low latitudes, they are too cold to be well adapted to human habitation, and their rainfall is likely to be insufficient for agriculture. Their deep valleys are barriers to transportation. For these and other reasons, high plateaus are, on the whole, less well adapted to human habitation than plains, and the population of most high plateaus is scanty. On the other

FIG. 25.—The Grand Canyon of the Colorado. The inner gorge in the foreground, and the more distant cliffs in the background. The canyon is about a mile deep. (Hull.)

hand, the altitude of low plateaus, such as the Piedmont and the Cumberland plateaus, is too slight to affect the climate adversely, and such plateaus may be as fertile as plains, so far as climate is concerned. Some plateaus in low latitudes have favorable temperatures, and may be so situated as to have an adequate supply of water, as illustrated by some parts of the plateau of Mexico.

Origin. Plateaus attain their height in various ways. (1) In some cases their surroundings probably sank away from them.

If, for example, the eastern half of the Great Plains was to sink a few hundred feet, while the western half did not, the latter would doubtess be called a plateau (Fig. 13). (2) Some plateaus may have attained their height by elevation above their surroundings, while still others (3) have been built up either from plains or from lower plateaus, by the outpouring of lavas. Such is the lava plateau of the northwestern part of the United States (Figs. 15 and 360).

The term plateau often is applied, and properly, to small areas which may owe their plateau character to other causes, such as isolation by the degradation of the surrounding surface. Such plateaus are topographic features of a lower order, and are not here considered.

Mountains

Mountains are *conspicuously high lands which have but slight summit areas.* Conspicuously high lands must be interpreted to mean lands which are conspicuously high in their surroundings,—not necessarily those which have great elevation, measured in feet or meters.

Though the tops of the highest mountains are between five and six miles above the level of the sea, most mountains have not half this height. The highest mountains are higher than any plateaus, but many mountains are not so high as the higher plateaus. Relatively few mountains, for example, reach the height of the Plateau of Tibet, 15,000 to 16,000 feet. Many elevations called mountains are not even so high above sea-level as the higher parts of the higher plains.

Mountains differ from plateaus of similar elevation in their slight extent of surface at the summit. In the case of mountain *peaks* this is indicated by the name. A mountain ridge or range may be long, but its crest is relatively narrow. The several ridges shown in Fig. 21 are examples. In many places numerous peaks or ranges are associated, making a mountain group (Fig. 26) or a mountain chain (Fig. 21); but even in great mountain groups there is no great continuous area of high land. Land 10,000 feet high would generally be called a *plateau* if its summit area were extensive, a mountain if its summit were a peak, a mountain ridge or range if its crest were a narrow ridge, or a mountain area, a mountain group, or a mountain system, if composed of a succession of peaks and ridges.

Considered in a large way, mountains are in contrast with plains and plateaus, and are the third of the three topographic types of the second order, as they appear on the lands of the earth.

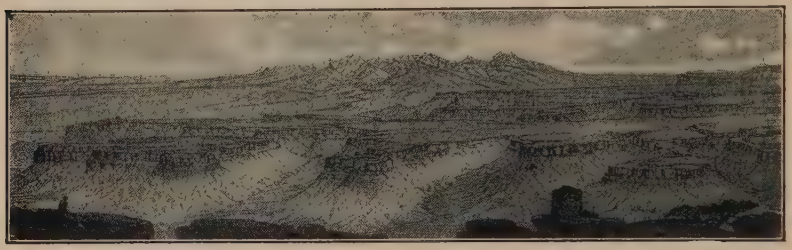


Fig. 26.—Sierra el Late Mountains, Colo., with dissected mesa in the foreground. (Holmes, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

High mountains are on the whole the most impressive and awe-inspiring features of the earth's surface. This is especially the case where they rise abruptly to great heights above their surroundings. In not a few cases they rise from low warm plains

Fig. 27.—The Needle Mountains of Colorado. An illustration of mountain topography. Taken from an elevation of about 10,700 feet. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

to such heights that their summits are covered continually with snow. Nowhere else are such contrasts of climate found in such close proximity.

In this grouping of mountains as the third great topographic features of the lands, it must be noted that only great groups or systems of mountains, such as the Appalachians, the Rockies, the Sierras, the Alps, the Caucasus, the Himalayas, the Andes, and others of comparable extent and magnitude are included. Since the term mountain is applied to any point or ridge of such steep slopes and so much above its surroundings as to be very conspicuous, if, at the same time, its summit area is so small that it is not a plateau, it follows that many elevations called mountains do not belong to the great physiographic type which is brought into contrast with plains and plateaus.

FIG. 28.—Mountain peaks near Lake Agnes, Canadian Pacific Railway. (Photograph by Church.)

FIG. 29.—Cascade Pass in the Cascade Mountains, Washington. An illustration of mountain topography. (Willis, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

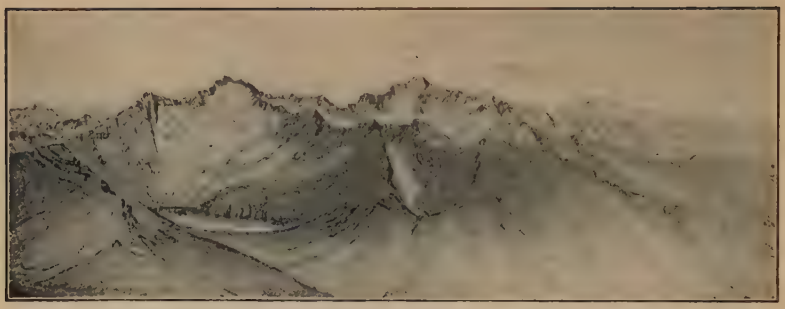
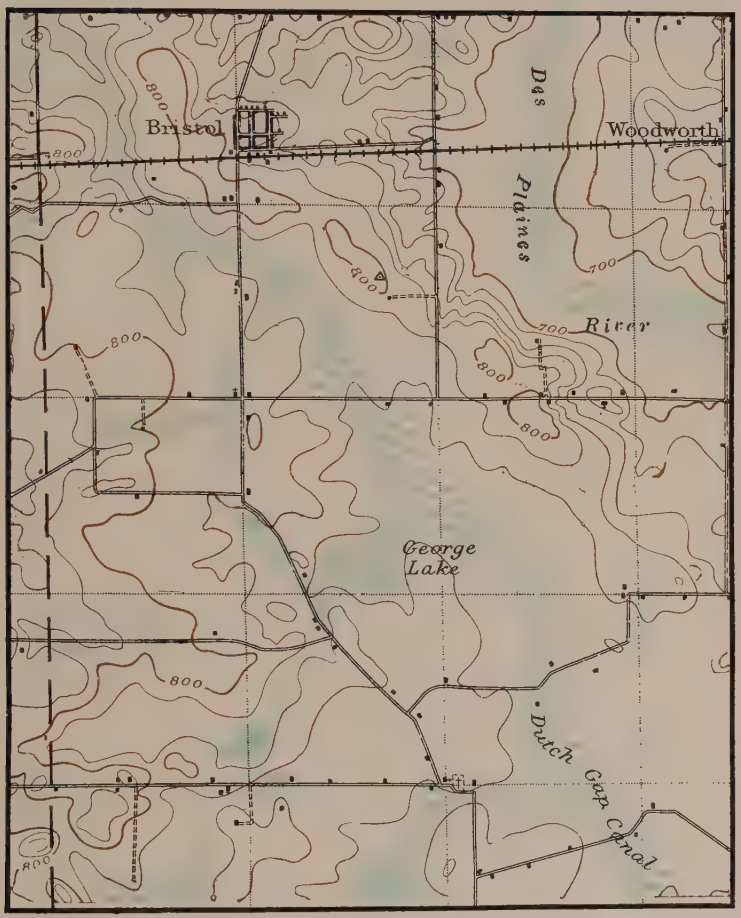


FIG. 30.—A portion of the Elk Mountains of Colorado. (Holmes, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 31.—Photograph of relief-model of Texas and surroundings. The area near the coast is a part of the Coastal Plain. Inland this plain gives place to a plateau tract, while at the north and west mountains rise above the plateau level. The valleys are deep, and the relief is greater in the mountains than in the plateau, and in the plateau greater than in the plain. (Hill.)



An ill-drained plain in Wisconsin. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Silver Lake Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE IV

FIG. 1.—The canyon of the Yellowstone River. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 200 feet. (Canyon, Wyo., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

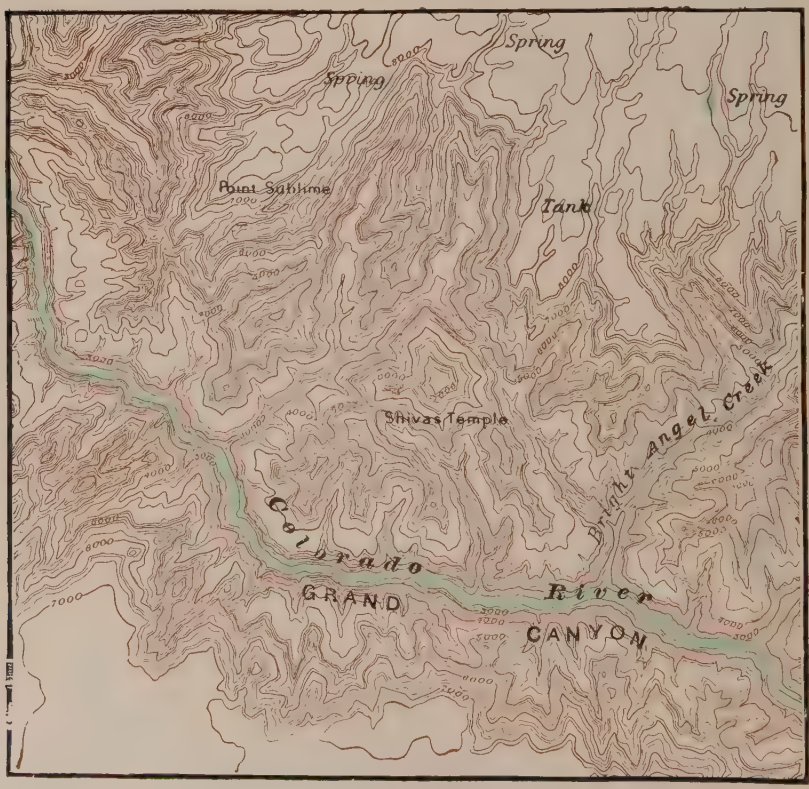


FIG. 2.—The Grand Canyon of the Colorado River. Scale 4— miles per inch. Contour interval 250 feet. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Mountains in history. Mountains always are more or less formidable barriers, and as such have played important rôles in history. They have sheltered nascent civilizations from invasion, and they determine the boundaries of many political states.

FIG. 32.—Topographic map of California. The State is largely mountainous, but the central plain is conspicuous. (Model by Drake.)

The mountains of western and southwestern Europe were an important factor in producing the many small political divisions of those sections, so in contrast with Russia. Mountainous highlands frequently have become a refuge for weak peoples, driven by their stronger enemies from more desirable lowlands. The rela-

tively inaccessible highlands of Scotland, Wales, and parts of India enabled their peoples to maintain their independence for long periods. The Appalachian Mountains confined the English settlements to the rim of the continent for nearly a century and a half, and influenced their life in many ways. Later, grave political dangers arose from the effectual isolation of the Ohio Valley settlements from the Atlantic seaboard.

The scant soils and low temperatures of most mountains inhibit agriculture, while the difficulties of communication help to restrict commerce and social intercourse. Poverty is, accordingly, the common lot of the mountaineer, save in certain mining and lumbering areas. Shut out from the progressive life of the plains, mountain peoples are proverbially conservative, maintaining old customs and habits, and supporting the established order of things. In the Civil War the Southern Appalachians became a zone of disaffection through the heart of the Confederacy, sending 100,000 men to the northern armies.

The most distinctive industry of the mountains is mining; yet many mountains have no ores or mineral matter of commercial value, while many ores and many mineral substances which are not ores are mined in plains and plateaus. This is true, for example, of most of the iron and coal now mined in the United States.

Origin. Mountains have originated in various ways. In their formation, the layers of rock of which many of them are composed were folded and crumpled, in some cases on a grand scale. Figs. 33–37 illustrate types of mountain structure common to the great ranges which belong to the topographic features of the second order.

Subordinate Topographic Features

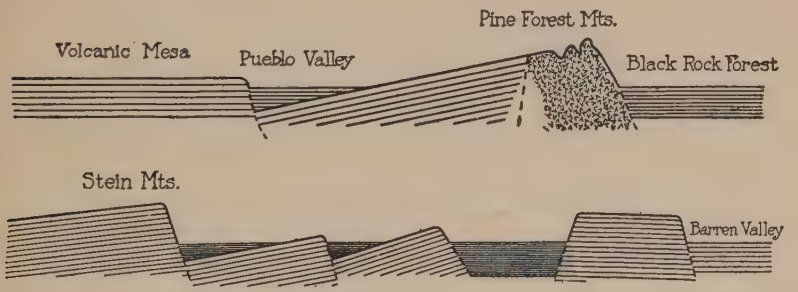
It has been noted already that the surfaces of many plains and plateaus are somewhat uneven, while the very name of mountain suggests roughness of surface. In many cases the degree of unevenness of surface is more or less closely related to altitude above sea-level, increasing roughness going with increasing altitude, though altitude is by no means the only factor which determines roughness and smoothness of surface. The minor unevennesses of surface which affect plains, plateaus, and mountains are *topographic features of the third order*. Some of these irregularities

of surface consist of elevations above the general level of their surroundings, and some of depressions below it. Thus on the plains there are *ridges* and *hills* above the general level, and *valleys* and in some cases *basins* (depressions without outlets) below it, while

Fig. 33.—Cross-section illustrating the structure of the Appalachian Mountains. (After Rogers.)

Fig. 34.—Section of the Alps from Saint Gothard South. (After Heim.)

Fig. 35.—Cross-section of the Elk Mountain Range, Colo. (Holmes, U. S. Geol. Surv.)



Figs. 36 and 37.—Faulted Mountain (Block Mountain) structure, Nevada. (Russell, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

flats may be interspersed among the uneven tracts. The elevations and the depressions are bordered by *slopes*, which, when steep, are *cliffs*. These subordinate features, ridges, hills, valleys, basins, flats, etc., affect plateaus as well as plains; but the corresponding features of plateaus are, as a rule, more pronounced, some of them so much more pronounced that they receive individual

names. Many of the same features, on a still larger scale affect mountains; but here many of the more or less isolated elevations, instead of being merely ridges or hills, are of mountainous size, and receive individual names. And so, as terms are now used, it is difficult to distinguish, *in words,* between mountains which are topographic features of the second order and mountains which are topographic features of a lower order, though in reality the distinction is clear enough. Thus the Appalachian Mountains are a topographic feature of the second order, but any minor ridge

Fig. 38.—Sketch of Abert Lake, Ore. The lake basin is the result of faulting. Compare Fig. 37. (Russell, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

or peak in the system, though still a mountain, is a feature of the third order, and is to be compared with the hills and buttes of plains and plateaus.

The depressions in the surface of plains or plateaus are of different sizes, shapes, and origins, and will be the object of future study. Similarly the hills and ridges of plains and plateaus, and the larger, mountain-big hills of mountainous regions, are of different sizes, shapes, and origins, and their history is intimately connected with the history of the lower lands with which they are associated. Slopes were developed when elevations and depressions were developed, and largely by the same means. The origin of the topographic features of the third order is in general well understood, for the processes which have developed them are still in operation, and their results in past times may be inferred with much confidence. These processes we shall study in some detail.

Land surface and ocean bottom. Were the water removed from the ocean basins, the surface of the ocean bed would appear much less uneven than the surface of the land. While its aggregate relief is a little greater than that of the land (p. 8), much larger tracts of it are nearly plane, and minor irregularities, such as hills and valleys with their accompanying slopes, the most widespread of the minor irregularities of the land, are of much less common occurrence, are, indeed, entirely absent from the larger part of the ocean's floor.

Why this difference between land and sea bottom? Without discussing this subject at this point, it may be noted that the atmosphere and running water, both of which are in almost constant motion, are always in contact with the surface of the land, while the atmosphere is excluded from the ocean bottom, and the water which covers it is practically motionless, except where the water is very shallow. It will be seen in the sequel that the differences in topography between land and sea bottom are due largely to the contact with air and running water in the one case, and with standing water in the other.

The Development of Minor Topographic Features

Since the minor topographic features of plains, plateaus, and mountains have been developed in similar ways, their origin and history may be considered independently of their association with one or another of these great physiographic divisions. The key to the history of topographic features of the third order is found in the changes which the surface of the land is now undergoing, or which it has undergone in such recent times that their records are still clear.

Changes taking place on land. Certain familiar changes are always taking place on land. Some of them are brought about by the atmosphere, some by water, some by ice, and some by the life of the earth. The same agencies produce, directly or indirectly, certain changes on the sea bottom, but the changes there are less important, and essentially different in their effects on topography.

1. The air is nearly always in motion, and whenever it blows over a surface on which there is dust, some of the dust is picked up and blown to some other place. Even sand, the particles of which are much larger than those of dust, is blown about in the same way. The wind is, therefore, one of the forces which is changing the surface of the land. The winds also help to distribute the

moisture of the atmosphere, and so influence the amount and the distribution of rain and snow. Though winds do not blow at the bottom of the sea, dust and sand blown from the land are dropped into the ocean and sink, and winds generate waves which work upon the shores of the seas, and affect their bottoms where the water is shallow. Winds therefore are not without their effects on the sea bottom, though these effects are slight compared with those on the land.

2. On both land and sea, rains and snows fall. The rain which falls on the land disappears in various ways, but a part of it runs off over the surface. When the snow of the land melts, some of the water follows the same course. Water flowing off over the land in streams is the most important single agent modifying its surface. Streams carry much sediment from land to sea, and its deposition has its effect on the sea bottom, especially near the land.

The rain- and snow-water which sinks beneath the surface of the land dissolves mineral matter, which appears in spring water and in well water. This solution of mineral matter beneath the land, and its transfer by water to the surface, and thence through streams to the sea, also helps to lower the land.

While the waters which fall on the land have an indirect effect on the bottom of the sea, those which fall on the sea itself have little influence on its bed. Precipitation, therefore, whether in the form of rain or snow, modifies the surface of the land notably, but has little influence on the ocean bottom, except near its borders, where most of the sediment from the land is left.

3. Great bodies of ice, called *glaciers*, move slowly over the surface of the land in some places, especially on high mountains and in high latitudes. Glaciers, which originate in fields of perennial snow, work notable changes on their beds. Some of them push out into the sea for short distances, but they never advance into deep water. At most they affect only the submerged edge of the continental platform.

Winds, streams, and glaciers all tend to develop unevennesses of surface on the land. Since this is the case, and since these agents are not in operation beneath the sea, we infer that they have had much to do with developing the differences between the topography of land and that of sea bottom.

4. The waves of the sea and of the many lakes which lie on the land are continually modifying the position and the outlines

of their shores. The changes thus effected are slight in short periods of time, but they have been very great in the course of the long ages of the earth's history. They change the outlines of the land rather than its relief, but they alter the relief of the sea or lake bottom near shore in an important way.

Winds, rivers, glaciers, and waves are *agents of gradation.* They *de*grade the surface at some points, and *ag*grade it (build it up) at others. In general they degrade the land more than they aggrade it, for much of the material moved by them finds its resting-place in the sea. Conversely, they aggrade the sea bottom more than they degrade it. Waves degrade it effectively only where the water is very shallow.

5. Still another series of changes in the surface is being brought about through the agency of life. Man, for example, grades down elevations, and grades up depressions, as along railroads. He makes dams across rivers, converting portions of them into ponds, or at the outlets of lakes, raising their levels; he raises and changes the banks of streams, modifying their natural courses and their natural work; he drains marshes and lakes, and, more important than all else, he clears (removes the forests) and tills the land, and in so doing destroys the native vegetation and stirs up the soil, thus preparing the way for the more effective action of wind and running water. Man's influence on the sea bottom is slight.

Plants and animals affect both land and sea bottom. Deposits due to organisms of one sort and another, especially those due to plants, are somewhat wide-spread in the marshes and shallow lakes of the land; but they are, on the whole, of little consequence compared with the deposits of shells, skeletons, and other solid matter made by marine animals on the sea bottom, more especially in shallow water. Organic agents are in some sense gradational, chiefly aggradational; but they belong to a category different from the inorganic gradational agents.

Various forms of life have a protective effect on the surface. This is especially true of vegetation on the land. Forests, and even prairie vegetation, greatly restrict the erosive work of wind and running water, and so decrease the rate of degradation which would otherwise obtain.

6. Volcanoes affect both land and sea bottom, and with approximate equality. Many volcanoes develop cones which rise to mountain heights, but the mountains to which they give rise are

topographic features of the third rather than the second order. The great *processes of vulcanism* — the movement of liquid rock from great depths up to or toward the surface — affect the surface both of land and sea bottom in other ways which will be mentioned later.

7. It is well known that the surface of the lithosphere seems to be rising in some places and sinking in others. This has been true in the past, for beds of sediment (sand, clay, etc.), containing sea-shells, etc., and therefore once beneath the sea, occur at levels high above it, and areas once land are now beneath the sea. Crustal movements are probably responsible in some measure for the ocean basins and continental platforms, and for plains, plateaus, and mountains, that is for *topographic features of both the first and second orders*. All sorts of crustal movements, of whatever nature, are grouped together under the name *diastrophism*.

The processes of gradation, vulcanism, and diastrophism will be taken up in order, but before entering upon the study of gradation, the materials on which the agents of gradation act must be reviewed.

The Materials of the Land

Most land is covered with vegetation. In some places it is dense enough to form a thick mat over the surface, while in others it is meagre, or even wanting. The surface well clothed with vegetation is the surface with which we are most familiar; but there are tracts of sand on which little or nothing grows, and cliffs where the rock is bare, save for scattered patches of moss or lichen. In the polar regions and on lofty mountains also, much land is covered by thick beds of snow on which there is no vegetation of the types with which we are familiar.

Mantle rock. Beneath the vegetation there is, in most regions, a layer of loose material, composed of clay, loam, sand, gravel, etc., of variable thickness. This layer of earthy matter may be a few inches in thickness, or it may be scores or even hundreds of feet deep. This loose material is *mantle rock*, because it covers and conceals the solid rock which lies below. It is also known by other names, among which are *rock waste* and *regolith*.

The uppermost part of the mantle rock commonly is called *soil*. In color the soil may be black, gray, brown, or even dull red or yellow. It may be either clayey and compact, or sandy

and porous. In most cases it is made up largely of small particles of mineral or rock. If a piece of any common sort of rock be put into a mortar and ground to powder, this powder will somewhat resemble soil. In general we cannot recognize the kinds of rock from which the mineral particles of the soil came, for most of them are very small. In addition to mineral matter, soil contains more or less partly decayed vegetable matter. Bits of roots may be seen in much of it, and sometimes fragments of decayed leaves. Both mineral and organic matter are necessary parts of a good soil, but their proportions vary within wide limits. The mineral matter is usually far in excess of the organic, but locally, as in bogs and marshes which have been drained, the organic matter is the more abundant. That part of the mantle rock which properly is called soil ranges from a few inches to a few feet in thickness.

The distribution and the prosperity of population often bear a very direct relation to the fertility of soil. The fertile "Blue Grass" region of Kentucky was the first extensive area to be settled in the Ohio basin; its inhabitants always have been progressive and well-to-do. Some of the hilly land to the east was occupied slowly by a sparse population, condemned by a poor soil to financial and intellectual poverty. The cotton and tobacco lands of the Coastal Plain, in a climate favorable for these crops, were partly responsible for the institution of slavery.

Where the mantle rock is thicker than the soil, the soil grades down into earthy matter of somewhat different composition, known as *subsoil*. Between the two there is commonly no distinct separation, but the subsoil is, as a rule, more compact than the soil, and its color is often different. Like the soil, it contains both mineral and organic matter, though the latter is less abundant than in the soil. Only the larger roots, and the roots of the larger plants, penetrate the subsoil in great numbers. The thickness of the subsoil is in most places much greater than that of the soil, but, on the other hand, it is absent altogether in some places.

Rock. Beneath the subsoil is *rock*. When a geologist speaks of rock, he does not necessarily mean solid rock, for sand, gravel, clay, etc., in large quantities and in the proper relations, are included under this term. The subsoil itself is a sort of rock. As commonly used, however, the term rock means solid rock, and beneath mantle rock, the larger part of the earth down to the lowest

accessible depths, and far beyond, is solid rock. It is probable indeed that the body of the earth is solid to the core.

FIG. 39.—Soil grading down into rock. Sandstone, south central Wisconsin. (MacNeille.)

In many places the mantle rock grades down into the solid rock in such a way as to show that the former was made by the de-

FIG. 40.—Section showing loose material (glacial drift) on solid rock. Des Moines County, Ia. (Ia. Geol. Surv.)

cay of the latter (Fig. 39). It is this fact which makes the name *rock waste* appropriate for mantle rock. Mantle rock of this sort is *local*. It is made up of materials derived from the rock

below. In other places the plane of separation between the subsoil and the solid rock below is distinct, with no suggestion of gradation (Fig. 40). In such cases the mantle rock in many places contains materials which could not have been derived from the rock below. They have been *transported* to their present position from some other source.

Classes of solid rock. The solid rocks of the earth are of many kinds. They differ from one another in color, in strength, in texture, in composition, in origin, etc.; but the common rocks may

FIG. 41.—Stratified rock. Trenton Limestone, Fort Snelling, Minn. (Calvin.)

be grouped into three great classes, namely, sedimentary rocks, igneous rocks, and metamorphic rocks.

1. *Sedimentary rocks.* These rocks were once sediments not unlike the muds, sands, and gravels now being deposited in rivers, lakes, and seas. They are generally arranged in layers or beds, varying from a few inches to several feet in thickness. Because of this structure they are called *stratified rocks.* The layers or strata are horizontal in many places (Fig. 41), but in others they are tilted or inclined at various angles.

Among the common forms of stratified rock are *conglomerate*, *sandstone*, and *shale.* Conglomerate is gravel, the pebbles and stones of which are cemented together. Similarly, sandstone is sand, the grains of which are cemented together, while shale is mud, the particles of which are so compacted or cemented that they cohere into a solid mass. Various sorts of mineral matter

serve as cement for sedimentary rocks. In general the cementing matter was deposited between the grains or particles of sediment, from water which held it in solution, and which at some time overlay, filled, or passed through the sediments. The stones of the gravel, the grains of the sand, and the tiny particles of the mud, were all derived from some older rock which was, in some way, broken to pieces. The destruction of one generation of rock therefore furnishes the material for another and younger generation.

Limestone is another common sort of stratified rock, but in this case the mineral matter which makes the rock was derived chiefly from the shells or other hard parts of animals which lived in the sea. It is not composed of pebbles, sand grains, or mud particles derived directly from the breaking up of older rock. Even the material of the limestone, however, came from older rock from which it was dissolved and taken in solution to the sea.

Great layers of gravel, sand, mud, shells, etc., are being formed in the ocean, in lakes, etc. We conclude, therefore, that conglomerate, sandstone, shale, and limestone were formerly beds of gravel, sand, mud, shells, etc., accumulated in similar situations. Since these materials, as now deposited, are arranged in nearly horizontal layers, it is inferred that a nearly horizontal position was the original position of the beds of sedimentary rock.

Stratified rocks are more wide-spread beneath the mantle rock than are rocks of the other classes. They are found even in very elevated mountain regions where the strata are tilted and folded in a very complicated way. Even in these high places many of them contain the shells or other relics of animals which once lived in the sea.

From these facts the following conclusions may be drawn: (1) The materials of which many of the rock formations of the land are composed were laid down beneath the sea; and (2) these deposits have been consolidated, many of them tilted out of their original positions, and some of them raised to great heights, since their formation. Such rocks contain parts of the record of the earth's history, and point to very notable changes in its surface.

2. *Igneous rocks.* From volcanoes, hot liquid rock frequently comes to the surface from unknown depths. This liquid rock is *lava.* Some of the lava which rises from within the earth stops before it reaches the surface, and cools where it stops, and becomes solid rock. All sorts of rock formed by the solidification of lava are known as *igneous rocks.* As a rule, they are not in distinct

beds or strata, and so are said to be *non-stratified* or *massive* (Fig. 42). Granite is one sort of igneous rock.

When igneous rocks decay, as all igneous rocks do, the decayed particles at the surface may be blown or washed away, and may

FIG. 42.—Massive rock. The Upper Yosemite Falls. Compare the structure of the rock with that shown in Fig. 41.

then accumulate as sediment in proper situations. Igneous rocks may therefore give rise to sedimentary rock.

3. *Metamorphic rocks.* This is the name given to the third class of rocks, rocks which have been altered notably from some previous condition. Either sedimentary rocks or igneous rocks may be changed into metamorphic rocks, especially through (1) the influence of great pressure, which alters the structure of the rock (Fig. 43); (2) the action of water, which, by dissolving out some parts and depositing new matter, changes the composition of the

rock; and (3) heat, which in some cases causes the mineral matter to crystallize anew in new forms. In these ways, both sedimentary rock and igneous rock may be changed greatly.

FIG. 43.—Metamorphic rock. (Ells. Can. Geol. Survey.)

All large bodies of rock are traversed by cracks or joints which break them up into larger or smaller masses. The joints may be vertical or inclined at any angle.

REFERENCES

The following globes, models, and charts are useful in the study of the topics discussed in this chapter:

1. The *Jones' Relief globe*, known as "*The Model of the Earth*": Chicago.
2. *Howell's models of the United States, North America, South America, Eurasia, Africa,* and *Australia:* Washington, D. C.
3. *Coast Survey Charts.* The illustrated catalog of these charts may be had of the U. S. Coast and Geodetic Survey, Washington, D. C., and from it charts may be selected intelligently.

CHAPTER II

THE WORK OF THE ATMOSPHERE

The atmosphere is in direct contact with the surface of the land, and penetrates the soil and rock beneath to considerable depths. Its effects on the soil and rock are many and varied, and only a few of the more important ones will be noticed here. Some of them are brought about by the movements of the air, some by the chemical activity of its elements, and some are conditioned by the air, rather than accomplished by it.

Mechanical Work — The Work of the Wind

Dust

Universality. The atmosphere is never free from dust. On windy days in dry regions the amount of dust in the air is so great that it may be seen readily. Even when the air seems perfectly still, dust is present. This might be inferred from the fact that even on still days dust settles in houses and in enclosures of all sorts, and it may be seen directly by allowing light to enter a darkened room through a narrow crack or a small hole. In the light thus entering, myriads of dust-motes may be seen. Dust extends high up in the atmosphere, for it is found in abundance in the air over even the highest mountains. It is carried far from its sources, for it often falls at sea many miles from land, and it occasionally settles on the decks of vessels, even in mid-ocean.

The universality of dust in the atmosphere may be shown in another way. If rain-water which has just fallen be evaporated, a slight amount of sediment remains. This sediment represents the dust which was brought down by the falling drops. Similarly, if fresh-fallen snow be melted and evaporated, there is a residue of dust. This is the case even if the snow be taken from mountain tops, or from such a place as Greenland, far from the cultivated lands and streets which furnish much of the dust in regions which are thickly settled. Since all rains and snows bring down dust, we infer that dust is everywhere present in the atmosphere.

Sources of dust. All the small particles of solid matter held in suspension in the atmosphere are called dust. Fine particles of earthy matter caught up from the surface of the land are most abundant, but the solid particles of smoke, the pollen of flowering plants, the spores of plants which, like the puffball, do not blossom, and minute organisms of other sorts are also abundant in the dust of the air. Fine particles of rock blown out of volcanoes are abundant in the vicinity of many active volcanoes, and a trifling amount of dust reaches the earth from extra-terrestrial sources.

On windy days quantities of dust are gathered from streets and plowed fields, and from any dry land surface which is not covered with vegetation. Where the surface is very dry, as in desert regions, and the wind strong, "clouds" or "whirls" of dust are sometimes swept up by the rising currents of air, and are seen for miles. From surfaces densely covered with vegetation the air gets little dust, except pollen. Little or none is gathered from surfaces which are wet, or from surfaces covered with snow or ice.

Volcanic dust. Volcanoes whose eruptions are explosive often send quantities of mineral matter, broken up into fine particles, high into the air. This is *volcanic dust*, or *volcanic "ash."* The latter name is not a good one, because the dust is not the product of burning. It is lava, blown into tiny bits by explosion (Fig. 44). The force of explosion is sometimes so great that the dust is sent up high into the air, and once in that position it is blown hither and thither by the winds, in some cases being carried great distances.

Fig. 44.—Particles of volcanic dust, greatly magnified.

In August of 1883 a violent volcanic eruption took place on the island of Krakatoa, between Java and Sumatra. Half the island was blown away, and enormous quantities of dust were shot up to great heights. The course of this dust in the air was traced, roughly, by means of its effects upon the coloring of sunsets. In this way it was estimated to have been blown completely around the earth in about fifteen days. Most of the dust went around the earth in latitudes near the equator, but from this low latitude it spread notably toward the poles. It has been

estimated that some of the dust was still in the air three years after the eruption, and that some of it went several times around the earth before settling. It is probable that the dust from this single volcanic eruption found its way to nearly all parts of the earth. This example may serve to illustrate the extent to which dust is carried in the upper part of the air, and the length of time it may be held in suspension. Dust in the lower part of the air is

FIG. 45.—Thick layer of volcanic dust (5 or 6 feet) on the Richmond estate, Island of St. Vincent, five miles from the crater of the Soufrière. After the eruption of 1902. (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

not usually held so long or carried so far, partly because the winds are less strong, and partly because the dust encounters all sorts of obstacles, such as hills, trees, etc., against which it lodges. Large quantities of dust were ejected from the Soufrière and from Pelée, in the West Indies, in the eruptions of 1902 (Fig. 45).

Loess. In some parts of China, in parts of Europe, and over considerable areas in the Mississippi basin there are considerable thicknesses of a distinctive earthy material, the particles of which are smaller than sand grains, but larger than the particles of clay. It is known as *loess*, and much of it, at least, was deposited by the wind. From the flood plains of such rivers as the Missouri, clouds

LIBRARY
27311

of dust are swept up and out over the adjacent high lands at the present time, whenever the surface of the flood plain is dry and

FIG. 46.—Bluff of loess at Kansas City. The cliff was developed by erosion after the loess was deposited. (Mo. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 47.—Cliff of loess near Huang-tu-Chai in northern Shan-si. (Willis, Carnegie Institution.)

the wind strong. This dust is very like loess, if, indeed, it be not loess. After erosion has developed cliffs in loess, they stand with steep or vertical faces (Figs. 46-50) for long periods of time. In

FIG. 48.—A bluff of loess in China on which a temple stands. (Willis, Carnegie Institution.)

FIG. 49.—Façade of a group of buildings in a bluff of loess, Province of Shan-si, China. (Richthofen.)

China the loess is said to be several hundred feet thick locally, but in the Mississippi basin it has a thickness of more than 30 to 50 feet in but few places. In parts of China the people have excavated houses in successive tiers along the faces of the soft though steep slopes of the loess (Fig. 49).

How dust is held in the air. Though made up largely of mineral matter which is much heavier than air, dust is kept in suspension,

FIG. 50.—Slopes of loess in China, terraced by man for agricultural purposes. (Willis, Carnegie Institution.)

first, because the particles are so small that their surfaces are large in proportion to their masses, so that the friction involved in their descent through the air is great; and second, because there are numerous upward currents in the atmosphere, and these rising currents carry particles of dust upward in spite of gravity, which is always tending to bring them down. As a matter of fact, the dust of the atmosphere always is settling somewhere, and the supply is being renewed constantly.

Distribution. In view of what is known concerning the movements of dust in the air, it would probably involve little exaggeration to say that every square mile of the earth's surface may have received dust from every other square mile which is capable

of furnishing dust to the atmosphere. Much dust falls into the ocean, or into other bodies of water, where it is safe from further disturbance by winds; but that which lodges on land may be picked up and blown about again and again.

Gradational effect of winds. Since dust is being blown constantly from land to sea, and since the sea is making no commensurate return to the land, the shifting of dust by the wind tends, on the whole, to lower the land and to build up the sea bottom. Locally, however, the wind-deposited dust aggrades the land.

Sand

Sources of sand. Even gentle winds pick up and carry dust; strong ones pick up and carry grains of sand, and even tiny pebbles. Like the finer material, sand is blown about only when it is dry. Abundant sand is found along many shores of seas and lakes, along the bottoms of some valleys, in desert regions, and in some other

FIG. 51.—A ripple-marked sand dune in the foreground. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

situations. In most of these places it is dry at times, and in some of them it is dry most of the time.

Lodgment of wind-blown sand. Sand grains are not often carried up to such great heights as particles of dust, nor do they remain so long in the air. Because of their greater mass, they fall more promptly when the velocity of the wind is checked.

Because they are carried chiefly in the lower part of the atmosphere, they are much more likely than dust to be stopped by obstacles on the surface of the land. Thus every tree, log, stump, building and fence, and every mound and hill against which sand is blown, is likely to cause some of it to lodge, just as they are likely to cause wind-blown snow to lodge. It follows that sand, instead of being somewhat evenly distributed, as dust is, is likely to accumulate in mounds and ridges, which begin their growth about almost any sort of obstacle on the surface.

Dunes.[1] Mounds and ridges of wind-blown or eolian sand are *dunes* (Fig. 51). Once started, a dune becomes an obstacle to blowing sand, and the lodgment of more sand causes the dune to grow. In this way, mounds and ridges of sand, scores and even hundreds of feet high, are built up by the wind. Small dunes are much more numerous than large ones.

Distribution of dunes. Dunes are found principally near the sources of abundant sand. Thus they are common along the Atlantic Coast of the United States south of New York. The sand here is washed up on the beach by waves, and when dry it may become the prey of the wind. Winds from the west blow the sand into the sea; those from other directions, but especially from the east, drift it up onto the land, making dunes. Dunes abound along the eastern side of Lake Michigan, and some of them are very large; but they are essentially absent from the west shore of the lake. This is because both the prevailing and the strongest winds are from the west. Dunes also are more common on the leeward than on the windward sides of valleys. Thus where westerly winds prevail, dunes are more common on the east sides of valleys than on the west sides. They are on the whole more common on the south than on the north sides of valleys, because the storm winds of winter are from the north of west, rather than from the south of west. Dunes abound over tracts thousands of square miles in extent in the semi-arid tracts of the Great Plains, as in western Nebraska and western Kansas. The dune area between the Arkansas River and the Cimarron was the most difficult portion of the famous Santa Fé trail. There are dunes of great size also in the west-central part of Wyoming. They reach their greatest development in still more arid regions, such as the Sahara.

[1] See Geog. Jour. Apr., '10, p. 379.

Locally dunes are the most conspicuous feature of the surface. They are, on the whole, more common on plains and low plateaus than in mountains.

Configuration of dunes. The shapes of dunes vary widely. If they have the shape of mounds, they may be round or oval, but some are very irregular in outline. Dune ridges may be short or long, straight or curved. In general the leeward slope is steeper

FIG. 52.—A group of dunes at the head of Lake Michigan. Dune Park, Ind. (Meyers.)

than the windward. The shape of the same dune, however, shifts from time to time. When dunes are in process of destruction by the wind, their forms are likely to be very irregular (Fig. 53). In some cases this is because the vegetation growing on them holds the sand in which it is rooted.

Associated with many dunes there are depressions (Pl. V). Some of them have outlets, while others have none. Some of these depressions were scooped out by the wind, and some of them were enclosed by the building up of dunes about them.

Destructiveness of eolian sand. The piling up of sand into dunes does great damage in some places. Narrow tracts of arable land along seacoasts have been made desolate by the development of dunes. Even forests of large trees are buried beneath them (Fig. 54). Some sorts of trees make heroic efforts to maintain their life against the burying sands by throwing out roots

far above their original bases. In this way some of them survive until they are nearly covered. Occasionally sand buries abandoned

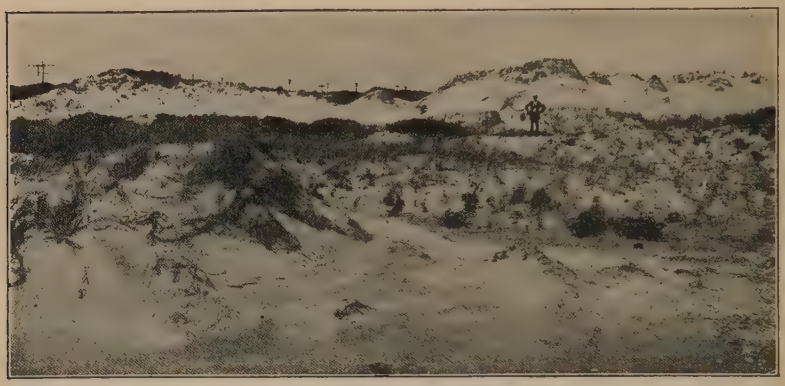


FIG. 53.—Dunes at Longport, coast of New Jersey, showing the irregular forms developed by winds which erode.

buildings, but it rarely accumulates so rapidly about a building that it may not be kept away by human effort. Drifting sand may be the occasion of much trouble along railways. Many

FIG. 54.—Lee side of a sand dune, Cape Henry, Va. The dune is advancing on a forest and burying the trees. (Hitchcock.)

caravans have been destroyed in the African desert by sand storms, and an army of Cambyses numbering 50,000 is said to have been overwhelmed and buried.

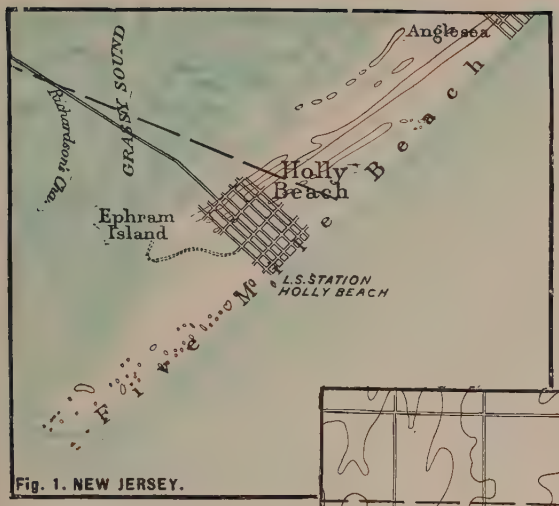


FIG. 1.—Dunes on coast of New Jersey. Scale 1+ miles per inch. Contour interval 10 feet. (Cape May Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

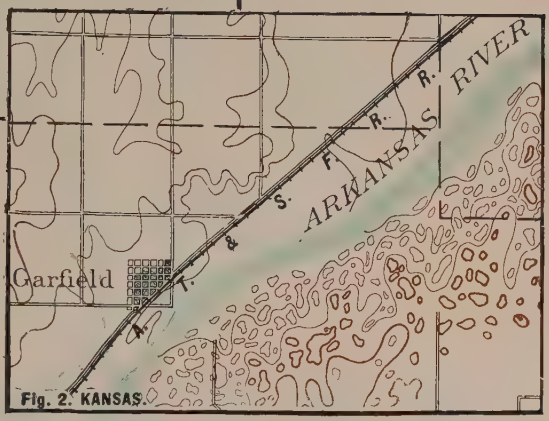


FIG. 2.—Dunes along Arkansas River in Kansas. Scale 2+ miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Larned Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

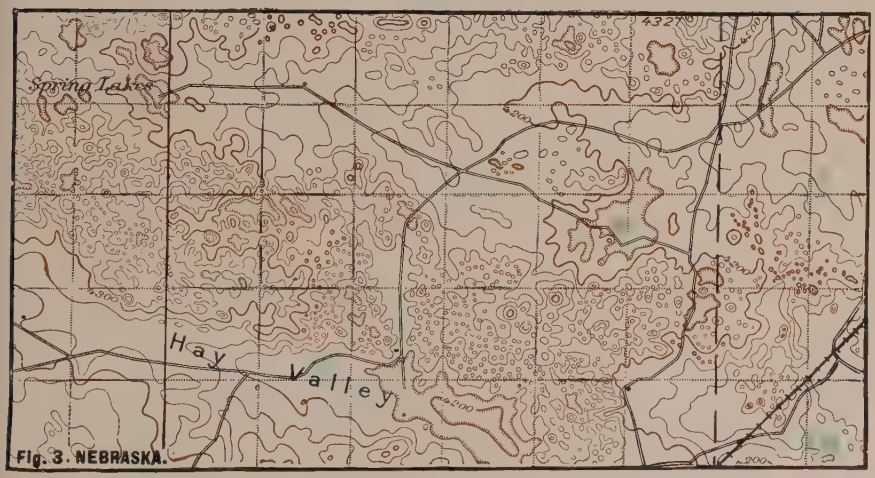
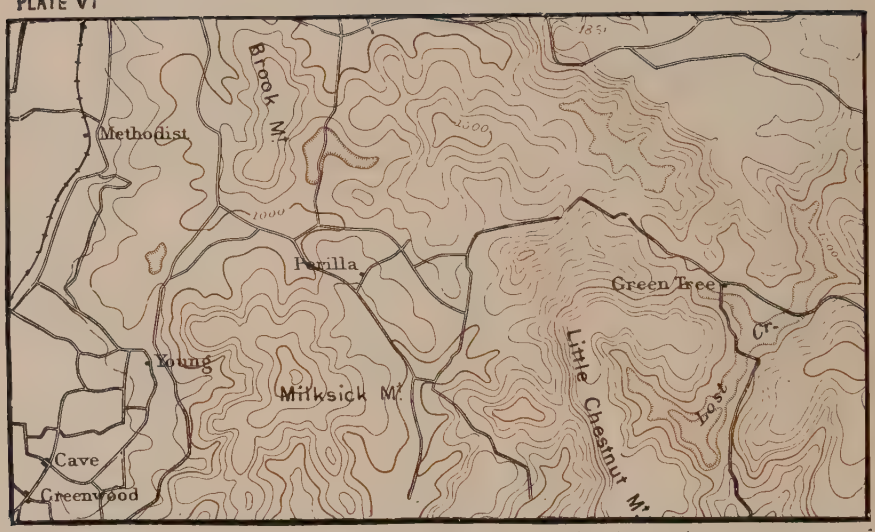


FIG. 3.—Dunes in plains of Nebraska. Scale 2+ miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Camp Clarke Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE VI



Limestone sinks due to solution by ground-water. The depression contours are hachured. Scale 2+ miles per inch. Contour interval 100 feet. (Pikeville, Tenn., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Migration of dunes. Many dunes are migratory. Sand is blown from their windward sides and dropped on the leeward sides. The continued shifting of sand from the windward to the leeward side causes the slow movement of the dune in the direction of the prevalent winds. The migration of dunes, like their first development, often works destruction to cultivated lands, to forests, to buildings, etc.

Some idea of the extent to which dunes migrate may be gained both from natural phenomena and from historic records.

FIG. 55.—Sand dune showing the effect of a building on the disposition of the sand. The wind reflected from the building keeps sand from accumulating against it. Manistee, Mich. (Hitchcock.)

Thus when dunes which have buried forests move on, the forests which were buried and killed are again discovered. This is illustrated by Fig. 56. The movement of the dune sand may discover other things also. At one locality on the coast of North Carolina a sand area was utilized for a cemetery. The wind has now blown the sand away to such an extent as to expose the bones of the buried bodies (Fig. 57).

Recent discoveries indicate that "there are hundreds, perhaps thousands, of square miles of buried towns and cities"[1] in Central Asia. At least a part of these cities have been buried by migrating dunes.

[1] Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XVI, 1905, p. 499.

So disastrous is the migration of dunes along some coasts that steps are taken to prevent their movement. If a dune becomes clothed with vegetation, its position is not likely to be

FIG. 56.—A resurrected forest. After burying and killing the forest, the sand was blown away, exposing the dead trees. Head of Lake Michigan. (Meyers.)

changed so long as the vegetation remains, for the plants have the effect of pinning the sand down. Trees, shrubs, etc., adapted to

FIG. 57.—Migration of dune sand, exposing bones in a cemetery. Hatteras Island, N. C. (Cobb.)

such situations are sometimes planted in the sand to prevent its further drifting (Fig. 58). This is done at various points along the western coast of Europe, where land is valuable. It has been

done to some extent in our own country, as at San Francisco, where shrubs have been planted on the coastal slope to prevent the sand of the shore from blowing over the Golden Gate Park. Between 1826 and 1838 the Government spent $28,000 to fasten the dune sands on the harbor shores of Provincetown, Mass. Even in such cases, however, additional sand may be deposited on the plant-covered dune.

Not all eolian sand in dunes. Eolian sand is not all built up into dunes. Some of it is spread somewhat evenly over the

FIG. 58.—Dune sand held by brush fences on the Kurische Nehrung, North Germany.

surface where it lodges. Eolian sand probably is much more wide-spread than dunes are.

Ripple-marks. The surface of some wind-blown sand is marked by pronounced ripple-marks (Fig. 51), very like those which affect the surface of sand deposited beneath water.

Gradational effects. Much sand is blown from the land into the sea; but the waves wash some of the sand up on the beach again. The one process reduces the volume of the land, while the other increases it. The relative importance of these two processes is not known. On the whole, the degradation effected by the blowing of sand exceeds the aggradation effected by its deposition, so far as the land is concerned. The aggradational effects are, however, very conspicuous locally.

The amount of dust and sand shifted about on the land, or from the land to the sea by the wind, is very great. It has been estimated that in violent dust-storms the amount of dust and

sand in the air may amount to as much as 126,000 tons per cubic mile of air. The average amount of dust in the air, however, is

FIG. 59.—A phase of wind-carving on sandstone. Wyoming. (Bastin.)

FIG. 60.—Erosion Columns in Monument Park, Colo.; partly the product of wind erosion. (Fairbanks.)

probably but a very small fraction of one per cent of this amount. If we knew how many tons of sand and dust were blown from the land to the sea each day, the figures would doubtless be most impressive, but the amount has never been determined.

Abrasion by the wind. Sand and dust blown against a surface of rock have the effect of a sand-blast, and wear away even hard rock. If the surface against which sand is driven is of unequal hardness, the softer parts are worn more rapidly than the harder. In regions where abundant sand is driven by the wind, projecting rocks are often carved into fantastic forms. Abrasion by wind-driven sand is of little consequence in a plain country where the climate is moist, and where little bare rock is exposed; but it is of much consequence in semi-arid regions where the topography is rough, and where hills and points of bare rock are numerous. Wind-driven dust is much less efficient than sand in the wear of rock surfaces.

Chemical Work of the Constituents of the Air

One of the principal constituents of the atmosphere is oxygen, and oxygen is a substance which is chemically active, especially in the presence of moisture. This is seen when a piece of steel, such as a knife-blade, is exposed to the air. It *rusts* promptly. This means that both oxygen from the air, and water, have entered into combination with the iron, and the iron-rust contains all three substances, united into one. It is a matter of common knowledge that the iron-rust scales off, and that a knife-blade will soon be " eaten away " by this process, that is, converted entirely into rust. When oxygen unites with iron the iron is said to be *oxidized*. If water enters into combination at the same time, as it does when iron rusts, the iron oxide is said to be *hydrated*. Iron-rust is therefore the *hydrated oxide of iron*. The amount (weight) of oxygen and water in iron-rust is greater than the weight of the iron.

Similar changes go on in rocks. Iron, in some combination or other, is abundant in some rocks, and the iron in rocks is subject to changes similar to those suffered by the knife-blade; and in the rocks, as in the knife-blade, the oxidation of the iron generally leads to the crumbling of the rock of which it is a constituent. Other substances in the rocks also are oxidized and hydrated, and in many cases this causes the rock to crumble.

Other constituents of the atmosphere also are active in changing some of the minerals of the common rocks. This is the case, for example, with the *carbon dioxide* (CO_2) of the atmosphere which enters into combination with certain constituents of the rock. The union of carbon dioxide with constituents of the rock is known as *carbonation*. Like oxidation, carbonation commonly results in the crumbling of the rock affected.

Weathering. All changes which, like oxidation and carbonation, lead to the breaking up of the rock are phases of the general process of *weathering*, which includes most of the natural, unobtrusive processes by which rock at or near the surface is caused to crumble. The processes of weathering are very important. Much of the soil and subsoil (mantle rock) of the earth have been produced by them. Furthermore, the weathering of rock is a necessary preparation for its ready transportation by wind and water.

Changes Brought About under the Influence of the Air

The surface of the land is subject to great changes of temperature, and these changes are of importance in its physiography. The effects of temperature-changes on the rocks of the earth are much more obvious in some regions than in others; but, directly or indirectly, they are of importance everywhere.

Freezing and thawing. In many regions where the surface is well covered with soil, the soil freezes in winter; that is, the water in the soil freezes, so that the soil becomes solid. While the soil is frozen it cannot be blown or washed away. In low temperatures, too, the precipitation falls as snow instead of rain, and snow does not immediately have the same effect as rain on the land. When it is melted, the water runs over the surface much as rain-water would; but if the soil beneath the melted snow is frozen, the effect of the running water is relatively slight.

Where the soil is thin or absent, the waters which sink beneath the surface may freeze in the cracks of the rock below. Since water expands about one-tenth of its volume on freezing, the ice which forms in the cracks (joints) of the rock when they are nearly full of water, acts like a wedge, widening the cracks and forcing the parts of the rock asunder. The effect is illustrated by the frequent breaking of bottles or other vessels in which water is allowed to freeze. This process of rock-breaking is most important where

there is abundant moisture, and where the changes of temperature above and below the freezing-point of water are frequent, that is in middle latitudes, or in altitudes which have the temperatures of middle latitudes.

Expansion and contraction of rock; rock-breaking. Where solid rock has little or no covering of loose material, as is the case on many steep slopes and in some other places, it is heated by day and cooled by night. At high altitudes, and especially on slopes and cliffs exposed to the noonday sun, the daily changes of temperature of the surface of the rock are great. In such places the surface of the rock may become very warm while the sun shines. Since rock is a poor conductor of heat, its surface only is

Fig. 61.—A cement walk broken under expansion by sun-heat.

heated notably. Heat expands rock, and as the heated part expands it is likely to scale off from the cooler, unexpanded or less expanded part beneath. As the sun descends, the surface cools and contracts. The outermost film of rock cools first and most, and tends to break. The breaking of cool glass by touching it with hot water, or of hot glass by touching it with cold water, involves the same principle.

The breaking of rock by heating and cooling, even when ice is not formed, is a very common phenomenon. Thus on hot days in summer, blocks of cement in cement walks have been known to expand so much as to break (Fig. 61). The heat of the sun sometimes so expands the rock in the floor of a rock quarry that it is similarly bowed up and broken. This has been seen repeatedly in the limestone quarries about Chicago, and on the floor of the Drainage Canal before the water was turned in. Many bowlders which lie on the surface are seen to be "shelling off" (Fig. 62), and the same process is sometimes seen on mountain tops (Fig. 63). In high mountain regions where the changes of temperature of the rock are great and sudden, the exposed rock is, as a rule, much broken. So far has this gone that the surface of many a sharp

mountain peak is covered with cracked and broken rock, so insecure that a touch or a step will loosen many pieces and start them down the mountain (Fig. 64). Quantities of such debris (called *talus*) bury the bases of many of the western mountains many hundreds of feet (Fig. 65). The pieces of talus range in size from tiny bits up to masses tons in weight.

Fig. 62.—Concentric weathering or exfoliation of bowlder. Eastern California. (Fairbanks.)

It is to be noted that the changes of temperature involved in this process of rock-breaking, are changes of temperature of the rock, not of the air. In sunshine the temperature of the rock may be much higher than that of the air above it. The air therefore affects the process only because it has some effect on the *amount of temperature change* which the surface of the rock undergoes during a day. Dense (as at low altitudes) and moist air reduces extremes of temperature, and light (as at high altitudes) and dry air favors great range. Effective changes of temperature which do not involve the freezing of water in cracks and pores are so much more frequent than changes which involve freezing, that the former probably are much more important than the latter in rock-breaking.

This process of rock breaking is a phase of *weathering*. The debris loosened in this way moves from higher to lower levels under the influence of gravity, if it moves at all. The general effect of the process is to make high places lower, and to build up the lower surfaces about the bases of steep slopes.

The roots of plants penetrate the soil, loosening it, and thereby make it easier for water to sink below the surface. Roots sometimes grow in cracks in the rock, and as they grow they act like wedges. Large masses of rock may be loosened in this way. When a tree is uprooted, the ground is torn up, and rock material to the depth of several feet is sometimes exposed to the action of freezing water, air, and rain. Again,

FIG. 63.—Exfoliation on a mountain slope. Mount Starr-King, Cal.

FIG. 64.—Crumbling on a mountain top. Kearsarge Pass, Sierra Nevada Mountains.

when plants decay, acids are formed which increase the dissolving power of ground-water. Burrowing animals of all sorts loosen the ground and develop channels for the entrance of water. Even such small animals as ants and earthworms perform an important work in this connection. In Massachusetts the ant has been estimated to bring one-fourth of an inch of

Fig. 65.—Talus slope.

fine earth to the surface each year, while Darwin estimated that earthworms brought seven to eighteen tons of material per acre to the surface each year, in the region he studied.

Summary

On the whole, the tendency of the work of the atmosphere and of the work which is controlled by it, is to lower the surface of the land, and to loosen materials of the surface so that they may be readily moved to lower levels by other agencies. The most important phase of the degradational work of the atmosphere is *weathering*, or the preparation of material for removal by other and more powerful agents of degradation. As we shall see, however, the atmosphere is not the only agent concerned in weathering.

REFERENCES

1. Cornish, *On the Formation of Sand Dunes:* Geog. Jour., Vol. IX, 1897, pp. 278–309.

2. Udden, *Erosion, Transportation, and Sedimentation performed by the Atmosphere:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. II, pp. 318–331, and Pop. Sci. Mo., Sept., 1896.

3. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Geologic Processes*, Chapter II: Henry Holt & Co., 1903.

4. Geikie, *Earth Sculpture*, Chapter XII: Putnam.

5. Hitchcock, *Controlling Sand Dunes in the United States:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XV, pp. 43–47, 1904.

6. Cobb, *Nat. Geog. Mag.*, 1906, pp. 310–317.

7. Merrill, *Principles of Rock Weathering:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. IV, pp. 704–724 and 850–871;—also *Rocks, Rock Weathering, and Soils:* Macmillan

8. Cowles, *The Plant Societies of Chicago and Vicinity:* Bull. 2, Geog. Soc. of Chicago. (Deals with relations of dunes and vegetation.)

9. Salisbury and Alden, *Geography of Chicago and its Environs:* Geog. Soc. of Chicago, 1899, pp. 53-62.

10. All standard text-books on Geology.

11. The following *Topographic Sheets of the U. S. Geol. Surv.:*

Long Beach, N. J.	St. Paul, Neb.	Larned, Kan.
Sandy Hook, N. J.	North Platte, Neb.	Kingman, Kan.
Barnegat, N. J.	Green Run, Md.-Va.	Kinsley, Kan.
Atlantic City, N. J.	Fire Island, N. Y.	Hutchinson, Kan.
Asbury Park, N. J.	Springfield, Colo.	Lakin, Kan.
Browns Creek, Neb.	Dodge, Kan.	Pratt, Kan.

12. The following *Folios of the U. S. Geol. Surv.:*

Norfolk, Va.	Camp Clarke, Neb.	Scotts Bluff, Neb.

Map Work. See Exercise III in *Interpretation of Topographic maps*, a brief guide to the study of topographic maps. Henry Holt & Co.

CHAPTER III

THE WORK OF GROUND-WATER

General Facts

Water is one of the most active agents working on the land. Its activity is seen on every slope during heavy falls of rain and when snow is melting rapidly, and it is seen in every stream and in the waves of lakes and seas. Even the water in the soil and in the rocks beneath the soil is active, though its effects are less obvious than those of streams and waves.

Source of land-water. The waters of the land have fallen from the atmosphere, which always contains some moisture in the form of water vapor. This vapor is constantly passing up into the air from all moist surfaces by *evaporation*, a process which will be considered in another chapter; but the familiar fact that any moist surface soon dries in the sunshine, or in any warm dry place, may be taken to illustrate what is going on at all times, both from moist land surfaces and from water surfaces.

Under certain conditions some of the moisture in the air is condensed into drops and falls as rain; or, if the temperature at which the water vapor condenses is below the freezing-point of water, the moisture freezes as it condenses, forming snowflakes (Fig. 66) instead of rain-drops. The average amount of rain and snow (snow-water) which falls on the land is something like 40 inches per year (10 to 12 inches of snow being counted as one of water). In other words, the *precipitation* (rain and snow) which falls on the land each year is enough to make a layer of water rather more than three feet (about one meter) deep over the surface of the land, if it were distributed uniformly. Forty inches of water over the land would make about 35,000 cubic miles of water. Since the rivers discharge only about 6500 cubic miles of water into the sea yearly, it is clear that the larger part of the rainfall is not carried to the sea by rivers.

The fate of rain-water. The water which falls on the land disappears in various ways. A part of it sinks at once beneath

the surface, a part forms pools or lakes upon the surface, a part runs off over the surface directly, and a part of it is evaporated. The proportion of the rainfall in any given place which follows each of these courses depends upon several conditions, among which are (1) the topography of the surface, (2) the rate of rainfall (or the rate at which snow melts), (3) the porosity of the soil

FIG. 66.—Photographs of snowflakes, showing something of their diversity of form. (Bentley.)

or rock, (4) the amount of water which the soil already contains when the rain falls or the snow melts, (5) the amount of vegetation on the surface, and (6) the dryness of the atmosphere.

Considering these points in order, we find (1) that the steeper the slope on which rain falls or snow melts, the more rapidly the water runs off, and the larger the proportion which follows this course; for when it flows off rapidly there is little time for it to sink in or evaporate.

(2) The more rapidly the rain falls, the less the proportion which sinks in. The sinking of the water is a slow process, espe-

cially if the soil is compact. In sinking, the water first fills the pores of the surface, and no more can enter until that already in has had time to sink out of the way. If, therefore, the rain falls rapidly, less sinks in and more runs off over the surface than if it falls slowly.

(3) Loose or open soil, such as sand or gravel, takes in the water more readily than clay or other compact material. A clayey soil, therefore, causes a larger part of the rainfall to run off over the surface, because it allows less to sink in in a given time. Not only this, but a porous soil will hold more water, because the *pore space*, that is the space between its constituent parts, is larger. A special case of compactness arises in connection with changes of temperature. When the ground is frozen, that is when the water in it is frozen, the soil is rendered solid and less porous, and surface water can penetrate it but slightly, even if the surface water remains unfrozen. When the soil beneath snow is frozen, the water produced by the melting of the snow does not enter it readily, and so a large part is allowed to run off over the surface.

(4) When the soil contains much water, less can enter, and more runs off over the surface.

(5) Vegetation serves to restrain the flow of surface water, and holds it longer on the surface. As a result, there is more time for the water to sink in, and less runs off without sinking.

(6) If the air is very dry, more of the rainfall evaporates directly, leaving less to run off or sink in. The effect of dryness on evaporation is conspicuous in arid regions, where the surface dries quickly after a shower, and where light snows entirely disappear in a short time by evaporation, even when the temperature is below the freezing-point of water.

The water which sinks into the ground becomes *ground-water*, while that which flows off over the surface without sinking is the *immediate run-off*. Much of the ground-water ultimately reaches the surface again, and some of it joins the immediate run-off in the streams. All the water which the streams carry, whether it has been beneath the surface or not, is the *run-off*.

The existence of ground-water. The soil of most regions is damp at the depth of a few inches, or at any rate a few feet, even when it seems dry at the surface. In deep holes, like wells, water seeps or flows in from the sides, and collects in the bottom. In

thickly populated farming communities there are wells on almost every farm, and all are supplied with water. Illinois has more than 250,000 farms, and it is probable that the number of wells in the state is double the number of farms. The total number of wells in the United States must be several millions, and the amount of water drawn out through them each day is very great; yet the wells rarely go dry. Most mines, too, encounter water at no great depth from the surface.

Source of ground-water. Since rain-water and melted snow constantly are sinking beneath the surface, since rain and snow seem like an adequate source of supply for the ground-water, and since no other source[1] whence it can come is known, it is inferred that surface water is the source of ground-water. Other phenomena point to a close connection between the two. Thus in time of drought many shallow wells and some springs go dry. When the drought is broken by renewed rainfall, the wells again contain water, and the springs again flow. This seems to establish a direct connection between precipitation from the atmosphere and the supply of water beneath the surface.

While the proportion of rainfall which sinks beneath the surface is determined by the conditions suggested, the amount of water beneath the surface, other things being equal, is great

FIG. 67.—Diagram showing how water falling in one place may flow underground to another and there be brought to the surface. The layer *a* is porous, and water entering it in the mountains follows it to the plains.

where the rainfall is great. The amount of ground-water in any region is, however, not entirely dependent on the rainfall of that region, for water falling in one place may flow underground to another. Thus rain-water which falls in the Rocky Mountains flows underground through porous beds of rock out under the Great Plains, where it is brought to the surface through wells (Fig. 67).

[1] Water rarely sinks into the ground from lakes, rivers, etc., though it does so under some circumstances. Rivers and lakes are, however, fed by rain-water, either before or after it has been underground, so that ground-water derived from lakes and rivers comes from atmospheric precipitation.

Descent of ground-water. The manner in which water enters the soil is seen readily. It sinks in through all the pores and cracks. In the soil and subsoil pores are more common than cracks, but in the solid rock beneath, cracks are common, and while pores are not absent, many of them are much smaller than the cracks. Since the cracks in rock run in various directions, the water descends not only vertically, but in oblique directions as well. Water descends as far as there are cracks and pores or openings of any sort not already filled with water; but the smaller these passage-ways, the more difficult it is for the water to pass through them. If, for example, small pores, such as those of compact soil or rock, are diminished in size one-half, the difficulty of the descent of water is much more than doubled.

Generally speaking, the rocks near the surface have more and larger pores than those at greater depths. It follows that as the pores get fewer and smaller with increasing depth, the difficulty with which water descends increases.

It cannot be stated definitely how far down cracks and openings exist; but it seems probable that all openings become very small at a depth of a mile or two, and that none exist below a depth of 10 or 12 miles. At this depth the rock is under the pressure of a column of rock 10 or 12 miles high, and the weight of such a column is so great that, in any ordinary sort of rock, cracks and pores would be closed, if once formed. Since different sorts of rock have unequal strength, pores and cracks perhaps exist in different sorts of rock at somewhat different depths, but probably in no rock at a depth of more than a dozen miles.

For these reasons it is not probable that water descends more than 10 or 12 miles in any case, and the amount of water below the depth of even one or two miles is probably far less than the amount above that level.

Ground-water surface. Though the amount of water beneath the surface is very great, as common phenomena show, the porous rock and soil rarely are altogether full of water. This is shown by the fact that it is necessary in many regions to dig wells to a depth of several scores or even hundreds of feet before an adequate supply of water is obtained. The surface soil is rarely full of water except immediately after a heavy rain, or when snow is melting.

If a series of wells is dug in a flat region where the soil and rocks are essentially uniform, they would need to be dug to about

the same depth in order to secure a constant supply of water. This is illustrated by Fig. 68. If the well at *a* be dug to a given depth, a well at *b* will need to be dug to about the same depth in order to secure an equal supply of water. Other wells at *c* and *d* will also need to be of the same depth approximately. Under these circumstances, the water in the several wells will stand at about the same level. This means that the rocks and subsoil of the region, below the level of the water in the several wells, are full of water. The underground surface below which the rocks, etc., are full of water in any given region is the *water surface* (or *water table*) for that region. In one region the water surface may be 10 feet below the actual surface, and in another 100 feet. In dry regions it may be even deeper, but where the rainfall is sufficient for agricultural purposes, the water surface rarely is more than a few score feet below the surface of the land.

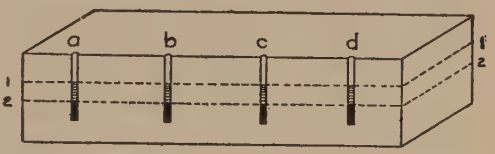


FIG. 68.—Represents a series of wells sunk in a flat tract of land.

Where the surface is uneven, the ground-water surface commonly undulates with it, but to a less extent, as shown in Fig. 69.

Amount of ground-water. The amount of ground-water is not definitely known, but the best estimates which have been

FIG. 69.—Diagram illustrating the position of the ground-water surface (the dotted line) in a region of undulating topography.

made indicate that the water in the soil, rocks, etc., of the land probably would make a layer not more than 1000 feet deep,[1] and perhaps not more than half that much, if spread over the surface of the land. The amount of water in the rocks beneath the ocean bed probably is less per square mile than beneath the land surface, because the rocks there probably are less porous.

Movement of ground-water. Ground-water is in constant movement. This is shown in many ways. If all the water is

[1] Estimates have ranged from 3 000 feet to 100 feet.

pumped out of a well, it soon fills again to its former level, showing that water flows in. The constant flow of thousands of springs shows that ground-water is in movement, for only thus can the springs be supplied with water. The seepage of water into mines, quarries, etc., tells the same story.

The reasons why ground-water is in movement are understood readily. The rainfall is not equally distributed. If there is a heavy local shower in a flat region, where the water surface is level or nearly so, the soil and rock in the area where the rain falls are more or less completely filled with water. The result is

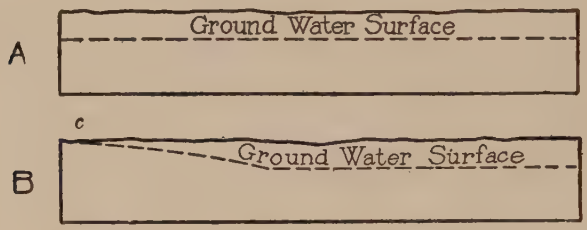


FIG. 70.—In the upper part of the figure (A) the water surface is level. If a heavy rain takes place in the area at the left of that represented by the figure, the water surface at the left will be raised as indicated in B. Movement of the ground-water will follow.

that the water surface for the region is raised temporarily, as shown at *c* in Fig. 70. Since water is mobile, this is a condition of instability, and the water from *c* will tend to flow off in all directions to places where the water surface is lower. The principle involved is the same as that which would be in operation if a mound of water were placed on a level surface. It would promptly spread. In the subsoil or rock beneath, the water tends to spread just as it would at the surface, but its movement is much slower because of friction of the water with the rock through which it passes.

In a region of uniform rainfall but of uneven surface, the water surface is not level. Other things being equal, it is somewhat higher beneath high land, and somewhat lower beneath low land (Fig. 69). Where this is the case, the water surface ultimately would become level if there were no rain; but in moist regions rain is so frequent that the water surface under the hills rarely or never sinks to the level of the water surface under the surrounding low land, before it is raised again by additional rains. As a

result of inequalities of rainfall and of topography, ground-water constantly is moving out from areas where the water surface is higher, to areas where it is lower.

While the flow of ground-water is determined primarily by the ground-water surface, and while it always tends to flow from higher to lower levels, it is, in some situations, forced upward. Thus, if water moving down through a porous layer of rock (*a*, Fig. 67) between beds (*b* and *c*) which do not allow it to penetrate them, finds an opening through the impervious layer (*b*), it may escape upward. It will issue with great force if the source of supply is much higher than the point of issue. Water also rises by capillary action, but not in such quantity as to give rise to springs or visible seepage.

In addition to the water which comes out from beneath the surface through wells and springs on the land, some of it flows under-ground to the sea or to lakes, and issues as springs beneath them. Some ground-water, too, seeps out in such small quantities as not to appear to flow. In this case it does not constitute a spring.

Ground-water moves about to some extent under the influence of forces other than gravity. Besides the movements resulting from capillarity, some of it is taken up by the roots of plants, and, passing up through the plants, escapes through their leaves into the air. Some ground-water is evaporated directly, without the intervention of plants. Even in regions where the soil appears to be very dry, evaporation is going on constantly. If, for example, the water surface is 500 feet down, the pores of the rock down to the water surface are full of air. From the water surface below, water evaporates into the air in the rock and soil, and this air may thus become more moist than the air above. Moisture is then *diffused* upward. Under some circumstances, too, ground-water rises by convection.

The rise of invisible moisture from the ground may be demonstrated easily in a very simple way. If a rubber blanket is spread on the ground on a summer night, or if a pan is inverted on the soil, the under side of blanket or pan will in many cases be dripping-wet in the morning before the heat of the sun affects it. Had the cool blanket or the cool metal not been there to stop it, the moisture from below would have escaped into the air above, unnoticed. It is so escaping all day and all night, and every day and every night, over all land surfaces wherever the air in the soil

and below it is more moist than that above. In this and other ways the supply of ground-water is being drawn upon constantly. Constant renewal through the descent of rain, or through underground flowage from some other region, is therefore necessary to maintain the supply.

It is probable that nearly all of the water which sinks beneath the surface sooner or later comes up again in some one of these various ways; but a small amount of it enters into combination with solid mineral matter, as in iron-rust (p. 63). So long as water remains in this solid combination, it does not again escape to the surface.

The rate at which ground-water moves varies greatly, and is dependent chiefly on (1) the porosity of rock or soil, and (2) the pressure of the water. The rate at which water seeps through soils from irrigating ditches has been determined at various points in the West. Except in very porous soils, it ranges from one to eight feet per day. In very porous soils it is sometimes as much as fifty feet per day. In the Potsdam standstone, a wide-spread formation underlying southern Wisconsin and its surroundings to the south, and the source of many artesian wells, the rate of movement of ground-water has been estimated at half a mile a year. Rain-water which enters this formation 200 miles from Chicago would therefore reach that city in about 400 years, if this rate is correct. The water which sinks to great depths and into the very small pores and cracks moves extremely slowly, and some of it remains entrapped within the rock for very long periods of time.

Springs

All water issuing from beneath the surface is *seepage*. Water issuing through a natural opening in such quantity as to make a distinct current is a *spring*. Springs occur in many sorts of situations, but they are not located by accident. They occur where there are natural passageways for the ground-water to escape to the surface. Two cases are illustrated by Fig. 71. In one, the water descends through the porous bed *e* to the layer *d*, which is relatively impervious. The water flows along this layer until it comes to the surface, and there the water flows out as a spring, *s'*. In the other, the water moves underground through the porous layer *b*, under pressure, until it reaches a crack which leads up to the surface. If the crack is open enough to afford a passage-

way, the water may follow it up to the surface, as at *s*. A spring will occur in such a situation only where the opening is lower than the water surface in the rock which furnishes the water. In the figure, the spring at *s* is lower than the water surface at *w*. This sort of a spring is similar to a flowing well in principle, but in the latter case the opening is made by man.

Temperature. The temperature of water as it issues from beneath the surface is very variable. Most springs seem cold in warm weather. There is a popular impression that springs are cooler in summer than in winter, but this is not the case. The impression arises from the fact that the water is much cooler than the air in summer, and so seems cold, while in winter the water is sometimes warmer than the air, and so seems less cold than in summer.

FIG. 71.—Diagram to illustrate two types of springs as explained in text.

Springs which derive their water from deep sources vary little in temperature during the year, while those whose sources are shallow are colder in winter than in summer. The reason is that the warmth of summer and the cold of winter are most extreme at the surface, and become less and less with increasing depth. Below the depth of 50 or 60 feet, in middle latitudes, the temperature does not vary sensibly with the seasons, so that springs which draw their water from greater depths vary little in temperature, while those which draw their supply from lesser depths vary more.

Exceptional springs are warm, and still more exceptional ones are hot. Hot spring water gets its heat by contact with hot rock. In general, the water of warm and hot springs probably rises from considerable depths. In many cases the source of heat probably is igneous rock (lava) which has not yet become cold. It may be lava which was forced upward toward but not to the surface, or it may be the deeper parts of lava which flowed out on the surface.

Mineral and medicinal springs. All ground-water dissolves more or less mineral matter from the rocks, and all springs there-

fore contain more or less mineral matter in solution; but a spring commonly is not called a *mineral spring* unless it contains (1) much mineral matter, or (2) mineral matter which is conspicuous either by reason of its color, taste, or odor, or (3) mineral matter which is unusual in spring water.

Many mineral springs are thought—in some cases justly—to have healing properties, and so are known as *medicinal springs.*

FIG. 72.—Giant Geyser, Yellowstone National Park. (Wineman.)

Many of the famous watering-places and resorts for invalids are located at hot mineral springs. The Hot Springs of Arkansas, of South Dakota, and of Carlsbad (Bohemia) are examples. Many springs which are charged with gases are called mineral and medicinal, especially if they have an offensive odor. In the popular mind, a spring is more medicinal the worse it smells and tastes. Hot water is a better solvent than cold water, so that most hot springs contain much mineral matter.

Geysers. Geysers are *intermittently eruptive hot springs.* They are best known in the Yellowstone National Park, but they are

well developed also in Iceland, and New Zealand. In the Yellowstone Park there are about 100 geysers, and more than 3000 hot springs which are not eruptive. Some of the geysers send up boiling water and steam to a height of 200 feet or more (Fig. 72), but this is quite above the average.

From some geysers the eruptions are frequent, and from others infrequent. From some they occur at regular intervals, and from others they take place irregularly. One of the geysers in the

FIG. 73.—Cone (crater) of Castle Geyser, Yellowstone National Park. (Detroit Photo. Co.)

Yellowstone Park is named "Old Faithful," because it discharges its waters at nearly regular intervals of about an hour. The eruptions are, however, a little less frequent and a little less regular than formerly. Most geysers which have been known for a long time discharge their waters less and less frequently as time goes on.

Features which are common to many geysers are the following:

(1) An opening in the surface leading down to unknown depths. Though this is sometimes called the *geyser tube*, it is probably not always in the form of a tube. (2) A shallow basin about the opening. This is, in many cases, in the top of a mound. In some cases there is, instead of a basin, an irregular perforated mound (Figs. 73 and 74). Both basins and mounds are composed

of mineral matter (commonly silica) which has been deposited by the water from the geyser. (3) At the time of discharge much steam, as well as liquid water, issues.

Steam is the force which ejects the water. It is believed (1) that ground-water enters the geyser tube much as it enters a well; (2) that the walls of some part of the tube are hot; (3) that the water in the tube is brought to boiling temperature at some point in the tube below the top of the water; and (4) that when this takes place, the steam formed forces out all the water above.

FIG. 74.—The cone of Lone Star Geyser, Yellowstone National Park. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

This principle may be illustrated by experiment. If a short tube of water is heated, it boils without violent discharge, especially if the tube has a large diameter. But if the tube is filled with sand, and the sand then filled with water and heated from below, the movement (convection) of the heated water in the tube is restricted greatly by the sand. The result is that abundant steam is formed below the surface, and a miniature eruption follows.

Geysers occur only in regions of relatively recent volcanic activity, and the heat which is necessary for the geysers is probably supplied by lava which has not yet become cool. As it is heated, geyser water is constantly cooling the hot rock, and in time it will cease to be hot enough to boil water. Geyser action will then cease, unless new supplies of hot lava are forced up from below. In the Yellowstone Park some geysers have died out since the region became known, less than 50 years ago. New geysers, on the other hand, have been developed in the same region during this period.

If a stone or a clod of earth, or almost any other solid object, is thrown into a geyser, its eruption often may be hastened a little, because such things interfere with the convection of the water in the tube. They help to hold the hot water down where

it is being heated, and so help it to reach a boiling temperature at some point below the surface a little sooner than it would do otherwise. Soap, especially, is supposed to hasten a geyser's eruption. Anything which makes the water more viscous hastens the eruption, because convection is less free in a thick fluid than in a thin one.

Fig. 75.—Artesian well at Woonsocket, S. D. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Artesian and flowing wells. When the water in a well rises so as to overflow, the well is said *to flow*. Flowing wells are not unlike springs whose waters spout up as they issue. The chief difference between them is that the opening in one case is natural, while in the other it was made by man. Formerly *artesian wells* were regarded as the same as flowing wells. The name was derived from Artois, France, where there was a notable well of this sort. Nowadays the name artesian commonly is applied to deep wells, whether they flow or not.

Fig. 76 illustrates the general conditions necessary for flowing wells. They are the following: (1) A porous layer or bed of rock, *a*, which underlies an impervious layer, *b*, which prevents the water from escaping upward until it is penetrated by the well-hole. (2) The porous bed must come to the surface in a region which is somewhat higher than the site of the well. (3) The rainfall where the porous bed comes to the surface must be sufficient to keep it well filled with water. Under these conditions the water beneath *w*, in the stratum *a*, is under the pressure of the water in the same stratum at higher levels, and if a hole is made down to it, it will gush up (Fig. 75). It is not necessary, as a rule, to take much account of the layer below the water-bearing stratum *a*. If it is of

porous rock, it is generally full of water, and so prevents the downward escape of the water in *a*.

The water at the well will not rise as high as the water surface in *a*, for as the water flows through the small openings (pores and small cracks) in the rock, there is loss of force by friction. As a rule, an allowance of about a foot to the mile must be made; that is, if the source of supply is 100 miles away, the water surface at that point should be about 100 feet higher than the top

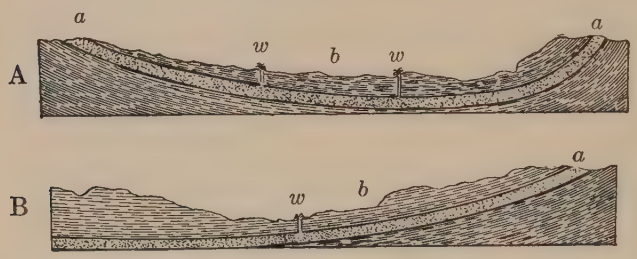


FIG. 76.—Diagrams illustrating the conditions favorable for artesian wells. In A, the porous bed *a* is in the form of a basin; in B, it merely dips.

of the well, if the water is to flow. If the water-bearing stratum, *a*, is very porous, the allowance which must be made for friction is less; if it is close-grained, the loss of force from friction is more.

Artesian wells vary much in depth. They may be but a few feet deep, or they may be thousands of feet. There is an artesian well in Berlin more than 4000 feet deep, one in St. Louis nearly 4000 feet deep, and one in Cincinnati nearly 2500 feet deep, while the deepest one in Chicago is some 2700 feet deep. There are numerous flowing wells in New Jersey less than 100 feet in depth.

Many villages and small cities get their water from artesian wells. Charleston, S. C., Galveston and Fort Worth, Texas, Camden, N. J., and Rockford, Ill., are among the cities supplied partly or wholly in this way. No great city, however, such as New York, Chicago, Philadelphia, etc., is supplied with water from such wells, and probably could not be.

In the semi-arid region of the Great Plains, and at various other places in the West, as in some parts of California, water from artesian wells is used extensively for irrigating the land.

The Work of Ground-water

Chemical Work

Solution. While rock seems to be the symbol of all that is stable, it is nevertheless dissolved, to some slight extent, by the ground-water which passes through it, as has been stated in connection with springs. Pure water does not dissolve mineral matter readily; but the water beneath the surface is not pure. In falling through the atmosphere it dissolved carbon dioxide, oxygen, and other gases, and in sinking through the soil it took up the products of plant decay, so that when it became ground-water it contained numerous impurities. With these impurities in solution, ground-

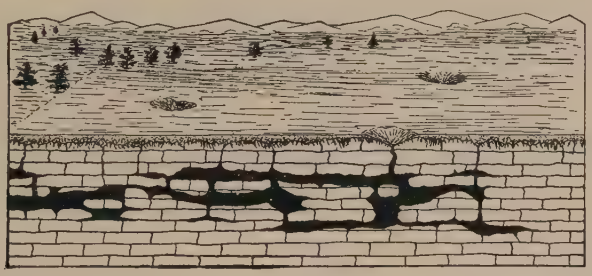


Fig. 77.—Diagram to illustrate the form and relations of caverns developed by solution. The black spaces represent caverns. Some limestone sinks are represented at the surface where the roofs of caves have fallen in.

water dissolves most sorts of rock more readily than pure water would. Pure water, for example, has little effect on common limestone, but water with carbon dioxide in solution dissolves this rock to some appreciable extent. Descending water changes chemically the rocks and minerals of some rocks through which it passes, before it effects much solution; but this is not always the case.

That water dissolves some of the material of rock is shown by the character of the water which comes out of the ground. When the water of wells or springs is evaporated it usually leaves a little residue. This becomes noticeable in time in the inside coating of boilers and kettles in which water is heated. This coating is composed of mineral matter which was in solution in the water, and which was left behind when the water was heated and evaporated. Strictly speaking, all springs are mineral springs

(see p. 80), and all wells are mineral wells, for all water taken from the ground contains mineral matter.

One result of solution is to make the rock porous. The extreme case of porosity developed in this way is found in caverns and channels beneath the surface. The great caves (Fig. 77), like those of southern Indiana (Wyandotte Cave and others) and Kentucky (Mammoth Cave and others), are the work of groundwater. Caves of this sort exist chiefly in limestone regions, for limestone is the most soluble of the common rocks. Even where

FIG. 78.—A sink-hole of recent development near Meade, Kan. (Johnson, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

caves and caverns are not developed, small pores and cavities may be numerous. The effect of solution is, therefore, to weaken the rock, and finally to cause it to crumble.

The roofs of some underground caves fall in, leaving notable sinks at the surface. These are known as *limestone sinks* (Fig. 78). Such sinks are characteristic of regions in which there are caves. They are so numerous in some places that the surface is too much pitted to be cultivated. This is the case, for example, in some parts of Kentucky and Tennessee (Plate VI). Many sinks in limestone regions are the result of the solution effected by water which sinks down through cracks in the rock, and have no connection with caves.

In Karst, northeast of the head of the Adriatic Sea, there is a tract of land underlain by white limestone, which is nearly free from soil. Most of the rainfall of the region goes beneath the

surface, and it is the solvent action of the water before and after it sinks which has developed the remarkably uneven topography of the region. Numerous short gullies, ravines, and valleys in the limestone terminate abruptly, discharging their waters into caves or subterranean tunnels. Sink-holes abound, and some of them are several hundred feet deep. The slopes to the depressions, and therefore the slopes of the elevations between them, are very steep, so that the surface is extremely rough. Topography similar to that of this region and developed in the same way sometimes is known as Karst topography.

The amount of mineral matter brought to the surface through wells, springs, etc., is very great. The springs of Leuk (Switzerland) bring to the surface more than 2000 tons of gypsum (a hydrated sulphate of calcium) in solution yearly. In the same time the springs of Bath (England) bring up enough mineral matter in solution so that, if it were taken out of the water and made into a monument, it would make a column 9 feet in diameter and 140 feet high.

Much of the water seeping out from beneath the surface finds its way to rivers, and the larger part of the mineral matter in solution in rivers has come from ground-water which has joined them. Rivers are estimated to carry nearly five billion tons of mineral matter to the sea in solution each year; but even this large amount does not represent all the solvent work of ground-water, for much of the mineral matter which it dissolves is deposited underground, for reasons which will soon appear.

The transfer of this amount of mineral matter from land to sea each year in solution must mean the lowering of the land. The transfer of this mineral matter from land to sea does not mean an equivalent building up of the sea bottom, for some of the mineral matter remains in solution in the sea-water. Thus salt is one of the mineral substances carried by rivers to the sea; but the larger part of the salt which has been carried to the sea through the ages probably remains there in solution to this day.

On the other hand, much of the mineral matter which is carried to the sea, especially the calcium carbonate, is used by the animals and plants of the sea in the making of shells, tests, bones, etc., and these are finally left on the sea bottom.

Deposition. Besides dissolving mineral matter and carrying much of it away, ground-water brings about other changes in the

rocks of the earth. If, in the chemical laboratory, solutions of various sorts are mixed in a test-tube, some of the materials in solution are likely to be precipitated. The same thing takes place in the rocks beneath the surface. If, for example, waters from different directions enter a crack in the rock, and if these waters bring different mineral matters in solution, the mingling of the waters may effect chemical changes by which some of the material comes out of solution, and is deposited in the crack.

It follows that while ground-water tends to make rocks porous where it dissolves mineral matter, it tends to make them compact where it deposits, as in pores and cracks, the mineral matter which it holds in solution. In some places the first of these processes is the more effective, and in others the second. In general, ground-water probably increases the porosity of rock near the surface (especially above the ground-water surface), and increases its compactness at greater depths. The effect of deposition is in some cases to cement the loose parts of rock together, making the whole more firm. Thus sand may be cemented into sandstone, and gravel into conglomerate.

Cracks in the rock filled by mineral matter deposited from solution become *veins*, and many rocks are full of veins (Fig. 79). Ores occur in some veins, and many mines are located in them. Much gold, silver, lead, zinc, etc., is found in such positions. These metals do not as a rule *fill* the cracks, but the metals, or the compounds which contain them, are associated with a much larger amount of mineral matter which is not valuable, but which must be worked over in order to get out the ores which are. Mineral matter in solution may be deposited in caves (Fig. 80). Many of the most attractive features of caves, such as stalactites, stalagmites, crystals on the walls, etc., were formed by deposition from solution.

The deposition of mineral matter from solution is determined by several conditions. The more important are the following: (1) If water evaporates, the mineral matter dissolved in it is left behind. Surface gravels are cemented in this way in some places. (2) If the water which contains mineral matter is relieved of pressure, as when it comes to the surface, some of the mineral matter may be deposited. (3) If water contains much gas in solution, and if the gas escapes, as it is likely to when pressure is relieved or when it is warmed, some of the mineral matter in solu-

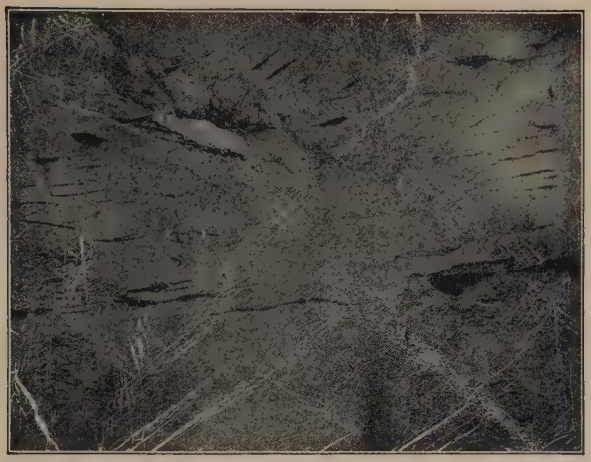


FIG. 79.—A piece of rock showing many veins.—the white streaks. The vein filling is calcite. Near Highgate Springs, Vt. (Walcott, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 80.—Deposits of calcite (travertine, stalactites, and stalagmites) in Wyandotte Cave, Ind. (Hains.)

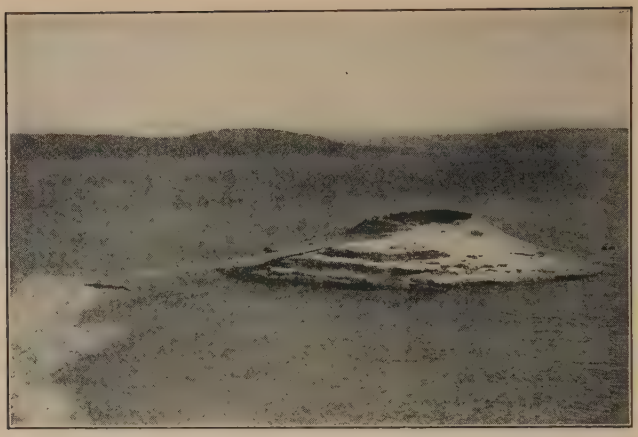


FIG 81.—Deposit from a hot spring in Yellowstone Lake. (Fairbanks.)

FIG. 82.—Hot Springs deposit; terrace about Mammoth Springs. Yellowstone National Park.

tion is likely to be deposited. (4) Some warm spring water gives up mineral matter on cooling. Some or all of these principles are involved in the deposition of mineral matter about most hot mineral springs (Figs. 81 and 82). (5) The mingling of solutions of different sorts, already referred to, probably is a common cause of deposition. (6) In some hot springs, as in the Yellowstone Park, minute plants grow in the hot waters which issue from the springs.

FIG. 83.—Petrified tree-trunks, Yellowstone National Park. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

These tiny organisms, by some process not well understood, extract mineral matter from the water and cause it to be deposited (Figs. 73, 74, 81, and 82). These are among the simpler and more important conditions under which mineral matter is deposited from solution by ground-water, either while it is beneath the surface or after it issues.

Solution and deposition may be going on at the same time, and even at the same place; that is, the water may be dissolving

certain substances at the same time that it is depositing others. One sort of rock may thus be changed to another. A special phase of this process results in *petrifaction*. Thus the substance of a buried shell, or of coral, may be changed, while its form is preserved. Another illustration is afforded by petrified wood (Fig. 83), the substance of the wood having been replaced by mineral matter. Such changes probably take place slowly, the mineral matter which was in solution replacing the woody matter as it decays, molecule by molecule.

Other changes. Besides the subtraction of mineral matter from rocks by solution, and the addition of material to rocks of some places by deposition of mineral matter dissolved elsewhere, water works still other changes in the rocks. It enters into combination with certain minerals, changing their character. This process (*hydration*) already has been referred to in connection with the work of the air (p. 62). Moisture beneath the surface affects minerals in much the same way as moisture in the air or at the surface. All changes of this sort which result in the alteration of the composition of the rock, or of its constituent minerals, are chemical changes.

The general result of chemical changes effected by ground-water, like the result of the chemical changes effected by the air, is to disrupt the rock. Changes of this sort are most important near the surface, especially at and above the ground-water-surface.

Summary. From the preceding paragraphs it will be seen that ground-water effects various changes in the rocks. The rocks carrying water may, indeed, be looked upon as a sort of huge chemical laboratory in which solutions are made and carried from one place to another, working changes as they go. The result is a slow but constant alteration of the rock. Impressed by the greatness of these changes in the long course of time, an eminent geologist has said that, "given time enough, and nothing in the world is more changeable than the rocks."

Mechanical Work

Abrasion. The mechanical work of ground-water is of relatively little importance. The water rarely is concentrated into considerable streams, but where it is so concentrated, underground streams transport and deposit the limited amount of sediment they acquire.

Slumping, sliding, etc. Indirectly, ground-water participates in changes of another sort. When the soil and earthy material on a steep slope become charged with water, their weight is greatly increased. At the same time the water makes them more mobile. Under these circumstances the material sometimes slides down the slope. Such movements are known as *slumping* or *sliding*. If the movement is on a large scale, it is called a *landslide*.

FIG. 84.—South face of Landslip Mountain, Colo. The protruding mass on the right has slumped down. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Slumping is very common on slopes composed of unconsolidated material, such as clay or accumulations of loose rock (Fig. 84). Landslides give rise to a distinctive sort of topography.

Many destructive landslides have been recorded, but a few facts concerning one may serve to illustrate the phenomena of all. On the 29th of April, 1903, there was a slide on Turtle Mountain, Province of Alberta, Dominion of Canada. Here a huge mass of material, nearly half a mile square and probably 400 to 500 feet deep, suddenly broke loose from the steep east face of a mountain, and slid down into the valley below. It crossed the valley, which was half a mile wide, and even rose a few hundred feet on the other side. When it came to rest it

covered an area of a little more than one square mile. The length of the slide was about two and a half miles, and it is estimated that the time which it took was not more than 100 seconds. The heavy rainfall of the preceding year had filled the rock with moisture, and earthquake tremors, shortly before the slide, are believed to have hastened the catastrophe. Extensive tunnels, etc., excavated in mining at the base of the mountain also may have played a part by making the under-structure less stable. Many lives were lost and many buildings destroyed.

Instead of sliding down with rapid motion, surface earth may move down with extreme slowness. This sort of movement is

FIG. 85.—Trees tipping down slope. North of Chicago. (Coxe.)

creep. It is, as a rule, too slow to be seen, but it results in the accumulation of mantle rock, especially earthy matter, at the bases of slopes. In one case (Rhymney Valley, Wales) the rate of creep, where it affected a railway, has been determined to be 6 to 10 feet in 50 years. Movement of the same sort is now constantly disturbing a railway-track a few miles from Golden, Colorado.

The downward movement of loose surface material on slopes is very general. In many places it causes the trees to incline a little down slope (Fig. 85). This probably is due in part to the fact that the upper part of the mantle rock in which they are rooted creeps down faster than the lower part.

In all cases of slumping, sliding, and creeping the force producing the movement is gravity. Water only helps to furnish the conditions for the effective action of gravity, by making the movement easier.

Closely connected with slumping is another phase of gravity work which may be mentioned here, though ground-water has little to do with it. From the faces of cliffs, blocks and masses of rock often settle away (Fig. 86). The freezing of ground-water

FIG. 86.—Mass of rock settling off the face of a cliff. The rock is limestone, the layers being nearly horizontal. The open cracks are largely the result of solution and weathering. East Tensleep Creek, Bighorn Mountains, Wyo. (Hole.)

in the cracks may help to pry off the rock on the face of the cliff, and solution may help to widen the cracks. The growth of roots in the cracks acts much like freezing water, helping to pry off the loosened masses from the face of the cliff. In such cases the existence of cracks or joints helps ice, roots, solution, etc., to become effective.

WEATHERING

Some of the processes of weathering have been mentioned already, but it may be added, by way of summary, that the chemical changes (oxidation, carbonation, etc.) effected in the rock by the atmosphere, the mechanical changes effected by variations of temperature under the influence of the atmosphere,

and the chemical and mechanical changes effected by groundwater, all conspire so to alter the surface of exposed rock as to cause it to waste away. We have already seen (p. 65) that the surfaces of many bowlders of the fields are scaling off or crumbling, and many are discolored, even when they seem firm. The upper layers of stone in a quarry frequently are broken, or are different in color from the lower ones. Inscriptions on many old tombstones are indistinct, and some of them have disappeared completely from stones which are but a few score years old. From the walls of stone buildings, from monuments, and from other stone structures, flakes of stone are seen to be scaling off from time to time. In all these cases change has taken place in the rock whereby its outer part is wasted away. All processes which produce this result are *weathering*.

The importance of rock weathering is great. Much soil is but weathered rock, and without the weathering of rock much of the land would be bare of soil and vegetation. As we have seen, the weathering of rock greatly facilitates the work of the wind, not always to the advantage of man, by preparing fine material which may be blown away. As we shall see in the next chapter, weathering also prepares material for ready removal by running water. Weathering, conjointly with wind and water erosion, is responsible for many striking bits of scenery (Figs. 134 and 135).

Conditions affecting weathering. There are great differences in the durability of rocks. A coarse-grained rock weathers faster than a fine-grained one of the same composition. Rock traversed by fissures and cracks changes more rapidly than firm, impervious rock. Some rocks, as limestone, are composed of relatively soluble material, and some, as sandstone, of material which is comparatively insoluble. The former weather more readily than the latter, so far as solution is a factor of weathering. A cold climate favors the wedge-work of ice, but hinders the growth of vegetation and chemical changes. *Rock decay* goes on more rapidly in warm, moist regions than in cold, dry ones; but *rock breaking*, due to changes of temperature, is more effective in dry regions, where daily changes of temperature are great. In deserts the wear of the rock by wind-blown sand is important. In general, the weathering of *bare* rocks probably takes place more rapidly in warm, moist regions than in cold or temperate ones; yet in warm,

moist regions most rock is protected by a goodly layer of soil and subsoil against some phases of weathering.

The topographic position of rocks also has an important bearing on the rate at which they decay. On steep slopes, the waste commonly is washed away as rapidly as formed, and the bare rock is exposed constantly, whereas on plains the solid rock is likely to be buried deeply by mantle rock, and so protected from some phases of weathering.

The thickness of the surface layer of weathered rock varies greatly. It rarely exceeds 100 feet, and is generally much less. In many places the depth of mantle rock represents the excess of rock decay over the transportation of the decayed material.

Since over the greater part of the land there is a covering of mantle rock, it follows that, in the aggregate, rock weathering exceeds transportation. Since much material is carried away in solution or otherwise as rock weathers, a few feet of rock waste may represent the destruction of many feet of solid rock.

REFERENCES

1. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Geologic Processes*, Chapter IV. Henry Holt & Co., 1903; and all standard text-books on Geology.

2. Shaler, Chapter on *Caverns*, in *Aspects of the Earth.* Chas. Scribner's Sons, 1889.

3. Geikie, *Earth Sculpture*, Chapter XIII: Putnam.

4. Hovey, *Celebrated American Caverns:* Rob't Clarke Co.

5. Chamberlin, *Artesian Wells: Geology of Wisconsin.* Vol. I, 1881, pp. 689–697; and 5th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 131–173.

6. King, *Principles and Conditions of the Movements of Ground-water:* 19th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., Pt. 11, pp. 59–293.

7. Slichter, *The Motions of Underground Water:* Water Supply and Irrigation Paper No. 67, U. S. Geol. Surv.

8. Numerous Water Supply and Irrigation Papers, U. S. Geol. Surv.

9. Weed, *Formations of Hot Springs Deposits:* 9th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 663–676, and Amer. Jour. of Sci., Vol. XXXVII, 1889, pp. 51–59.

10. Chittenden, *Yellowstone National Park:* Rob't Clarke Co.

11. Davis (B. M.), *The Vegetation of the Hot Springs of Yellowstone Park:* Science, Vol. VI, 1897, pp. 145–167.

Map Work. See Exercise IV in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

CHAPTER IV

THE WORK OF RUNNING WATER

STREAMS are among the most wide-spread natural features of the land. Only in deserts, such as the Sahara, or in areas which like Greenland, are mainly covered with snow and ice, are there extensive tracts without them. A few streams, like the Mississippi and the Amazon, are very large, but most of them are of small size. Thousands of creeks and brooks, some of them having their source in the Rocky Mountains, some in the Appalachian Moun-

FIG. 87.—The Passaic River in flood. Little Falls, N. J. 1902.

tains, and some on the plains and plateaus between, feed the Mississippi. And so it is everywhere. Every large stream receives water from many small ones.

The rivers of the Mississippi basin guided the early explorers, traders, and immigrants, and later became of great commercial and therefore of political importance. Many of the greater streams of other lands have played similar roles in history.

The flow of some streams is so gentle that they do not appear to change their valleys much; but some of them wear away their banks so rapidly that the changes they produce may be seen from year to year, or, when the stream is in flood, from day to day, or even from hour to hour. The force of streams at such times is often disastrous (Figs. 87 and 88). Occasionally they sweep away bridges and dams, and sometimes even buildings. Strong beams and rods of bridges, and steel rails of railways are bent

FIG. 88.—A raging river. Flood of the Mississippi River, breaking through its levees.

almost as if they were twigs by the force of the occasional torrent which follows an exceptional rain, such as a cloud-burst (Fig. 89).

In the aggregate, streams are estimated to send about 6500 cubic miles of water to the sea each year. The average height of the land above the sea is nearly half a mile. These 6500 cubic miles of water, therefore, descend, on the average nearly half a mile before they reach the sea. The energy of the water in falling this distance is very great. This will be understood if we think of this amount of water falling vertically from a height of a little less than half a mile. The water in the streams has the same amount of energy that it would have if it fell vertically. This energy is expended largely in wearing away the materials of the sides and bottoms of the valleys. Its force therefore is great, and its effects on the surface of the land pronounced.

Rivers flow in mountains, in plateaus, and in plains, and wherever they flow they modify the surface in their own peculiar way. The topographic features produced by running water in mountains, plateaus, and plains have much in common, and when we study these features for one of these regions, we really study them, in principle, for all.

Sources of stream water. Most streams derive a large part of their water from the immediate run-off and from ground-water, and many of them receive contributions from ponds, lakes, snowfields, and glaciers. The Mississippi, for example, receives water

FIG. 89.—Scene in the freight-yards of Kansas City after the flood of 1903. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

from all these sources. The immediate run-off, ground-water, and even the water of lakes and glaciers, all have their sources in the rain and snow, so that rivers depend on atmospheric precipitation for their supply of water.

The direct connection between rainfall and rivers may be inferred from various familiar phenomena. (1) Streams are more numerous in regions where rainfall is abundant (Fig. 90) than in those where it is scarce (Fig. 91). (2) Multitudes of small streams spring into being with each heavy fall of rain and with each period of rapidly melting snow. (3) Streams are swollen after rains, and most after heavy rains. (4) Many small streams which flow during wet weather dry up in times of drought, while others shrink.

The water of most streams which continue to flow during droughts is derived largely from springs and lakes, or from the melting of snow and ice about the sources of the streams.

Where water flows on the land, it is because the surface has a slope. If the slope of a surface were perfectly even, the immediate run-off at any given time would flow in a sheet. There are slopes so smooth that the water falling on them runs off in this way; but on most slopes, even those which appear to be regular, there are some unevennesses, so that, although the run-off may start as a sheet, it soon is concentrated into rills and streamlets which follow the depressions. The small streamlets unite to form larger

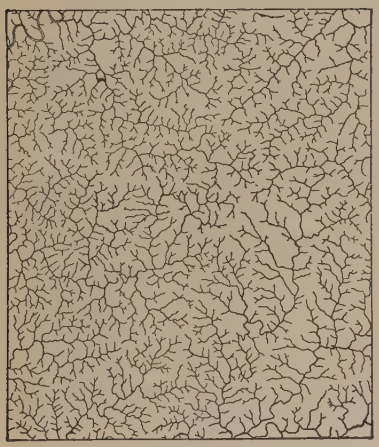


Fig. 90.

Fig. 91.

Fig. 90.—Map showing the many streams of a humid region. Central Kentucky. The area is about 225 square miles.
Fig. 91.—Map showing the few streams of an arid region. Northern Arizona. The area is as great as that shown in Fig. 90.

ones and the little rills, after many unions with one another, reach valleys which have *permanent streams*. These may be small (creeks or brooks) or large (rivers). Streams which flow but part of the time, as after a rain-storm, during wet weather, or during but a part of the year, are *intermittent streams*.

Every permanent stream and many temporary ones flow in depressions called *valleys* (Fig. 92). Valleys therefore are about as numerous as streams. The very small depressions in which water runs only after smart showers are not always called valleys. If they are very small they are *gullies* (Fig. 93); or if somewhat larger, *ravines*. Gullies and ravines are but small valleys. Just

as the tiny streamlets unite with one another to form creeks and these to form rivers, so the gullies in which the smallest temporary streams flow generally unite to form wider and deeper gullies (Fig. 94). These, in turn, join one another to make ravines, which are but larger depressions of the same sort. Ravines lead to valleys, just as gullies lead to ravines. Valleys, like streams, usually end at the ocean or a lake; but in some cases, especially in arid regions, they end on dry land.

There is, as a rule, some relation between the size of a valley and the stream which follows it, though this relation is not one which can be stated in mathematical terms. The large stream and the large valley (Fig. 92) go together so commonly, however, that the combination cannot be accidental, and leads to the inquiry whether the streams make the valleys in which they flow, or whether the streams flow where they do because the valleys were prepared for them in advance. These are questions to which we shall seek an answer in the following pages.

The Erosive Work of Streams

Streams are always carrying mud, sand, etc., down their valleys. This is seen especially well when rivers are in flood, for at such times most of them are muddy. Besides the mud which is suspended in the water, streams roll sand, gravel, etc., along their bottoms. The movement of mud in the water and of pebbles and stones at its bottom may be seen in any little stream that flows along the roadside after a storm, and the great Mississippi carries its load in the same way. Even when streams are not in flood, they carry sediment, though its amount then is less. Some of them carry so little that their waters seem clear, while others, like the Missouri, are always muddy. Since most river-waters finally reaches the sea, much of the sediment which they carry reaches the ocean sooner or later, and is deposited there, chiefly near the shores.

The amount of material which certain streams carry from the land to the sea has been estimated. The estimate for a given river is made by calculating the volume of water discharged by the river each year, and then determining the average amount of sediment in each unit—for example each cubic foot—of water. In this way it has been estimated that the Mississippi River carries to the Gulf about 340,000,000 tons of sediment each year,

or nearly a million tons a day. It would take more than 750 daily trains of 50 cars each, each car carrying 25 tons, to carry an equal

FIG. 92.—Map showing normal drainage relations. Each stream flows in a depression. The largest stream has the largest valley. Streams of smaller size have smaller valleys, while the valleys of the smallest streams are very small. A few miles southwest of Scio, O. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

amount of sand and mud to the Gulf. All the rivers of the earth are perhaps carrying to the sea many times as much as the Mississippi.

We have seen that ground-water dissolves rock matter, and that springs bring some of this dissolved matter to the streams.

Streams, therefore, carry certain substances such as salt, carbonate of lime, etc., in solution. These dissolved substances are generally invisible, and, unlike mud and other sediment, remain in the water even after it has become quiet. In some spring water the dissolved substances can be tasted; but this is rarely the case in river waters. On evaporating the water, however, as by continued boiling, the dissolved substances are left behind, as on the inside of tea-kettles, boilers, etc.

The Mississippi River is estimated to carry 136,400,000 tons of dissolved mineral matter to the sea yearly, and the amount

Fig. 93.—A gully developed by a single shower. (Blackwelder.)

carried yearly in this way by all rivers has been estimated to be about one-third as much as the sediment carried in suspension.

These general statements show that rivers constantly are shifting solid matter from land to sea. This is, indeed, their great work. Even the water which falls on the land, but does not flow directly to the sea, helps to make the rock decay (p. 92), and so prepares it for removal by running water. It may therefore be said that *every drop of water which falls on the land has for its mission the getting of the land into the sea.*

Load and loading. The sediment moved by a stream, whether it be in suspension or at the bottom, is its *load.* A stream is *loaded* when it has all the sediment it can carry; it is partly

loaded when it is carrying less than it might. How does a stream get its load?

As rain-water begins to flow down the slopes of the land, it picks up and carries with it particles of soil, subsoil, etc.; that is, particles of mantle rock. The result is that the water which runs down slopes after a rain carries sediment to the stream which it enters. This is especially true if the immediate run-off flows

Fig. 94.—Slope with numerous gullies, the smaller ones joining the larger ones. Scott's Bluff, Neb. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

over cultivated or abandoned fields. The water which flows down freshly plowed slopes, for example, is usually very muddy, while that which runs over slopes well covered with vegetation, such as grass-land or forest, carries away little soil, because the vegetation holds it. Gullies develop in many plowed fields which lie on slopes, when adjacent fields which are not cultivated do not suffer in the same way. The loosening of soil on hill and mountain slopes may lead to its removal, and in some parts of France, in the southern part of our own country, and elsewhere, slopes which once were productive have become barren by the washing away of the soil.

The amount of sediment carried by the immediate run-off from the slopes is greater, other things being equal, where the

water is concentrated into streamlets, and less where it runs off in sheets. It is under the former condition that little gullies are made (Fig. 93). Gullies are themselves proof that erosion is greater along their courses than on either side, for it was the greater erosion along their sites which made them.

Much of the sediment of streams is brought to them by the immediate run-off which flows down the slopes of their valleys.

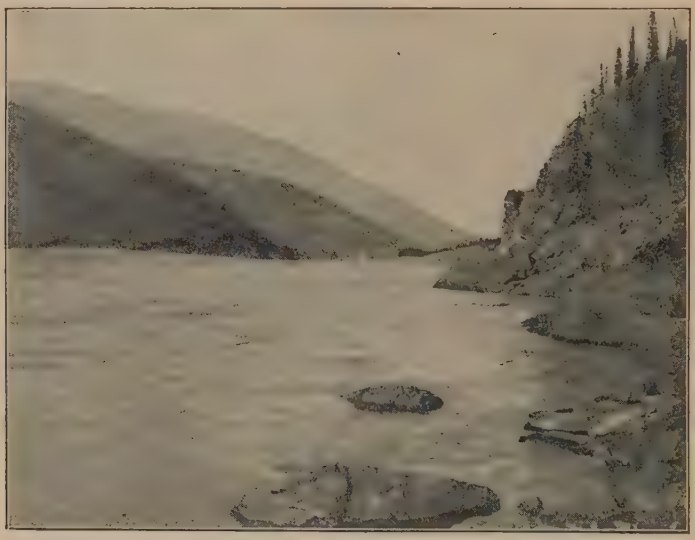


FIG. 95.—A "boiling" or eddying stream. Woods Canyon, Alaska. (Spencer, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

But the stream in the valley carries away not only the sediment which is brought to it by sheet-wash and temporary streamlets from the slopes above, but under favorable conditions it gathers load for itself from its bed and from its banks. This is true, for example, wherever the bed of a vigorous stream is composed of clay or sand, for particles of these materials are easily loosened and hurried along in the current.

The stream does not pick up sediment from its bed merely by the force of the forward movement of the water. We are not to think of a stream as a single straightforward current. When water runs through an open ditch or gutter, some of it may be seen to move from sides to center, and some from center to sides,

while eddies are of common occurrence. These subordinate motions are especially distinct where the current is swift. Many swift rivers "boil" and eddy (Fig. 95) in a striking manner. In the swift Columbia, for example, eddies are often so strong that it is difficult to row through them. In an eddying current, objects often are "sucked under" and brought up again. There are similar movements, though commonly less readily seen, in slower streams.

FIG. 96.—Diagram to illustrate the effect of irregularities, *a* and *b*, in a stream's bed, on the current striking them.

All these phenomena show that there are numerous subordinate currents in the main current of a river, and that they move in various directions. Many of them are caused by the irregularities of the stream's bed (Fig. 96), from which they diverge in various directions. The subordinate upward currents in the main current carry sediment up from the bottom of the stream; that is, they bring it into suspension. When these subordinate currents strike the sides or bottom of a stream's channel, they dislodge bits of loose matter. These subordinate currents not only help to get fine sediment into suspension, but they help to keep it there, as we shall see.

There are two reasons why a stream which is clear or nearly so at the usual stage of water, becomes muddy when it is swollen. One is that in time of flood there is more immediate run-off entering the stream, and this brings abundant sediment: the other is that the stream when flooded flows much more swiftly than at other times, and so has power to rub off and pick up much more sediment from its bed.

It might seem from these statements that all swift streams should be muddy and all slow ones clear; but this is not the case. Many a swift stream, especially in the mountains, is remarkably clear, while some sluggish ones are always muddy. The reason is not far to seek. Even a swift stream is clear (1) if immediate run-off (slope-wash) and tributaries bring it no sediment, and (2) if the materials of its own bed are so coarse that it cannot pick them up. The clearness of many swift mountain streams is due to the fact that there is no mud or sand or fine material of

any sort in their beds or banks, while the muddiness of many sluggish streams in plains, such as the Lower Missouri and the Platte, is due to the fact that their bottoms and banks are of such fine material that even their slow currents can get and carry it.

Again, the stream by friction with its bed tends to drag the loose sediment at its bottom along with it, somewhat as a weight of any sort pulled over a surface of mud drags some of the mud

Fig. 97.—Tools with which a river works. These cobblestones and small bowlders were brought down by the stream in flood, and left where they now appear. Other similar materials now in transit cause the riffles in the current. Chelan River, Wash., just above its junction with the Columbia. (Willis, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

beneath along with it. Every stream, therefore, which is not already loaded wears its bed, if it is of soft material such as mud, by (1) friction of the main current, (2) impact of the subordinate currents, and (3) by urging or dragging along the fine material of its bed.

But some river valleys are in solid rock, even in rock which is very hard (Fig. 25). How are such valleys made?

In the first place, rock exposed to the water, as in a stream's channel, or to the atmosphere, decays. As it decays it crumbles, and the crumbled part readily is swept away. Again, the sand and gravel rolled along by a stream (Fig. 97) wear its bed, even if it is of hard rock. The sediment which a stream carries, therefore, becomes the tool, or, better, a collection of tools, with which the water works, and with these tools even hard rock is worn away.

Clear water flowing over a bed of firm, hard rock effects little or no mechanical wear. This is well shown in the case of relatively clear streams like the Niagara. Tiny plants, like those which make moist stone walls green, often may be seen growing on the limestone of its bed where the water is shallow enough to allow the bed to be seen. This is the case even at the brink of the falls where the current is very swift, and all the force of the mighty torrent is unable to sweep these tiny plants from their moorings. If the stream had a moderate load of sand or mud there can be no doubt that these plants would be swept away with great dispatch. The sediment carried by a stream is therefore a factor which influences its rate of erosion, especially where the bed is of solid rock.

Carrying. It already has been stated that streams move their load (sediment) (1) by rolling it along their bottoms, and (2) by carrying it in suspension above the bottoms. Coarse materials, such as pebbles, generally are rolled, while fine materials, such as particles of mud, are likely to be suspended.

The material rolled on the bottom is moved directly by the force of the water. Each pebble which is moved is pushed or rolled along by the water which strikes against it. The principle is the same as that involved in the movement of pebbles on a beach, except that the stream always carries them down the valley, instead of rolling them back and forth.

Mud is composed chiefly of fine particles of rock, which are nearly three times as heavy as water. In spite of this, they remain in suspension, some of them for long periods of time. The mud is kept in suspension much as dust is kept in suspension in the air. Since its particles are heavier than the water, they tend to sink all the time. They do in fact sink; but as they sink under the influence of gravity they may be caught by minor upward currents and carried upward in spite of gravity. *It is chiefly by means of these minor upward currents in the main current that sediment is kept in suspension.* Because of the manner in which fine sediment is carried in suspension, it helps to deepen and widen the valley of the carrying stream. As the minor upward currents of a stream carry sediment upward through the water, so minor downward currents drive it against the bottom, and minor sideward currents against the sides of the channel. In these ways even the fine sediment helps the stream to enlarge its valley.

The particles of sediment suspended in a stream are dropped and picked up again repeatedly. A particle may make a long journey, but the long journey may be made up of many short ones. Particles of mud carried from Dakota to the Gulf of Mexico probably make many stops in every state along the route, and the time consumed in their journey is generally many times as long as that consumed by the water which started them.

Amount of load. The amount of sediment a stream carries depends on (1) its velocity, (2) its volume, and (3) the amount

FIG. 98.—A stream channel clogged with bowlders too big for the stream to move, except in times of flood.

and kind of sediment available. A swift, large stream can carry more than a slow, small one.

The effect of velocity on the carrying power of streams may be seen in most creeks and rivers whose width varies notably. At the narrow places, the swift water is likely to carry away all fine material, permitting only coarse pebbles and stones to remain on the bottom, while in the broader places the bottom may be covered with mud. By artificially narrowing (by jetties) the Mississippi near its debouchure (1875), James B. Eads not only prevented further deposition of sediment there, but forced the river to clear out its channel. This change permitted the larger ocean vessels to reach New Orleans, and insured the commercial prosperity of that city.

That fine sediment is picked up and carried more readily than coarse is illustrated by the familiar fact that a stone a pound in weight thrown into any common stream would sink to the bottom promptly, while if a pound of fine dust were thrown into the same stream, its particles would be carried forward some distance before sinking to the bottom.

A stream can carry a much greater weight of fine sediment than of coarse, both because each pound of fine material carried taxes the stream's energy less than a pound of coarse, and because a larger part of a stream's energy can be used in carrying the former than in carrying the latter.

Erosion defined. The wearing away of the land surface is *erosion.* In general, erosion consists of three more or less distinct processes. These are (1) *weathering,* (2) *corrasion,* or the picking up of the rock material loosened by weathering or by any other process, and (3) *transportation.* The solution of rock material by water often is included under corrasion; but it would be well to call it *corrosion* instead. When the running water is no longer able to carry away sediment, it ceases to degrade its bed.

Deposition a consequence of erosion. Sediment carried by rivers is deposited whenever they are unable to carry it farther. The commonest cause of deposition is loss of velocity. Some of the sediment is left in the valleys, especially in their lower courses; and some of it is carried to the sea, or to the lake or other basin to which the river flows. Deposits of sediment in valleys build up or *aggrade* their bottoms. Thus the Mississippi is spreading sediment over the bottom of its valley for hundreds of miles north of the Gulf of Mexico, and many other large streams, like the Nile, the Hoang-Ho, and the Ganges, are doing the same sort of thing. The amount of aggradation accomplished by running water on land is, however, far less than the amount of degradation. The deposition of sediment by streams will be more fully considered in its appropriate place.

Changes Made by Rivers in Their Valleys

A valley has three dimensions, depth, width, and length, and each dimension is subject to change.

The deepening of valleys. Eroding streams make their valleys deeper and wider. Where streams are depositing, that is, where they leave more than they take away, they are making their

valleys shallower. Most swift streams deepen their valleys, while some slow ones make their valleys shallower. Many valleys are being deepened in their upper courses where the streams are swifter, and made shallow in their lower courses where streams are more sluggish.

Swift streams are swift because they flow in channels which have relatively steep slopes; but as such streams deepen their valleys, the slopes or *gradients* of the valley bottoms become less, and the streams flow more slowly. *In time every swift stream will cut its channel so low that its current will become sluggish.*

There is no fixed relation between the depth of a valley on the one hand and erosion or deposition in its bottom on the other. Some deep valleys, like the canyon of the Colorado (Fig. 25), are becoming deeper by erosion, while some shallow valleys are becoming shallower by deposition. Some deep valleys, on the other hand, are being aggraded, and some shallow ones are being degraded.

The depth which a valley may attain depends primarily on the height of the land in which it is cut. The higher the land, the deeper the valley may become. Such valleys as the canyons of the Colorado (Fig. 25) and the Yellowstone (Fig. 132) are never found in plains (compare Figs. 85 and 130). *Valleys of great depth are characteristic of plateaus and mountains.* With land of a given height, the depth which a valley may attain depends on its distance from the sea by the route which the water follows. If a stream flows by a direct course from a plateau 2000 feet above the sea and 200 miles from it, it has an average fall of 10 feet per mile; but if it runs off a plateau of equal height 2000 miles from the sea by the course which the water follows, the stream has an average fall of but one foot per mile. If the volume of the stream is the same in the two cases, the valley in the plateau nearer the sea will become much deeper than the other. In other words, the depth which a valley may attain depends primarily on the fall (or gradient) of the water which flows through it. Valleys near the borders of continents are therefore likely to be deeper than those in lands of the same elevation ir the interiors of continents.

Depth-limit. At their lower ends, most streams cut their channels down to, or even a little below, the level of the lake, sea, or other river into which they flow. *The body of water into which*

a river flows determines the depth-limit of its valley; but the valley reaches this limit only at its lower end. The upper end of a river valley is always above sea-level.

The lowest level to which a stream can bring its valley bottom by mechanical wear is the level of *base-level*. If a stream develops a broad flat at this level, the broad flat is a base-level. Any *large area* reduced to essential flatness by the erosion of running water is a base-level.

It is to be noted that a stream's *channel* may be below sea-level at and near its lower end. The channel of the Mississippi is below sea-level for some distance above the mouth of the stream, and locally as much as 100 feet below. The broad valley plain of the Mississippi, on the other hand, is just above sea-level in the same region.

Many conditions affect the rate at which a stream erodes, and everything which affects the rate of erosion affects the length of time which it will take a stream to bring the bottom of its valley to base-level. Other things being equal, a large stream will bring the bottom of its valley down to the level of base-level sooner than a small one, and any stream will bring its channel down to this level in weak rock sooner than in resistant rock.

The widening of valleys. If the growth of a valley were due merely to the down-cutting of its stream, the valley would be no wider than the stream which flows through it (Fig. 99, see also Figs. 24 and 25). Since most valleys are very much wider than their streams, other factors besides down-cutting must be involved in their development.

FIG. 99.—Diagram of a valley, the top of which is ten times the width of the stream.

Most valleys are much wider at their tops than at their bottoms, and all valleys are being made wider all the time. The widening is brought about in many ways. Some of them are the following:

(1) A stream sometimes flows against one side of its channel with such force as to under-cut the slope above (Pl. VIII and Fig. 100). The material under-cut is likely to fall or slide down, and this makes the valley wider than before. Slow streams widen their

valleys more than swift ones, partly because they are more easily turned against their banks by any sort of obstacle in the channel.

(2) Again, some of the rain falling on the slopes of a valley runs down to the bottom and is likely to carry mud, sand, and

FIG. 100.—River under-cutting its bank and widening its valley by planation where the material is unconsolidated sand, gravel, etc.

coarser materials with it. Such transportation widens the valley by slowly wearing back its slopes.

(3) The loose earthy matter which lies on the slopes of a valley is creeping slowly downward. The movement is brought about in

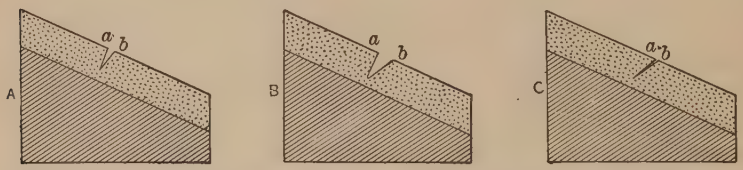
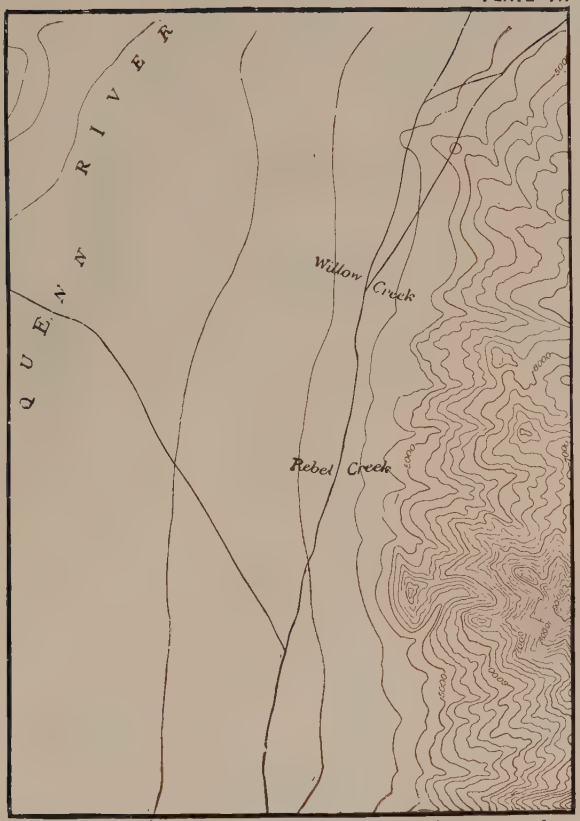


FIG. 101.—Diagram to illustrate the effects of drying and wetting on a clay slope. In *A* the clay is drying and cracking open. In *B* the process has gone further, and it is *b* which has moved down, while *a* remains where it was in *A*. *C* represents the same after it has been wet again and the crack closed, chiefly by the moving down of *a* rather than the moving up of *b*.

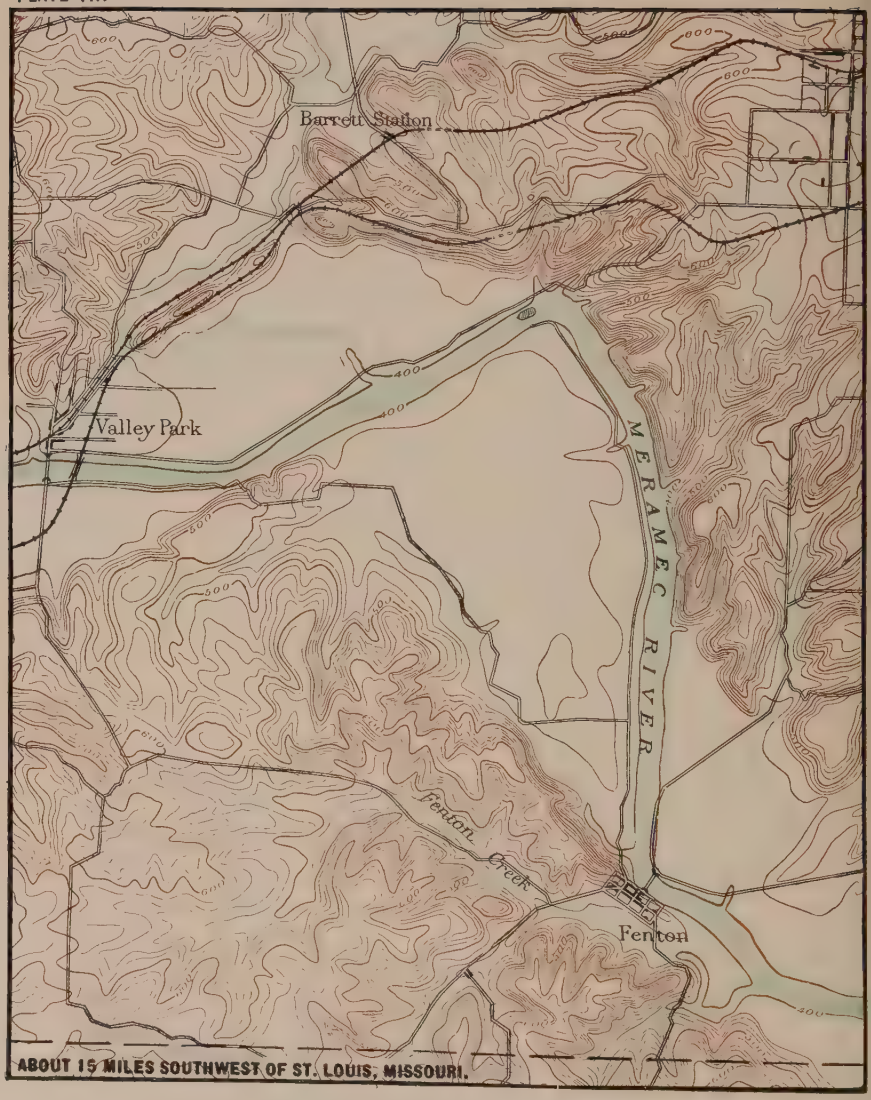
various ways. (*a*) If the material is clay, it contracts when dry, and as it contracts, it cracks. The gaping of the crack is due

PLATE VII



Streams disappearing in the sand, gravel, etc., at the base of mountains in an arid region. Scale 4— miles per inch. Contour interval 200 feet. (Paradise, Nev., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE VIII



A stream widening its valley by lateral planation. Scale 1— miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

chiefly to the downward movement of the clay on the down-slope side (*A*, Fig. 101). Cracking of the same sort (Fig. 102) may be seen where a pool or pond has dried up, though creep is not in-

FIG. 102.—Drying-cracks in the flood plain of the Missouri. (Chamberlin).

volved. When the cracked clay on a slope becomes wet again, as by rain, the clay swells and the cracks are closed; but the

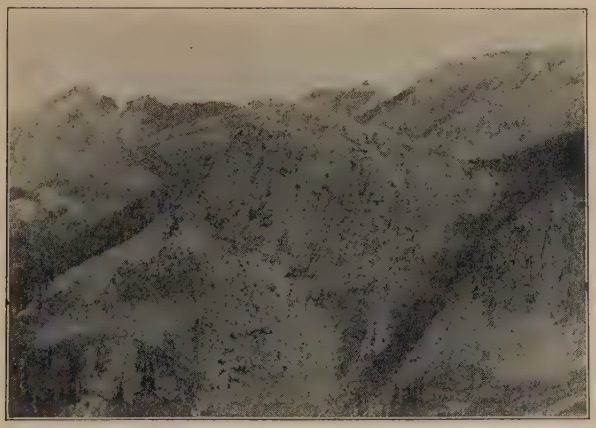


FIG. 103.—Slumping on the side of a valley, two miles southeast of Trout Lake, near Telluride, Colo. The tilted mass in the central foreground has slumped down from the higher land to the right. (Hole.)

swelling takes place in such a way that the cracks are closed chiefly by the moving down of the clay on the upper side of the crack

(*C*, Fig. 101), not by the moving up of the clay on the lower side. This is because gravity helps to pull the clay down, while upward movement, if it took place, would have to take place against gravity. (*b*) Again, clayey material tends to become a viscous fluid when wet, and in so far as it takes on fluidity, it tends to creep or flow down-slope (p. 93). Friction, the roots of plants, etc., on the other hand, tend to restrain its descent. All down-

FIG. 104.— Talus at base of valley slope, ready to be carried off by the stream. Little Canyon—looking south into Snake River. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

ward movement of this sort tends to widen the valley, for the material descending is carried away by the stream when it reaches the bottom of the valley.

(4) When the loose material of the steep valley slope is thoroughly filled with water, as after a long rain or when snow is melting, it may slide or *slump* from higher to lower levels (Fig. 103). Slumping is common on steep valley slopes composed of unconsolidated material like clay. Slumping widens the valley at the point whence it starts. Material descending the slopes in this as in other ways sooner or later is carried away by the rivers.

(5) Every animal which walks over the slope of a valley is likely to loosen more or less material if the slope is steep, and if this material is moved at all, it is likely to be moved downward. Burrowing animals of all sorts loosen the surface material and

prepare it to be worked down the slope readily. All these processes help to widen the valley.

(6) Trees which grow on the sides of valleys may be overturned. Whenever they fall, they disturb more or less earthy matter, and some of it is likely to roll down if the slopes are steep. If they are not, the material loosened may be carried down by slope-wash or by other means.

(7) Some fine material is blown from the slopes of valleys.

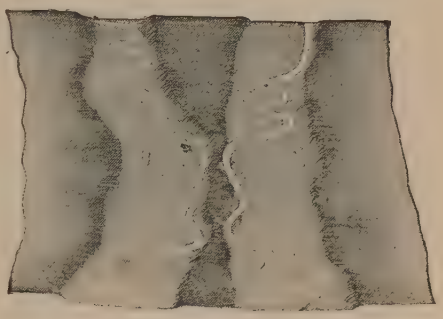


FIG. 105.—Diagram showing streams in adjacent valleys, under-cutting the divide between them. They may, in time, destroy the divide by lateral planation.

Various other processes also are in operation, helping to loosen rock or soil on the slopes, and all processes which loosen material in this position prepare it for descent, and the descent or removal of matter from the slopes of a valley always increases its width. *All valleys, therefore, are being widened all the time.* In most processes of widening, the stream itself is an important factor, for it carries away much of the material which descends the slopes. Along the bases of the slopes of many valleys there is much debris (*talus*) ready to be carried away (Fig. 104).

As a result of all the processes which wear back their slopes, adjacent valleys may be widened until the divide between them is worn away (Figs. 105 and 106). More commonly, however, the divide between valleys becomes low without disappearing altogether (Fig. 107, 5).

Valley flats. As already implied, streams, after they have cut their channels down to low gradients, develop flats, or *flood plains*, in the bottoms of their valleys. These flats are always below the level of the surface in which the valley lies. Thus the Mississippi River at Dubuque has a flat between one and two miles wide, about 300 feet below its surroundings, and about 600 feet above sea-level. Near St. Louis the flat is 10 miles wide, about 150 feet below its surroundings, and about 400 feet above sea-level. At Memphis it is about 35 miles wide and but 220 feet

above sea-level. At Vicksburg it has a similar width and a height of but 90 feet. Though increasing width of flat down-stream is characteristic of valleys in general, it must not be understood that the increase of width is uniform. Narrower portions (as where the

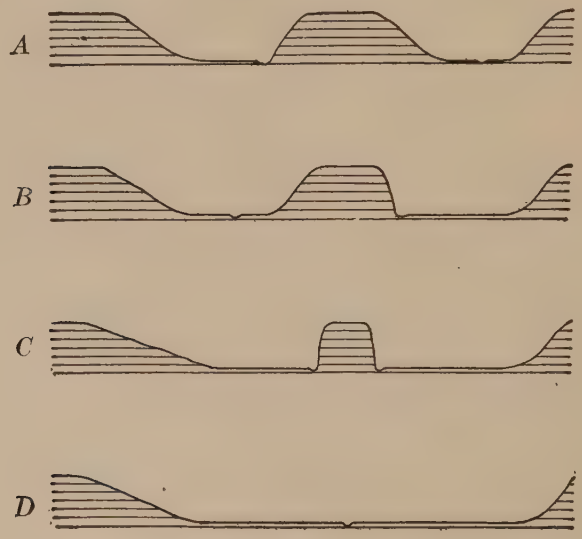


Fig. 106.—Diagram to show how the divide between streams may be done away with by lateral planation. In *A* the stream at the left is represented as under-cutting the divide between the two valleys. Later, by shifting of its channel, the stream in the other valley might undercut the other slope of the divide, as shown in *B*. In *C* both streams are represented as under-cutting the divide between them, and in *D* the divide has been done away with.

rock is more resistant) may alternate with wider ones (where the rock is less resistant).

Combining these facts with a generalization previously made, we may say (1) that rivers tend constantly to get the material of the land into the sea; (2) that in working to this end they develop flats below the general level of the surface in which the valleys lie; and (3) that these flats are, in general, wider and lower near the sea, and narrower and higher far from it. Plates VIII to X and Figs. 108 and 109 show valley flats in various sorts of regions.

Most valley flats are developed chiefly by the side-cutting of the streams (Pl. VIII) after they have become sluggish. The

streams which flow through flats generally meander, that is, they have very winding courses (Pls. IX, X, and XI).

The valley flat is *the beginning of a base-level*, though the first flat developed by a stream normally is not the lowest level to which

FIG. 107.—Diagram to illustrate the leveling of the surface by valley erosion. The ground profile represented at the top shows two young valleys, 1 and 1, in an otherwise flat surface. In time these valleys will develop the cross-sections represented by 2, 2, and later those represented by 3, 3, 4, 4, etc. The divide between them may finally reach 5, when the surface is nearly flat.

it may bring its valley bottom. *It is the lowest level to which the stream can bring its valley under the conditions which exist when the flat is developed.* If this flat becomes very wide, it is *a temporary base-level*, and serves as the limit below which tributary streams

FIG. 108.—A valley flat in an early stage of development. Monte Cristo Creek, Alaska. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

may not cut. Later, under changed conditions, the stream may sink its channel below its first flat, and when this is done by a main stream, all its tributaries may do the same.

Lengthening of valleys. Valleys are lengthened, too, in various ways. Illustration of one way is furnished by the gullies developed on hillsides during heavy rains. The gully made during one rain-

FIG. 109.—A wide valley flat. Milk River near Pendant d'Oreille, Canada. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 110.—Trout Creek, Yellowstone Park. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

storm is lengthened at its upper end (headward) during the next by the water which flows in at its head. The process of lengthening sometimes may be seen even during the progress of a single storm.

The heads of many valleys have the characteristics of ravines or gullies. Valleys are, indeed, in some cases no more than grown up ravines which still are working their heads inland, after the manner of hillside gullies.

By this process the head of a valley may advance until a *permanent divide* is established. Thus in Fig. 111 the heads of the

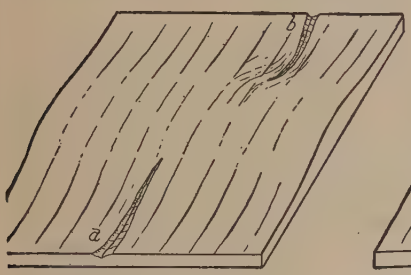


Fig. 111.

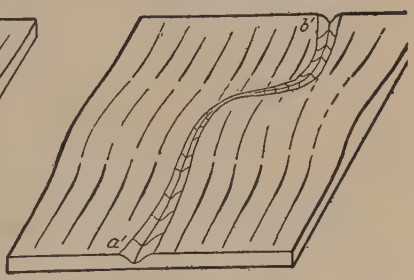


Fig. 112.

Fig. 111.—Two young valleys heading toward each other.
Fig. 112.—Valleys of Fig. 111 developed headward until their respective heads have met and the divide has been lowered a little at the point of meeting.

valleys, *a* and *b*, may be worn back farther into the upland; but when the heads of the valleys reach the points shown in Fig. 112, neither can advance farther, *if the rates of erosion are the same on both sides of the divide.* The divide is then permanent, for though continued rainfall may lower it, it cannot shift its position (Fig. 113).

It is not to be understood that all valleys are being lengthened at their heads in this way. Thus the head of the St. Lawrence River is at the foot of Lake Ontario, and will remain there as long as the lake shore remains where it now is.

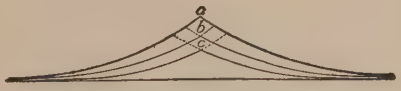


Fig. 113.—Diagram to illustrate the lowering of a divide without shifting it. The crest of the divide is at *a*, *b*, and *c* successively. If the erosion was unequal on the two sides, the divide would be shifted.

In its growth in length, the head of one valley may reach another valley, when the two become one. This is illustrated by Fig. 114. Some streams are lengthened at their lower ends. This is the case where the sediment which they deposit at their debouchures

(lower ends) builds the land out into the sea. The streams then find their way across the new-made land. Across such lands the streams have channels, but never valleys of much depth. There are various other ways in which valleys become longer, but they will not be considered at this point.

Summary. All valleys are being made deeper in at least some part of their courses all the time; all valleys are being made wider all the time; and some valleys are growing longer. All streams sooner or later develop flats in their valleys, and these

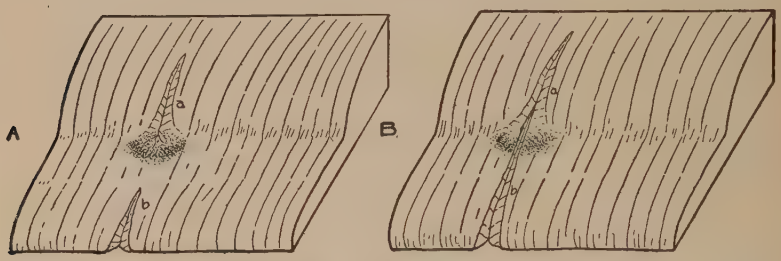


FIG. 114.—Diagram to illustrate one mode of valley lengthening. In *A* there are two small valleys, *a* and *b*, and the former ends at the base of the steep slope. In *B* the valley *b* is represented as having been lengthened so as to join *a*, and the two have become one.

flats may increase in width till the divides between them are worn away. Where the divides between streams are not worn away by the lateral planation of the streams, they may become so low as to be inconspicuous. In either case, the area affected becomes nearly flat at a level as low as running water can cut it. The land is then base-leveled.

The History of a River System

Since valleys grow deeper, wider, and longer year by year, they formerly must have been smaller than now. If, in imagination, we trace them backward in their history, we may think of a time when the large valleys of the present day were small, when the small valleys were only ravines, when the ravines were only gullies, and when the present gullies did not exist. Or, going still further back, we may imagine a time when even the large valleys had a beginning.

A principal method of valley birth and growth is illustrated by the development of a gully. The rain-water which falls on the

surface tends to gather in such depressions as exist, and to flow through them down the slopes. The water concentrated in the depressions flows faster than that not so concentrated, and wears the surface there more than elsewhere, and starts a gully. The

FIG. 115.—Gullies developing on easily eroded soil. Clear Lake, Cal. Every shower will cause them to grow headward. (Fairbanks.)

gully started during one shower is made deeper, wider, and longer by the next. Year by year, as the result of repeated showers and repeated meltings of snows, the gully may become a ravine, and still later, by the same processes, the ravine may become a valley. A hillside gully is essentially like a river valley except in size, and many valleys are but gullies grown big.

FIG. 116.—Diagram illustrating how one gully takes another as a result of lateral erosion.

Not all gullies, however, become valleys, and not all valleys start as gullies. On a steep slope, numerous gullies may start (Fig. 115); but as they grow, some are so widened as to take in others (Fig. 116), and the number is reduced. Relatively few gullies become ravines, fewer still become small

valleys, and very few valleys attain great size. As valleys develop from gullies, the heads of some work back faster than others, with the result that many valleys are arrested in their development early, and so are dwarfed (Fig. 117). For example, *g*, Fig. 117*A*, will grow in length little more, because the water which falls on

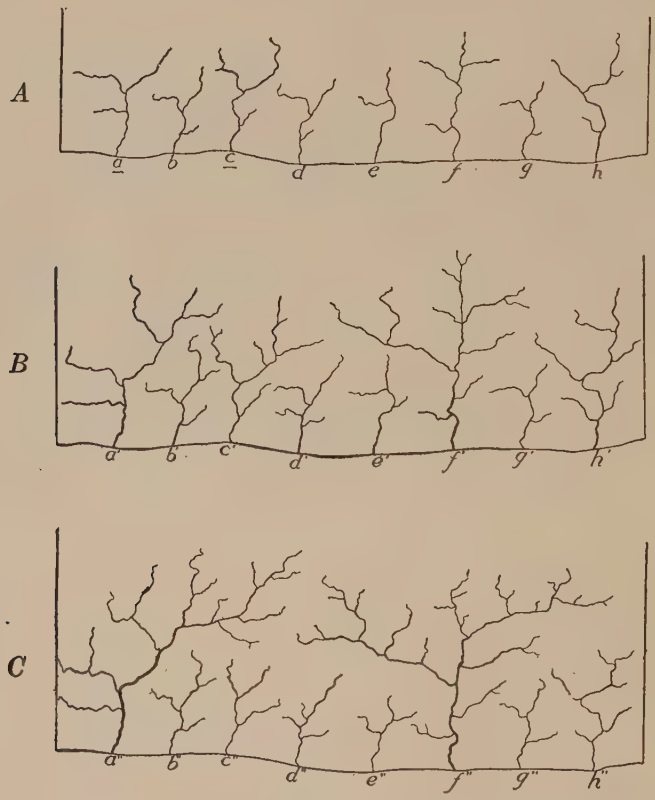


FIG. 117.—Diagrams illustrating successive stages in the struggle for existence and dominion among streams.

the land above its head flows off by some other route to the sea. Later stages in the development of these valleys are illustrated by Fig. 117, *B* and *C*. The contest among gullies and valleys, resulting in the survival of a few and the exceptional development of a very small number, may be called a *struggle for existence.*

Courses of valleys. The headward growth of a gully is due chiefly to the erosion of the water which flows into its upper end. If the material about the upper end of a gully is of uniform hardness, the head of the gully works back in the direction from which the greatest volume of water enters. Unevenness of the surface about the head of the gully may concentrate the inflowing water now at this point and now at that, as the head of the gully advances. Consequently the head of the gully rarely is worn back in a straight line. It turns to the right (b', Fig. 118) where more water comes in from that side, and to the left (b'') where there is more inflow and wear on that side.

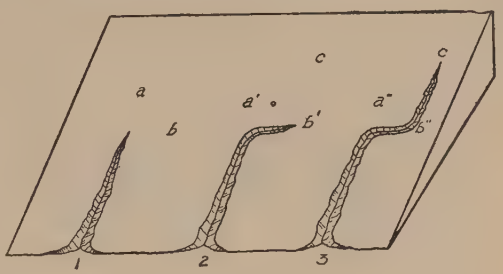


FIG. 118.— Diagram to illustrate the direction of lengthening of a valley. At 1 the valley is straight. If at this stage more water comes in from the direction b than from the direction a, the wear is greater toward b than toward a, and the head turns as shown in 2. If at this stage more water comes in from the direction c than from any other direction, the head turns in this direction, as shown in 3.

If the material about the head of the gully is less hard at one point than at another, the head of the gully will work back on the material which is worn most easily, even though the amount of water flowing in from that direction is no greater than that coming in elsewhere. Inequalities of slope or material, therefore, cause the gully's head to turn now to one side and now to the other, and where the gully's head goes, there the valley which develops from it follows, if the gully reaches valley-hood. The crookedness of many valleys is thus explained.

The permanent stream. In a gully, water commonly flows only when it rains and when the snow is melting, and for a short time afterward; but many valleys were developed from gullies, and sooner or later most valleys have permanent streams. Where does the water for the permanent stream come from?

The answer to this question may be inferred readily. When a valley has been deepened so that its bottom is well below the ground-water surface, the ground-water seeps or flows out into

the valley, and once in the valley in sufficient quantity, it becomes a stream (Fig. 119). The valley whose cross-section is shown by 1, Fig. 119, would not have a stream; the valley whose cross-section is represented by 2 would have a stream in wet weather, when the ground-water level is at *a*; while the valley 3 would have a permanent stream because it is well below the ground-water level, *b*, of dry times. In regions where the ground-water surface is deep, the valley must be deep to get a stream. In regions where the ground-water surface is near the land surface, even shallow valleys may have permanent streams.

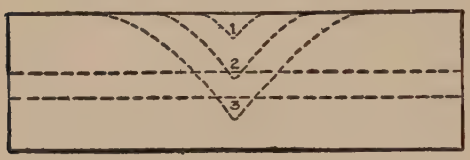


FIG. 119.—Diagram showing ground-water surface: *a* the ground-water surface at ordinary times, and *b* in times of drought. When a valley has been cut below *a* there will be a stream in wet weather, but it will go dry in time of drought. When the valley is down to 3 below the ground-water surface of dry weather the stream will be permanent.

Streams which are fed by lakes and streams which have their sources in snow- and ice-fields which persist from year to year, are not immediately dependent on ground-water, though many of them receive it.

Not all valleys are grown-up gullies. Not all valleys were formed by the growth of gullies. A great area in the northern part of North America, for example, once was covered by a great sheet of snow and ice. When it finally melted, large parts of the surface were left without well-defined valleys, but with numerous lakes. The rainfall of the region was enough to make many of these lakes overflow. When a lake overflows, the outgoing water follows the lowest line accessible to it, so long as there is a line of descent. In this case, the running water will start to cut a valley all the way from the lake which furnishes the water to the end of the stream, at the same time. No part of such a valley is much older than another. Valleys developed in this way may have permanent streams at the outset, since they are not dependent on ground-water. The course of a valley developed in this way was not determined by the direction in which the head of the valley grew, but by the direction which the water took at the outset, that is, by the course of the lowest descending slope.

Growth of tributaries. Most valleys are joined by many smaller tributary valleys. The reason may be understood by the study of a gully. If the slopes of a gully were worn back everywhere at the same rate, tributaries would not develop; but the sides are rarely or never worn back equally. Either the material is softer at some places than at others, or the water flowing down the slopes is concentrated along some lines more than along others. In either case the erosion of the side slopes is greater along some lines than along others, and where erosion on the slope of a main gully is greater than at adjacent points, a tributary gully is started (Fig. 120). Tributary gullies therefore are developed in the same way, and for the same reason, as the larger ones from which they grow. The tributary gully grows in length, width, and depth as its main did, and in time it may become a valley and acquire a permanent stream. Tributaries to the tributaries are developed in turn, until a network of watercourses affects the surface. Figs. 121 and 122 show surfaces in this condition. A valley developed by outflow from a lake develops tributaries in the same way as one developed from a gully. Such a valley also might get tributaries by the inflow of water from other lakes.

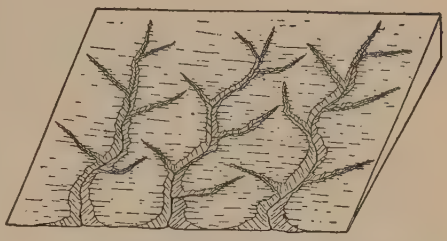


FIG. 120.—Diagram showing tributaries in an early stage of development.

FIG. 121.—Diagrammatic representation of a surface much dissected by the development of numerous tributaries.

A valley and its tributaries constitute a *valley system.* A stream and its tributaries constitute a *drainage system,* and the area drained by a river system through a valley system is a *drainage basin.* From the conditions under which a valley system develops, the outline of many drainage basins comes to be rudely pear-shaped (Fig. 123).

Stages in the history of a valley. We have seen that valleys normally grow as they advance in years. When a valley is *young*, it is narrow, and its slopes are steep. If the land is high, it has

FIG. 122.—Contour map of the area shown in Fig. 90, representing the same type of surface shown in Fig. 121.

a high gradient (unless far from the sea) and soon becomes deep. Its cross-section is then somewhat V-shaped (Fig. 124), and its tributaries are short. The *mature valley* is wider (Fig. 125), its slopes are, as a rule, gentler, and its tributaries are longer and older.

An *old valley* is wide, has a broad flat or flood plain, and a low gradient.

A stream also, as well as its valley, passes from youth to maturity, and from maturity to old age. In its youth it is likely to be swift and impetuous, unless it flows through low land. In maturity it is much steadier in its flow, and when it reaches old

Fig. 123.—Map of the principal streams of southern New Jersey, and outlines of their basins, shown in dotted lines.

age it meanders through its wide plain. Even an old stream, however, may take on the vigor of youth when it is flooded.

The terms *youth*, *maturity*, and *old age* also are applied to river systems. Every river system, aided by weathering, has entered upon the task of carrying to the sea all the land of its basin which is above base-level. So long as the river system has the larger part of its task before it, it is *young* (Fig. 1, Pl. XII). In youth the land is ill drained and may have many ponds and lakes (Pl. III). When the main valleys have become wide and

FIG. 124.—A young V-shaped valley, the Stehekin River, Wash. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 125.—A valley much older than that shown in Fig. 124, Gray Copper Gulch, southwestern Colorado. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

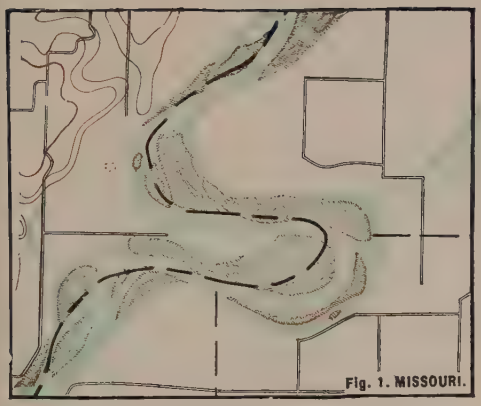


FIG. 1.—A meandering stream. The Missouri River. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 50 feet. (Marshall, Mo., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

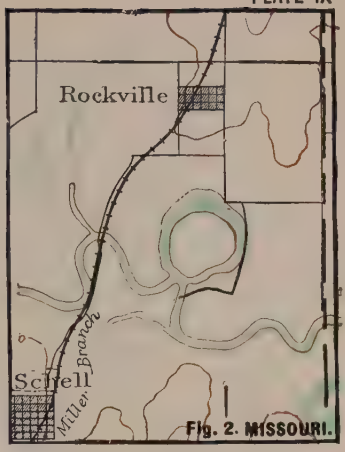


FIG. 2.—A further stage in the development of a meander. The Schell River, Missouri. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 50 feet. (Butler, Mo., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

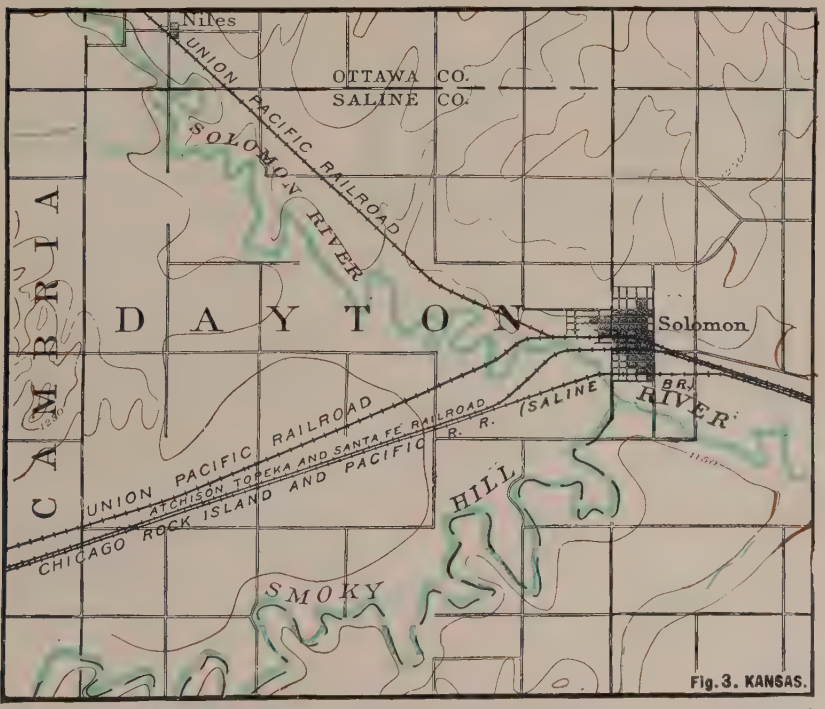
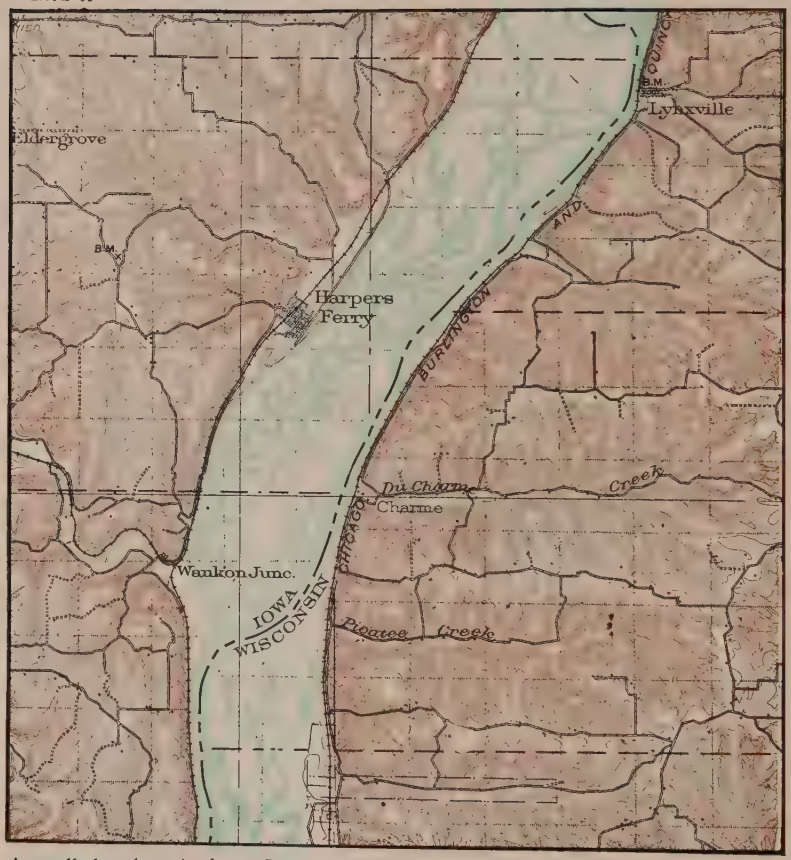
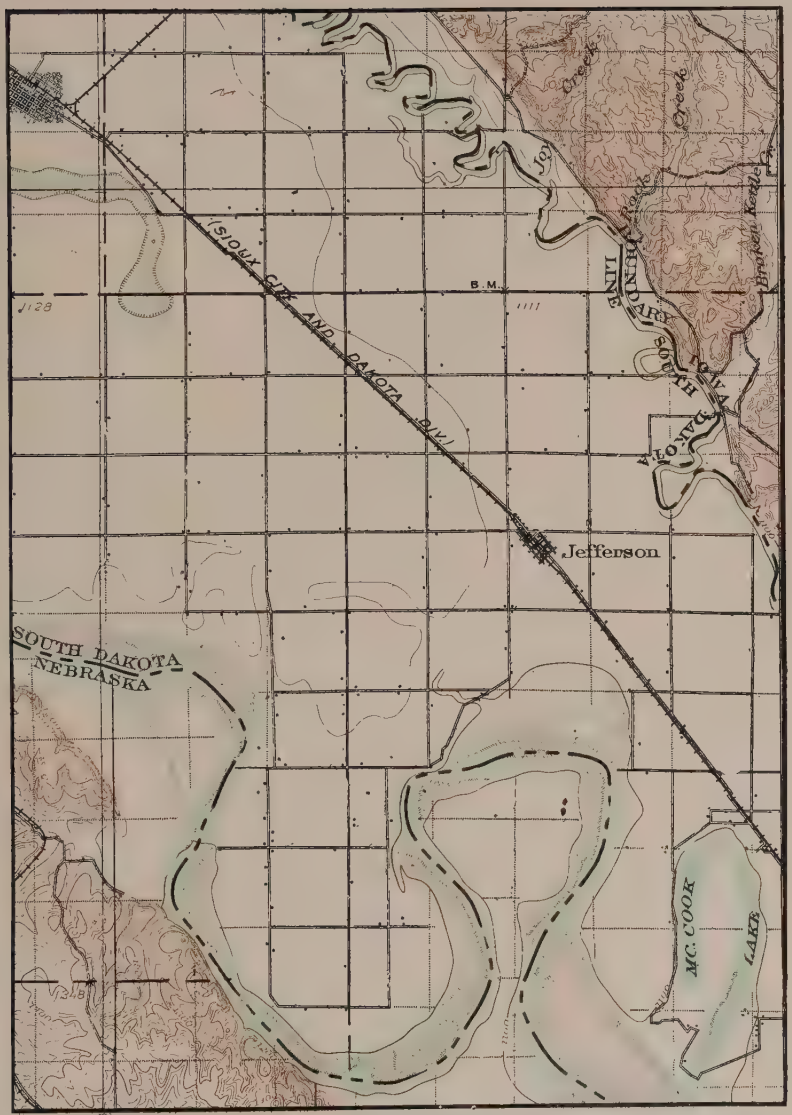


FIG. 3.—A plain in old age. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 50 feet. (Abilene, Kan., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE X



A well-developed river flat. Valley of the Mississippi, near Prairie du Chien, Wis. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Waukon, Ia.,—Wis. Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)



Stream flats. The Missouri and Big Sioux rivers. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Elk Point, S. Dak.—Ia.—Neb. Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XII

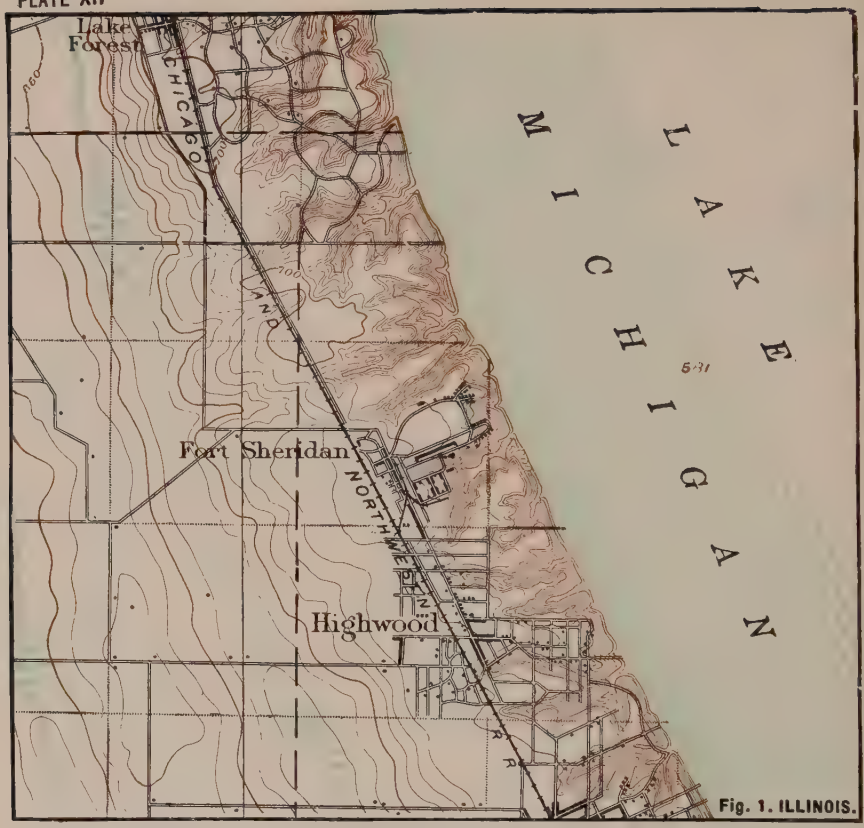


FIG. 1.—Youthful valleys. Shore of Lake Michigan just north of Chicago. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 10 feet. (Highwood Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

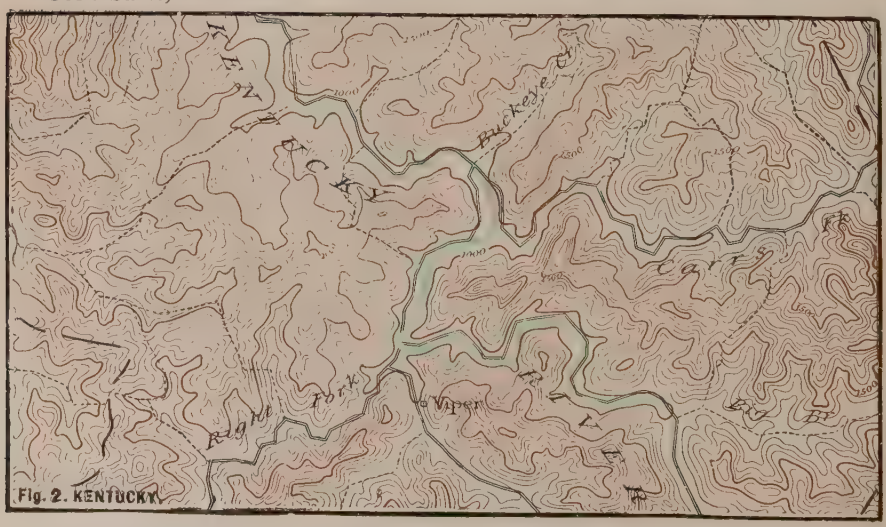
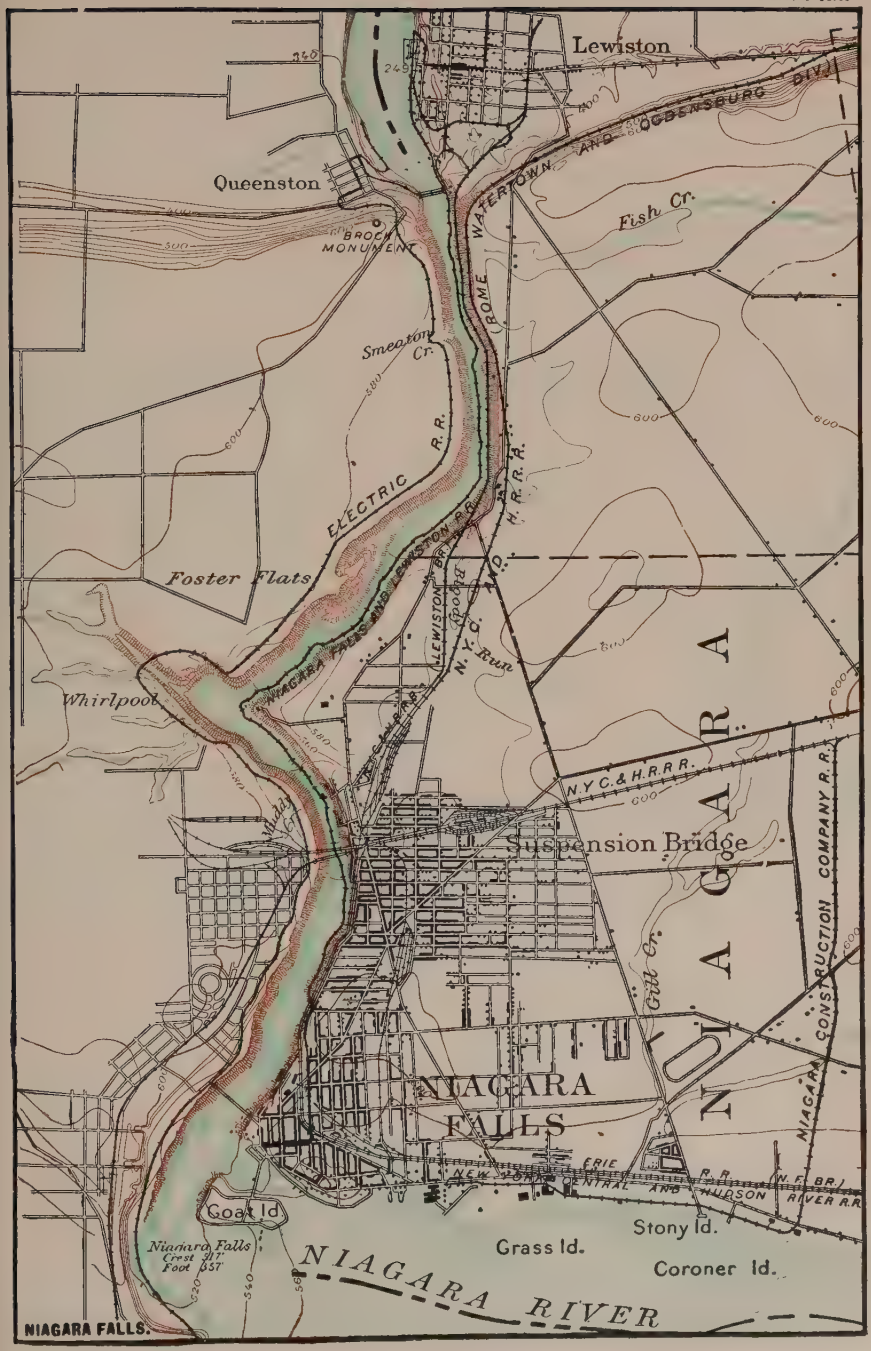
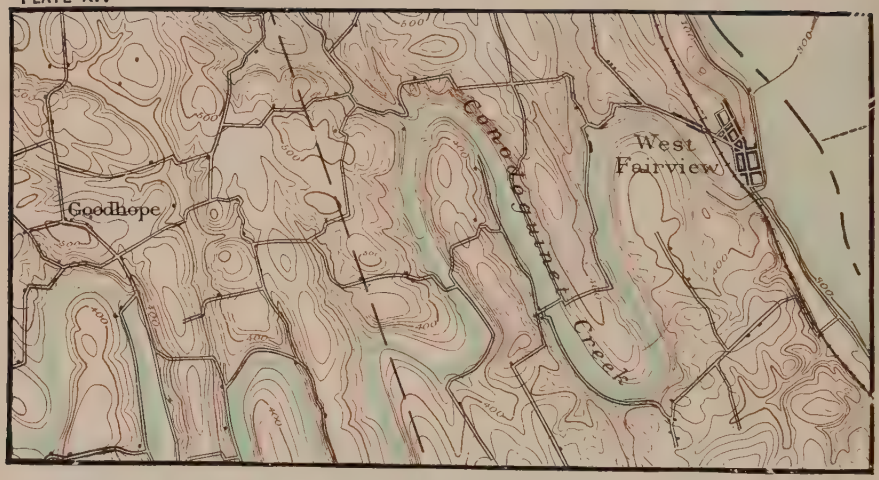


FIG. 2.—A region in a mature stage of erosion. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 100 feet. (Kentucky, U. S. Geol. Surv.)



The Niagara Gorge. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Niagara Falls Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XIV



Entrenched meanders. Scale 1+ mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Harrisburg, Pa., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

deep, and the areas of upland have been well cut up (dissected) by valleys, the river system is said to have reached *maturity* (Fig. 2, Pl. XII). The land then is well drained. When the task of base-leveling its drainage basin is nearing completion, the river system has reached *old age*, (Fig. 3 Pl. IX). The master stream of a drainage system attains the characteristics of maturity and age sooner than its tributaries, and in its lower course sooner than in its upper.

The topography of a drainage basin is youthful when its river system is youthful, mature when its river system is mature, and old when its drainage is old. In an area of *youthful topography* much of the surface has not yet been much affected by erosion (Fig. 1, Pl. XII); in an area of *mature topography*, much of the surface has been reduced to slopes by erosion (Fig. 2, Pl. XII); while an area of *old topography* is one which has been brought down to general flatness by erosion (Fig. 3, Pl. IX). Some parts of a drainage basin, especially those parts near the master stream, may take on the characteristics of age, while other parts farther from the trunk stream may not be advanced beyond maturity or even youth.

Map Work. See Exercises V and VI in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

Cycle of erosion. The time necessary for the development of a base-level throughout a drainage basin is a *cycle of erosion.* This period of time is very long. While land is high and the streams swift, erosion is rapid; but the nearer the land approaches base-level, the slower the processes of erosion. The last part of the process of base-leveling is therefore the slowest of all.

Peneplains. It is doubtful whether any extensive land area ever was worn down to a perfect base-level; but great areas have been worn down almost to that level. In such cases low hills or ridges remain between the valleys, and hard bodies of rock may rise abruptly above the general level of the plain of degradation. A region in this condition is called a *peneplain* (an *almost-plain*, Fig. 126). It has a surface which has been brought nearly, but not quite, to base-level. If conspicuous elevations of slight extent remain above it, they are *monadnocks.* The name was derived from Mount Monadnock (N. H.), because that mountain was formed in this way.

Rate of Land Degradation

Since all lands are being cut down by running water, it is a matter of interest to know how fast they are being brought low. It is also of interest to know whether the lands are to be destroyed altogether, and if so, how long they are to last.

It was estimated years ago that the amount of sediment, carried to the Gulf each year by the Mississippi River was about 7,500,000,000 cubic feet. This amount of sediment spread out uniformly over the area drained by the Mississippi river system

Fig. 126.—A peneplain near Camp Douglas, Wis. (Atwood.)

(the Mississippi basin) would make a layer about $\frac{1}{100}$ of an inch thick, or a little more than $\frac{1}{5000}$ of a foot. If the material carried to the sea in solution also is taken into account, it would appear from this estimate that the rate of degradation of the Mississippi basin is about one foot in 3500 years. Recent estimates indicate that the Mississippi carries 340,500,000 tons to the sea yearly in suspension, and 136,400,000 tons dissolved. The Ohio contributes about 83,000,000 tons of the total amount, and the Missouri more than twice as much as the Ohio. The Colorado River carries away about 387 tons yearly, on the average, from each square mile of its drainage basin. From the United States, it is estimated that about 270,000,000 tons of material are carried to the sea in solution, and about 513,000,000 tons in suspension, each year. This corresponds to a rate of degradation of about one foot in 9000 years, for the country as a whole.

If this rate were to be continued without interruption, and if nothing occurred to counteract it, the North American con-

tinent would be reduced to sea-level in about 18,000,000 years, for its average height is about 2000 feet. But as already pointed out, the present rate of down-cutting cannot continue, for as the land becomes lower the rate of erosion must diminish, since the water must then flow more slowly. As a matter of fact, mechanical erosion by running water would cease when the surface was brought to base-level, though solution would still go on.

Other changes, to be discussed later, are likely to occur to prevent the land from being degraded to base-level. The continent therefore is likely to endure not only much longer than 18,000,000 years, but probably indefinitely, so far as degradation is concerned. Nevertheless, these figures serve a useful purpose in indicating the rate of change which the land is undergoing as the result of the fall of rain and snow upon it.

Conditions affecting the rate of erosion. Some of the conditions affecting the rate of erosion by running water have been stated or implied in the preceding pages. By way of summary they may be brought together at this point.

The rate at which running water wears down the surface over which it flows depends chiefly on (1) the volume of the water, (2) its velocity, (3) the character of the material over which it flows, and (4) the amount and character of the load it carries.

(1) The volume of water flowing over the land outside of streams depends chiefly on the rainfall. The volume of a stream depends primarily on (*a*) the area which it drains, and (*b*) the amount of precipitation within its basin. The larger the area and the greater the amount of the precipitation the larger the stream.

(2) The velocity of running water depends on (*a*) its gradient or slope, (*b*) its volume, especially its depth, (*c*) its load, and (*d*) the shape and configuration of its channel. The higher the gradient, the greater the volume, the less the load, and the smoother and narrower its channel, the faster the flow.

The effect of slope on velocity needs no explanation. That increase of volume increases the rate of flow is shown by the familiar fact that a stream in flood runs faster than at other times. The erosive force of a flooded stream already has been referred to (Figs. 87 and 88). The carrying of sediment, in whatever form, is a tax on the stream's energy, and the more the load the greater the tax. The energy used in carrying is taken from the energy which otherwise would be available for flowing. A smooth

channel offers less friction than a rough one, and so favors high velocity. But, apart from smoothness, the channel which favors great velocity is that which offers *least area of contact with the water*. Thus a broad shallow channel (Fig. 127) has a greater surface of contact with the water than a deeper, narrower channel (Fig. 128). The water in the former has more friction with its

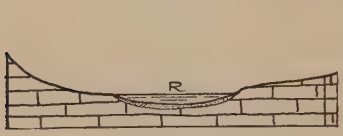


Fig. 127.

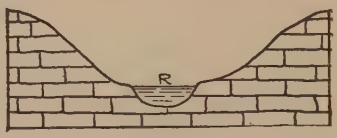


Fig. 128.

Fig. 127.—A broad, shallow river channel.
Fig. 128.—A deeper and narrower channel than that shown in Fig. 127, with the same gradient. A stream in a channel such as is represented in Fig. 128 will flow faster than one in such a channel as that shown in Fig. 127.

bed, and friction retards the current. Nearly every stream which flows in a channel of varying width, has greater velocity where it is narrow.

(3) The character of the surface of its basin, and especially the character of the material in its channel, also influences the rate of a stream's erosion. If the surface of the land on which the rain falls is bare solid rock, the immediate run-off brings little sediment to the stream, and if the bed of the stream is bare solid rock, the stream wears it less than if it is of mud or sand.

(4) To work most effectively, the stream must carry load (tools) enough to enable it to cut rapidly, but not so much as to make it flow so slowly that it cannot use its tools effectively.

Exceptional Features Developed by Erosion

Canyons and gorges. When valleys are so narrow and deep as to be striking, they are called gorges or canyons. In general canyons are larger than gorges, though there is no sharp distinction between them. The sides of small gorges and young canyons are, in some cases, nearly vertical (Fig. 129), but the sides of the large canyons are rarely so (Fig. 130). The distinction between a canyon and a valley which is not a canyon is not a very sharp one, and, in regions where canyons abound, the term is often applied to all valleys.

The Colorado canyon (Figs. 24, 25, and 130) is the greatest canyon known. Its maximum depth is about a mile, but where it has this depth, it is in most places 8 to 10 miles wide from rim to rim, though very narrow at the bottom. With a depth of one mile and a width of 8 miles, the slope, if uniform, would have an angle of less than 15°. The cross-section of a valley with such a slope is shown in Fig. 131; but the slopes of the canyon are not uniform, as shown by Fig. 132. The irregularities of slope are caused by inequalities in the hardness of the rock of the canyon walls.

Fig. 129.—Oneonta Gorge, Canyon of the Columbia, Ore. (Fairbanks.)

The Yellowstone River also has a notable canyon 1000 feet or so deep (Fig. 133 and Fig. 1 of Pl. IV). Its width is less in proportion to its depth than that of the canyon of the Colorado.

Narrow valleys mean that the processes of valley deepening have outrun the processes of valley widening. This implies that the stream which made the gorge or the canyon was swift, or that the processes of valley widening (p. 113) were slow, or both.

Valleys are deepened rapidly where their gradients are high and the streams strong. They are widened slowly (1) where the climate is arid so that there is little slope-wash, (2) where the stream is so swift that it does not meander, and (3) where the material of the sides is such that it will stand with steep slopes. Solid rock, for example, will stand with steeper slopes than loose sand. We conclude that (1) great altitude, (2) arid climate, (3) strong streams, and (4) a rock structure which will stand in steep slopes, favor the development of valleys of the canyon type. In other words, youthful valleys in plateaus and mountains are

likely to be canyons, if climate and rock structure favor. The plateaus of the western part of the United States furnish these

Fig. 130.—Grand Canyon of the Colorado. Peabody.)

conditions, and canyons there are common. This is true not only of main streams but of their tributaries as well.

Fig. 131.—Diagram showing the proportions of a valley the width of which is eight times the depth. These are approximately the proportions of the Colorado Canyon.

A strong stream in an arid region is possible when the valley is supplied with abundant water from a humid region above. The Colorado River is an example.

Since many gorges are in humid regions, it is clear that *all* the conditions favoring the development of canyons need not

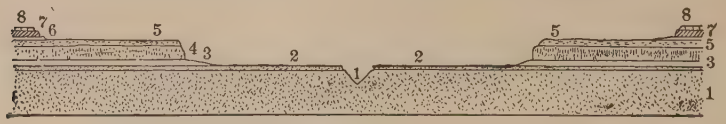


Fig. 132.—Cross-section of the Colorado Canyon.
(After Gilbert and Brigham.)

be present in order to develop gorges. The Niagara River has a gorge or canyon below the falls (Pl. XIII). Here the

down-cutting is so rapid that the processes of valley widening have not kept pace with it, in spite of the fact that the region is humid.

The deeper canyons of the west constitute well-nigh impassable barriers to travel across their courses, while their rivers rarely

FIG. 133.—The canyon of the Yellowstone below the falls. Yellowstone National Park.

serve the needs of commerce or irrigation. Considerations of defence doubtless led the cliff-dwellers to make their homes in the almost inaccessible canyon walls.

Canyons must ultimately develop into valleys of another type, for the stream of the canyon ultimately will cut to base-level. The valley will then cease to become deeper, but the processes of valley widening will still go on, and the narrow valley will become wider and wider until it ceases to be a canyon.

FIG. 134.—Bad-land topography north of Scott's Bluff, Neb.
(U. S. Geol. Surv.)

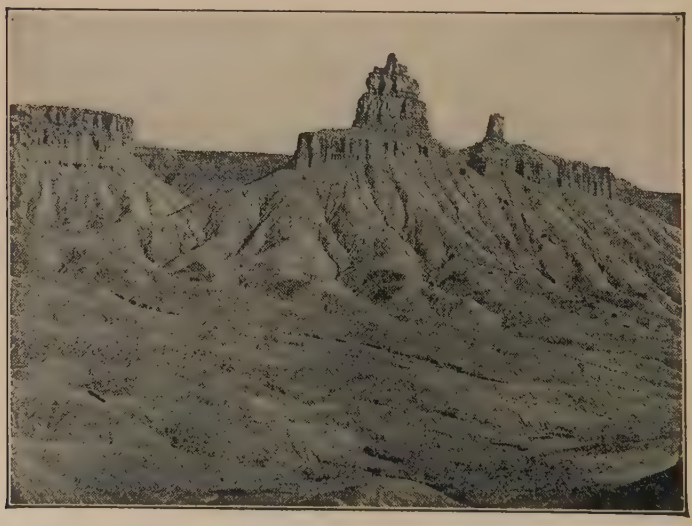


FIG. 135.—Bad-land topography southwest foot of Mesa Verde, Colo.
(U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Bad Lands. To the topography developed in late youth and early maturity in certain high regions where the rock is but slightly, though unequally, resistant, the name, *bad land*, is sometimes given. Some idea of bad-land topography is gained from Figs. 134 and 135. Bad-land topography is found in various parts of the West, conspicuously in the western parts of Nebraska and the Dakotas, and in parts of Wyoming. The rock formations here are largely sandstone, alternating with unindurated beds of clay. Climatic factors also are concerned in the development of bad-land topography. A semi-arid climate, where the precipitation is much concentrated, seems to be most favorable for its development.

Natural bridges. If a stream flowing over jointed rock has falls, the conditions are in some cases afforded for the development

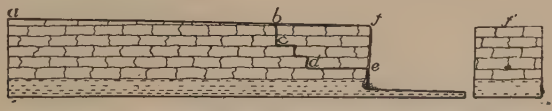


FIG. 136.—Diagram to illustrate the initial stage in the development of a natural bridge. Longitudinal section at the left, cross-section at the right.

of natural bridges. If above a waterfall there is an open joint in the bed of the stream (as at *b*, Fig. 136), some portion of the water will descend through it. After reaching a lower level it may find or make a passage through the rock to the river below

FIG. 137.—A stage later than that shown in Fig. 136.

the falls. If even a little water takes such a course, the flow will enlarge its channel, making a passageway from the joint through which the water descends, to the valley below the fall (*bcde*, Fig. 136). In time this passageway may become large enough to take all the water of the river. In this case, the entire fall will be transferred from the position which it previously occupied (*f*) to the position of the enlarged joint (*b*). The fall will then recede. The underground channel between the old falls and the new would be bridged by rock (*bf''* and *f''*, Fig. 137), making a *natural*

FIG. 138.—A partially developed natural bridge in Two Medicine River, Mont. (Whitney.)

FIG. 139.—The Natural Bridge of Virginia. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

bridge. A bridge of this sort is now in process of development in Two Medicine River, northwestern Montana (Fig. 138). Once in existence, a natural bridge slowly weathers away. The natural bridge near Lexington, Va. (Fig. 139), almost 200 feet above the stream which flows beneath it, is believed to have been developed in this way. It is not to be understood, however, that all natural bridges have had such a history.

Effects of Inequalities of Hardness of Rock

Rapids and falls. The bed of a stream commonly is steeper at some point than at others (Fig. 140), and there the stream flows more rapidly. In such a case as that illustrated by Fig. 140 the

FIG. 140.—Chandlar Rapids in river of the same name in Alaska. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

quickened flow constitutes a *rapids.* If the water in a stream's bed drops over a cliff, it makes a *waterfall* (Figs. 141 and 142). Between waterfalls and rapids there are all gradations (Fig. 143). Steep rapids often are called falls, and both are sometimes called cascades.

Falls and rapids exist in many places and under many conditions, but they are most common where the material of the

FIG. 141.—Niagara Falls. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 142.—The lower falls of the Yellowstone.

stream's channel is of unequal hardness. They commonly are where the river passes from more resistant rock to that which is less resistant.

The falls and the rapids of many rivers add greatly to their beauty, and may enhance their value to mankind by affording abundant water-power. Niagara Falls affords about 4,000,000

FIG. 143.—Rustic Falls. A succession of slight falls in the Yellowstone Park. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

horse-power, so much of which has been or seems likely to be granted to manufacturing companies, that a movement has been begun to "save the falls." The Falls of St. Anthony did much to make Minneapolis the greatest flour manufacturing city of the world. Some of the great manufacturing cities of New England grew up about low falls and rapids. Advantageous as falls are as a source of power, they are obstacles to navigation. The falls (really rapids) of the Ohio necessitated the breaking of bulk at that point, and so determined the location and early growth of Louisville. A canal designed to evade the obstacle was completed in 1830.

Falls and rapids are undergoing constant change, although the change commonly is very slow. The falls of the Niagara are receding up-stream, because the falling water undermines the hard layer of rock over which it is precipitated (Fig. 144). As a fall recedes, it generally becomes lower. In such cases it is clear that the fall will disappear if it recedes far enough. If the hard rock over which the water drops is in the position shown in Fig. 145, the fall will not recede, though it will become lower, and will disappear when the stream cuts down to base-level where the fall is. Rapids and falls are therefore temporary features. Like canyons, they are marks of youth, for they show that the stream is well above base-level. In time, all existing rapids and

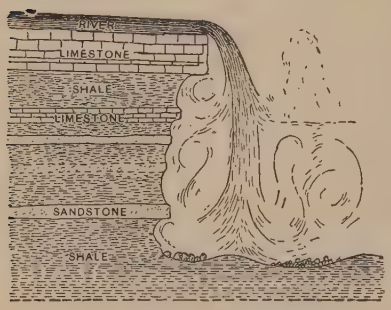


Fig. 144.—Diagram illustrating the conditions at Niagara. (Gilbert.)

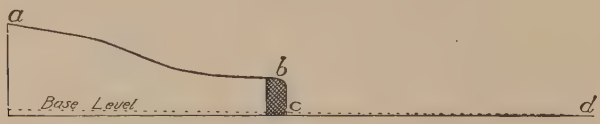


Fig. 145.—Diagram illustrating a condition where a fall will not recede.

waterfalls will disappear, for they cannot exist after rivers have reached base-level, the goal of every stream.

From a waterfall we may reason backward in time, as well as forward. If existing falls are to disappear, was there a time before they existed?

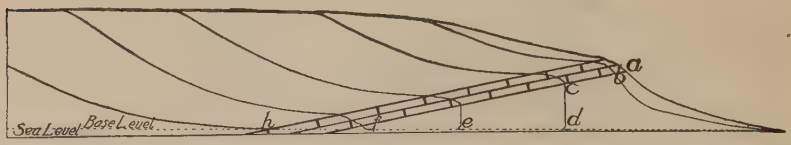


Fig. 146.—Diagram illustrating the development of a fall where the hard layer dips up-stream.

Suppose the material along the line followed by vigorous drainage to be of unequal hardness. The less resistant part will be

worn more rapidly than the more resistant part farther up the stream, with the result shown in Fig. 146. The continued wear

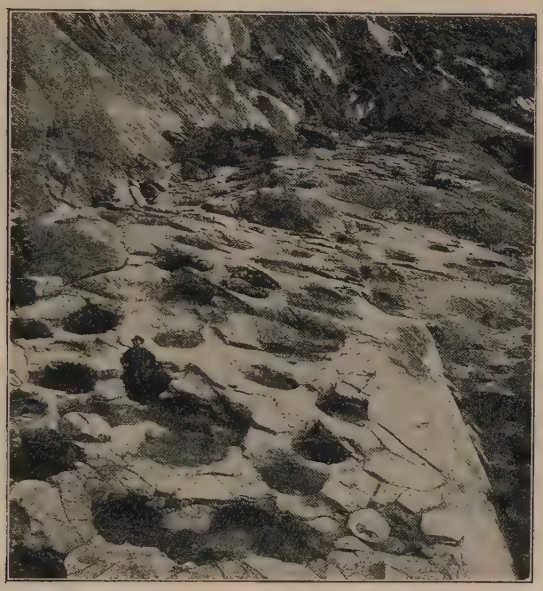


Fig. 147.—Pot-holes in granite. Upper Tuolumne River, Cal.

of the water in such a case will cause the rapids at *a* to become more rapid, and the process of steepening the bed of the descending water will go on until the rapids become a fall. In this case *the rapids and falls depend on inequalities of hardness discovered by the stream in the excavation of its valley.* This is perhaps the commonest way in which falls and rapids originate. Falls originating in this way are developed gradually. Such falls may be called *subsequent* falls, since they do not depend on the original shape of the surface.

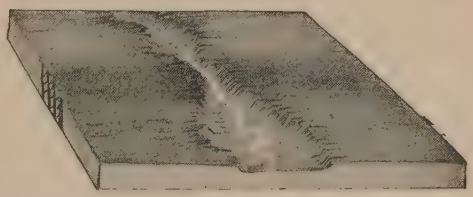


Fig. 148.— Diagram showing a narrow place in a valley where the stream crosses a hard layer of rock.

In other cases the surface run-off, in following its course to the sea, may reach a cliff and plunge over it. In this case, the

steep descent of surface existed before the stream found it, and the fall began when the river came. Since such falls result from the irregularities of surface over which the river began to flow, they may be called *consequent* falls. A good example of such a fall is that of the Niagara, formed when the outflow from Lake Erie reached and fell over a cliff on its way to Lake Ontario. Since the fall began, it has receded some 7 miles.

Falls are formed in still other ways. A landslide or a lava-flow may form a dam, over which the water falls or flows in rapids.

FIG. 149.—The Lower Narrows of the Baraboo River, Wisconsin. (Atwood.)

In such cases, especially the former, the dams, and therefore the rapids and falls, are likely to be temporary.

At the bottoms of falls, *pot-holes* (Fig. 147) sometimes are developed. The start is made as a result of slight inequalities in the surface of the rock. The holes reach their conspicuous size as the result of wear by stones kept in motion in them by the eddies of the falling water.

Narrows. When a stream cuts through a bed of hard rock, it not only develops rapids and falls, but the hard rock affects the valley in other ways. The resistant rock weathers less rapidly than the weak rock, and hence the valley is narrower where the rock is resistant than where it is weak. Such a constriction of a valley is a *narrows* (Fig. 148) or a *water-gap*. The Delaware Water Gap through the Kittatinny Mountain is a good example. The narrows of the Baraboo River in Wisconsin (Fig. 149) is another good example. Unlike falls, narrows are not most conspicuous in the youth of the stream, but at a later time, after

the valley has been much widened in the weak rock adjacent to that which is resistant. Falls are common in horizontal or nearly horizontal beds, but narrows commonly are developed in stratified rock only where the beds are tilted at a high angle.

Some narrows serve as gateways through mountains, and so control lines of travel and transportation. The narrows of Wills Creek in Wills Mountain, Maryland, may serve as an example. From Fort Cumberland (site of Cumberland), built by the Ohio Company to guard the important passageway, Nemacolin's Path and Washington's and Braddock's roads ran west through it, and the Cumberland National Road and an important railway now pass through it.

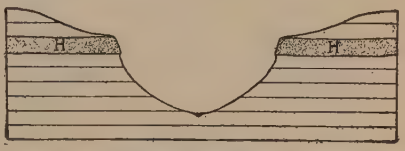


FIG. 150.—Rock terraces, due to resistant layers of rock.

Rock terraces. If the hard layer through which a stream cuts is horizontal, the resistant rock weathers less rapidly than the weaker rock above and below, giving rise to rock terraces, as shown in Fig. 150.

Monadnocks, rock ridges, etc. Elsewhere than in valleys, too, rock of more than average resistance makes itself felt in the topography, for rain-wash, wind, and most phases of weathering affect resistant rock less than weak rock. The result is that hard rock comes to appear in the form of hills, or mountains (monadnocks, p. 131), after the weaker rock about it has been reduced nearly to base-level. Fig. 151 is an example. An elongate narrow ridge, due to the isolation of a tilted layer of resistant rock, sometimes is called a "hogback" (Fig. 152). In the West similar elevations often are called *buttes* (Figs. 151 and 154). A hard stratum of rock, such as a lava-bed, overlying less resistant formations, such as clay or soft shale, is likely to give rise to buttes. If such an elevation has a considerable expanse of surface at its top, it is a *mesa* though this term is also applied to wide terraces, (Fig. 26), especially if high.

The elevations due to the isolation of outcrops of hard rock by the removal of their less resistant surroundings take on peculiar forms in some cases, dependent on the structure of the rock. Elongate ridges are common where the strata are

folded. Where the tops of the original folds were not horizontal, erosion gives the ridges which result from the isolating of the

FIG. 151.—A monadnock: a mass of igneous rock isolated by erosion and remaining because of its superior hardness. Matteo Tepee, Wyo. (Detroit Photo. Co.)

FIG. 152.—Hogbacks, due to the erosion of tilted beds of unequal resistance. The harder layers stand up as ridges and constitute the "hogbacks." (Powell.)

outcrops of hard rock peculiar forms, as shown in Figs. 155. Such forms are not uncommon in the Appalachian Mountains.

MAP WORK. See Exercise VII in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

Accidents to Streams

Drowning. Streams are subject to many accidents. If the land through which they flow sinks so as to decrease their gradients, they flow less rapidly, or even cease to flow. If the lower end

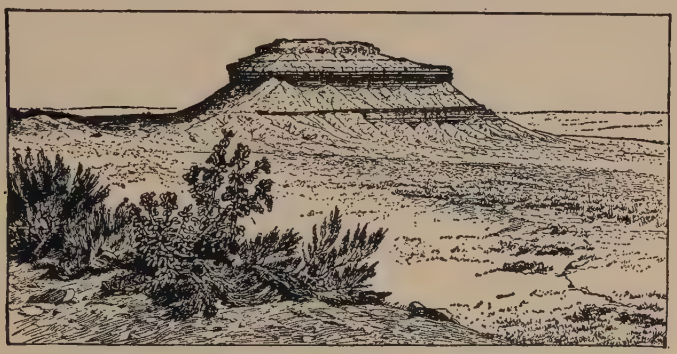


FIG. 153.—A butte. A characteristic feature of the arid plateau region of the West. The butte is really a monadnock. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 154.—The Enchanted Mesa. A striking butte in New Mexico. The name mesa is not commonly applied to elevations of such small summit area. (R. T. Chamberlin.)

of a valley sinks below sea-level, sea-water enters and forms an *estuary*. In such cases the lower end of the river and its valley are *drowned*. If the streams along a coast end in bays, the in-

ference is that the coast has sunk, and that the lower ends of the rivers and valleys have been drowned. The Atlantic coast between New York and the Carolinas is a good example (Fig. 156). Delaware Bay, Chesapeake Bay, and numerous other smaller bays mark the sites of drowned rivers. Without the drowning, the drainage of this region would be somewhat as shown in Fig. 157. By comparison of these figures, it is apparent that drowning has the effect of disconnecting the parts of a river system.

Rejuvenation. If the basin of an old stream is raised, so that the gradient of the stream is increased, its velocity is increased,

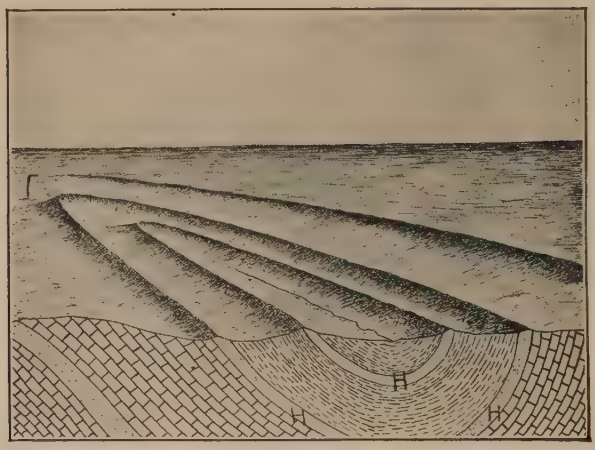


FIG. 155.—A canoe-shaped valley bordered by a ridge formed by the outcrop of a hard layer. (Willis.)

and it again takes on the characters of youth. Such a stream is said to be *rejuvenated* (Fig. 158), and it cuts a youthful valley in the bottom of the old one. If the old stream was meandering in its valley, as old streams are likely to, the quickened stream cuts its meanders deeper. The meanders are thus *entrenched*, and a stream with entrenched meanders, has been rejuvenated. Entrenched meanders are shown by many streams (Plate XIV). It is to be noted that a few streams have curves which resemble meanders in form, which are not such in fact; but any stream which has a long succession of curves resembling entrenched meanders, probably has been rejuvenated. The rejuvenation of a stream marks the beginning of a new cycle of erosion, even

though the preceding cycle was not complete. Young valleys in the bottoms of old ones, and entrenched meanders, are common marks of a second cycle of erosion, though neither can be relied on with certainty.

Ponding. If a portion of a stream's bed is warped upward, the gradient above the point of up-warp is lessened, the flow is checked,

FIG. 156.

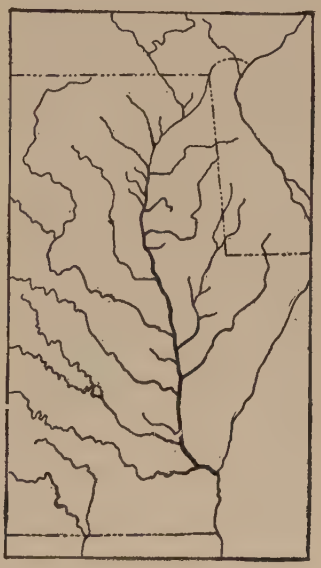


FIG. 157.

FIG. 156.—Chesapeake Bay and its surroundings. The bay is a drowned river valley, and the lower ends of its tributary valleys also are drowned.
FIG. 157.—The drainage of the region about Chesapeake Bay as it would have been but for drowning.

and the stream there is widened. Streams above such an obstruction are *ponded*, that is, the water accumulates in a pond or lake. If the up-warp is great enough, it may completely dam the stream. Streams occasionally are ponded by lava-flows, by land slides, etc., and by dams made by man. The mill-ponds and "reservoirs" along numerous creeks are illustrations of ponding by dams. If the ponded stream has an outlet over the dam, it will ultimately cut it down. If the dam is sufficiently high, the water may be forced out of its valley altogether, and find a new course.

Piracy. One stream may steal another. One way in which this is done is suggested by Figs. 159 and 160. The head of a valley as at *a*, Fig. 159, may work back until it reaches the channel of another stream, such as *b*. It then carries off the water coming down through *b* (Fig. 160). The stealing of one stream by another is *stream piracy*. The stream which steals is a *pirate*, the stream stolen is *diverted*, and the stream which has lost its upper waters is *beheaded*. When a stream is diverted from a narrows or water-gap, the latter becomes a *wind-gap*. Wind gaps are common in many mountain regions, though not all are made in this way.

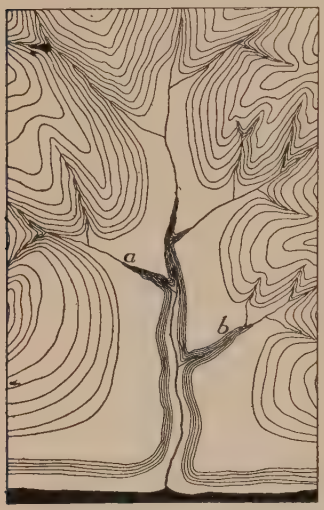


FIG. 158.—Diagram to illustrate an ideal case of rejuvenation as the result of uplift. The black area at the bottom represents the sea.

The numerous wind-gaps of the Blue Ridge Mountains figured prominently in the westward movement of people in the early days of settlement, and in the strategy of the Virginia campaigns of the Civil War. Farther south, the Cumberland Gap afforded the early emigrant the most available route across the mountains, and during the last

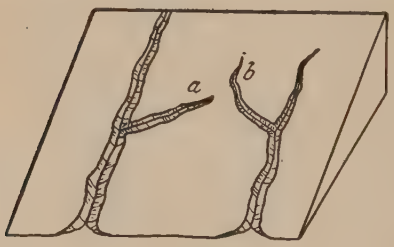


FIG. 159.

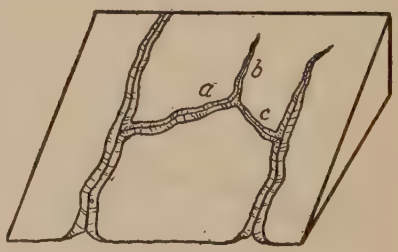


FIG. 160.

Diagrams to illustrate a phase of piracy. By the headward growth of *a*, Fig. 159, it reaches *b*, and carries off its upper waters. *a*, Fig. 160, is a pirate; *b*, Fig. 160, has been *diverted*, and *c* has been beheaded.

quarter of the eighteenth century, probably more than 300,000 people passed through it to settle in Kentucky and Tennessee.

Piracy has been more common among rivers than is generally known. In the Appalachian region, for example, where the conditions have favored piracy, there are few large streams which have not either increased their waters by piracy, or suffered loss by the piracy of others. Figs. 161 and 162 afford one illustra-

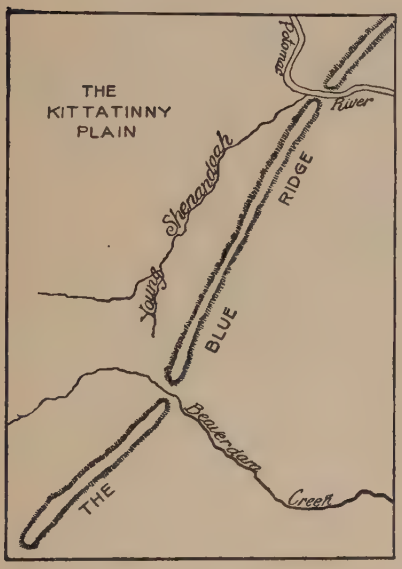


Fig. 161.

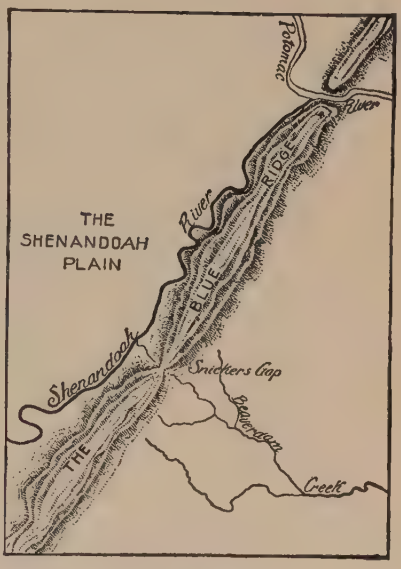


Fig. 162.

The capture of the head of Beaverdam Creek by the Shenandoah River. Virginia-West Virginia. (After Willis.)

tion. Piracy is favored by inequalities of hardness, for the streams which do not cross hard rock deepen their channels more rapidly than those which do.

Consequent and Antecedent Streams

When streams develop on a land surface in harmony with its slope, they are said to be *consequent* (Fig. 163). After streams have established their courses, the land surface which they drain may be warped or deformed, but the deformation may go on so slowly that the streams are able to hold their courses, established before it began (Fig. 164). The streams then have courses which they would not have taken had the deformation taken place before they were established. Such streams, with courses ante-

dating the present general slope of the surface and out of harmony with it, are *antecedent* streams. They may at the outset have been consequent, but they ceased to be consequent when the deformation took place.

Map Work. See Exercises VIII and IX in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

Deposition by Running Water

We have seen that rivers carry mud, sand, gravel, etc., from land to sea, and that their goal is the degradation of the land

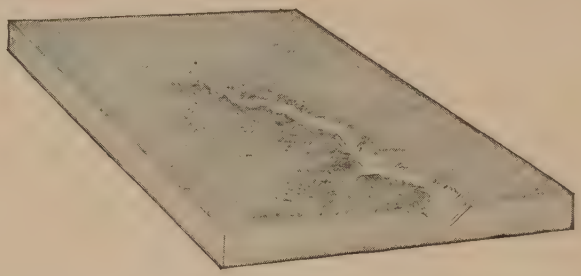


Fig. 163.—A consequent stream whose course is in harmony with that of the slope of the area it drains.

nearly to sea level. We have seen also that rivers do not always carry the sediment derived from the land directly to the sea.

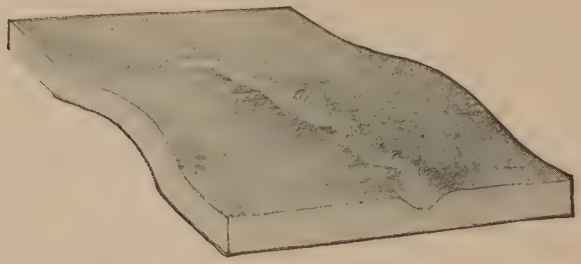


Fig. 164.—An antecedent valley. The stream and its valley are conceived to have developed as consequent stream and valley. An up-warp athwart the valley followed, but so slowly that the stream cut its bed down as fast as the up-warp raised it. The stream held its old course, which is not now in harmony with the slope of the area drained.

It is often dropped for a time on the land, perhaps to be picked up and carried on again when the conditions for its transportation are more favorable. We have now to inquire into (1) the causes

which make running water drop some of its load, temporarily, at least; (2) the places where the material is abandoned; (3) the topographic features developed by deposition; (4) the effect of deposition on the depositing stream, and (5) the advantages and disadvantages of stream deposition to mankind.

Causes of Deposition

When running water drops its load, or any part of it, it is generally because the current has lost something of its velocity. We have already seen (p. 103) that gradient and volume are the most important factors in determining the velocity of a small stream.

1. *Loss of velocity.* The commonest cause of loss of velocity is decrease of slope or gradient. Running water may lose velocity (1) suddenly, as when it passes from a steep slope to a gentle one or to a body of standing water, or (2) slowly, as in descending a valley the gradient of which becomes less gradually. We therefore look to the places where these changes in velocity occur for the principal deposits of running water. Streams also become slower wherever their channels become wider, if volumes and gradients remain constant.

A less common cause of decrease of velocity in a stream is decrease of volume. Streams generally increase in size with increasing distance from their sources, but to this general rule there are exceptions. (1) A stream which flows through a very dry region, may receive few tributaries and few springs. Evaporation, on the other hand, is great, and some of the water may be absorbed by the thirsty soil and rock through which it flows. This is especially the case if the ground-water surface (p. 74) of the region is below the level of the stream. In a dry region therefore a stream may diminish as it flows, and may even disappear altogether (Pls. VII and XV). (2) A stream may break up into several streams (Fig. 165), the volume of each being less than that of the original. (3) Still again, many streams, especially in semi-arid regions, have much of their water withdrawn for purposes of irrigation, and are thus made smaller. (4) Streams decrease in volume temporarily as their floods decline.

Increase of load makes running water flow more slowly; but a stream which is increasing its load by its own action is an eroding, not a depositing stream. A stream may pick up fine sediment

and deposit coarse in its stead, but in this case the amount of fine material picked up is greater than the amount of coarse which is dropped. Erosion therefore is greater than deposition, and a stream which erodes more than it deposits is not a depositing stream, as the term is commonly used.

Fig. 165.—The lower end of the Mississippi, showing its distributaries. (C. & G. Surv.)

2. *Excess of load from tributaries.* Tributary streams with high gradients may bring to their mains more sediment than the latter can carry away. This is an occasional cause of deposition in the channel of the main stream, especially where mountain torrents with high gradients join older streams which have reduced their channels to much lower gradients.

Location of Alluvial Deposits and their Topographic Forms

The deposits made by running water are found principally in situations where the flow of the water is checked or stopped.

1. At the bases of steep slopes. Every shower washes fine sediment down the slopes of the hills, and much of it is left at their bases. Fences in such situations are in some cases buried, little by little, by the mud thus lodged. Temporary streams, bred of showers, sometimes flow down steep slopes, and are checked

FIG. 166.—An alluvial cone. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

suddenly at their bases. Such streams gather much debris in their headlong courses down the slopes, but abandon it where their velocity is suddenly checked. Thus, at the lower end of every new-made gully on the hillside there is a mass of debris which was washed out of the gully itself (Figs. 93 and 166). Material in such positions accumulates in the form of a partial cone, known as an *alluvial cone*. Alluvial cones have much in common with cones of talus; but in the former, gravity brings the material down by the help of water, while in the latter gravity brings the material down without the aid of water, or with but little help from it. Between talus cones and alluvial cones there are all gradations.

Conspicuous alluvial cones are rather more common in semi-arid regions than elsewhere, if steep slopes are present; for in such regions the rainfall is fitful, and the occasional heavy showers, which give rise to temporary and powerful torrents, favor the development of cones of great size. Talus cones have great development in many such regions. At the bases of the mountain ranges

in the Great Basin, some of the talus and alluvial cones from the mountains are said to be 2000 or 3000 feet high.

An *alluvial fan* is the same as an alluvial cone, except that it has a lower angle of slope. The term *fan* is indeed more appropriate than *cone* for most alluvial accumulations at the bases of slopes. The less steep slope of the fan may be due to the less abrupt change of slope where it is developed, to the larger quantity of water concerned in its deposition, to the smaller amount of detritus, or to its greater fineness. Less change of slope, more water, and less and finer material, all favor the development of fans rather than cones. Nearly all young rivers descending from mountains build fans where they leave the mountains. Thus, the rivers descending from the Sierras to the great valley of California build great fans at the base of the mountains. Most of the rivers descending from the Rockies to the plains to the east do the same thing. The fans of many streams descending from the mountains are many miles across. The fan of the Merced River in California, for example, has a radius of about 40 miles.

The fans made by neighboring streams may grow laterally until they merge. The union of several such fans makes a *compound alluvial fan*, or a *piedmont alluvial plain* (Pl. XV). Such plains exist at the bases of most considerable mountain ranges. The depth of alluvial material in many such situations is scores and even hundreds of feet.

Alluvial cones and fans affect the course of the water which makes them. The loose debris of the cones and fans absorbs much water, and the water of even a considerable stream may sink into its fan (Pl. XV). Before it disappears, the stream may be divided into several smaller ones. This is because the sediment deposited by the stream in its channel makes the channel too small to hold all the water. Some of it therefore runs over (out of the channel) and makes a new channel for itself. The deposits which clog the channel may be the result of (1) diminished slope, and so diminished activity, or (2) diminished volume, due to absorption of water. The distributaries thus formed, being small, are likely to be slower than the stream from which they sprang, and so more likely to choke themselves. They therefore give rise to other and smaller distributaries. Thus the water of the main stream is likely to be spread about over its fan, and the stream may disappear.

Aside from well-developed fans and cones there is much sediment at the bases of slopes which are not steep. In such positions, the alluvium may be without distinct topographic form. Such accumulations at the bases of slopes are almost as wide-spread as the bases of slopes themselves.

Many alluvial fans and piedmont alluvial plains are valuable for agricultural purposes. In some parts of California, for example, the alluvial lands are so valuable that most holdings

FIG. 167.—A branching stream. Junction of the Cooper and Yukon rivers, Alaska. Shows also bars, etc. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

are small and highly improved. Even in semi-arid regions some of them are extensively cultivated, the water being supplied (1) by wells, through which the debris of the fan is made to yield up the water it has absorbed, or (2) by irrigation ditches, which connect with the stream, and lead the water out of its natural channel over the fan or plain farther down the valley.

Ill-defined alluvium. Alluvial deposits as a whole are wide-spread. A large part of the surface of the land is covered with a little alluvial material, though relatively small areas are deeply covered. Alluvial material is so disposed as to tend to even up slopes. Thus alluvial fans and cones tend to bring the steep slope above and the gentle slope below into harmony.

2. In valley bottoms. A stream which makes deposits in its channel reduces the size of the channel. In time it may become too small to hold all the water. A part then breaks out, and follows a new course in the valley flat. This process may be

repeated again and again (Fig. 167 and 168). The diverging stream may or may not return to the main. The breaking up of a stream into parts may go so far, especially when the water is low, that there can hardly be said to be a main channel. The stream then

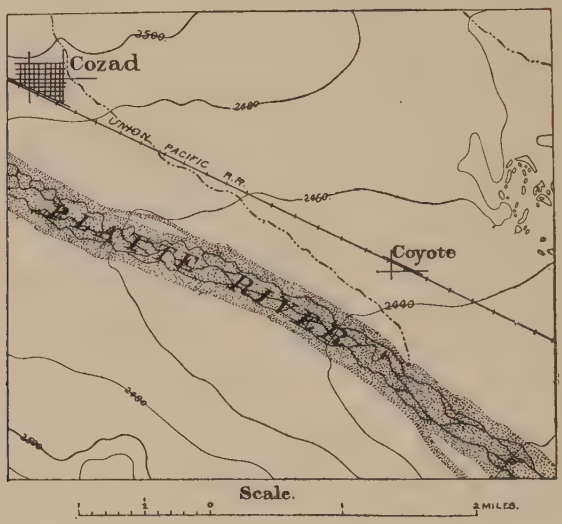


Fig. 168.—A braided river, Dawson Co., Neb. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

becomes a network of minor streams, or a *braided stream*. The Platte River in Nebraska is an excellent example (Fig. 168). This condition exists only at low water. At high water the entire flat through which the minor streams shown in Fig. 168 flow, is covered by water, and becomes the bed of a single river (Pl. XVI).

Some streams deposit sand-bars in their channels (Fig. 167), especially in low water, even when they do not become braided. These bars are obstacles to navigation, and are a constant source

Fig. 169.—Profile of a normal valley.

of embarrassment to river traffic in the low stages of many navigable streams. Bars deposited in low water are in some cases swept away in times of flood, when the velocity of the stream is increased. Some bars become more or less permanent islands. If they become

covered with forests they are less easily eroded by the swift waters of floods, since the roots have a strong protective influence.

The profiles of most valleys are curves, the gradient becoming less and less steep as the lower end of the stream is approached (Fig. 169). It therefore happens that as a stream descends its valley it is likely to reach a point where its reduced gradient so diminishes its velocity that it must abandon some of its load. In this way sediment is distributed for great distances along valley bottoms. It is left in the channels of the streams and spread over their flood plains, aggrading them and making them *alluvial plains*. Deposition in a valley which has no flat tends to develop one (Fig. 170).

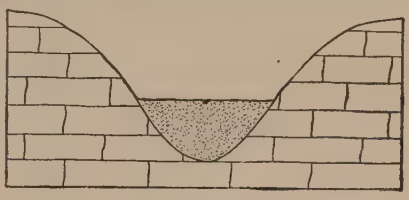


FIG. 170.—Flat developed by aggradation—diagrammatic.

Deposition on valley flats has but little effect on their topography; but a few minor features deserve mention. Among them are *natural levees*. This term is applied to the low ridges on stream flats along the banks of the channel (Fig. 171). They are built in times of flood. At such times the current in the main channel is swift; but as the water escapes its channel and spreads over the adjacent flat, its velocity is checked promptly, because its depth suddenly becomes less. It must therefore abandon much of its load then and there. Repeated deposition in this position gives rise to the levees. Some natural levees are high enough and continuous enough to turn the courses of tributary

FIG. 171.—Levees of the Mississippi in cross-section, four miles north of Donaldsonville, La. Vertical scale×50. The horizontal line represents sea-level. The bottom of the channel here is far below sea-level.

streams. This is well illustrated by the Yazoo River of Mississippi, which flows some 200 miles in the flat of the Mississippi before being able to join it. Near Vicksburg the Mississippi swings over to the east side of the valley, and thus receives its tributary, which the levees have shut off. The early population of Louisiana and Mississippi was largely distributed in narrow belts along the

levees of the Mississippi and its tributaries and distributaries. Here was the highest, driest land, of great fertility, near the ready-made high-way.

Flood-plain meanders. A stream with an alluvial plain is likely to meander widely (Pls. IX, X, and XI). This may be said to be the result of low velocity, which allows it to be turned

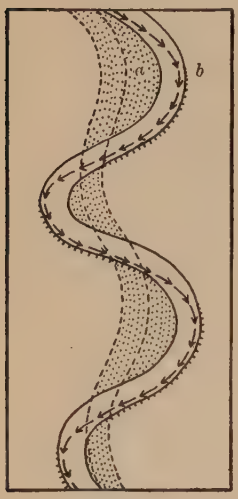


FIG. 172.

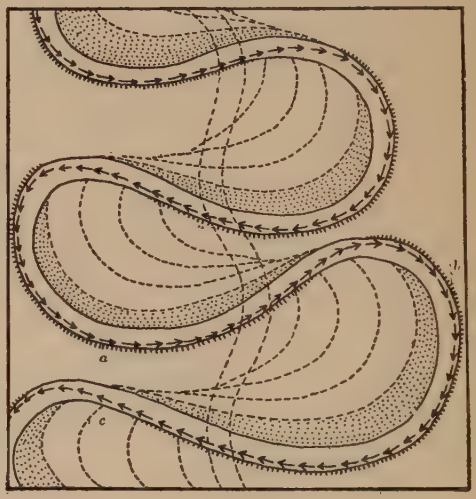


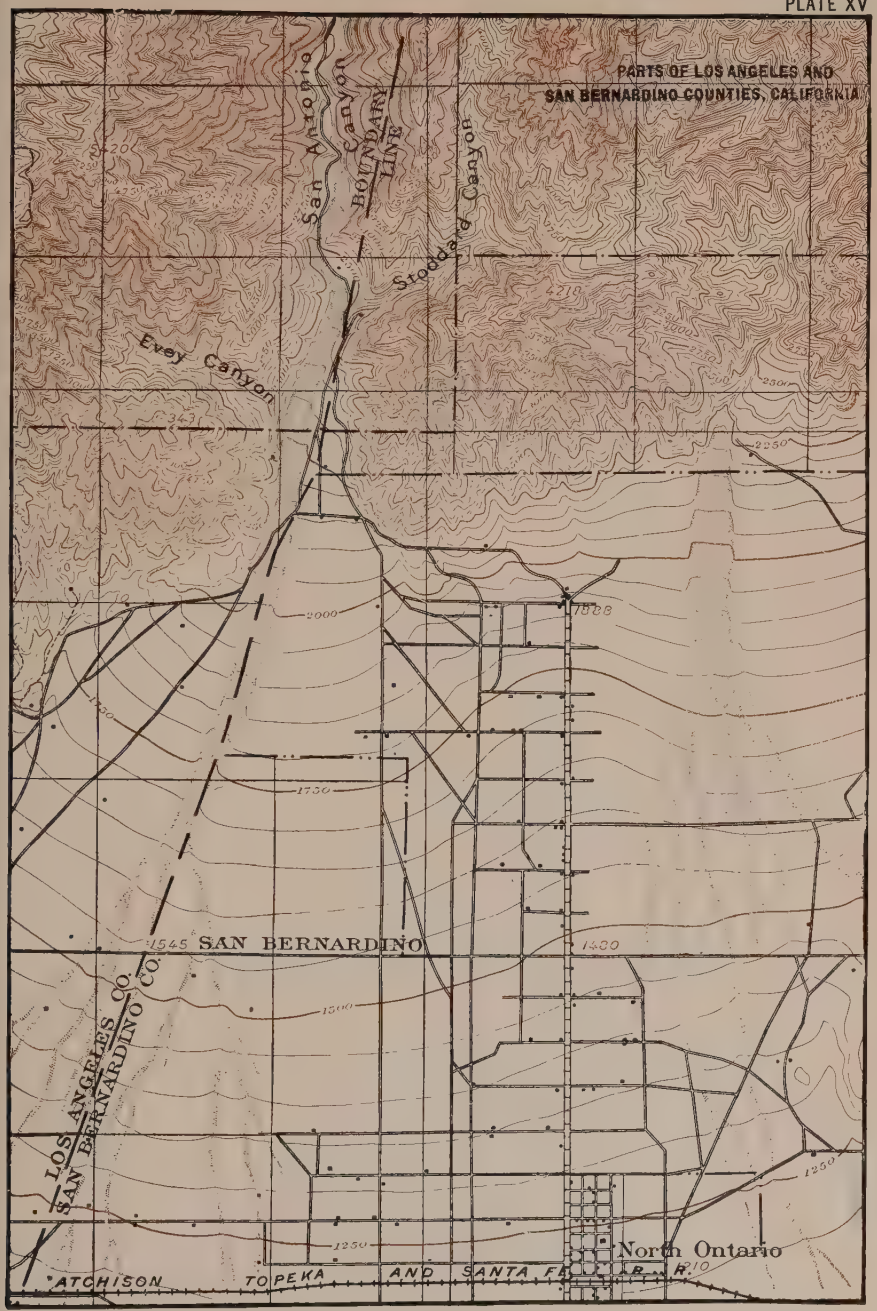
FIG. 173.

FIG. 172.—Diagram illustrating an early stage in the development of river meanders. The dotted area represents the area over which the stream has worked.

FIG. 173.—A later stage in the development of meanders.

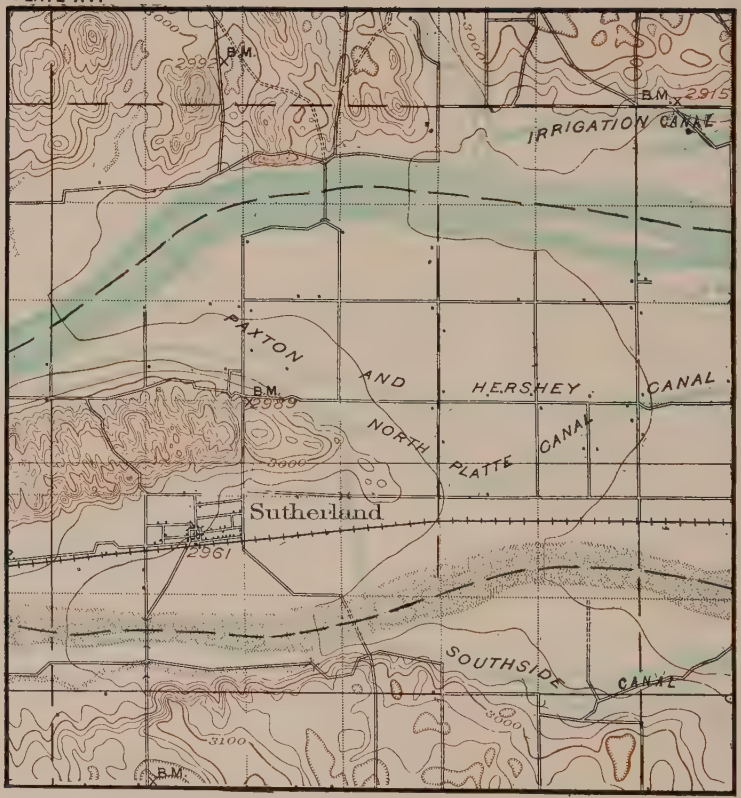
aside easily. Were the course of such a stream made straight, it soon would become crooked again. The manner of change is illustrated by Figs. 172 and 173. If the banks are less resistant at some points than at others, as is always the case, the stream will cut in at those points. If the configuration of the channel is such as to direct a current against a given point, *b* (Fig. 172), the result is the same, even without inequality of material. Once a curve in the bank is started, it is increased by the current which is directed into it. Furthermore, as the current issues from the curve, it impinges against the opposite bank and develops a curve at that point. The water issuing from this curve develops another, and so on.

Once started, the curves or meanders tend to become more and more pronounced (Fig. 173). In the case represented by Fig. 1,



A piedmont alluvial plain or compound alluvial fan in Southern California. Scale 1 – mile per inch. Contour interval 50 feet. (Cucamonga Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XVI



The alluvial plain of the Platte rivers in Nebraska. The South Platte is braided and the North Platte shows bars. The map also shows irrigating canals leading out from the river. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Paxton Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Pl. IX, the narrow neck of land between curves is cut almost through. When this is accomplished, the stream will abandon its wide curve. A later stage in the process is shown in Fig. 2, Pl. IX.

When the stream has cut off a meander, the abandoned part of the channel may remain unfilled with sediment. If it contains standing water, it becomes a lake (Fig. 174). Some such lakes have the form of an ox-bow, and so are called *ox-bow lakes* (Pls. IX and X). They are also known as *bayous*.

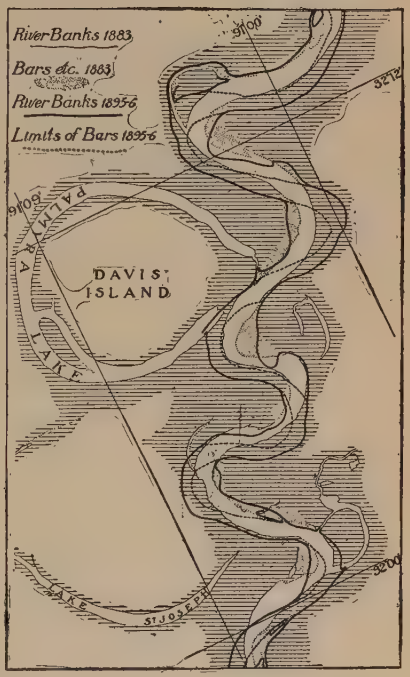


FIG. 174—Meanders and cut-offs in the Mississippi Valley below Vicksburg. The figure shows the migration of the meanders down-stream and their tendency to increase in size.

By the shifting of their courses, as the result of deposition and meandering, streams have affected human interests in many ways. Some villages built on the banks of a stream because of the river traffic which the situation favored, have been abandoned by changes in the stream's course. Most such villages decay when the stream has withdrawn its patronage. Some have been destroyed, while others have been preserved at great expense. Kaskaskia, the capital of Illinois until 1819, was situated on the flood plain of the Mississippi. In 1881 a change in the channel of the river converted the larger part of the village site into an island, the last vestige of which was washed away in 1899. Large sums have been expended by the National Government and by the Chicago and Alton Railway to keep the Missouri in its course at Glasgow, Mo. Again, streams are in some cases the boundaries between counties, and even states. In such cases the shifting of the stream would transfer territory from one state to another. To prevent this, complicated legal

FIG. 175.—A cement-lined canal prepared for irrigation. Truckee-Carson project, Nev. The cement lining prevents free seepage. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 176.—An irrigating canal not cemented, before the water is turned in Salt River Valley, Ariz. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

devices and complicated definitions of boundaries are sometimes resorted to. The case is still more serious where a river forms an international boundary. Thus the shifting of the Rio Grande makes that river an unsatisfactory boundary between the United States and Mexico.

Fertility of alluvial plains. Many alluvial plains are very fertile and are among the tracts most prized for agricultural pur-

FIG. 177.—An irrigating canal filled with water. Salt River Valley, Ariz. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

poses. This was as true in ancient times as now, for the valleys of the Nile, the Po, and of several of the rivers of southern Asia were the garden spots of ancient civilizations. The frequent deposits of silt and mud on such plains continually renew the soil and keep it fertile. So strictly were the earlier civilizations confined to valley plains that the period antedating 800 B.C. has been called, with some propriety, the "fluvial period" of history. In America, valleys have been sought out for habitation from the earliest times. In Virginia and Maryland early settlements were made in the valleys of the James and the Potomac; and in Pennsylvania, in the valleys of the Delaware, the Schuylkill, and the Susquehanna. In New York the principal settlements long were

confined to the valleys of the Hudson and the Mohawk; and when the early settlements of Massachusetts began to spread beyond the coast, they occupied the Connecticut Valley.

Valley flats, as well as alluvial fans, are favorably situated for irrigation. Figs 175 and 176 show irrigation canals or large ditches, and Fig. 177 a canal filled with water. Fig. 178 shows a field prepared by ditching for irrigation. Water is drawn, as required, from the canals into the small ditches of the field. Great progress already has been made in the irrigation of the arid lands in the western part of the United States. The lands thus utilized are largely in valleys and on plains adjacent to mountains. The general distribution of the irrigated and irrigable lands is shown in Fig. 179. The Government has undertaken the construction of many reservoirs in favorable sites in the mountains to hold the waters of the wet seasons, so that they may be drawn out and used on the lands below during the growing season. Most of the sites selected for dams are narrow places in valleys.

River floods. Alluvial plains are, however, not without their drawbacks as agricultural regions, for the floods to which they are subject are disastrous both to life and to property.

Terrible illustrations are afforded by the valleys of many great rivers. Thus in the spring of 1897 many thousand square miles of the flood plain of the Lower Mississippi were covered with water. It was estimated that 50,000 to 60,000 people suffered serious loss. In 1881 and 1882 the floods of the same stream and of the Ohio are estimated to have caused a loss of $15,000,000 and 138 lives. The losses occasioned by the floods of the Ohio alone were estimated at $10,000,000 in 1884, and at $40,000,000 in 1903. There was a disastrous flood in the valley of the Wabash and another in the valley of the Susquehanna in 1904, each causing the destruction of property to the extent of nearly $10,000,000.

In March 1913, there were terrible floods in Ohio and Indiana, especially in the valleys of the Miami and Scioto rivers in the former state. In the five days from March 22-27, an average of about 8 inches of water fell in the Miami basin. The ground already was saturated with water, so that most of the rain which fell ran off over the surface. The greatest damage was at Dayton, on the Miami. Much of the city is built on the flood plain. There were levees built to protect the city against a rise of 23 feet in the

FIG. 178.—Fields prepared for irrigation by methods of squares. Las Cruces, N. M. (Photograph by Fairbanks.)

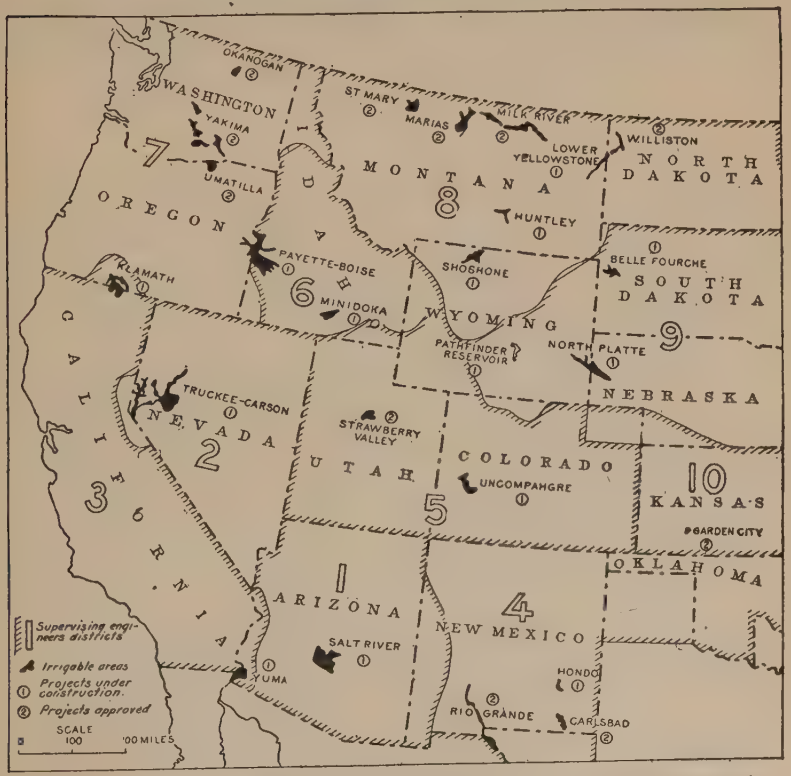


FIG. 179.—Map showing irrigation projects completed and under construction; spring, 1906. (Blanchard.)

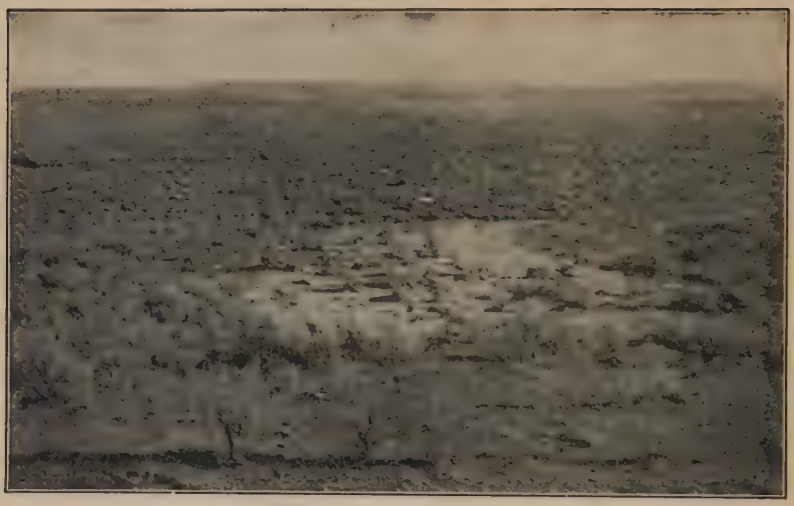


FIG. 180.—A type of the arid lands of the West before irrigation. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 181.—The same type of land shown in Fig 180, after irrigation. Salt River Valley, Ariz. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

river, but the water went over them, and much of the city was under 10 feet of water when the flood was highest. The property loss in Dayton was estimated at $30,000,000.

Columbus, on the Scioto river, suffered seriously at the same time. Parts of the city were flooded, but the greatest damage was to railways, some of which had their tracks on the levees. The B. & O. Railway reported loss to the extent of $2,500,000 to $3,000,000, including 12 bridges (not all across the Scioto), and the Big Four Railway lost 40 bridges, and 25 to 30 miles of its track was washed away.

Indianapolis, on the White River in Indiana, was in the same storm region and suffered seriously. The water there rose more than 4 feet higher than it ever had been known to rise before. The property loss was estimated at $3,000,000.

Cities built on flood plains are subject to great injury from floods. An exceptional flood of the Passaic River (N. J.) in 1902 is estimated to have destroyed millions of dollars' worth of property in the city of Paterson alone.

Disastrous floods occur from time to time in most great valleys. In 1885 a heavy rainfall of about 24 inches of water over an area of about 1000 square miles in the valley of the Ganges caused a disastrous flood. The volume of the river was greatly swollen, and the water rushed down the valley with terrible velocity, undermining the banks, cutting new channels in the valley plain, sweeping away roads, ditches, bridges, aqueducts, retaining-walls, and even villages.

The most disastrous river floods recorded are those of the Hoang-ho or Yellow River of China. Previous to 1892, this river flowed into the Yellow Sea south of the Shan-tung promontory. In that year it shifted its course when in flood, and formed a new channel leading northwest into the Gulf of Pechili, 300 miles to the north (Fig. 182). Such changes in a stream's course are of much consequence to commerce.

The alluvial plains of some valleys are protected against flood by levees, or dykes. In such cases the natural levees are built higher by man, and the gaps in them are filled. They then protect the flat outside in ordinary floods; but extraordinary floods sometimes burst through the dykes, working great disaster. Some parts of the rich flood plain of the Mississippi which are used for agriculture are so subject to floods that all buildings connected with the farms are placed above the flat.

Alluvial terraces. When a river which has an alluvial flat is rejuvenated, the stream sinks its channel below the level of the flat (Fig. 158). The remnants of the old flood plain then constitute *alluvial terraces* (Fig. 183). Similar terraces are formed in other ways. Thus if a stream is temporarily supplied with an excess of

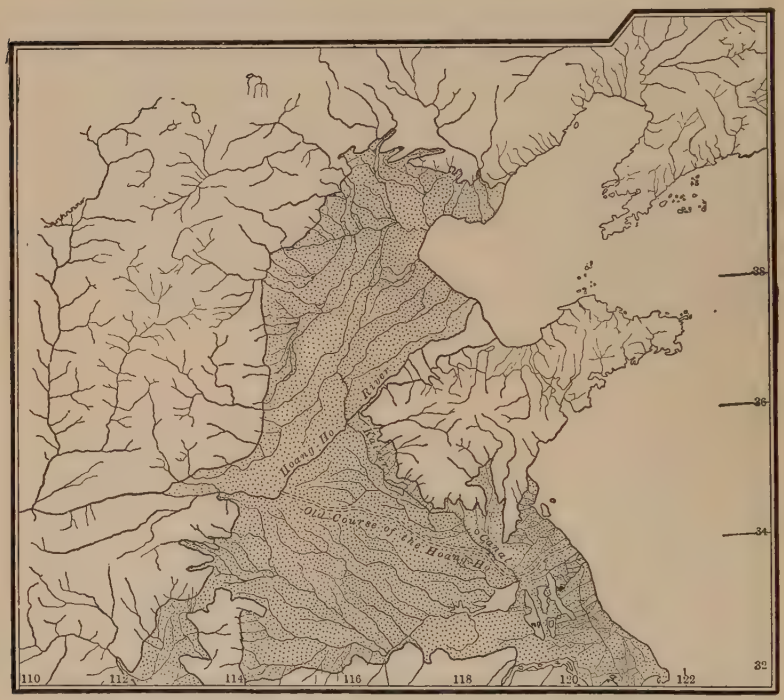


FIG. 182.—Diagram illustrating changes in the course of the Yellow River. The shaded area represents the area subject to flooding by the main stream and its tributaries. (Richthofen.)

load, it aggrades its valley (Fig. 170). If, later, the source of the excessive load is removed, the stream sets to work to remove that which was temporarily laid aside in its flood plain, even without rejuvenation. The more conspicuous alluvial terraces arise in some such ways. Many cities, such as Dubuque, Ia., Peoria, Ill., and Harrisburg, Pa., were begun on stream terraces, though they have now spread above them.

3. At debouchures. Where a swift stream flows into the sea or a lake, its current is promptly checked and soon destroyed alto-

gether. Its load is accordingly dropped. If not washed away by waves, etc., the deposits of river-borne sediment in such places make *deltas* (Figs. 184 and 185).

The delta has some points in common with the alluvial fan. In both cases the principal deposit is concentrated at the point where the velocity is checked suddenly. In the case of the delta, however, the current is checked more completely, and the debris accumulates (at the outset) below the surface of the standing

Fig. 183.—Terraces on the Fraser River at Lilloet, B. C.
(Photograph by Calvin.)

water. In form, the delta differs from the alluvial fan in that its edge has a steep slope (compare Figs. 186 and 187).

Once a delta is started below water, deposition takes place upon its surface, which may be built up to, and even above, the water-level. That part of the delta above the surface of the water in which it is built is like a flat alluvial fan.

Waves, currents, etc., may prevent the building of a delta, but otherwise all sediment-bearing streams make deltas at their debouchures. In some places deltas are built where one stream flows into another. This is especially the case where a swift, debris-laden stream joins a slow one. Deltas built into rivers are usually of slight extent.

Much land has been made by delta-building. Thus the Colorado River has built a great delta many square miles (above water) in area at the head of the Gulf of California (Fig. 188). The delta

has been built quite across the gulf near its upper end, shutting off its former head. In the arid climate of the region this shut-off

Fig. 184.—Delta of Lake St. Clair. (Lake Survey Chart.)

Fig. 185.—A general view of the lower part of the delta of the Mississippi.

head has become a nearly dry basin, the lowest part of which is about 300 feet below sea-level. The Skagit River, in Washington,

has built out its delta so as to surround what were high islands in Puget Sound, thus joining them to the mainland. The deltas of the Mississippi (Fig. 185), the Nile (Fig. 189), and the Hoang-ho rivers are among the large and well-known ones. The united delta of the Ganges and Brahmaputra is also a great one, having an area

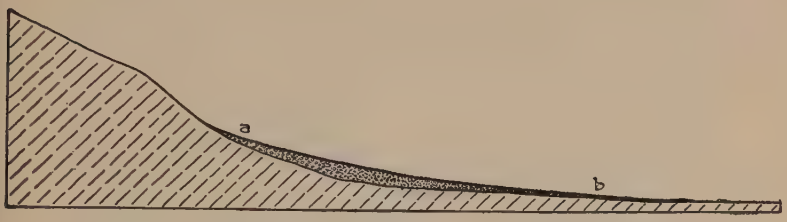


FIG. 186.—Diagrammatic profile and section of an alluvial fan.

(above water) of some 50,000 square miles. The Po has built a delta 14 miles beyond the former port of Adria, which gave its name to the Adriatic Sea. The Rhone River (France) has advanced its delta some 15 miles in as many centuries.

The borders of many deltas are difficult of determination. A delta sometimes is said to be limited up-stream by the point where the distributaries begin to be given off. This definition is convenient, but arbitrary. It is less definite, but perhaps truer,

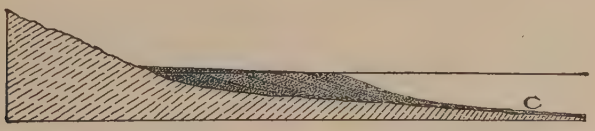


FIG. 187.—Diagrammatic profile and section of a delta.

to regard the up-stream border of the land reclaimed from the sea or lake by the river deposits, as the head of the delta. This definition would in many cases make the areas of deltas much greater than the other. On this basis, the head of the delta of the Mississippi, for example, would be near the mouth of the Ohio.

The effect of delta-building is to increase the area of the land; but it is to be noted that the processes which lead to delta-building

reduce the volume of the land-masses, even though they increase their area.

The outline of some deltas is determined by the surroundings in which they are built. Thus where a delta is built in the head

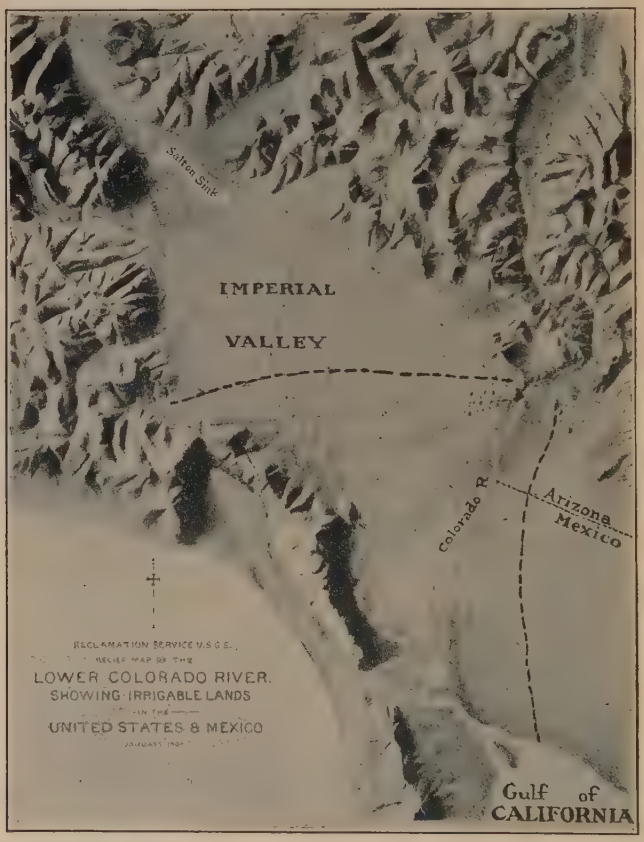


FIG. 188.—Relief map of an area about the head of the Gulf of California, showing the delta of the Colorado River, outlined in a general way by dotted lines. (U. S. Reclamation Service.)

of a bay, the form of the bay-head determines the shape of the delta. The normal form of a delta built on an open coast is somewhat semicircular, though there may be a fringe of *delta fingers* which together have some resemblance to the Greek letter delta (Δ), which gave these terminal deposits of streams their name.

The silting up of river mouths may be disastrous to cities whose commerce is based on river trade. Thus the silting up of the Tapti River was largely responsible for the decline of Surat, once the leading commercial centre of India. Between 1797 and 1847 its population declined from 800,000 to 80,000.

The surfaces of most deltas are nearly plane, and the streams which cross them give off many distributaries, as the preceding figures show. These distributaries are subject to great and sudden

FIG. 189.—The delta of the Nile. (Prestwich.)

changes of course, as well as to minor shiftings which are in progress all the time. These changes sometimes affect commerce in a vital way. Thus the site of Kásimbázár, in India, described as the "chief emporium of the Gangetic trade" early in the eighteenth century, is now a swamp as a result of a sudden change in the course of the Bhagirathi River (a distributary of the Ganges), on the banks of which it stood.

Many deltas are cultivated, and some of them, like that of the Hoang-ho, support dense populations. Delta lands are, however, subject to disastrous floods. It is estimated that the flood of the Hoang-ho River in September, 1887, drowned at least a million people who lived upon its delta, and caused the death of many more by disease and famine afterward. Many villages were completely destroyed, and hundreds more were temporarily submerged.

MAP WORK. See Exercise X in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

REFERENCES

1. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Geologic Processes*, Chapter III: Henry Holt & Co., 1903, and other standard text-books on Geology.

2. Russell, *Rivers of North America:* G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1898.

3. Shaler, *Aspects of the Earth*, Chapters III and IV. Chas. Scribner's Sons, 1889.

4. Gilbert, *Geology of the Henry Mountains*, Chapter on *Land Sculpture:* Government Publication, 1877; Chapter on *Niagara Falls*, in *Physiography of the United States:* Am. Bk. Co., 1896; and *Physical History of Niagara River:* Am. Geol., Vol. XXVII, pp. 375–377.

5. Campbell, *Drainage Modifications and their Interpretation:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. IV, 1896, pp. 567–581 and 657–678.

6. Willis, *The Northern Appalachians*, in *Physiography of the United States:* Am. Bk. Co., 1896.

7. Hayes, *The Southern Appalachians*, in *Physiography of the United States:* Am. Bk. Co., 1896; and *Physiography of the Chattanooga District:* 19th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., Pt. 11, pp. 1-58.

8. Davis, *The Seine, the Meuse, and the Moselle:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. VII, pp. 181–202 and 228–238; *Geographic Cycle in an Arid Climate:* Jour. Geol., Vol. XIII, p. 381; and *Development of River Meanders:* Geol. Mag., Vol. X, 1903.

9. Daly, *Accordance of Summit Levels among Alpine Mountains:* Jour. Geol., Vol. XII, p. 105.

10. Walcott, *Natural Bridge of Virginia:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. V, 1893, pp. 59–62.

11. Cleland, North American Natural Bridges, Pop. Sci. Mo., May, 1911; also Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., Vol. XXI, pp. 313–38.

12. Merrill, *Principles of Rock Weathering:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. IV, 1896, pp. 704–724 and 850–872; also *Rocks, Rock Weathering, and Soils*, Parts III, IV, and V: The Macmillan Co.

13. Dutton, *Tertiary History of the Grand Canyon District;* especially Chapter III: Mono. II, U. S. Geol. Surv., 1882.

14. Johnson (L. C.), *The Nita Crevasse:* Bull. Geol. Soc. of Am., Vol. II, pp. 20–25, 1891.

15. Gannett, *The Flood of April, 1897, in the Lower Mississippi.* Scot. Geog. Mag., Vol. XIII, 1897, p. 419.

16. Brown, *The Ohio River Flood of 1913*; Bull. Am. Geog. Soc., Vol. 45, 1913, pp. 500–509. A report of the same flood was published by the U. S. Dept. of Agr. in a *Special Bulletin of the Storms of March 22–27.* (Published April 15, 1913).

17. Jefferson, *Limiting Width of Meander Belts:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XIII, pp. 373–384.

18. Tower. *Development of Cut-off Meanders:* Bull. Am. Geog. Soc., Vol. XXXVI, pp. 589–599.

CHAPTER V

THE WORK OF SNOW AND ICE

We have seen that the atmosphere, the ground-water, and the waters on the surface of the land bring about important changes in its configuration. We are now to study the work of water in its solid form.

Ice beneath the surface. The wedge-work of ice in the crevices of rock has been mentioned (p. 64). When the great areas where water freezes during some part of the year are considered, it

Fig. 190.—Ice-crystals forming in the upper part of the soil grow by the addition of moisture rising from below. The ice added below pushes up the ice already formed. Columns of ice two or three inches in height are formed in this way, even raising small stones. (Photo. by Roberts.)

appears that the aggregate effect of its freezing in the pores and crevices of rock must be great in long periods of time. That the water which freezes in the soil also has some effect on the surface, is shown by the disturbance of walls if they do not go below the

depth of freezing, and by the working up of stones and bowlders through the soil. The frozen water in the soil makes it solid temporarily, and so retards or prevents surface erosion, thus having a protective effect. The moisture rising from the soil, either as vapor or by capillary action, sometimes freezes as it reaches the surface. There may be continued additions from below to the frost (ice) thus formed, resulting in the upward growth of ice, as shown in Fig. 190.

Snow is more wide-spread than any other form of ice. Other familiar forms of ice appear on lakes, rivers, and the seas of

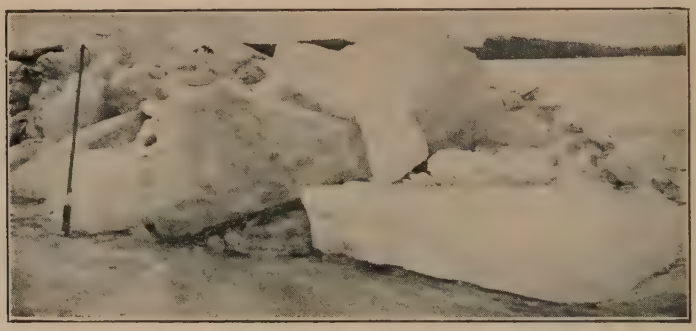


Fig. 191.—Ice crowding on shore. Lake Mendota, Wis. (Buckley, Wis. Geol. Surv.)

high latitudes, and on the lands of high mountains and high latitudes.

Ice of lakes. To understand the formation of ice on ponds and lakes, we may follow the changes which take place as the cold of winter comes on.

Fresh water is densest at a temperature of about 39° F. (4° C.). The surface water of ponds and lakes in middle latitudes is much warmer than 39° in summer. The waters below the surface are cooler, but for some distance at least, and in many cases to the bottom, they are warmer than 39° F. As the surface water cools in autumn and winter, it becomes heavier than the warmer water beneath, and slowly sinks. This process goes on, or tends to, until all the water from top to bottom has a temperature of about 39°. With further cooling the uppermost water expands slightly, and so remains at the surface. When cooled to 32° F. (0° C.), it freezes. In freezing it expands about one-tenth of its volume.

Deep lakes in middle latitudes, such as the Great Lakes of the United States, do not freeze over even in the coldest winters, for the body of the water of such lakes is not cooled to 39° F., and so long as their deeper parts have a temperature above 39°, the surface water sinks as it is cooled, and so does not reach the freezing temperature. Such lakes, therefore, freeze over only about their borders, where the water is so shallow that its temperature from top to bottom is reduced to the temperature of greatest density. Theoretically, this colder water near shore should spread to the greater depths farther from shore; and it actually does move in this direc-

FIG. 192.—Shore of Wall Lake, Iowa. (Photo. by Calvin.)

tion whenever it is heavier than that of greater depths, but in many lakes the movement is too slow to prevent freezing at the surface.

Like most other solids, ice contracts as its temperature is reduced. If the temperature falls notably after the lake or pond is frozen over, the contracting ice pulls away from the shore or cracks open, in some cases with loud, pistol-like reports. Water rises between the ice and the shore or into the opened cracks, and freezes, and the ice-cover again fits the lake. When the cold "spell" is over, the temperature of the ice rises, and the ice expands. The expanding ice may be crowded up on the shores, especially if their slopes are gentle (Fig. 191), or bowed up away from the shores. In the former case, sand, gravel, and bowlders frozen into the bottom of the ice are pushed up with it. Many "walled lakes" (Fig. 192), that is, lakes with accumulations of bowlders resembling walls about their shores, owe their peculiar

features to the shore-ward shove of expanding ice. Low terraces along shores and low ridges are also made by the shove of the ice (Fig. 193). Where the shore of the lake is steep and of loose earthy matter, the expanding ice may crowd in under the soil, even overturning trees near the shore (Fig. 194).

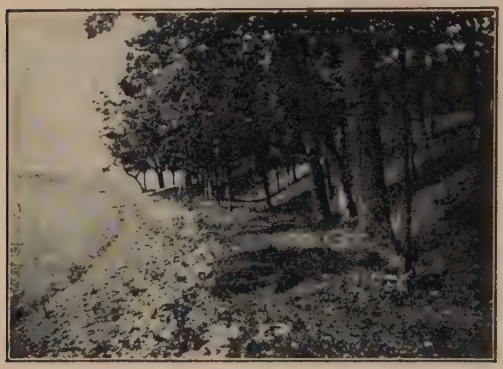


Fig. 193.—A low terrace of gravel and sand formed by ice. Shore of Oconomowoc Lake, Wis. (Fenneman, Wis. Geol. Surv.)

The ice of a lake may be continuous laterally with the ice of the soil (Fig. 195), and in this case the shove of the ice, on expanding, may thrust up the frozen soil into conspicuous ridges. Fig. 195 shows a ridge formed in this way on the shores of Lake Mendota near Madison, Wis., in the winter of 1898–9.

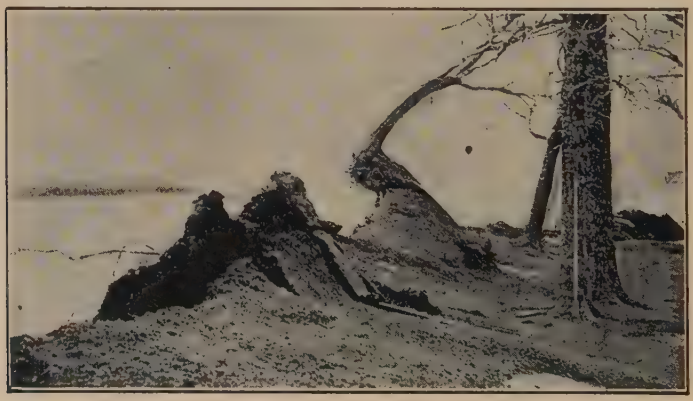


Fig. 194.—The shove of ice on the shore of Lake Mendota, Wis. (Photo. by Buckley.)

Ice on the sea. In high latitudes ice is formed along the seashore. Unlike fresh water, sea-water condenses till it freezes, at a temperature of 26° to 28° F. The variation in the temperature is due to the varying salinity of the water.

The ice crystals formed from sea-water are individually without salt; but a mass of ice formed from sea-water contains inclusions of crystallized salt or of brine, excluded from the salt

FIG. 195.—Shove of shore ice where the shore is marshy. The ice of the marsh is pushed up into ridges. (Buckley, Wis. Geol. Surv.)

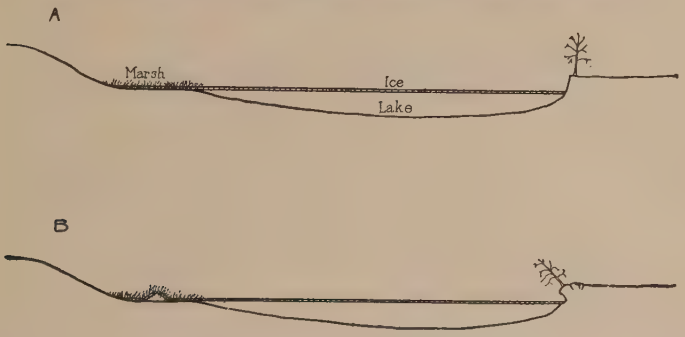


FIG. 196.—Diagram representing the effects of ice-shove on a marsh adjoining a lake, and on a high steep bank. It is to be remembered that the ground is frozen when the shove takes place, and therefore more resistant than when not frozen. The thrust must therefore be strong to produce the observed result.

water as it froze. In polar regions the sea ice attains a depth of several feet, at least as much as eight or ten. Floating ice of much greater thickness is sometimes seen, but it is doubtful

if these great thicknesses represent the ice formed by the freezing of undisturbed sea-water. At any rate, the ice formed in winter often is broken up in the summer into floating pieces, *floe-ice* (Fig. 197), and the floe-ice sometimes is crowded together in *ice-packs*, the separate pieces being so jammed together that some of them are ended up and stand high above the water. If the ice-pack of one summer is still far enough north at the end of the warm

Fig. 197.—Floe-ice on the shore of Greenland.

season, it is frozen together, and its aggregate thickness, made up of blocks of ice some of which are on edge, is far beyond that of normal sea ice.

Ice-foot. In high latitudes the snows along shore begin to accumulate in the autumn, before the sea-water freezes, and the water dashed up in storms freezes on and in the snow, converting it into ice. The first sea ice may be forced up on the land somewhat above normal sea-level by waves and tides, and it is thickened by the snow which lodges on it. In these ways, ice on shores may become very thick, with its upper edge many feet above sea-level. Such shore ice is known as an *ice-foot*. On the ice-foot, rock fragments broken off from cliffs above may gather in quantity. This protects the ice beneath from melting, and remnants of it may endure through the summer.

Ice in rivers. Rivers also freeze over in cold climates, and when the ice breaks up in spring, stones and bowlders to which it was frozen in the banks may be floated miles down the river.

Not only are bowlders frozen into the ice floated away, but huge pieces occasionally are torn from points of rock which project into the river. At Montreal stone buildings 30 to 50 feet square, projecting so as to have river ice form about them, have been moved by the ice of the St. Lawrence.

When the river ice breaks up, masses of it are carried downstream, and may accumulate in vast fields or "jams" behind obstructions in the river. Where jams form above bridges, the bridges are likely to be swept away. Jams also occasion disastrous floods above their sites, and when they break, the waters accumulated above may sweep down the valleys with destructive violence.

Northward-flowing rivers in the northern continents are especially subject to such floods. The snows of their upper basins melt while the lower parts of the streams are still frozen over. The free discharge of the upper waters is thus prevented, and freshets result.

When frozen over, many rivers of northern latitudes serve as roadways.

Ground-ice. Ice sometimes forms on the bottoms of stony rivers where the current is swift. It ultimately freezes around the stones and bowlders on the bed, and when enough of it freezes to them, they may be raised from the bottom and floated away. Ice sometimes forms in quantities on the bottom (or below the surface) of shallow seas, such as the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the Baltic Sea. Ice thus formed is called *ground-ice* or sometimes *anchor-ice*. Small vessels are said to be occasionally surrounded and entrapped by the sudden appearance of large quantities of this ice at the surface.

Ground-ice in rivers seems to be due (1) to the fact that the bed of the stream is frozen, and the water in contact with it freezes; or (2) to the fact that, though the temperature of the river as a whole is slightly below 32° F., the greater motion of the upper and swifter part keeps the water there from freezing, while the quieter water below congeals.

The cause of the development of ice on the bottom of shallow seas is not clear. The suggestions made above as to the cause of river-bottom ice do not seem applicable. It may be that freshwater from springs issuing into sea-water which is below 32° F., but above the freezing temperature of salt water, freezes before

being thoroughly mixed with the salt water. The ice formed about anchors probably is the result of the low temperature of the anchor before it was lowered. Ice due to this cause would not, however, endure long.

Snow. When the moisture in the air condenses at a temperature of less than 32° F., it commonly takes the form of snowflakes (Fig. 66). Snowflakes are not frozen rain-drops; they are formed instead of rain-drops when the temperature at which the water vapor condenses in the air is below the freezing-point.

Fig. 198.—Mt. Hood, a snow-capped mountain. (By permission of Lipman, Wolfe & Co.)

Snow falls in high latitudes during much of the year, and in middle latitudes during the winter season. Except on high mountains, little falls in low latitudes, and the little that does fall generally melts quickly. The period of snowfall and the duration of the period when snow lies on the surface increase both with increasing altitude and latitude, so that above the polar circles most of the precipitation falls as snow, and snow lies on most of the land surface all the time, even at low levels. The same is true in very high altitudes, even in low latitudes. In some such situations, indeed, the snowfall of the cold summer is much greater than that of winter.

While snow lies on the surface, it protects it. It shields the vegetation beneath from excessive changes of temperature, and especially from the repeated thawings (by day) and freezings (by night) which are injurious to many plants, and it keeps the dust and sand beneath from being blown about by the wind. The conditions which preserve the snow also prevent the effective wear of the surface by running water, so long as the snow is on the ground.

Snow-fields. Where snow endures from year to year over any considerable area, it constitutes a *snow-field*. Snow-fields are widely distributed. Stated in general terms, they are in mountains

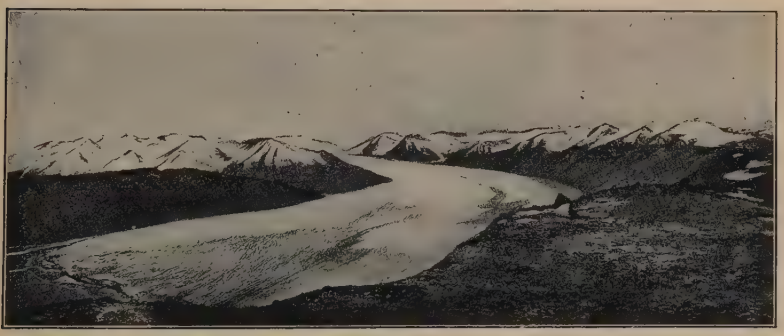


Fig. 199.— Snow-fields in the Skolai Range of Alaska. Chisana glacier in the foreground. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

in nearly all latitudes, but the altitude necessary in the equatorial region is great (15,000 to 18,000 feet), that in the temperate region less, and that in the polar regions slight. In the polar regions, indeed, snow-fields exist even down to sea-level. Stated in other terms, snow-fields occur in sufficiently high altitudes in any latitude, and at any altitude in sufficiently high latitudes.

Snow-fields are by no means rare in the United States. They exist in the high mountains of California, Colorado, and Utah (rare), and in the high mountains of all the states farther north (Fig. 198). The snow-fields of the more northerly states are more numerous and on the whole larger than those farther south. In the mountains north of the United States they are still more extensive, and in Alaska some of them have considerable size (Fig. 199).

There are snow-fields in the high mountains of Mexico and South America, in the Alps, the Pyrenees, the Caucasus, and the

Scandinavian mountains of Europe, and in the Himalayas and the higher mountains of the regions farther north and northeast in Asia. There are a few in Africa, even very near the equator, though they are small and limited to very high mountains. Besides these and other small fields of snow and ice, there are two great fields in Greenland and Antarctica. The snow-and-ice field of Greenland contains much more snow and ice than all the mountain snow-fields mentioned above, and that of Antarctica contains probably several times as much as that of all other fields together.

It is not improbable that there are as much as a million cubic miles of snow and ice now on the land. If this amount of ice were melted and returned to the sea, it would raise its level about 30 feet.

Snow-line. The line above which the snows of winter are not all melted is the *snow-line*. The snow-line may fluctuate somewhat from year to year, but during any given period, historically speaking, it is relatively constant.

1. The position of the snow-line is influenced by *temperature*. This is shown by the general fact that it is higher in lower (warmer) latitudes and lower in higher (colder); but in various mountains, the Himalayas for example, the snow-line is much higher on the north side than on the south, although the temperature on the south side is higher than that on the north. It is therefore evident that *something besides temperature is involved in the position of the snow-line.*

2. An additional factor is the *amount of snowfall*. The southerly winds blowing over the Himalayas carry much more moisture than the northerly ones. The result is that the fall of snow on the southern slope is much heavier than that on the northern. The same is true in the mountains of Switzerland. The position of the snow-line is therefore influenced by the *amount of snowfall* as well as by the temperature. Six inches of snow on the colder north slope of mountains (northern hemisphere) may disappear in the fewer melting days of summer, while as many feet of snow on the warmer south slope may not disappear during the longer period of melting in that position.

3. Again, snow disappears by evaporation as well as by melting, and aridity favors evaporation. A snow-field in a dry region therefore is wasted more by evaporation than one in a humid region. Wind increases evaporation if the air is dry.

4. *Topographic relations* also affect the position of the snow-line in a given place, for some situations favor accumulation and afford protection against the sun.

(1) Temperature and (2) amount of snowfall are the principal factors which determine the position of the snow-line, and (3) humidity (or aridity) and (4) topographic relations are minor factors. Since these several factors vary from place to place, no particular altitude in any latitude can be specified as the one necessary for the existence of perennial snow.

The following table shows the position of the snow-line at a few points:

Bolivian Andes, west side,	Near equator	About 18,500 feet.
Bolivian Andes, east side,	Near equator,	About 16,000 feet.
Chilean Andes,	Lat. 33° S.,	About 12,800 feet.
Mexico		About 14,800 feet.
Teneriffe.	Lat. 33° N.,	About 13,000 feet.
Himalayas, north side,	Lat. about 28° N.,	About 16,700 feet.
Himalayas, south side,	Lat. about 28° N.,	About 13,000 feet.
Caucasus Mountains,	Lat. 40°+N.,	About 8300 to 14,000 feet
Pyrenees Mountains,	Lat. 40°+N.,	About 6500 feet.
Alps,	Lat. about 46 ½° N.,	About 9000 feet.
Norway,		About 5000 feet.
Lapland,	Lat. 70° N.,	About 3000 feet.
Alaska,		About 5500 feet.
Greenland,	Lat. 60°–70° N.,	About 2200 feet.

Ice-fields. Every considerable snow-field is also an ice-field, for where snow accumulates to great depths and lies long upon the surface, the greater part of it is converted into ice. The beginning of this change is seen in the snow which has lain for a few days at the surface. It loses its flaky character and becomes coarse-grained, so that it is harsh to the touch. The change is still more conspicuous in the last banks of snow in the spring. The snow of such banks is made up of coarse granules, often of considerable size. The change of the flakes into granules is a process which is due in part to the melting of the surface snow and the sinking and re-freezing of the water below the surface; but since the change appears to go on even where there is no melting, melting and re-freezing are probably only a part of the process of change.

While this transformation is going on, the snow becomes more compact. As it lies on the surface, its own weight tends to com-

press it. The sinking water which re-freezes below the surface tends to bind the granules to one another, and as a result of the compression, of the transformation of the flakes into granules, and of the binding together of the granules themselves by the freezing of water between them, the whole mass tends to become solid. Just how solid and how dense snow must become before it is to be called ice, cannot be stated; but every great snow-field is really an ice-field, scarcely more than frosted over with snow. The last snow-banks of spring are essentially ice.

Glaciers

If the body of ice developed from snow becomes great enough, it begins to spread or creep out from its place of accumulation. Ice thus moving is *glacier ice.* Not all snow-fields give origin to

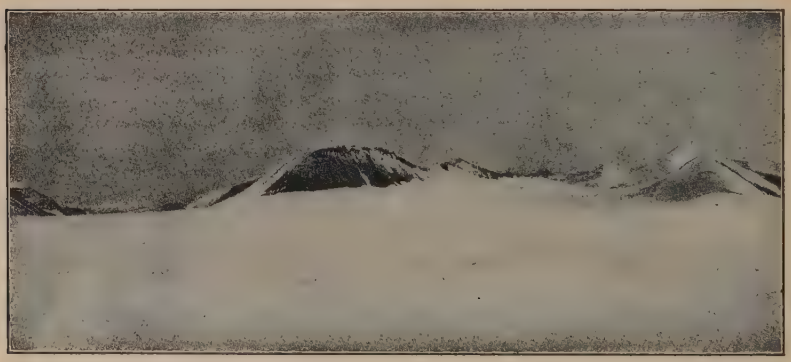


Fig. 200.—Summit of the Nizina-Tanana glacier, Alaska. (Rohn, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

glaciers, but nearly all glaciers have their sources in snow-fields. The distribution of glaciers is therefore much the same as the distribution of snow-fields.

Types of glaciers. Glaciers assume various shapes, depending chiefly on the amount of ice and on the configuration of the surface on which it lies. If the originating snow-field lies on the slope of a mountain, the ice moves down the slope; and if a valley leads out from the area of the snow-field, the principal movement of the ice is concentrated in the valley. If the ice lies on a flat surface, it spreads in all directions from its centre.

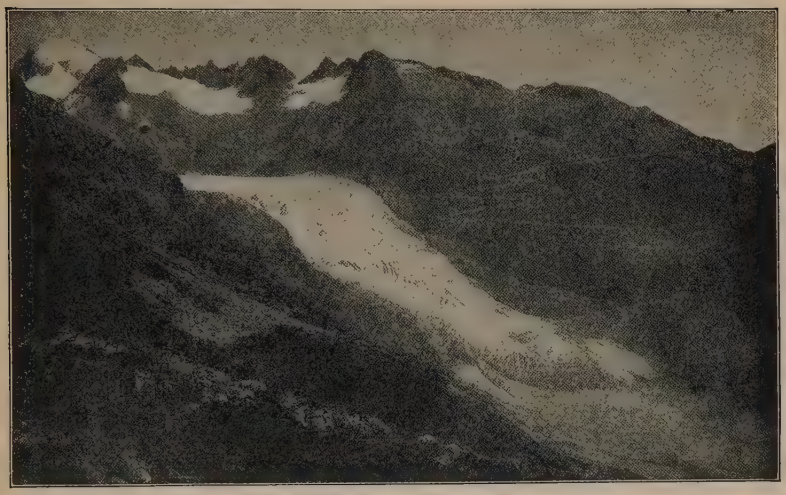


FIG. 201.—The Rhone glacier. (Photo. by Reid.)

FIG. 202.—The end of the Bryant glacier, a high-latitude glacier of North Greenland. (Photo. by Chamberlin.)

Glaciers which occupy valleys are called *valley glaciers*. In common speech, "a glacier" is usually understood to be a valley glacier. All valley glaciers sometimes are called *alpine* glaciers, because they belong to the same general class as those of the Alps; but the valley glaciers of high latitudes differ in some ways, especially in their steeper sides and ends, from those of the Alps. For this reason, valley glaciers may be classed as *alpine* (Fig. 201) and *high-latitude* (Fig. 202) glaciers.

In high latitudes, glacier ice accumulates on some plains or plateaus. In such positions glaciers may be nearly circular in outline, and may spread radially from their centres. Such glaciers are *ice-caps* or *ice-sheets*. Some ice-caps are large and some small. The main ice-caps of Antarctica and Greenland are large, but small ones

Fig. 203.—A small ice-cap in the northwestern part of Iceland. (After Thoraddsen.)

of the same type are found on various promontories along the coast of Greenland, on Iceland (Fig. 203), and on some Arctic islands.

At the bases of some mountains there are glaciers formed by the union of the spreading ends of valley glaciers. Such glaciers are *piedmont glaciers* (Fig. 231). Again, many snow-fields nestled in the depressions of mountain cliffs give origin to small glaciers which never descend to a valley. Such ill-formed and poorly developed glaciers are *cliff glaciers* (Fig. 204). Cliff glaciers grade into valley glaciers (Fig. 205). Ice broken from ice-sheets, or from valley glaciers

which reach a cliff, may accumulate below, freeze together again, and assume movement. Such a glacier is a *reconstructed glacier*.

FIG. 204.—A cliff glacier, coast of North Greenland. The height of the cliff is perhaps 2000 feet. The water in the foreground is the sea.

FIG. 205.—Glaciers intermediate in type between a cliff glacier and a valley glacier. Cascade Mts., Wash. (Willis, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Of these types, valley glaciers are most common and familiar, but ice-caps contain far more ice. The characteristics of glaciers may be studied in connection with the most familiar form.

The Valley Glacier

The general form of a valley glacier (Fig. 206) is determined by the shape of the valley in which it lies. If the valley is crooked, the glacier curves to match it, and if the bottom of the valley is uneven, the surface of the ice is more or less uneven, in keeping with it. The valley glacier sometimes has been called a "river of ice," but the differences between a glacier and a river are so much greater than their likenesses that this definition is misleading.

Fig. 206.—Aletsch glacier, Switzerland.

Its surface. The upper end of a valley glacier is in the snow-field, and is covered with snow all the time, while the lower end may be covered during winter. Some glaciers carry so much stony and earthy debris on their surfaces as to conceal the ice in some places, especially near the lower end.

The centers of most valley glaciers are higher than their sides, so that their upper surfaces are somewhat convex upward. The longitudinal profile of the surface of a glacier corresponds somewhat to the profile of the bottom of the valley in which it lies (Figs. 201 and 206), but its slope commonly is increased notably near its lower end, because of the steep slope of the upper surface of the ice.

The surfaces of many glaciers are uneven. In many cases they are cracked, and some of the cracks or *crevasses* gape. A principal cause of the crevasses is the movement of the brittle ice over an uneven bed (Fig. 207). Where the slope of a glacier bed increases abruptly, an *ice cascade* is developed (Figs. 201 and 208); but an ice cascade has little in common with rapids or falls of rivers.

Crevasses formed by the passage of ice over a steep place in its bed are as a rule transverse to the glacier. Some crevasses are parallel to the sides of the glacier and some oblique to them. Such

Fig. 207.—Crevassed glacier, the cracking due to change in grade of bed. North Greenland.

crevasses are due to other causes. The breaking of the ice as it moves is one of the many features wherein a glacier differs from a river.

As the ice moves forward, the crevasses may tend to close, though they rarely heal in such a way as to leave the surface smooth. So long as a crevasse is open, the sun's rays and the sun-warmed air enter it and melt the ice. The effect of the melting is to widen the crevasse, especially its upper part. The result is that when movement tends to close the crevasse, the opposing faces rarely fit together. This is illustrated by Fig. 210. The crevassing and the subsequent melting are therefore a cause of unevenness of surface.

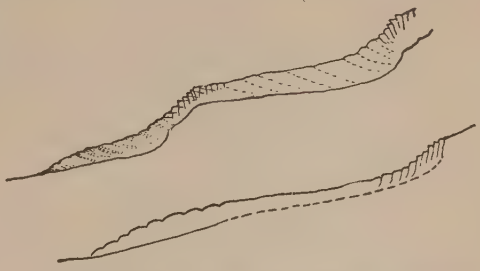


Fig. 208.—Diagrammatic longitudinal sections of glaciers. (After Heim.)

Another cause of surface irregularities is drainage from the surface. Many valley glaciers extend far below the snow line, and their lower ends are within the region of active melting during the summer season.

Some of the surface water sinks beneath the surface, but some of it runs in little streams on the ice until it reaches a crevasse or the edge of the glacier. These surface streams wear notable channels

Fig. 209.—Crevassing in the upper part of a glacier on Mt. Hood, Ore. (Meyers.)

(valleys) in the ice (Fig. 212), which, though rarely deep, help to roughen the surface.

The stony and earthy debris which many valley glaciers carry on their surfaces also gives rise to irregularities. Large stones protect the ice beneath from melting, and therefore come to stand on pedestals of ice, as the unprotected ice about them is melted away. Considerable aggregations of debris of any sort have the same effect, thus giving rise to mounds or ridges of ice covered with debris (Fig. 213). Very small or thin stones on the surface of the ice affect its topography in the opposite way. Rock absorbs heat better than the ice does, and thin

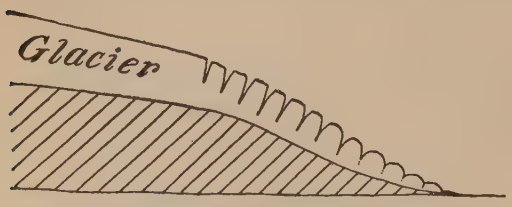
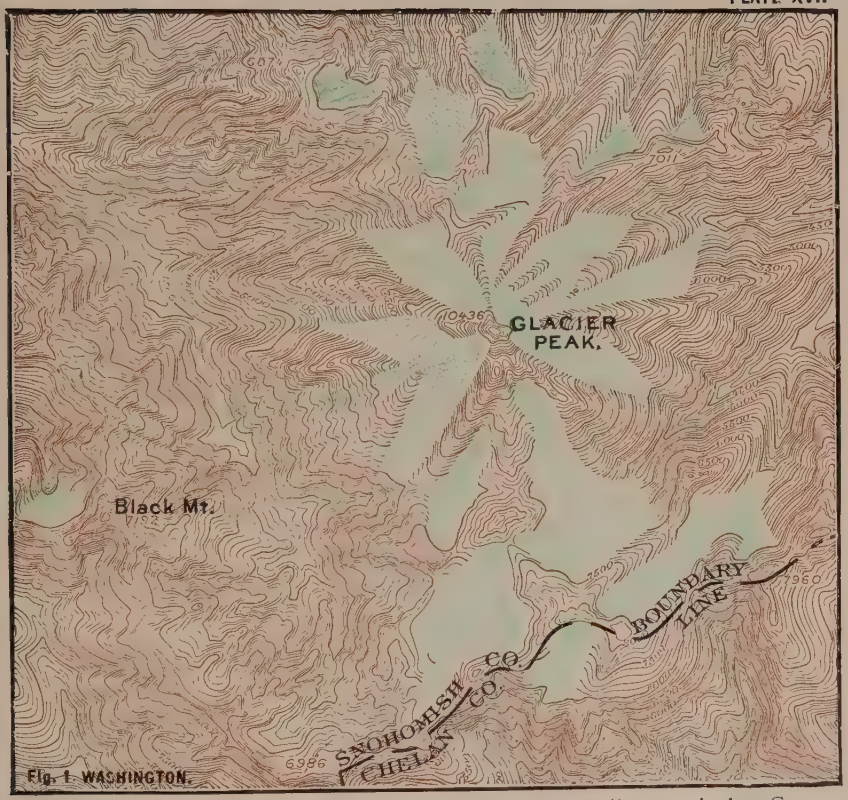
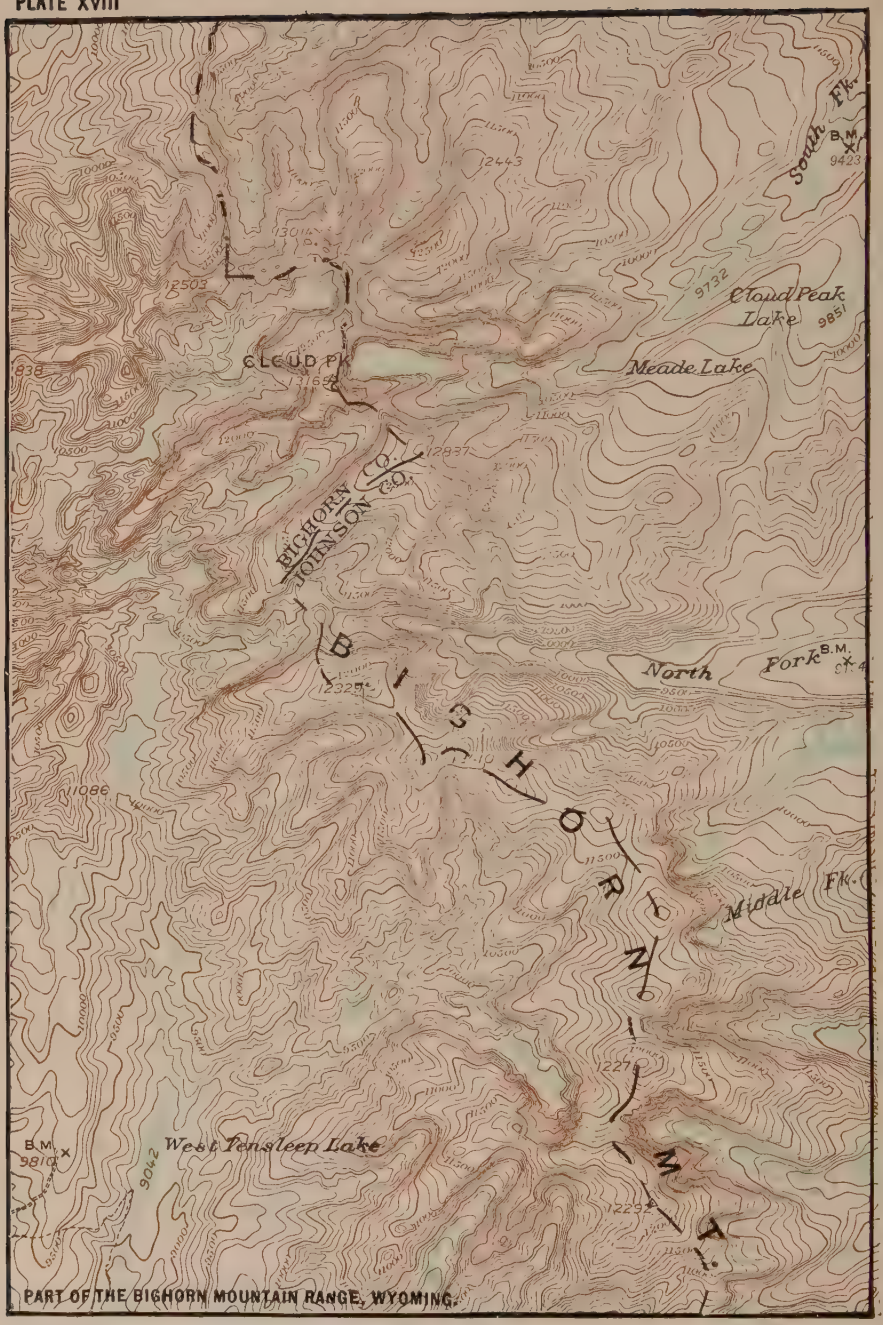


Fig. 210.—Diagram to illustrate one reason why ice crevasses fail to heal as explained in text.



Glaciers on Glacier Peak, Washington. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 100 feet. (Glacier Peak Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XVIII



A portion of the Bighorn Mountains, showing glaciated valleys, the heads of which are in many cases cirques. Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 100 feet. (Cloud Peak, Wyo., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

pieces of rock are warmed through. They may then melt their way into the ice more rapidly than the sun melts down the sur-

Fig. 211.—Seracs of glaciers. (Photo by Reid.

face about them, thus making depressions in the ice. Patches of dust blown on the ice have the same effect. The depressions to which they give rise are known as "dust-wells" (Fig. 215). Dust-wells are in places so close together that one must watch his steps in walking over the ice. Their depths depend upon their diameters and the angle of the sun's rays (Fig. 216). Their bottoms do not descend below the plane where the sun's rays strike the heat-absorbing sediment in them. Dust-wells are usually full of water at the end of a warm (melting temperature) day, but the water usually drains out at night. This drainage shows that the glacier ice is, on the whole, very leaky. Depressions resembling dust-wells, and of the same origin, sometimes develop on the compact surface of snow which has lain for some time on the ground.

Fig. 212.—Valley of a superglacial stream in the Bighorn Mts. (Photo. by Blackwelder.)

Movement

Waste and supply of ice. The ice of a glacier is wasting continually. The waste is due partly to surface melting, especially in summer, partly to melting below the surface, for much

FIG. 213. A very high ice column on the Biafo glacier, Himalaya Mts., at an altitude of about 12000 feet. The column is more than 12 feet high. (Workman, Geol. Jour., xxxv, 1910.)

of the ice of most glaciers is at the melting temperature much of the time, and partly to evaporation.

In spite of the rapid waste of glaciers, particularly at their lower ends and in summer, they may remain nearly constant in size for long periods of time. This shows that there must be a source of supply to replace the waste. This source is the snow-fields. From them ice creeps down the valleys until it reaches an altitude so low and so warm that waste (chiefly melting) balances forward motion.

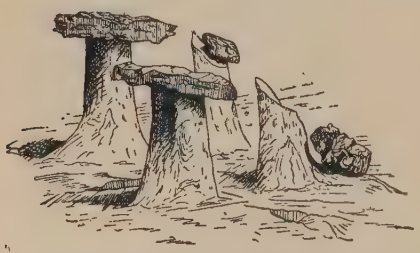


FIG. 214.—Ice column capped by slabs of rock, on Parker Creek Glacier, California. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

The fact of movement was first established by noting (1) that the ends of glaciers were sometimes farther down the valleys than they had been at earlier

times, and (2) that familiar objects at the ends of glaciers were overturned and pushed forward by the ice.

Rate of movement. Once the fact of movement was established various means were devised for measuring its rate. Rows of stakes were set across a glacier in a straight line, and their positions with reference to fixed points on the sides of the valley marked. After a time they were found to have moved down the valley.

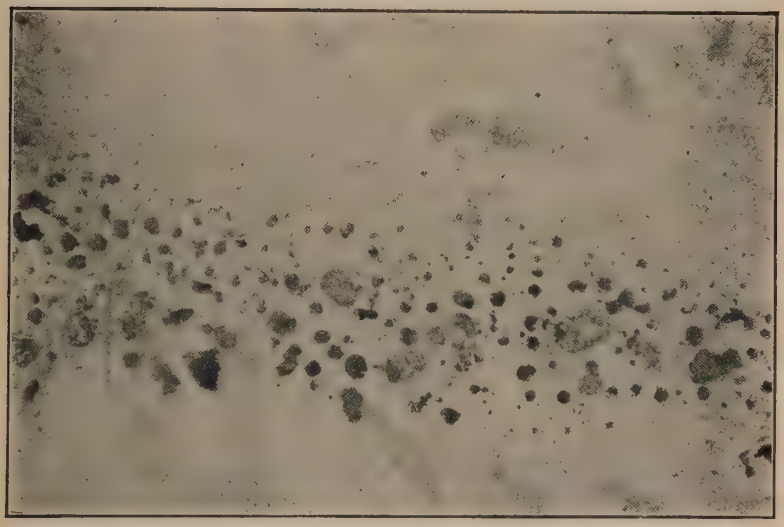


FIG. 215.—Dust-wells, North Greenland. The wells are a few inches in diameter. (Photo. by Chamberlin.)

In most cases it appears that those in the central part of the glacier have moved faster than others, as shown by Fig. 217.

In this and in other ways the rate of movement of numerous glaciers has been determined. It ranges from an amount so small as to be measured with difficulty, to several feet per day. One very large glacier in north Greenland has been estimated to move 100 feet per day, but this is certainly far beyond the rate for any of the more accessible and better-known glaciers, few of which move more than a foot or two a day, and many even less.

Conditions affecting rate of movement. The rate of glacier movement appears to depend chiefly on (1) the thickness of the moving ice; (2) the slope of the surface over which it moves; (3) the slope of the upper surface of the ice; (4) the topography of its

bed; (5) the temperature; (6) the amount of water in the ice, including that which falls on it as well as that produced by melting; and (7) the amount of load (debris) which the ice carries, especially in its bottom. Great thickness, steep slope, smoothness of bed, high (for ice) temperature, and much water favor rapid movement. Since some of these conditions, notably temperature and

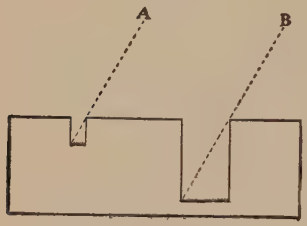


Fig. 216.

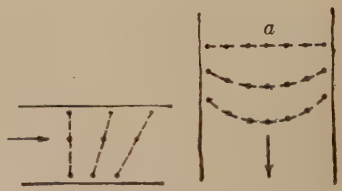


Fig. 217

Fig. 216.—Diagram to illustrate the fact that wells of larger diameter may be deeper than those of smaller diameter. The slanting lines represent the direction of the sun's rays when the sun is highest.

Fig. 217.—Diagram illustrating certain features of glacier motion. The figure at the left represents a vertical longitudinal section, and the top as moving faster than the bottom. The figure at the right represents a part of the surface, and the central part as moving faster than the sides.

amount of water, vary with the season, the rate of movement for any given glacier is not constant throughout the year, and is generally greater in summer than in winter. Other conditions, especially the first of those mentioned above, vary through longer periods of time and occasion periodic variations in the rate of movement.

Map Work. See Exercise XI in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

Nature of glacier movement. Glacier movement has been much discussed, but no final agreement concerning its nature seems to have been reached. From the fact that the ice moves down a valley, conforming to it somewhat as a river does to its valley, it has been thought that a glacier flows like a stiff liquid. This idea seemed at first to be supported by the fact that when a glacier moves out from a mountain valley to the plain beyond, it generally spreads (Fig. 218) somewhat as a stiff liquid might. It is to be noted, however, that the spreading or *deploying* end cracks open. In further support of this explanation of glacier motion, various experiments have been performed on ice. They

show that a bar of ice may be bent or moulded into almost any desired form, if subjected to sufficient pressure, applied slowly enough through long periods of time.

But in spite of the apparent mobility of ice, and in spite of the fact that in many ways its motion seems to resemble that of a

FIG. 218.—The spreading end of a glacier, North Greenland.

stiff liquid, it is doubtful if its motion is one of flowage, as that term ordinarily is understood. It has been stated that glacier ice cracks open when it passes over irregularities of bed, as well as under some other circumstances. Cracking open is not a characteristic of flowing substances. Many glaciers of high latitudes do not rest against the sides of the valleys in which they lie (Figs. 219 and 220). Some such glaciers are crevassed longitudinaly, and some of the crevasses have great length. If ice flows, therefore, it must be supposed to flow until it cracks open. It is not evident that a fluid, however viscous, would do this. These and other considerations have led to the view that the resemblance between glacier motion and the motion of a stiff liquid is more seeming than real.

FIG. 219.—Diagram to show relations of a high-latitude glacier to its valley walls.

The fundamental element in glacier motion probably consists in the melting and re-freezing of its substance. The process is a very complex one, and cannot be analyzed fully here, but some of its elements may be stated.

When water from the surface sinks into the glacier and freezes again, it expands, and the ice where the freezing takes place is subject to stress. The force of the stress which freezing water exerts is illustrated by the familiar fact that vessels of great strength are broken when water freezes in them. The freezing of the water which has descended must cause movement, and the movement must be chiefly down the valley, for in this direction gravity helps, while in the opposite direction it hinders. Furthermore, the water moved before re-freezing, and always downward, not only toward the bottom of the ice, but commonly toward the lower end of the valley as well. The *flow of the water* is therefore a way of *transferring the ice* of the glacier down-valley.

FIG. 220.—Part of the vertical side of a North Greenland glacier. Some of the vertical, or even overhanging, faces are more than 100 feet high.

There are causes of melting and re-freezing other than the direct influence of the sun or the heat of the interior of the earth. These other causes are bound up with the movement of the ice itself. It is now believed that an important part of glacier motion is to be explained by the melting which results from the internal pressures involved in motion, and in the re-freezing of the water thus produced. It is believed therefore that though the motion of a glacier as a whole has a superficial resemblance to the motion of a viscous body, the actual motion is partly that of a solid, under stress, and partly that of water contained in the ice.

The motion of the lower portion of a glacier which carries much debris is greatly retarded by its load. The relatively clean

ice above the bottom moves faster, and may be thrust forward or *sheared* over the debris-laden portion below (Fig. 221). This phase of motion probably is much more common and of much more consequence than formerly was supposed. It is best seen in the glaciers of high latitudes, where vertical edges and ends allow the structure of the ice to be seen. Under some conditions a glacier probably slides over its bed. Sliding is not, however, believed to be a principal element in glacier motion.

Size. There are in the Alps nearly 2000 glaciers. The longest of them is about 10 miles long. Less than 40 are as much as five

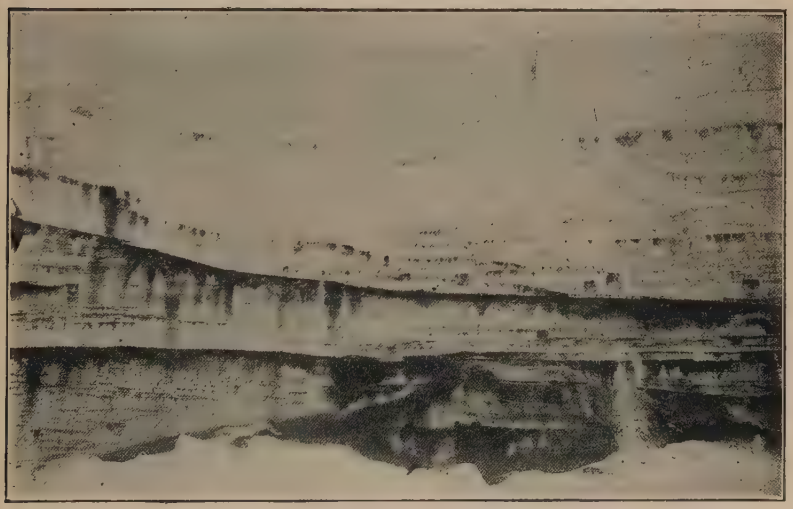


FIG. 221.—Shearing planes in ice, well defined North Greenland.

miles long, and the great majority are less than one mile in length. Some of them are but a few hundred feet wide, and few of them are so much as a mile wide. Their thicknesses rarely are known, except at their lower ends, but their maximum thicknesses are to be measured by hundreds of feet, rather than by denominations of a higher order.

There are larger alpine glaciers in the Caucasus Mountains of Europe and in Alaska. Seward Glacier in Alaska is more than 50 miles long, and 3 miles wide at the narrowest part. The glaciers of the western mountains of the United States (south of Alaska) are mostly shorter than the longer glaciers of the Alps.

Many of them are indeed cliff glaciers, or intermediate in type between valley glaciers and cliff glaciers.

Ice-caps

Ice-caps lie on plains or plateaus instead of occupying mountain valleys. They may be large or small. Large ones may cover valleys and hills alike. Very large ones sometimes are called *continental glaciers*. At the present time the ice-caps of Greenland and Antarctica are the only ones of great size.

Fig. 222.—The ice-cap of Greenland. Only the borders of the island are free of ice.

The area of Greenland has been variously estimated at from 400,000 to 600,000 square miles, and all of it, except its borders, is covered with a vast field of snow and ice (Fig. 222). Near its margin, occasional mountain tops project above the snow, and here its surface carries some debris; but, except about its edge, nothing is visible, so far as known, through the entire island, save one vast plateau of snow-covered ice. The surface snow frequently is driven by the wind into rolling billows. The snow- and ice-covered plateau rises gradually toward the centre of the island, where it attains an elevation of 8000 or 9000 feet. The thickness of the ice is not known, but where thickest it probably is some thousands of feet.

The ice of this great field is creeping slowly outward. Its rate of movement has not been determined and is probably not the

same at all points; but it is very slow, perhaps not more than a foot a week. Near its margin the ice-cap is much crevassed; but the interior is comparatively smooth and unbroken, so far as now known.

Fig. 223.—Edge of the Greenland ice-sheet.

The ice-cap of Greenland is, in one sense, more of a desert than the Sahara, since it is inhabited, even less than that desert,

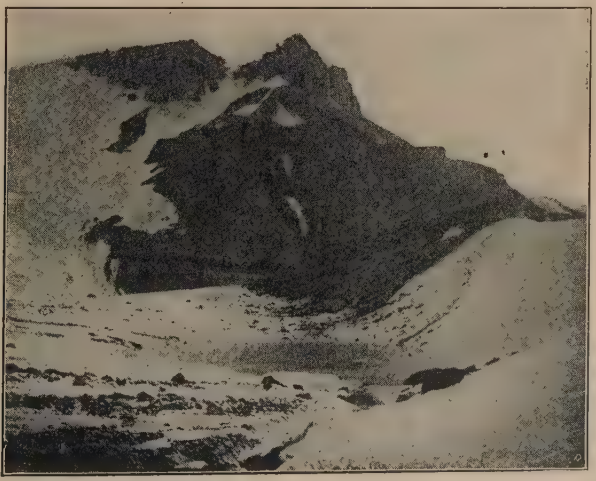


Fig. 224.—A mountain projecting up through the ice, North Greenland.

by plants and animals. Tiny red plants grow on it at various points about its border. Taken singly, they are too small to be

readily noticed, but in places they are in such multitudes as to give the snow a distinctly red color ("red snow"). Occasional small animals, especially the larvæ of certain insects, also are found on the snow some little distance at least back from its margin.

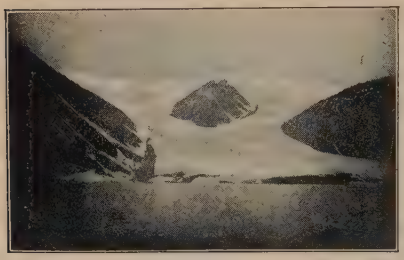


FIG. 225.—A *nunatak* projecting up through a Greenland glacier.

Where the edge of the Greenland ice-cap lies back a few miles from the coast, the rock plateau outside it is affected by numerous valleys which lead down to the sea. Where the edge of the ice-cap reaches the heads of these valleys, ice moves down them in advance of the edge of the ice-cap, making valley glaciers. Many of the valley glaciers move down to the sea, where their ends are broken off and floated away as icebergs. Many of these glaciers are far larger than any of the Swiss glaciers, and some are even larger than the great Seward Glacier of Alaska. While their number is great, the total amount of ice in them is trivial compared with the amount in the great ice-cap glacier from which they originate.

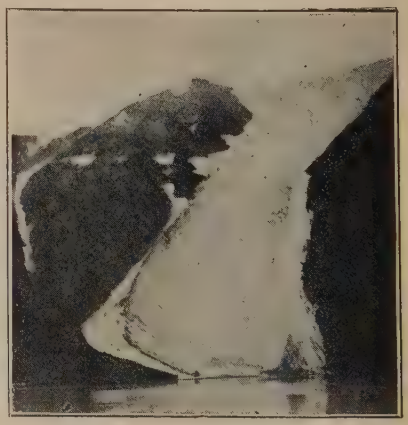


FIG. 226.—A small glacier descending to the sea, North Greenland.

The Antarctic snow- and ice-cap is far more extensive than that of Greenland, but its area is not even approximately known (Fig. 230). So far as now known, it may be some millions of square miles in extent, and the thickness of its ice probably far exceeds that of Greenland. At many points the ice descends to sea, where huge blocks of it are broken off and floated away as icebergs. Whether this Antarctic ice-cap rests on a continuous land-mass which, if free from ice, would be called a continent, or whether it rests on numerous islands which but for the ice would be separated by shallow water, is not known.

FIG. 227.—Front of Miles glacier, Alaska, where it reaches Copper River. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

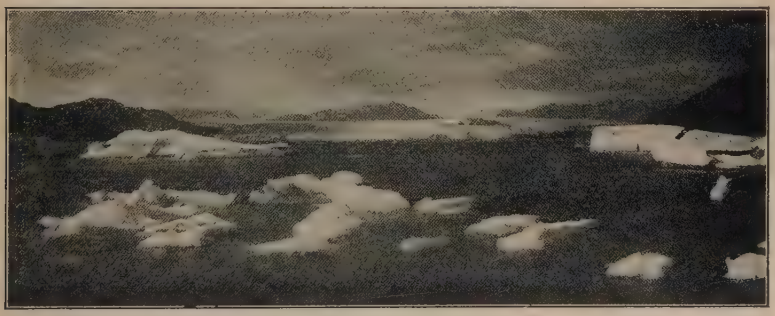


FIG. 228.—Glacier and Icebergs.

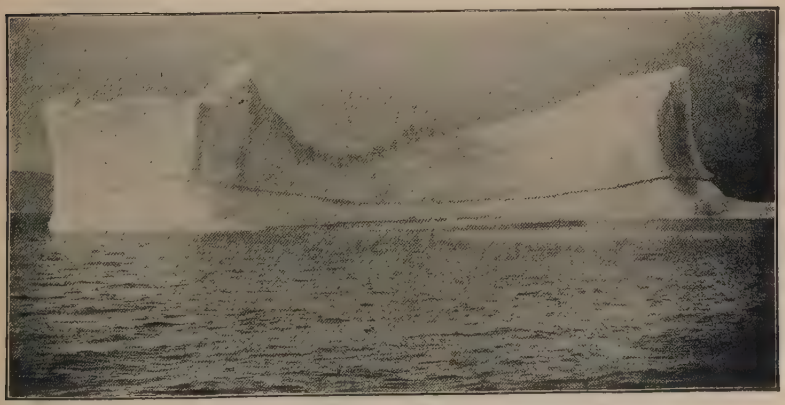


FIG. 229.—Iceberg, coast of Greenland.

Piedmont Glaciers

In Alaska a number of large alpine glaciers emerge from adjacent valleys of the St. Elias range upon a low plain, where their ends spread and unite to form a vast plateau of ice, 70 miles long and 20 to 25 miles wide. This peculiar body of ice is the *Malaspina Glacier* (Fig. 231). Its area is more than that of the state of

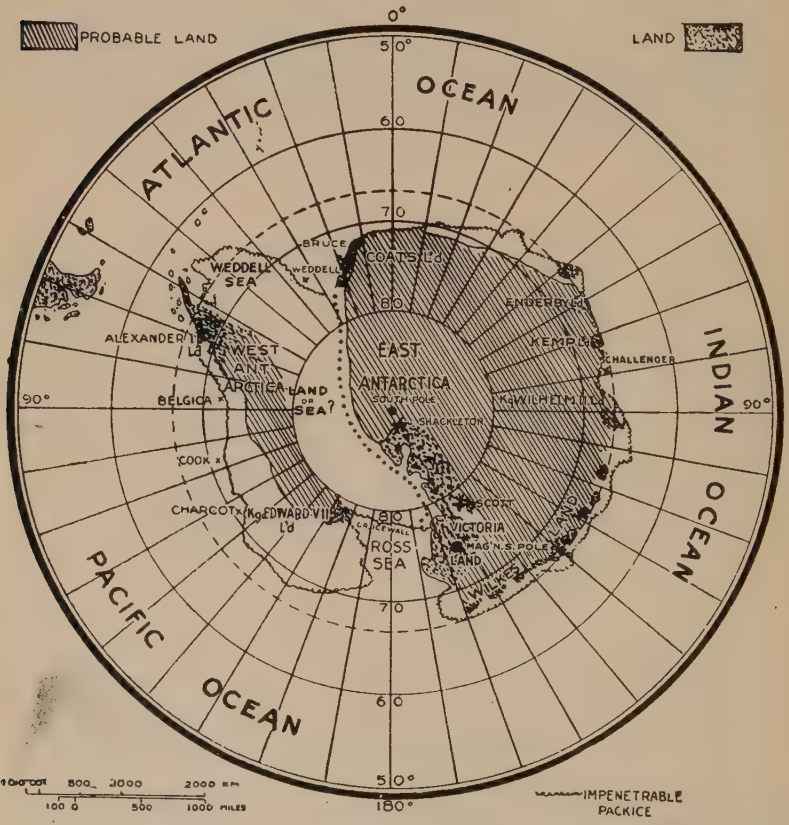


FIG. 230.—Map of Antarctica. The dotted line represents the approximate limit of abundant floating ice.

Delaware. Its central portion is free from rock debris, but is interrupted by thousands of crevasses. On warm summer days hundreds of rivulets flow in channels of clear ice until they lose themselves in yawning crevasses. The deep roar of some stream in its tunnel far below the surface frequently is heard. Nearer the

margin, where the ice is not so broken, there are many small ponds with high walls of ice. A belt along the margin five miles or less in width is covered by earthy matter and is densely forested (Fig 232). The undergrowth is here so thick that travelers have to cut their paths, and on the edge of the ice there are trees three feet in diameter. The forest extends four or five miles from the edge of the ice. The ice beneath the surface debris probably is

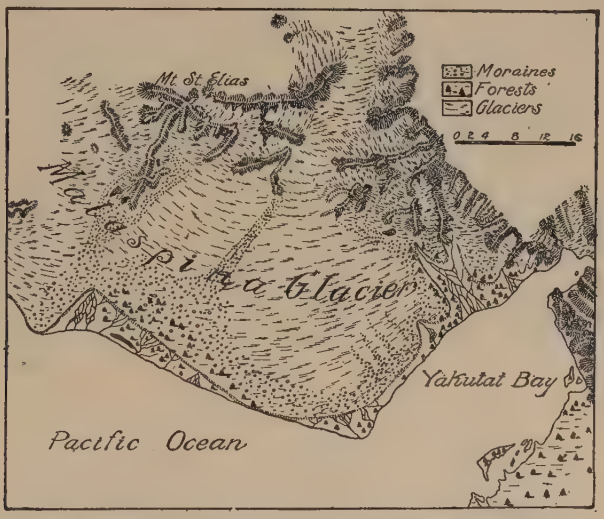


FIG. 231.—Malaspina glacier, a piedmont glacier in Alaska. (After Russell.)

1000 feet thick. Another large but unexplored glacier of the same type lies a few miles west of the Malaspina. There are others on the borders of north Greenland. Piedmont glaciers are of slight importance, from a quantitative point of view, but they are an interesting type.

THE WORK OF GLACIERS

Glaciers do a twofold work. They wear or *erode* the surface over which they pass, and they carry away and ultimately *deposit* the material which they acquire by erosion, as well as all that falls or blows upon them.

Erosion. As the snow-field develops, it may lie on a surface which is uneven, and more or less covered with loose pieces of

rock (Fig. 64). As the snow accumulates, all projecting stones are covered and enclosed by it, and, when the snow becomes

FIG. 232.—Forest on the southern border of Malaspina glacier. (Photo. by Russell.)

FIG. 233.—Surface of rock rounded and smoothed by ice. Bronx Park, New York City. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

ice and begins to move, these masses of rock are carried along in its bottom. The ice therefore *has some load when it starts.*

Where the snow and ice accumulate about projecting points of bed-rock, the ice tends to break them off when it moves. If they

are too strong to be broken off bodily, their surfaces are worn by the passage of the ice carrying rock debris in its bottom. Again, as a glacier creeps out over surfaces covered with soil or other mantle rock, the ice freezes to the soil, etc.; that is, the ice above the ground becomes continuous with the ice in the soil. This union is brought about, in part at least, by the freezing of descending water. When ice and soil have been frozen together, further movement causes more or less soil to be moved along.

The first effects of a glacier therefore are (1) to clean off the loose debris from the surface, and (2) to break or wear off projecting points of the bed-rock over which it passes. The general effect of the movement of the ice may be compared to

FIG. 234.—Diagram representing a hill unworn by ice, and the irregular contact of soil and rock.

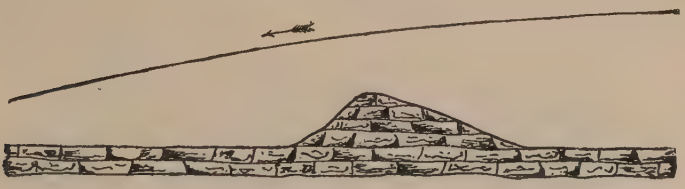


FIG. 235.—Diagram showing the effect of glacial wear on a hill such as is shown in Fig. 234.

that of a flexible rasp which fits itself, though sometimes with difficulty, to the irregularities of the surface over which it moves. Clean ice, moving over smooth, solid rock, would erode little; but rock-shod ice wears the surface over which it moves, even where the surface is smooth and solid.

Most ice-sheet glaciers are thicker than valley glaciers, and most of them move over surfaces which have less slope. An ice-sheet of great thickness may move over considerable hills and valleys, without being notably turned from its course by them. The hills and projecting points of rock overridden are worn down and smoothed off (compare Figs. 234 and 235), the wear being greatest on the side of the hill against which the ice moves.

The result is that glacial erosion so shapes rock hills that their forms indicate the direction of movement (Fig. 235).

FIG. 236.—A mountain valley in the same range as the next, but not glaciated. (Photo. by Church.)

Valleys through which glaciers pass are widened and deepened and their walls made smoother. Valley glaciers tend to trans-

FIG. 237.—A mountain valley which has been strongly glaciated, Wasatch Mountains. (Photo. by Church.)

form V-shaped valleys into U-shaped ones, a result which is conspicuous in many mountain regions (Figs. 237 and 240).

Where a glacier deepens a mountain valley notably, it brings about a lack of adjustment between the valley which is deepened,

and its tributaries which are not so deepened. The effect is illustrated by Figs. 240 and 241. The lower ends of the tributary

FIG. 238.—A normally eroded mountain area not affected by glaciation. (Davis.)

valleys (Fig. 240) are well above the bottoms of their mains. Such valleys are *hanging valleys*. Hanging valleys abound in the moun-

FIG. 239.—The same area shown in Fig. 238 affected by glaciers which still occupy its valleys. (Davis.)

tains of the West, where glaciers formerly were much more extensive than now. Some valley glaciers descending to the sea deepen the lower ends of their valleys so that they become narrow bays

or *fiords*, when the ice melts. Glacier erosion is not, however, the only factor in fjord-making.

Fig. 208 shows the steep descent of a mountain glacier near its head. This steep slope, and especially its lower part, is the

FIG. 240.—The same area shown in the two preceding figures after the ice has melted. (Davis.)

site of great erosion which carries the head of the valley back farther and farther into the mountain, and at the same time gives

FIG. 241.—A hanging valley near Lake Kootenay. (Photo. by Atwood.)

it steep slopes at sides and head (Fig. 243 and Pl. XVIII). The big, blunt, steep-sided, ice-shaped heads of valleys are known as *cirques*. Cirques have remarkable development in the Uinta,

Bighorn, Sierra Nevada, and many other mountains of the west. In many cases there are basins excavated in the solid rock in the

FIG. 242.—Figure showing contrast between glaciated rock surface below, and non-glaciated crests above. Kearsarge Pinnacles, Cal.

FIG. 243.—A glacial cirque with a small glacier in its head. Bighorn Mts., Wyo. (Photo. by Blackwelder.)

bottoms of the cirques, and such basins are the sites of some of the numerous little lakes which add so much to the beauty of scenery in mountains which have been affected recently by valley glaciers.

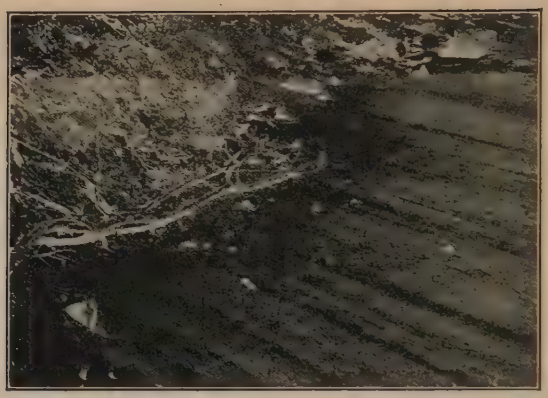


FIG. 244.—Striated rock surface. Kingston, Des Moines Co., Ia. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 245.—Rock grooved by glaciation. The gorge probably was formed by a stream under the ice, and then polished by the ice. Kelley's Island, Lake Erie. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

The effect of ice-sheets on valleys is less obvious than that of valley glaciers, because in this case the ice affected the divides between the valleys as well as the valleys themselves. It is probable that the valleys through which the ice of a large ice-cap moves

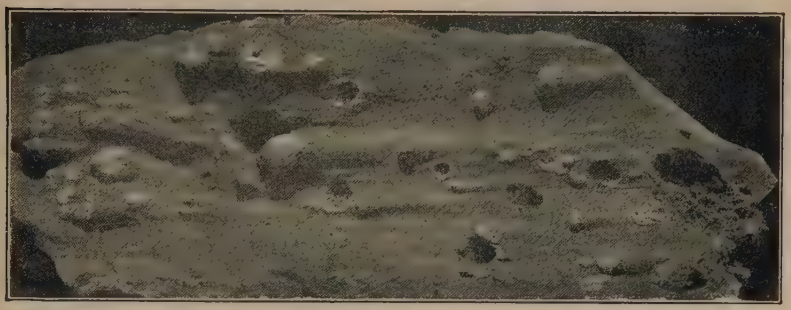


Fig. 246.—Small protuberances of rock showing the effect of ice wear. The movement was from left to right. Near Darlington, Ind. (U. S. Geol. surv.)

are deepened more than the neighboring hilltops are cut down. If so, glacier erosion increases the relief of the rock surface. At the same time, it probably reduces the roughness of the surface by reducing the steepness of slopes, and by obliterating many minor irregularities of hill and valley slopes.

If the ice of an ice-sheet crosses valleys, as the ice of great ice-caps does, the valleys are not deepened notably, though their upper slopes may be much worn.

Fig. 247.—Diagram showing, by the wear in the depressions, the direction of ice movement, left to right.

As the ice wears the surface, it makes distinct lines or scratches, called *striæ* (Fig. 244), on the bed-rock over which it passes. Grooves are developed instead of striæ under favorable conditions. The striæ are made by the stones carried in the bottom of the ice. The grooves are developed where the bed-rock is weaker, or where great bowlders are held firmly in the bottom of the ice, and urged along under great pressure. Fine clayey material

in the bottom of the ice polishes the rock below. The polish, the striæ, and the grooves left on the surface of the rock after the ice has melted, are among the most distinctive marks of the former existence of glaciers. In any limited area, the striæ are generally nearly parallel to one another and show the direction, or one of two directions, in which the ice moved. Between these two directions it is possible to decide by the help of the little irregularities of surface, as shown in Figs. 246 and 247.

The stones in the bottom part of the ice are rubbed against one another, as well as against the bed of the glacier, and are

Fig. 248.—Stones striated by glacial wear.

scratched much as the bed-rock is (Figs. 248 and 249). Since the stones in the ice shift their positions from time to time as the ice moves, many of them are striated on two or more sides.

As the materials carried by the ice rub against one another and against the bed over which they are carried, they become finer and finer. The finest products of the grinding constitute "rock flour," while coarser parts have the size of sand grains, pebbles, or even large stones. Thus it happens that the materials gathered and shaped by the ice are of all grades of coarseness, from huge masses many feet in diameter down to the finest earth. The larger masses of rock are *bowlders*; the smaller pieces are *cobble-stones*, *pebbles* (*gravel*), etc. while the finer materials are *sand* and the ground up rock (rock flour) popularly called *clay*.

Materials gathered. From its mode of erosion it readily will be seen that the bottom of a glacier may be charged with various sorts of material. There may be (1) bowlders which the ice has

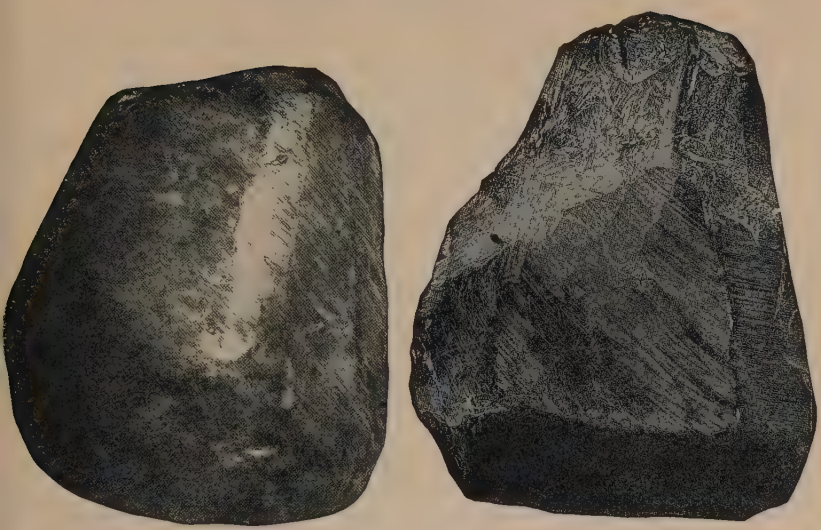


FIG. 249.—Stones in the drift striated and beveled by glacial wear.

FIG. 250.—Section of drift showing its heterogeneity.

picked up from the surface, or which it has broken off from projecting points of rock over which it has passed; (2) smaller pieces of rock picked up in the same way; (3) the fine products (rock flour) produced by the grinding of the debris in the ice on the

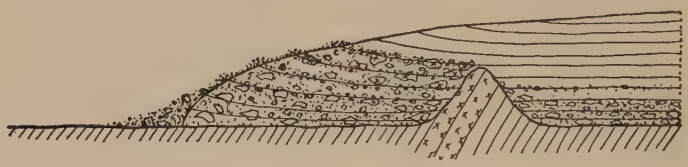


Fig. 251.—Diagram illustrating one way in which a glacier gets englacial material.

rock-bed over which it passes, and similar products resulting from the rubbing of stones in the ice against one another; and (4) sand, clay, soil, vegetation, etc., derived from the surface overridden. Thus the materials which the ice carries are of all grades of coarseness and fineness, from large bowlders to fine clay. The coarser material may be angular or round at the outset, and

Fig. 252.—End of a North Greenland glacier, showing the upturning of the layers of ice at the end. At one point a few stones are seen on the surface of the ice, where an upturned layer comes to the surface. This structure is common in North Greenland.

its form may be changed and its surface striated as it is moved forward. Whether one sort of material or another predominates depends primarily on the nature of the surface overridden.

Transportation, disposition of debris in transit. The larger part of the material carried by a glacier is in its basal portion; but

some is carried in the ice well above its bottom, and in the case of most glaciers, some is carried on the surface.

The position of the material in the base of the ice is readily understood from the manner in which the debris is gathered. The material above the base reaches its position in various ways. If the ice passes over a considerable elevation, material may be torn from its top and carried along at a level corresponding somewhat to that from which it was derived. This is illustrated by Fig. 251. Under some circumstances, too, ice moves from the bottom of the glacier upward (Fig. 252), and carries debris with it, and in this way debris which was once at the bottom may later find itself in a higher position.

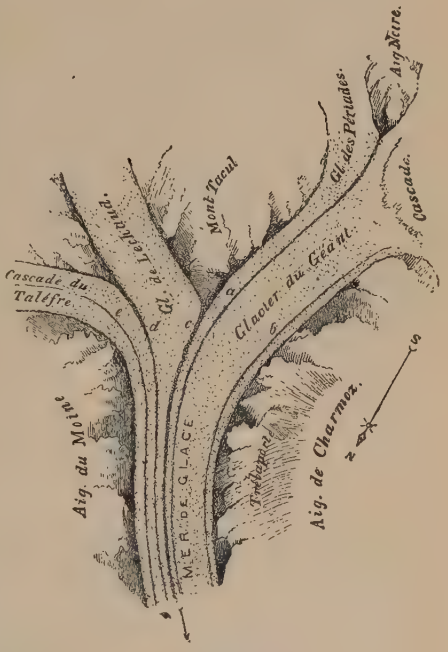


FIG. 253.—Figure showing the union of glaciers and the development of medial moraines by the union; also the position of lateral moraines. (After Tyndall.)

The material on the surface of a glacier reaches its position in various ways. Where the slopes above the glacier are steep, rock material may fall or slide down to the surface of the ice. Great masses of snow (*avalanches*) sometimes slide down on a glacier from the steep slopes above, bringing quantities of debris, and dust is blown upon the ice.

The material falling or sliding down to a glacier from the cliffs above tends to accumulate near the margin of the ice, and as it lies on the surface of the glacier, constitutes *lateral moraines* (Fig. 253). If two glaciers unite, as is sometimes the case, the two lateral moraines of the adjacent sides may unite, forming a single *medial moraine* (Fig. 253).

Both medial and lateral moraines arise in other ways. If a glacier passes over an elevation which reaches well up into the

ice, material torn from the elevation is at first carried along in the ice; but as the lower end of the glacier is approached, surface melting may bring the surface of the ice down to the level of the debris, when it appears at the surface as a medial moraine. In

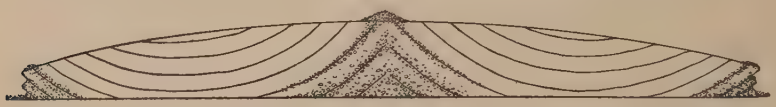


FIG. 254.—Diagram illustrating a way in which lateral and medial moraines are formed in many of the North Greenland glaciers. The horizontal line at the base represents sea-level.

other cases lateral and medial moraines arise by the upturning of the layers of ice, as shown in Fig. 254. Moraines arising in this way are common on the glaciers of North Greenland.

Deposition by Glaciers.

While the ice is in motion it is depositing more or less debris beneath itself, especially against the hills and projecting bosses of rock. Again, the bottom of the ice may become heavily loaded in passing over a region which yields load readily, and a part of this debris may be deposited farther on, where changed conditions of movement have rendered the load excessive. Debris deposited at one time may be taken up at another. Thus beneath the moving ice there is more or less deposition in progress all the time, though much of it is not permanent. In this respect, deposition by glaciers is somewhat like the deposition by streams.

The position of the end of a glacier is determined by the relation between ice waste and forward movement. When forward movement is balanced by melting, the end or edge of a glacier is constant in position; but even when the end of a glacier is constant in position, the ice itself is in continual movement. Under these circumstances, material is continually brought to the end or edge of the glacier and left there. The result is that if the end of a valley glacier or the edge of an ice-cap is constant or nearly constant in position for a long period of time, a thick body of drift is accumulated beneath its margin (Figs. 255 and 256).

Terminal moraine. The belt of thick drift accumulated beneath the end of a valley glacier or beneath the edge of an ice-cap is a *terminal moraine.* The terminal moraine becomes

FIG. 255.—Thick accumulation of drift under the end of a glacier. The end has probably been in about the same place for a long time. McCormick Bay, North Greenland.

FIG. 256.—An accumulation similar to that shown in Fig. 255, after the ice has melted away; near the last.

massive only when the end of the glacier remains nearly constant in position for a long time. The same term sometimes is applied to the debris on the end of a valley glacier, or on the edge of an ice-sheet. The material of this *super-glacial terminal moraine* is added to the *sub-marginal terminal moraine* when the ice melts. In general, the sub-marginal accumulation is much greater than that which is let down from the top when the ice melts.

Ground moraine. When a glacier melts, all the debris which it carried is deposited. When the ice is gone, therefore, the whole

FIG. 257.—A lateral moraine left by a former glacier in the Bighorn Mountains of Wyoming. (Photo. by Blackwelder.)

surface which it covered is likely to be strewn with its debris. All the rock debris left by the ice is *drift*. The drift deposited by the ice but not aggregated into thick belts at its edge, is *ground moraine*. The area of ground moraine is much more extensive than the area of terminal moraine.

Many spots once covered by the ice are left with little or no drift when the ice melts, for the ice does not carry abundant debris at every point in its bottom. Patches of bare rock therefore are found, and in places they are numerous, in the areas from which glacier ice has melted.

Lateral moraines. The term *lateral moraine* is applied not only to certain aggregations of drift on valley glaciers (Fig. 253), but also to certain aggregations of drift left by valley glaciers after melting. When a valley glacier is melted, the lateral moraines of its surface are left in the valleys which it occupied; but such

FIG. 258.—Sketch of a part of the Sawatch Mountains of Colorado, showing the moraines of former glaciers. At the right—*hh*—are lakes (Twin Lakes) held in by morainic dams. (After Holmes; Hayden Survey.)

lateral moraines are not commonly massive enough to be conspicuous after the ice is gone. On the other hand, the lateral moraines which remain when a valley glacier has disappeared may be very large (Fig. 257). In many cases, indeed, they are the most conspicuous deposits left. Some of them are hundreds of feet high, and in rare cases even more than a thousand.

The making of these huge lateral moraines is a somewhat complex process. They are made up in small part of the lateral moraines which were on the ice, and in much larger part of material accumulated *beneath the lateral margin of the glacier*. Their explanation seems to be found in the fact that a valley glacier moves not only down the valley, but also sidewise from the center toward either side. Spreading sidewise from the center, the ice is constantly shifting debris from the axis of the valley to the edge of the ice on either

side. The lateral moraine left after the ice is gone is therefore of the nature of a *terminal moraine beneath the lateral margin of the ice.*

Lateral moraines of valley glaciers are more likely to remain after the ice is gone, than terminal moraines, for the latter are more

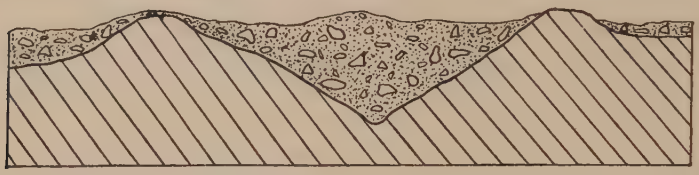


Fig. 259.—Diagram to illustrate how drift may decrease the relief of the surface.

likely to be washed away by the waters issuing from the ice or flowing down subsequently through the valley. Ice-caps do not develop lateral moraines, because they have no lateral margins.

Distribution and disposition of drift. Glaciers distribute their debris unevenly over the surface which they cover. The drift of

Fig. 260.—Sketch of drift (terminal moraine) topography near Hackettstown, N. J. (N. J. Geol. Surv.)

terminal moraines is generally thicker than that of the ground moraine near at hand, and the drift in the lateral moraines of many valley glaciers is very thick. The drift therefore modifies the topography in some notable measure.

In valleys, terminal moraines may constitute dams, ponding the waters of the streams above, and making lakes (Fig. 258),

FIG. 261.—A map of a small area of drift in New Jersey. The central belt of rough topography is *terminal moraine*. The area at the right, about half the map, is *ground moraine*. The area at the extreme left is drift, gravel, and sand, washed out beyond the edge of the ice by streams, making an *outwash plain*. (p. 231.)

though not all the lakes of glaciated valleys are due to moraine-dams (p. 270).

The drift of ice-sheets is more likely to be abundant in valleys and other low places, than on hills and ridges. The drift of ice-sheets, therefore, diminishes rather than increases the relief of the surface (Fig. 259), though locally it may have the opposite effect.

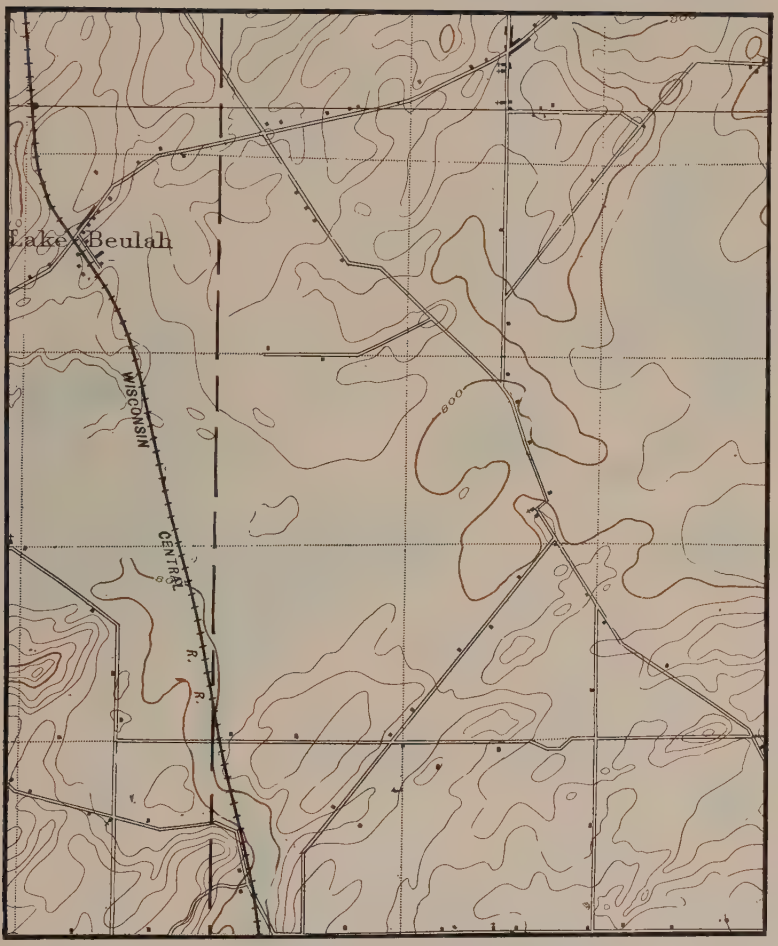
Glacier drift may be so disposed, that its own surface is somewhat rough, even where it diminishes surface relief. Its surface is

Fig. 262.—Portion of the upper part of a valley cleaned out by ice. The figure shows also the contrast between glaciated topography below and the non-glaciated above. Needle Mountains, Colo. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

marked in places by hillocks, mounds, etc., of drift, and by basin-like depressions (Figs. 260 and 261). Some of the basins are the sites of lakes, ponds, or marshes. The surface of drift is therefore very unlike the surface developed by the erosion of running water, for in the latter the depressions have outlets, and the hills and ridges stand in a very definite relation to the valleys.

Résumé. The more distinct marks which a valley glacier leaves behind it are the following: (1) A U-shaped valley, perhaps with its tributary valleys *hanging* (Fig. 241), and with

PLATE XIX

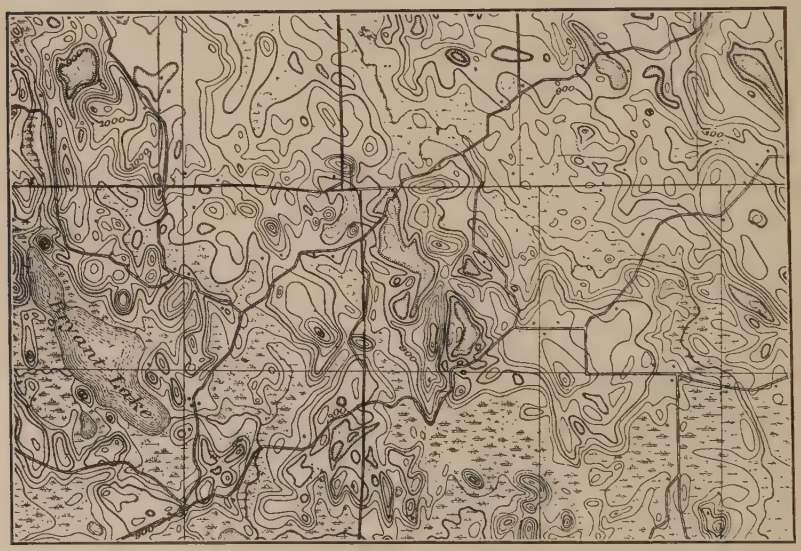


Characteristic drift topography. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Eagle, Wis., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 263.—Striæ, grooves, etc., in a canyon tributary to the Big Cottonwood Canyon. Wasatch Mts., Utah. (Photo. by Church.)

FIG. 264.—The moraines about the lower end of a glaciated mountain valley. Bloody Canyon, Cal. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG 265.—A perched bowlder, size 12×8×8 feet. East of Englewood, N. J. (N. J. Geol. Surv.)


Minnehaha Creek
Minnehaha Falls
Minnehaha Park
Minnehaha Station

its head in the form of a cirque (Fig. 243); (2) the upper end of the valley which it occupied is well cleaned out (Fig. 262), the loose rock-debris having been carried down the valley; (3) the rock of the valley is smoothed and striated (Fig. 263); (4) rock basins in the bottom of the valley, especially near its head; (5) a body of drift composed of coarse and fine material, much of it without trace of stratification or orderly arrangement; (6) many of the stones of the drift are worn, but not rounded as streams or waves round them, and some of them have planed and striated faces; (7) the drift is disposed as no other transporting agent disposes the material which it leaves (Fig. 264). The singular lateral-moraine ridges of valley glaciers, and the terminal moraines which partially or wholly obstruct valleys, giving rise to lakes, ponds, and marshes, are among the distinctive deposits of valley glaciers. (8) Another distinctive though less common mark of glacier deposits is huge bowlders in delicately balanced positions (*perched bowlders* (Fig. 265).

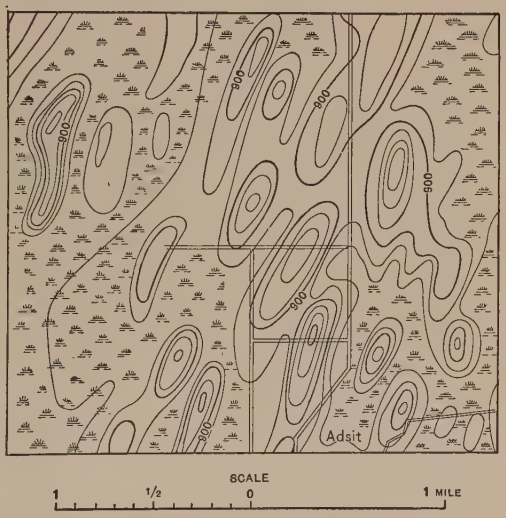


Fig. 267.—One phase of ground moraine topography. Elongated hills of drift of the type shown here are called *drumlins*. Southeastern Wisconsin. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Ice-sheets likewise leave (1) bodies of drift very much like that of mountain glaciers, though on the whole less coarse. This drift is in the form of terminal moraines (Figs. 260 and 266) and ground moraines (Figs. 261 and 267), the surfaces of which are marked by (2) numerous lakes, ponds, and marshes, which fill the kettle-like or saucer-like depressions in the surface of the drift. (3) Ice-sheets also smooth, striate, and groove the surface of the rock over which they move.

Fluvio-glacial Deposits

Even while glaciers are growing, their ice is melting to some extent, and when they disappear, it is chiefly by melting. Drainage is vigorous at the edge of an ice-sheet and below the ends of valley glaciers much of the time, and in the summer, when the

Fig. 268.—Diagram to illustrate the profile of a valley train, and its relations to terminal moraine in which it heads. M is the moraine.

ice is melting rapidly, the streams which carry off the water are greatly swollen. Water-work, therefore, accompanies ice-work in all cases, and since there is on the whole nearly as much water as ice, and since the water has the last chance at the drift left by the ice, it follows that some of the drift, as left by the glacier, is more or less modified by water. The streams which flow from

Fig. 269.—The outwash plain and the terminal moraine (at the right) near Baraboo, Wis. (Photo. by Atwood.)

glaciers carry away much debris derived from the ice. At the outset, this consists of both coarse and fine material, but the gravel and small bowlders are soon dropped, and only the finer material is carried far. Many such streams carry so much silt in suspension that the water is turbid. If the silt is whitish, as it often is, the streams are said to be "milky."

By deposition of gravel, sand, and silt, the valleys below glaciers often are aggraded to some extent by the fluvio-glacial

debris. Deposits of this sort are stratified, and so are in contrast with the deposits made by the ice. Furthermore, the surface of the stream deposits generally is plane, and therefore in contrast with the topography of the drift deposited by the ice.

The material deposited by the stream in the valley below a glacier is a *valley train*. It is an alluvial plain developed under

Fig. 270.—An esker in Finland.

special conditions. Valley trains are best developed just outside terminal moraines (Fig. 268)

In the case of an ice-cap, the water which issues from the ice may fail to find a valley. Each issuing stream then tends to develop an alluvial fan. By growth, these fans merge, making an alluvial plain. Such a plain, composed of material washed out from the ice is an *outwash plain* (Fig. 269), whose width may be greater than its length. It is of coarse material next the ice and of finer material farther away. Outwash plains are best developed just outside the terminal moraines of ice-sheets, rather than valley glaciers, and their materials are stratified.

A glacier may obstruct surface drainage. If in its forward movement the ice obstructs the lower end of a valley, the water above accumulates and constitutes a lake. Drainage from the

melting ice may build deltas in lakes, just as other streams build deltas in bodies of standing water into which they flow.

In addition to the drainage outside the ice, there is running water in the ice and under it. Some streams beneath the ice (subglacial streams) deposit gravel in their channels. These channels may be so built up that when the ice melts, the old bed of the stream appears as a low but narrow ridge, called an *esker*, composed chiefly of gravel and sand (Fig. 270). Streams beneath existing glaciers or ice-caps have not been observed to be making eskers, and eskers made beneath valley glaciers in the past are unknown. Known eskers therefore seem to have been made beneath ice-sheets now melted away.

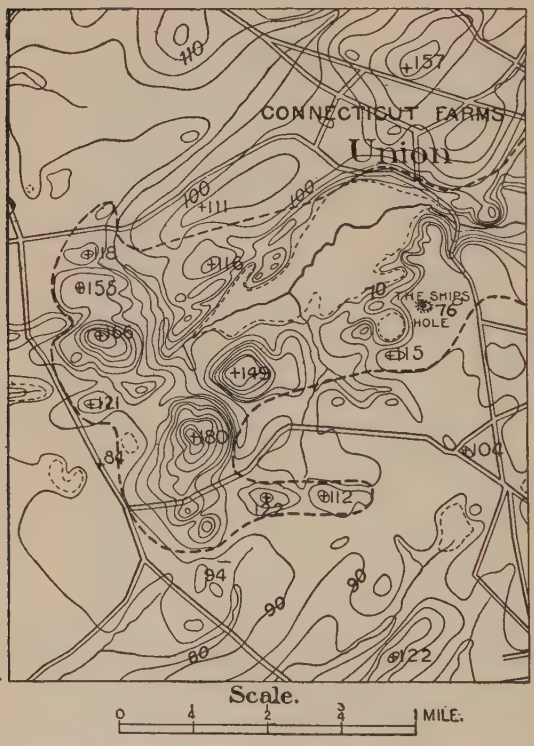


Fig. 271.—A group of kames near Connecticut Farms, N. J. (N. J. Geol. Surv.)

The sub-ice channels have somewhat the effect of tubes through which the water is forced with considerable velocity. As it issues from beneath the ice, its velocity is checked, and it may make extensive deposits of gravel and sand at the margin of the ice. These deposits are stratified, but the stratification may be very irregular. Such deposits may be left against the edge of the ice, and when the edge melts, the deposits appear as mounds and hills, called *kames* (Fig. 271). Like outwash plains and eskers, kames are developed by ice-sheets, rather than by valley glaciers.

In warm weather, there are many small streams on the surfaces of glaciers, especially if the surface of the ice is not much crevassed; but these surface streams rarely make deposits of consequence. On the surfaces of ice-caps there is little debris except at their immediate edges, so that the surface streams have access to little debris, and they commonly are clear.

As the ice melts away, the waters produced by its melting flow over the surface of the drift which the ice had already deposited, and modify it to some extent by eroding in some places and depositing in others.

As a result of all these phases of water-work, much of the drift is stratified. The stratified drift may be above the unstratified, below it, or interbedded with it. In some cases, too, it lies beyond the limit which the ice reached.

Icebergs

Where glaciers move down into the sea, their ends may be broken off and floated away as *icebergs*. The breaking-off is brought about in various ways. As the ice pushes out into deepening water, it may reach a point where the depth of water is so great that its buoyant effect breaks off the ice, which is lighter than water. The ice may be partly broken by crevasses before it reaches the sea.

Bergs derived from Greenland are floated as far south as Newfoundland in considerable numbers. Some of them reach still lower latitudes, but by the time they have moved so far from their source, most of them have become small by melting. Bergs from Greenland are rarely 200 feet out of water, and most of them are not more than 100 feet, even near their sources. Some of them are a mile or more across. In the South Polar regions bergs are still larger in area, though higher ones are perhaps not common. A berg 200 feet out of water, disregarding projecting points, must be 1500 to 2000 feet thick. Though river or lake ice is about nine-tents as heavy as water, glacier ice is less heavy, unless loaded with rock debris. Snow-ice is not so compact as the ice formed on rivers and lakes.

As icebergs sail away, they carry more or less of the debris which was in the bottom of the glacier. In the water, melting takes place, and the debris which was held by the melted parts falls to the bottom. If, as is often the case, the iceberg capsizes as

it sets sail, the bottom debris of the glacier may appear on the sides or top of the iceberg, if it does not at once slide off and sink. This debris absorbs more of the sun's heat than the ice does, and is soon melted out of the ice; or more strictly, the ice about it is melted away. If it was on the side of a berg, it drops out into the sea.

Icebergs frequently turn, or cant, because of (1) the cutting of the waves, (2) the splitting off of pieces of ice, (3) unequal melting, etc., all of which tend to shift their centers of gravity, and so disturb their equilibrium.

Northern icebergs do not appear to carry much debris far. The average berg probably is free of debris before it has floated 100 miles. The common notion that the banks of Newfoundland were made largely by berg deposits probably has no foundation in fact.

Icebergs in the North Atlantic now and then reach the track of transatlantic commerce. Since they are sometimes surrounded by fog, they are a menace to shipping and travel.

Ancient Glaciers and Ice-sheets

There have been times in the earth's history when glaciers were much more extensive than now. The latest of these periods is known as *the glacial period*, during which the glaciers of the western mountains were very much larger than now, and glaciers were numerous in many mountains where none exist now. Small ones existed even in the high mountains of New Mexico, Arizona, and Nevada. The amount of ice in the glaciers of Utah or Colorado at that time was far in excess of all that now exists in the United States south of Alaska. The glaciers in the western mountains north of the United States also were correspondingly larger than now, while east of the mountains an area some 4,000,000 square miles in extent (Fig. 272), lying partly in Canada and partly in the United States, was covered with an ice-sheet or *continental glacier*.

The ice-sheet of North America seems to have developed from two or three principal centers, one east of Hudson Bay, one west of it, and perhaps a third (the Patrician center) southwest of the Bay (not shown on the map). Probably the development of the ice from these centers was not strictly contemporaneous; but setting aside details, the beginning of each was doubtless a great snow-field. The snow- and ice-fields grew by the fall of snow, and later by the spread of the ice to which the snow gave rise. The

ice-sheets developed from these centers finally became one by growth (Fig. 272). It is to be noted that the great continental glacier did not originate in mountains, but on high plains.

Fig. 272.—Sketch-map showing the area in North America covered by ice at the maximum stage of glaciation. (Chamberlin.)

In addition to the large valley glaciers of the western mountains, bodies of ice of ice-sheet type were developed in favorable situations in them, though the continuity of the ice was much interrupted by mountain crests and peaks. The mountain ice gave rise to the Cordilleran ice-sheet (Fig. 272). In places the valley glaciers merged on the plains below, where piedmont glaciers of great size were developed.

At the time of its greatest extent, the ice-sheet of North America covered all of New England, the northern parts of New Jersey and Pennsylvania, and much of Ohio and Indiana. Its edge crossed the Ohio River where Cincinnati now stands, and advanced a few miles into Kentucky. Farther west it reached almost to the southern end of Illinois. Its edge crossed the Mississippi near St. Louis, and followed, in a general way, the course of the Missouri River to Montana. Most of the continent north of this line was covered with snow and ice, but there was an area of eight or ten thousand square miles, mainly in southwestern Wisconsin, which the ice did not cover. Because of the absence of drift in this region, it is known as the *Driftless Area.*

Conditions for extensive glaciation existed in Europe at about the same time. The glaciers of the Alps, for example, were many times as large as those of the present time. To the south they extended quite through the mountain valleys and spread out on the plains of northern Italy. On other sides also, the glaciers were correspondingly larger than now. This great extension of the glaciers is known from the moraines, and from the striated rock etc., which the ice left where it melted. Similar conditions existed in the other mountains of Europe where glaciers now exist, and in some where glaciers are not now present.

In northern Europe, as in the northern part of North America, there was an extensive ice-sheet, but its area was only about half that of the ice-sheet of North America. The principal center from which the ice-sheet radiated was the high mountains of Scandinavia, with subordinate centers in the highlands of Scotland, and in the Urals. At the time of its greatest extension, this ice-sheet covered all but the southernmost part of Great Britain, all of northern Germany, and much of Russia (Fig. 273).

Great ice-sheets are not known to have developed in other continents, but their mountain glaciers were large.

In both Europe and North America the history of the continental glaciers was complex. In each continent there were several successive ice-sheets, separated from one another by considerable intervals of time. The sequence of events in North America was somewhat as follows: After the development of the first great ice-sheet, it shrank to small proportions, or disappeared altogether, probably because of a change of climate. The dwin-

dling of the first ice-sheet was followed by a relatively warm period, during which plants and animals took possession of the region abandoned by the ice. Another continental ice-sheet then developed, overspreading the region from which the first had withdrawn, and extending still farther south. As it advanced, the second ice-sheet here and there buried the soil which had formed on the top of the drift deposited by the ice of

FIG. 273.—Sketch-map showing the area of Europe covered by the continental glacier at the time of its maximum development. (After Jas. Geikie.)

the first epoch. Such soils, in places with the remains of plants which can be identified, lying between a sheet of drift below and another above, are one of the criteria by which it is known that there was more than one continental glacier. By this and other means, a third, fourth, and perhaps a fifth ice-sheet, each somewhat smaller than its predecessor, developed and disappeared. In other words, there were at least four epochs when ice-sheets were extensive, separated by epochs when the ice was greatly diminished, or when it disappeared altogether. The ice-sheets of Europe had a similar history.

Cause of the Glacial Epochs

The cause of the development of the great ice-sheets was doubtless climatic, the chief factor being a reduction of temperature. The cause of this cold climate is not known certainly. Various hypotheses have been proposed to explain it, but to most of them there seem to be fatal objections. The subject will not be elaborated here, but it may be stated that the only hypothesis which seems not to be discredited is that which refers the changes of climate to changes in the constitution of the atmosphere. It appears that an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide and water vapor in the air would result in an amelioration of climate, while a decrease in these constituents would result in a reduction of temperature. This hypothesis cannot be stated fully here, but it may be said that plausible reasons have been suggested for fluctuations in the amounts of these ingredients of the atmosphere, and also for the relatively heavy precipitation (which is as necessary as low temperature for glaciation) in the regions where the ice-sheets developed.

Changes Produced by the Continental Glaciers

The ice-sheets of North America modified the surface which they covered to some notable extent. A brief résumé of the changes they produced will serve to review and emphasize the work of ice-sheets. The changes wrought by the ice-sheet fall into two classes: (1) those brought about by the erosion of the ice, and (2) those brought about by the deposition of the drift.

It is important to remember that the continental glacier of North America developed on the surface of a rather high plain, the topography of which had been shaped in large measure by rain and river erosion. This is inferred from the topography of the area not covered by the ice.

Changes Produced by Erosion

1. On elevations. The ice of the continental glacier was thick enough to pass over the hills and low mountains, such as those of New England and northern New York, within the area shown in Fig. 272. As it overspread these and lesser elevations, it wore off and smoothed down their tops. It reduced all points which stood up above the general surface, and so tended to make the surface less rough. The general effect on elevations is shown by Figs. 234 and 235.

2. In valleys. The ice also deepened valleys through which it moved. In many cases it deepened them as much as it lowered the hills, or even more. In the latter case, the relief of the surface was increased; but even where this was true, the roughness of the surface was as a rule diminished, for roughness depends on the distance between elevations and depressions, such as hills and valleys, and on the steepness of their slopes, quite as much as on the amount of relief (Fig. 274). Where the edge of an ice-sheet was differentiated into valley glaciers which moved down to the sea, the ice in some places gouged out the valleys far below sea-level, giving rise to narrow bays, or fiords, after the ice melted.

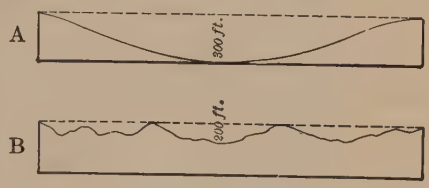


FIG. 274.—Diagram to show that roughness of surface and amount of relief are not necessarily the same. A represents greater relief, but B might be regarded as a rougher surface.

3. Rock surfaces. Another effect of ice erosion was to gouge out hollows where the underlying rock was relatively weak. The result was the formation of basins in the surface of the rock. Such rock basins probably are less common in the area of the continental ice-sheet than in mountain valleys affected by glaciers. The ice also polished, striated, and grooved the surface of the rock over which it moved, though these effects are not important topographically.

Changes Produced by Deposition

Sooner or later the ice deposited all of the material which it eroded from the surface over which it passed. Had the drift been equally thick everywhere, its effect would have been to raise the surface without altering its topography; but it is distributed with great inequality, and this inequality modified the topography.

1. General distribution of the drift. The tendency of the moving ice was to transfer its drift from the point where it was picked up toward the margin of the ice. In general, therefore, the drift left by the continental glaciers is thicker toward their former margins, and thinner toward their centers. It is very thick, for example, in a belt extending from western New York through

Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Iowa, to the Dakotas and Montana. In considerable tracts north of the boundary of the United States, on the other hand, toward the center of the ice-fields, little drift was left.

Terminal moraines. The last ice-sheet, especially, developed stout terminal moraines, which lie far north of the southern margin of the drift, because the ice-sheet which made them did not advance so far to the south as some of its predecessors had done.

As the edge of the ice was melted back, it halted in places far back from the position of its maximum advance. Beneath the

FIG. 275.—Terminal moraine topography near Oconomowoc, Wis. (Wis. Geol. Surv.)

edge in such positions, terminal moraines (called *recessional moraines*) were made. They were terminal to the ice at the time they were made, but not terminal to the drift sheet as a whole. This explains why one ice-sheet developed several terminal moraines.

The terminal moraine of an ice-sheet is not in all cases, and perhaps not in most, a conspicuous ridge, though it may be conspicuous in a region of slight relief. Its topography is much more distinctive than its size. Where characteristically developed, its surface is marked by hillocks, mounds, ridges, etc., associated with depressions of similar shapes (Figs. 260, 261 and 275). While this sort of topography is so widespread as to be characteristic, it is not pronounced in all terminal moraines, or in all parts of the same one. Some of the depressions in the terminal moraine contain

ponds, lakes, or marshes. Bowlders abound on the surface of some terminal moraines (Fig. 276).

The ground moraine. The area of the *ground moraine* is much more extensive than that of the terminal moraines, and its topog-

FIG. 276.—Bowlders on the terminal moraine of the former Okanagan glacier, Wash. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

raphy is, in general, less rough. The hills and hollows are less steep-sided, and the curves of the surface broader (Pl. XIX). Portions of the ground moraine are in the form of elongate or oval

FIG. 277.—"Pilot Rock." A glacial bowlder near Coulé City, Wash. (Garrey.)

hills, called *drumlins*. Drumlins occur in many places, some of the best known being in Wisconsin and New York (Figs. 267 and 278-280). At the battle of Bunker Hill, the Americans occupied and fortified a drumlin.

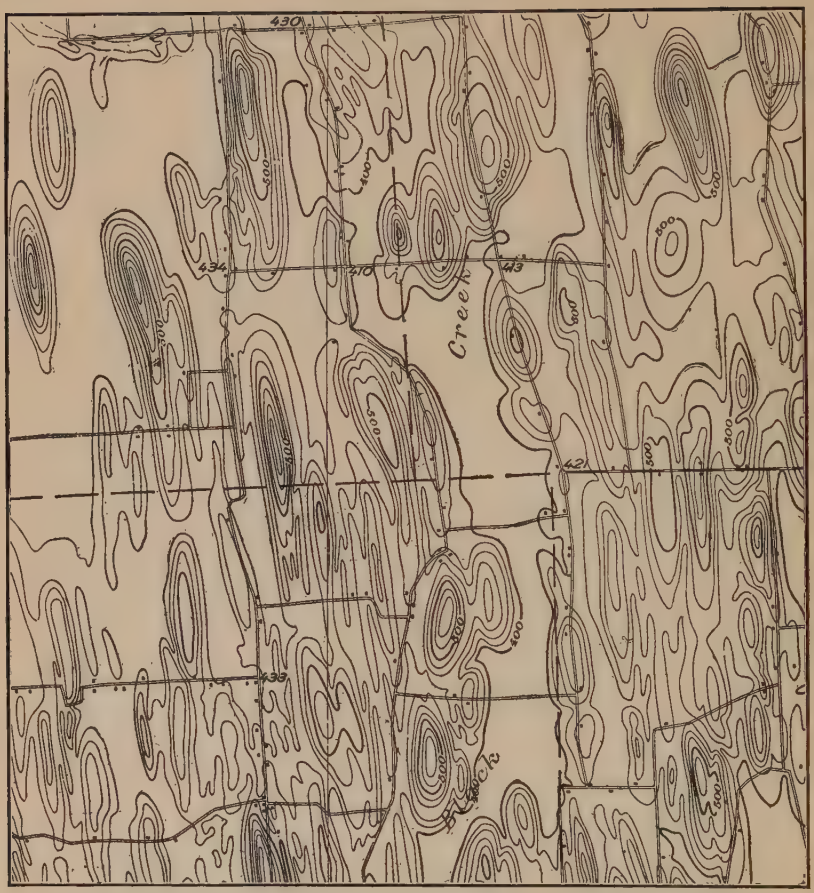


FIG. 278.—Drumlins in contour, near Clyde, N. Y. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 279.—A Wisconsin drumlin seen from the side. Two miles north of Sullivan. (Alden, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Effect of drift on topography. Drift may be so disposed as to increase the relief of the surface (Fig. 281), but more commonly it is disposed so as to decrease it (Fig. 259), because more drift, on

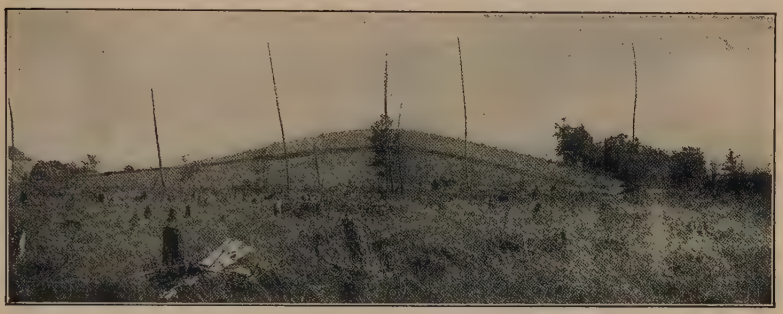


Fig. 280.—The same drumlin shown in Fig. 279 seen from the end. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

the whole, was left in low places than in high ones. Drift was left in some places so as to make the surface rougher than the surface of the rock below, even where the relief was decreased.

Effect of drift deposits on drainage. Lakes. The drift left by the ice filled valleys at some points, but not at others. Drift fillings

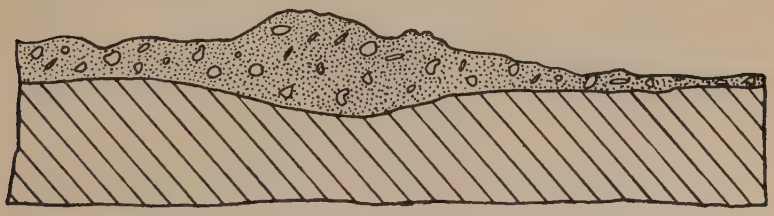


Fig. 281.—Diagram to show how drift may be so disposed as to increase the relief of the surface.

in valleys make dams, above which water is likely to accumulate, making lakes. If a valley was filled in two places, as happened in some places, the unfilled portion between became a basin fit for a lake. The number of lakes developed in this way is large. The finger lakes, of New York and Devil's Lake, Wisconsin (Fig. 282), are good examples.

Rock basins have been referred to already; but it happened in many cases that basins the bottoms of which are in rock, were

made deeper by the deposition of drift about their rims. The Great Lakes probably occupy rock basins, but their margins were built up by drift, making them deeper.

MAP WORK. See Exercises XII and XIII in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

The ice-sheets gave rise to lakes and ponds in other ways also. Many of them occupy depressions in the surface of the drift. Such

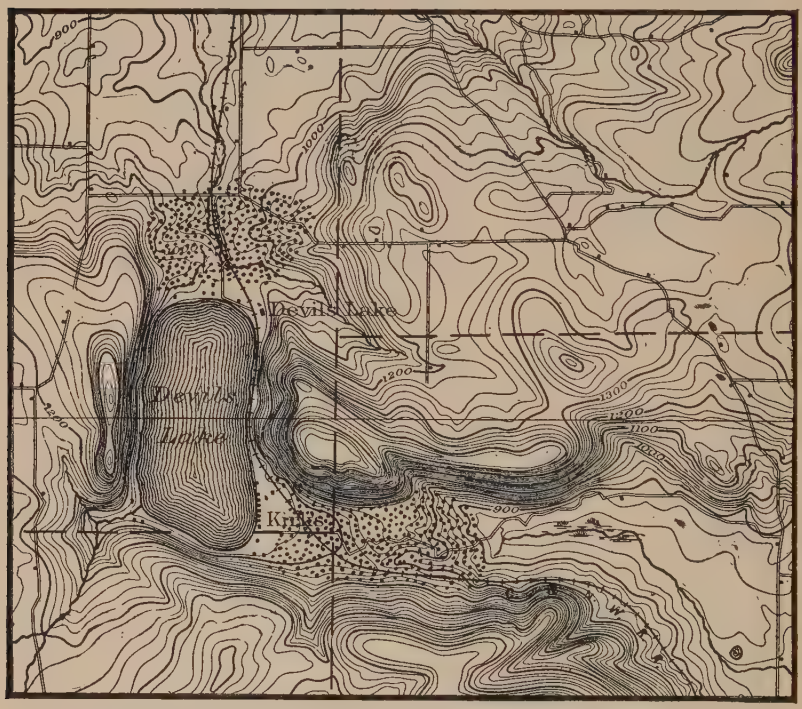


FIG. 282.—Sketch showing a lake in a former river valley, held in by drift dams. The dotted areas are terminal moraines.

lakes are especially numerous in terminal moraines, but they are not rare in the ground moraine, and are by no means unknown in the stratified drift. Glaciation affords the explanation of the lakes of most parts of North America. Most of them are in the area which was covered by the ice-sheet or by mountain glaciers. They are most numerous in the area covered by the ice of the last glacial epoch, as in North Dakota, Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan, New York, and New England. Except in special situations, where they are of wholly different types, lakes do not exist south of the drift.

Some lakes developed by the ice had but a temporary existence. Some of them came into existence along the margin of the ice-sheets, the ice itself forming one border of the lake. Such lakes disappeared when the ice melted.

One of the largest of the marginal lakes (Lake Agassiz) lay in the valley of the Red River of the North (Fig. 283). When this

FIG. 283.—Map of the extinct Lake Agassiz, and a few other glacial lakes Lake Winnipeg occupies a part of the old basin of Lake Agassiz. (Upham U. S. Geol. Surv.)

lake was largest, its length was about 700 miles, and its maximum width about 250 miles. Its area was about 110,000 square miles, or nearly one-fifth more than the combined area of all the Great Lakes, but the water was not very deep. It came into existence when the ice at the north obstructed drainage in that direction, and the water rose in the basin until it overflowed to the south. When the ice at the north melted, a new and lower outlet was opened in that direction, and the lake was drained. Lake Winnipeg and several smaller lakes may be looked upon as remnants of this great lake, for they occupy the deeper depressions in the old basin. The borders of the former lake are marked by old beaches

and locally by deltas. The silt-covered bottom of the lake is one of the most important wheat-producing areas in the United States.

The Great Lakes of the present day were greatly expanded while the ice blocked their present outlets. A part of their history, dating from the time of the last ice-sheet, is suggested by Figs. 284-87. The basins of these lakes did not exist, so far as known,

Fig. 284.—The beginning of the Great Lakes. The ice still occupied the larger parts of the present lake basins. (After Taylor and Leverett, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

before the glacial period, but probably considerable rivers flowed along the lines of their axes. From these river valleys, lake basins appear to have been developed as a result of (1) the deepening of portions of the valleys by ice erosion, (2) the building up of the rims of the basins by the deposition of drift, and (3) perhaps the down-warping of the sites of the basins.

The irregular disposition of drift also deranged the rivers. After the ice melted, the surface drainage followed the lowest lines open to it, but these lines did not always correspond with the former valleys, for some of them had been filled, and most of

them were blocked up in some places. After the ice melted, therefore, the surface waters followed former valleys in some cases,

Fig. 285.—A later stage in the development of Lakes Chicago and Maumee. The ice has retreated, and the outlet of Lake Maumee has been shifted. (After Leverett and Taylor, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Fig. 286.—The Great Lakes at the Algonquin-Iroquois stage, much later than the stage shown in Fig. 285. (After Taylor.)

and in others flowed across areas where there had been no valleys. In choosing their new courses, the streams here and there fell

over cliffs or ran down steep slopes. Thus arose falls and rapids, which are rather common in the streams of the glaciated area. Figs. 288 and 289 indicate something of the changes in drainage effected by the deposition of the drift in the basin of the upper Ohio.

We have seen already that rapids and falls are marks of young streams. Most lakes also are marks of youth. Rivers are, on the whole, hostile to lakes, for outflowing waters cut down their

Fig. 287.—A still later stage of the Great Lakes. The sea is thought to have covered the area shaded by lines at the east, after the ice sheet had melted. (After Taylor.)

outlets, and inflowing waters bring in sediment which, when deposited in the basins, tends to fill them up. Many small lakes already have become extinct in these ways, and many others have become sensibly smaller. The fact that so many falls, rapids, lakes, etc., still exist within the glaciated area shows that the time since the melting of the last ice-sheet has not been long enough for these features to be destroyed. Marshes also abound within the glaciated area. In some cases they represent the beds of former lakes and ponds, while in others they are simply basins too shallow to hold bodies of water sufficiently deep to prevent the growth of plants.

Lakes, ponds, marshes, falls, rapids, etc., are much more abundant in the area covered by the last ice-sheet than in the

area of drift outside of the last ice-sheet. This is largely because the southernmost part of the drift, as now exposed, is older, and has been subject to rain and river erosion long enough for surface drainage to destroy most of the lakes. The oldest drift of the glacial period is believed to be many times (probably twenty-five or more) as old as the youngest.

Stratified drift. Valley trains, outwash plains (p. 231), deltas (p. 232), etc., were developed by the continental glaciers, but

FIG. 288.

FIG. 289.

FIG. 288.—Sketch-map showing the drainage of the upper Ohio basin as it is believed to have been before the glaciation of the region. (Tight, U. S. Geol. Surv.)
FIG. 289.—Present drainage of the area shown in Fig. 288.

only those of the last ice-sheet are well preserved. Some of the valley trains are long, and in some the deposits are deep. Thus the Rock River in southern Wisconsin filled its valley with gravel and sand to a depth of 300 to 400 feet just below the terminal moraine of the last glacial epoch, while the ice-water flowed through it. The Columbia River, swollen by the waters from the melting ice, filled its valley, locally, to the depth of 700 feet with material washed out from the ice. Since the ice melted, most of the valley trains have been partially carried away, and the remnants of the old plains of aggradation are now terraces (Fig. 183).

Outwash plains (p. 231) also are extensive. Much of the southern part of Long Island is an extensive outwash plain, spreading southward from the terminal moraine which makes the backbone of the island. Just southeast of Brooklyn the outwash

plain, in preference to the hills of the adjacent moraine, has been occupied by several suburbs.

Kames and eskers (p. 232) also diversify the surface of the drift at numerous points, the former being far more numerous than the latter (Figs. 270 and 271).

Effects of glaciation on human affairs. The effects of glaciation have had much influence on the industrial history of the region which the ice covered.

The increase of mantle rock in the glaciated part of the United States is of significance. This increase is of value in regions where slopes were considerable, for where such slopes are found in driftless regions, the soil is thin or absent in most places, and the area of arable land is thereby restricted. Abundant soil is much more likely to be found on similar slopes in the glaciated area. Furthermore, since the general effect of glaciation was to reduce slopes, it tended to reduce the areas where the slopes were too steep to be cultivated.

The quality of the soil was improved in many places by glaciation, but this is not true everywhere. It is worth noting that most of the wheat and hay grown in the United States east of the Rocky Mountains, are within the area which was glaciated, though this is not altogether because of the drift. Climate is perhaps a more important factor.

The reduction of roughness and the smoothing of slopes effected by glaciation made the construction of roads easier, and so, on the whole, has facilitated transportation. Locally, however, the surface was made rougher, with disadvantageous results.

The falls, rapids, and lakes which resulted from glaciation have increased the water-power, and the lakes, ponds, and marshes which serve as reservoirs have tended to equalize the flow of the streams throughout the year. The flow of streams from lakes is much steadier than the flow of streams which have no permanent reservoirs to draw on. The drift is much thicker, on the whole, than the mantle rock of other regions. This greater thickness of loose material on the surface tends to hold back the rain-water after it falls, the porous drift itself serving as a sort of reservoir which yields up the water slowly.

The drift materials are somewhat extensively utilized. Thus much of the drift clay (rock-flour) is used for the manufacture of brick, tile, etc., and the gravel is used for road-making, and in the manufacture of various sorts of cements.

Such are some of the beneficent results of glaciation, but there are some considerations on the other side.

In some places the quality of the soil has been injured, for in many areas the drift is stony, and great labor is necessary to put it in workable condition. In some places, too, it is too sandy or gravelly to make good soil, and in other places its surface is too rough to allow of successful tilling. In still other situations, as in much of New England, the ice left a thin stony mantle of drift, covering a rough hilly surface. This, combined with a somewhat unfavorable climate, made agriculture unprofitable in much of this region, and so favored the early development of fisheries. The poor soil of much of the region, together with abundant water-power, has made New England a manufacturing rather than an agricultural region.

In spite of these adverse considerations, it seems probable, on the whole, that the glaciated area of the United States was considerably benefited by the work of the ice.

REFERENCES.

A. Existing Glaciers.

1. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Geologic Processes*, Vol. I, Chapter V: Henry Holt & Co., 1903; and other standard text-books on Geology.

2. Russell, *Glaciers of North America:* Ginn & Co., 1897.

3. Russell, *Glaciers of Mount Rainier:* 18th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., Pt. II, 1896–1897, pp. 349–415.

4. *Alaskan Glaciers.* Reid, 16th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., Pt. I, and 1894–1896, pp. 421–459, and Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. IV, 1891, pp. 19–55. Russell, Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. III, 1891, pp. 176–188; Jour. of Geol., Vol. I, pp. 219–245; and 13th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., Pt. II, 1891–1892, pp. 7–91. Gilbert, *Glaciers, Harriman Alaskan Expedition:* Doubleday, Page & Co.

5. *Glaciers of Greenland.* Chamberlin, Jour. of Geol., Vol. II, 1894, pp. 649–666 and 768–788; Vol. III, 1895, pp. 61–69, 198–218, 469–480, 565–582, 668–681, and 833–843; and Vol. IV, 1896, pp. 582–592. Salisbury, Jour. of Geol., Vol. IV, 1896, pp. 769–810.

6. Hobbs, *Characteristics of Existing Glaciers:* Macmillan.

7. Tyndall, *The Glaciers of the Alps:* Murray, 1860.

B. Glacier Motion.

8. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Geologic Processes*, Vol. I, pp. 308–323: Henry Holt & Co., 1903.

9. Reid, *Mechanics of Glacier Motion:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. IV, p. 912.

10. Aitkin, Am. Jour. Sci., Vol. V, 1873, p. 305; Vol. XXXIV, 1887, p. 149; and Nature, Vol. XXXIX, 1888, p. 203.

11. Russell, *The Influence of Debris on the Flow of Glaciers:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. III, p. 823.

12. Deeley and Fletcher, *The Structure of Glacier Ice, etc:* Geol. Mag., Vol. 2, 1895.

C. Results of Glaciation.

13. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Earth History,* Vol. III, pp. 327–446: Henry Holt & Co., 1906.

14. Salisbury, *The Drift:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. II, pp. 708–724 and 837–851, and Vol. III, pp. 70–97.

15. Chamberlin, *Genetic Classification of the Drift:* Jour. of Geol., Vol. II, pp. 517–538.

16. Chamberlin, *A Preliminary Paper on the Terminal Moraines of the Second Glacial Epoch:* 3d Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., 1881–1882, pp. 295–401.

17. J. Geikie, *The Great Ice Age,* 3d Ed.: D. Appleton & Co., 1895, and *Earth Sculpture,* Chapters X and XI: Putnams.

18. A. Geikie, *Scenery of Scotland,* chapters on *Glacial Action:* Macmillan Co., 1887.

19. *Folios of the U. S. Geol. Surv.,* especially those of the high mountain of the West.

20. Leverett, *Illinois Glacial Lobe:* Mono. XXXVIII and Mono. LIII, U. S. Geol. Surv.; *Glacial Formations, etc., of the Erie and Ohio Basins:* Mono. XLI, U. S. Geol. Surv.

21. Salisbury, *Glacial Geology of New Jersey:* N. J. Geol. Surv., Vol. V, 1902.

22. Chamberlin, *Rock Scorings of the Great Ice Age:* 7th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 155–248, 1885–1886.

D. Exploration in Polar Regions.

23. Peary, *Northward over the Great Ice:* Fred A. Stokes Co., 1898.

24. Nansen, *First Crossing of Greenland:* Longmans, Green & Co., 1890; and *Farthest North:* Harper & Bros., 1897.

25. Most other books on the Arctic and Antarctic regions give some account of the ice.

E. Glacial Lakes.

26. Taylor. *Glacial and Portglacial Lakes of the Great Lakes Region.* Smiths. Inst. Rept. 1912.

27. Leverett, *Outline of the History of the Great Lakes.* 12th Ann. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. 1910.

28. Leverett and Taylor, *Monograph* LIII, U. S. Geol. Surv. pp. 316–518. Goldthwait. Bull. G. S. A. XXI, (1909) 227–248.

29. Chamberlin and Salisbury, *Earth History,* Vol. III, pp. 394–403; Henry Holt & Co., 1906.

30. Upham, *Glacial Lake Agassiz:* Mono. XXV, U. S. Geol. Surv.

31. Salisbury and Kümmel, *Lake Passaic, an Extinct Glacial Lake:* Geol. Surv. of N. J.; Ann. Rept. of the State Geologist for 1893.

32. Fairchild, *Glacial Waters in Central New York.* Bull. 127, N. Y. State Mus., 1909.

CHAPTER VI

LAKES AND SHORES

General Facts

Definition. In general, a lake is an inland body of standing water larger than a pool or a pond; but the term is sometimes applied to the widened parts of rivers (Fig. 290), and sometimes to bodies of water which lie along coasts, even when they are at sea-level, and sometimes when they are in direct connection with the

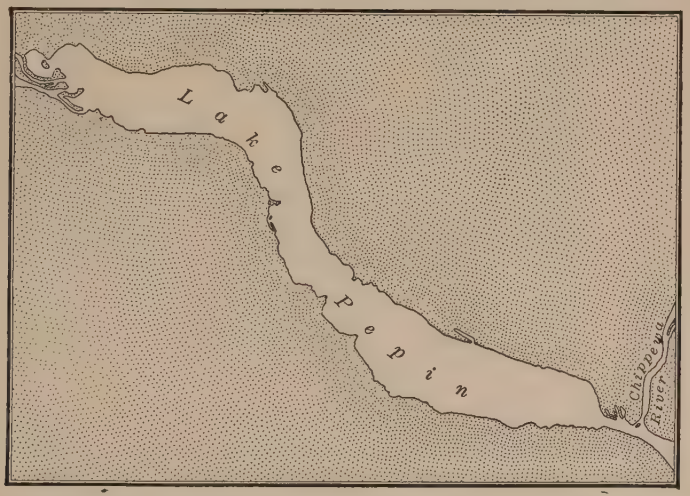


Fig. 290.—Lake Pepin, a widened part of the Mississippi River between Wisconsin and Minnesota. Maximum width about 2½ miles. The widening of the river is apparently due to the detritus brought down by the Chippewa River and deposited in the Mississippi. (Miss. Riv. Com.)

sea (Pl. XX). The distinction between lakes and similar bodies of water which are not called lakes is rather arbitrary. The amount of widening which a river must undergo before it is called a lake is as arbitrary as the size which the body of standing water must attain before this name may be applied to it. In the interior

of the United States, a *pond* is usually understood to mean a body of water smaller or shallower than a lake; but this usage is not universal, for some beautiful lakes (for example, Green Pond in New Jersey) are called ponds. Ponds and lakes differ from inland seas, bays, and lagoons (1) in being more completely (in most cases altogether) shut off from the ocean, and (2) in being for the most part at a level above — rarely below — that of the sea; but between bays and lagoons which are nearly enclosed, and coastal lakes, there are all possible gradations. Most lakes are fresh, but a few, like Great Salt Lake and the Dead Sea, are much more salt than the sea itself.

FIG. 291.—Lakes along the Red River of Louisiana. The lakes are at the lower ends of the tributary streams.

Distribution of Lakes

1. *In latitude.* Lakes occur in most latitudes, but they are more abundant in high latitudes than in low. They do not abound, however, in all high latitudes. Northern Asia, for example, has relatively few. This distribution of lakes is connected with former glaciation.

2. *In mountains.* Lakes are abundant in some mountain regions but not in all. They are numerous in the western mountains of the United States, especially at the North, but they are essentially absent from the Appalachian Mountains south of northern Pennsylvania. They are, as a rule, more abundant in high mountains than in low ones, and if they occur in low mountains at all, it is likely to be in high latitudes. In other words, lakes are common in mountains which have been glaciated recently.

3. *Along rivers.* Lakes are common along some rivers, but not along all. Outside of high latitudes and high mountains (glaciated regions), lakes are common only along streams which have low gradients and wide flats. There are numerous lakes, for example,

on the alluvial plain of the Mississippi (Fig. 174), and on the flats of some of its tributaries, such as the Missouri and the Red River of Louisiana (Fig. 291). In many of these cases the origin of the lakes is clearly connected with the changing of the river channel (Fig. 174).

4. *Along coasts.* Another situation where lakes are of rather common occurrence is along coasts (Pl. XX and Fig. 292), though many coasts are without them. Coastal lakes stand in no apparent relation to latitude, and are at low altitudes. The level of the water in many coastal lakes is nearly or quite the same as that of the sea.

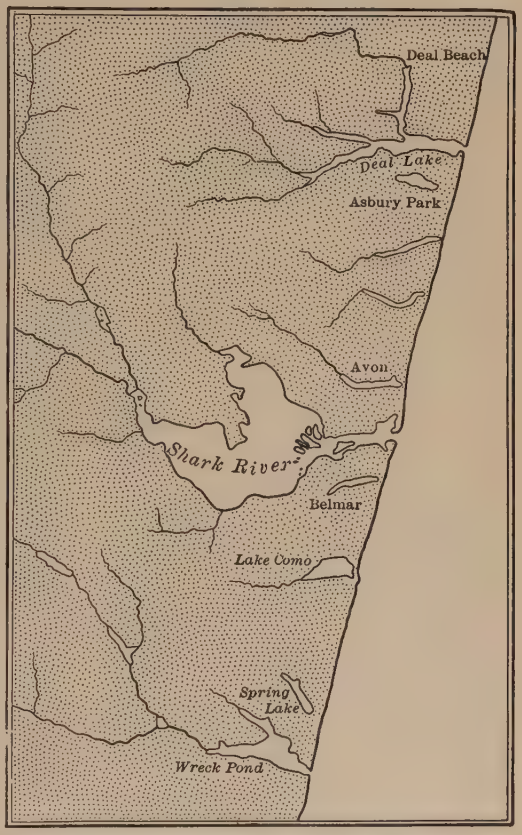


FIG. 292.—Lakes on the coast of New Jersey.

5. *On coastal plains.* Some low lands in proximity to the sea, though back from the coast, are affected by lakes, especially if the climate is moist. This is illustrated by Florida (Pl. XX, Fig. 2), where the number and abundance of lakes is comparable to that of equal areas in the northern part of the United States.

6. *Glaciated plains and plateaus.* Plains and plateaus which have been glaciated recently are likely to abound in lakes, as indicated in the preceding chapter.

7. *On plateaus.* There are lakes on some plateaus even where there has been no glaciation. The largest are the great lakes of

central and southern Africa; but there are not a few lakes, mostly shallow, on the Great Plains (plateaus) of the United States, even where the rainfall is not great.

8. *Other situations.* Lakes are found in a few other situations, as in the tops of some volcanic mountains, and on plains which have not been glaciated and which are far from the coast.

Area, Topographic Position, Depth, etc.

Area and topographic position. Lake Superior, Lake Huron, Lake Michigan, Lake Erie, and Lake Ontario are examples of great lakes. These lakes, indeed, constitute the greatest chain of lakes in the world, and have an aggregate area of nearly 95,000 square miles. Five of the great lakes of the Dominion of Canada have a combined area of more than 32,000 square miles. All these large lakes lie at relatively low altitudes.

Lakes have a great range in altitude as well as size. Yellowstone Lake is the highest lake of considerable size in the United States. It is 7738 feet above sea-level, and its area 140 square miles. Lake Titicaca, the largest lake (except Lake Maracaibo) in South America, is both higher (12,500 feet) and larger (3200 square miles) than Yellowstone Lake. The surfaces of a few great lakes are below sea-level. This is true of the Caspian Sea (−85 feet), the Dead Sea (−1268 feet), and the Sea of Tiberias (−682 feet).

Depth. Most lakes are rather shallow. The number in which the water is less than 50 feet deep probably far exceeds the number in which the depth is greater. It need hardly be said that the popular notion that many lakes are bottomless, is without foundation. Many of the lakes which are locally said to be without bottom are, indeed, shallow.

Lake Superior has a maximum depth of about 1000 feet, and Lakes Michigan, Huron, and Ontario all have depths exceeding 700 feet. Lake Erie, on the other hand, is much shallower, its maximum depth being only about 200 feet.

A few lakes have much greater depths. The deepest, so far as known, is Lake Baikal, in Siberia, which is stated to have a maximum depth of about 4700 feet, or about one-seventh the depth of the deepest part of the ocean. The Caspian Sea, really a lake, is next deepest, and has a maximum depth of about 3200 feet. Other lakes of great depth are Crater Lake, Oregon, about 2000

feet; Lake Tahoe, California, 1645 feet; Lake Chelan, Washington, about 1500 feet; and lakes Maggiore, Como, and de Garda, in northern Italy, and the Dead Sea, all of which have depths of more than 1000 feet.

The bottoms of most lakes are well above sea-level; but in exceptional cases their bottoms are far below. The lowest point in the bottom of the Caspian Sea is a little more than 3000 feet below sea-level, and the lowest point in the basin of Lake Baikal is nearly as far down. The lowest point in the bottom of Lake Ontario is about 500 feet below sea-level, in Superior about 400 feet, and in Lake Chelan more than 400 feet. Except in lakes along the coast, the bottoms of small lakes are rarely so low as sea-level; but the bottoms of the three north-Italian lakes mentioned are all several hundred feet below the ocean.

Various facts concerning lakes which exceed 10,000 square miles in area, and concerning a few others, are given in the following table, though few lakes have such remarkable dimensions:

Name.	Approximate area in square miles.	Approximate altitude of surface.[1]	Approximate maximum depth in feet.
Caspian	170,000	−85	3,200
Superior	31,200	602	1,008
Victoria Nyanza	26,000	3,800	240
Aral	25,050	160	1,200
Michigan	22,500	581	870
Huron	22,320	581	700
Nyassa	14,200[2]	1,500	2,300
Baikal	13,000	1,700	4,700[3]
Tanganyika	12,000	2,700	2,100
Great Bear	11,200	390	270
Erie	9,960	573	200
Winnipeg	9,400	710	70
Balkash	8,600	900	80
Ontario	7,240	247	738
Chad	6,000[4] to 40,000	900	8 to 20
Titicaca	3,200	12,500	700
Dead Sea	360	−1,268	1,300[5]
Garda	189	215	1,135
Chelan	85	1,079	1,500
Como	60	650	1,340
Crater	25	6,239	2,000

[1]The negative sign means below sea-level.
[2]Sometimes given as low as 10,200.
[3]Depth of 5,618 feet recently reported.
[4]Range between wet and dry seasons.
[5]Sometimes given as low as 1,171 feet.

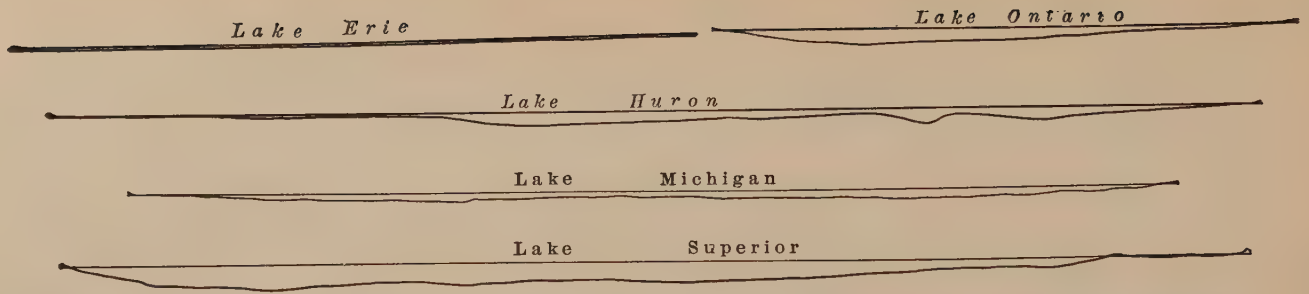


FIG. 293.—Cross-sections of the Great Lakes where their waters are deepest. Vertical scale exaggerated about twenty times.

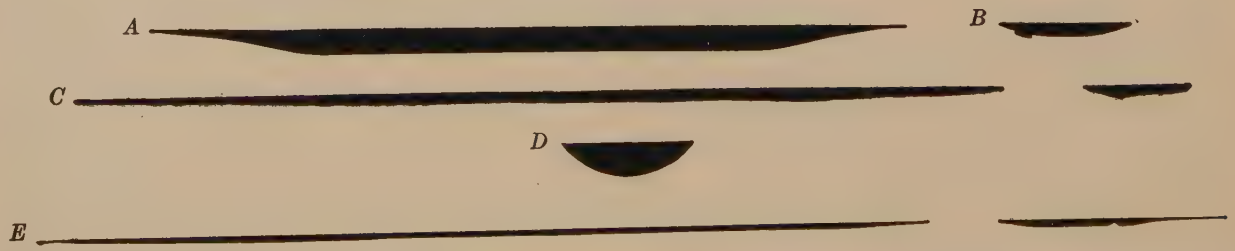


FIG. 294.—Sections of a series of small lakes. *A*, section across Lake Geneva, Switzerland, where deepest; maximum depth about 1000 feet. *B*, section across Seneca Lake, N. Y.; maximum depth 618 feet. *C*, longitudinal and cross-sections of Lake Katrine, Scotland; maximum depth about 500 feet. *D*, section across Lake Chelan, Wash.; maximum depth about 1500 feet. *E*, longitudinal and cross-sections of Green Lake, Wis.; maximum depth 237 feet. Horizontal and vertical scales the same. One mile = about two-thirds of an inch.

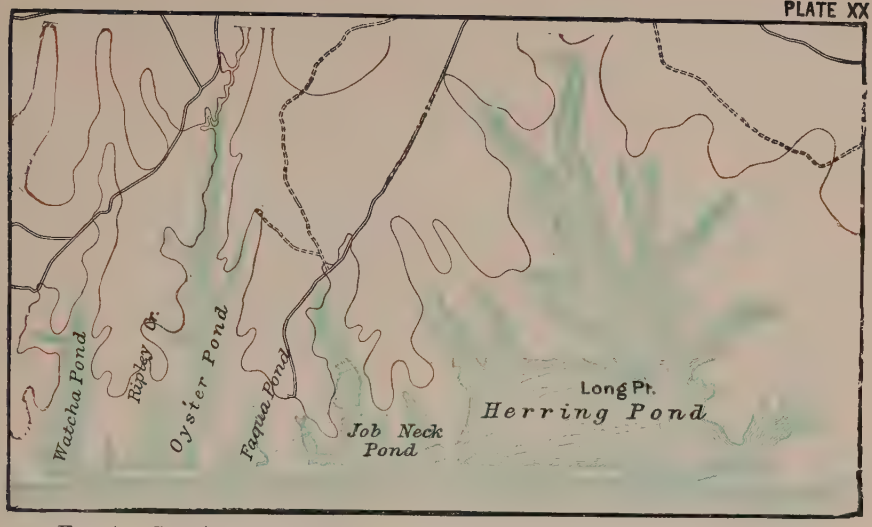
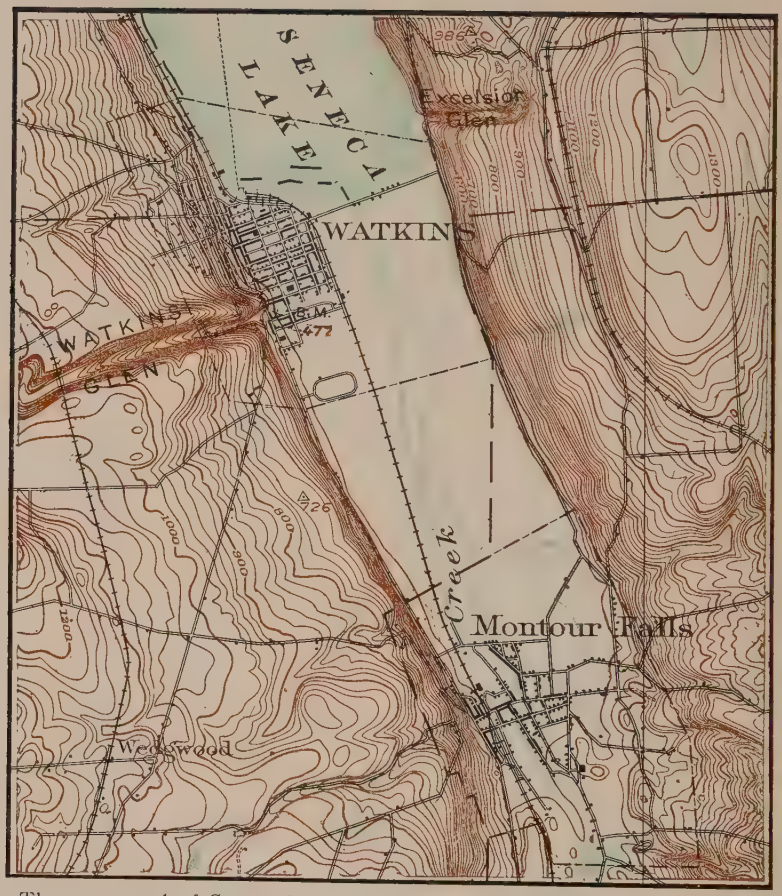


FIG. 1.—Coastal lakes formed by the blocking of the ends of drowned valleys. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Marthas Vineyard, Mass., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 2.—A group of lakes on the coastal plain of Florida. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 10 feet. (Williston Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XXI



The upper end of Seneca Lake, New York. The flat between Montour Falls and Watkins is a delta which has been built out into the lake by the inflowing creek. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Watkin's Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Great as is the depth of the water in some of the lakes, the shape of their basins is often very different from that which might be imagined from the mere statement of the depths. Fig. 293 represents the cross-sections of the basins of some of the Great Lakes. The basins of many smaller lakes (Fig. 294) are much more striking in cross-section.

Volume. No accurate estimate of the volume of water in lakes has ever been made, but their combined volume is insignificant when compared with the sea. If the water of all lakes were added to the ocean, it would probably not raise its surface two feet.

Movements of lake water. The waters of all lakes are affected by waves, and the waters of many lakes by movements of other sorts. In some lakes there is a more or less well-defined system of currents or drifts. A sudden change of atmospheric pressure on one part of a large lake causes changes of level everywhere. If the pressure is increased in one place, the surface of the water there is lowered and the surface elsewhere correspondingly raised. If the atmospheric pressure is lessened locally, the water surface beneath the lessened pressure rises, while it falls elsewhere. Once these changes are set up, there is some pulsation of the water-level before equilibrium is again established. Such movements are *seiches*, and have been much studied in some of the Swiss lakes. In very large lakes, tides occur, though they are not usually detected except by instruments devised to record them. Slumping about the shores of a lake, earthquakes, etc., also cause movements of its waters.

Changes of level. The levels of lakes without surface outlets change notably from time to time, according to the amount of precipitation on their surroundings. Many small lakes rise several feet in wet weather, and fall correspondingly in drought.

Conditions Necessary for the Existence of Lakes

The conditions necessary for the existence of lakes are (1) *depressions without outlets*, and (2) *a sufficient supply of water*.

(1) Depressions without outlets must not be understood to mean that lakes have no outlets. It means that, below the level of the lake-outlet, there is, in each case, a depression which has no outlet. This depression without an outlet holds the water which makes the lake.

(2) A sufficient supply of water means enough so that water constantly[1] remains in the depression. If the bottom of a basin is of porous material, such as gravel, more water may be necessary, in order that water may stand in the depression, than if the bottom is of compact material like clay. If, however, the ground-water surface in the surroundings of the basin is above the level of the bottom of the basin (Fig. 295), the water will not escape from the basin, even if the latter is of porous material. The humidity of the atmosphere also affects the amount of water necessary for a lake. In moist regions, most considerable depressions without outlets contain lakes, while many of those of arid regions are lakeless.

FIG. 295.—If the water table about a lake is above the lake level, there will be no leakage from the lake, even if its basin be of porous material.

Sources of lake water. The sources of lake water are rain, melting snow and ice, springs and rivers, and immediate run-off. Since springs and rivers are dependent upon rain and snow, the source of lake water may be said to be atmospheric precipitation.

Changes taking Place in Lakes

Various changes are in progress in all lakes, and these changes throw light on the past and the future of lakes.

The filling of their basins. Lake basins are being filled constantly. In many cases, the filling will in time obliterate the basins, and the lake will then disappear. The filling takes place in various ways.

1. In the first place, all streams and other surface waters which flow into lakes bring sediment, and essentially all this sediment is left in their basins. This is shown by the fact that the streams which flow from lakes are clear, even when those which enter bear much sediment. In some lakes deltas are being built, and a delta reduces the area of the lake in which it is built. In rare cases, deltas have been built across the middle parts of narrow lakes, separating the one lake into two, as at Interlaken, Switzerland. Deltas have been built at the ends of some of the Finger Lakes of

[1] There are temporary lakes, in the basins of which water is not always present.

New York, as shown in Pl. XXI, shortening them sensibly. Some of the important cities about these lakes are on deltas. Ithaca is an example. Sheet-floods and all rain-wash which enters a lake, even though not organized into streams, bring detritus to the basin and help to fill it.

2. Lake basins also are being filled by the work of the waves. The waves of lakes are cutting into their shores at some points most of the time, and most of the material thus worn from the land is deposited in the lake basins. The lake may extend its area by wave-cutting, but most of the material worn away from the shore is deposited in the lake basin.

Rivers and waves are the principal agents which are filling lake basins and diminishing the volume of their waters, but they are not the only ones.

3. Numerous shell-bearing animals live in lakes. The material for their shells is extracted from the water, and the shells are left on the bottom when the animals die, thus helping to fill the basins.

4. Plants grow in lakes, especially in their shallow borders, and the organic matter helps to fill the basins when the plants die. Some lake plants secrete lime carbonate and others silica, and these materials help to fill the basin the same as the shells of animals.

5. Winds blow dust and sand from the land into lakes, and thus help to fill their basins.

In all these ways lake basins are being gradually filled.

The lowering of their outlets. Most lake basins are being affected in another way. The water flowing out of a lake cuts down the level of the outlet, and, as this is lowered, the depth of the basin below the outlet is diminished. The limit to which the outflowing water may cut the outlet of the lake is base-level.

Fate of lakes. A lake may be destroyed by the lowering of its outlet, if its bottom is sufficiently high; but where the bottom is below base-level, river erosion cannot cut the outlet down to it. In such cases, filling and cutting may accomplish what cutting alone could not. As a result of these processes, all existing lakes ultimately must become extinct. In their destruction, rivers probably are the most important agents; hence the epigram, "Rivers are the mortal enemies of lakes."

Some lakes are destroyed by drying up. This may result from a change of climate, or from a diversion of inflowing waters.

Origin of Lake Basins

Lake basins originate in many different ways. Most of them are the result of gradational processes, but some of them are due to vulcanism and some to diastrophism, and, while these latter topics have not yet been studied, we may anticipate their consideration sufficiently to note the ways in which they produce depressions without outlets in the surface of the land.

Diastrophism. This term includes all movements of the surface of the lithosphere, whether up or down. Movements of the earth's crust give rise to basins in various ways. There are many basin-like depressions beneath the shallow water over the continental shelves. If such areas were converted into land, either by their own rise or by the withdrawal of the sea from them, the basins would appear on the surface of the new land. Newly emerged portions of the sea bottom are therefore regions where lake basins occur. Some of the lake basins of Florida and of the plains of Siberia perhaps arose in this way. At the outset, lakes in such basins would be salt, but they might become fresh (p. 272).

A lake basin may arise by crustal warping within land areas. Thus, if a portion of a flat area were warped downward, while its surroundings were not, there would be a basin, and, under proper climatic conditions, it might become the site of a lake.

Lake basins may originate by the warping of a river valley, where the warping leaves one part of the valley higher than a part farther up-stream. The up-warp constitutes a dam, and the waters above are *ponded* (p. 151) and a lake produced. This origin has been assigned to the basin of Lake Geneva in Switzerland. Lakes produced in this way are likely to be but short-lived, for in most cases the outflowing water soon would cut down the obstruction.

A portion of a valley may sink through faulting, thus giving rise to a basin. Such an origin has been ascribed to the basin of the Dead Sea and to certain lakes in Oregon (Figs. 38 and 296). According to one interpretation, Lakes Stefanie, Rudolf, Albert, Tanganyika, Leopold, and Nyassa, in Africa, all lie in a great *rift* (sunken) *valley*.

Lakes probably have originated at various times in the past when mountains have been made by the folding of rock strata.

Wherever two parallel folds are developed in the surface of the lithosphere, a trough is formed between them. Such troughs probably have been deeper in the middle than at either end in some cases, and lakes have resulted. Lakes made in this way would be short-lived, as a rule, since they are situated favorably for receiving abundant drainage, and the outflowing water would

Fig. 296.—Section showing the structure of the rock about Abert and Warner Lake, Oregon. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

soon degrade the outlets so as to drain them. It may be difficult to distinguish between basins produced by faulting and those produced by warping, especially if the solid rock is covered by a heavy mantle of drift or soil. Lake basins are known to have originated during earthquakes by warping, or perhaps more commonly by faulting. In 1811 and 1812 a considerable area in the Lower Mississippi Valley sank during a time of earthquakes. One of the areas most depressed became the site of Reelfoot Lake, which lies in the flat of the Mississippi, partly in Tennessee and partly in Kentucky.

Vulcanism. In the tops of some extinct volcanic mountains there are basins known as *craters*, some of which are occupied by

Fig. 297.—Section across the mountains of Palestine to the mountains of Moab, showing the position and relations of the Dead Sea. (After Blanckenhorn, from Geikie's *Earth Sculpture*.)

lakes. There are such lakes near Rome (Lake Nemi), Naples (Lake Averno), and in France. Ponds or small lakes are known in craters in many other places, even in such dry regions as Nevada and Arizona. Streams of lava may obstruct river valleys, giving rise to lakes. Snag Lake, in California, and Tiberias Lake, in the valley of the Jordan, are illustrations. There are others in France and still others in regions of recent volcanoes. Crater Lake in Oregon

(Figs. 298 and 299), a lake five or six miles in diameter and 2000 feet deep (p. 257), occupies a basin or *caldera* made by the sinking of the top of a volcanic mountain. While it lies in a depression in the top of an extinct volcano, its basin is due to diastrophism rather than vulcanism. This lake is of such extraordinary interest that the area about it has been set off as a National Park. The general conception of its history is represented by the hypothetical Figs. 300 and 301, the former representing the volcanic mountain as it is supposed to have been before the top sank in, and the latter the present basin, free from water. The island shown in Figs. 298 and 299 is a small volcanic cone developed since the sinking of the top. Basins which become the sites of lakes occasionally develop on the surfaces of lava-flows, as the result of the changes of surface incident to cooling.

Gradation. Various agents of gradation produce lake basins and some of them produce them in several different ways.

1. *River lakes.* Reference has already been made (p. 163) to lakes on the flood plains of streams, formed by the meandering and later the cutting off of the meanders; but rivers give rise to lakes in other ways. If a tributary brings to its main more sediment than the latter can carry away, the excess is deposited as an obstruction, and ponds the water above (Fig. 290). If a main stream aggrades its channel, it tends to obstruct the inflow of its tributaries, giving rise to lakes along them. This was the explanation formerly given of the lakes along the Red River of Louisiana (Fig. 291); but it now appears that the obstructions to the tributaries in this case were due to accumulations of timber in the main stream, rather than to sediment in the ordinary sense of the term.[1]

It is well known that "rafts" sometimes form in streams. The "rafts" are jams formed of timber which falls into the river as the result of the caving in of the forested banks, due to lateral planation of the meandering stream. The trees thus floated down the stream lodge against the banks at favoring points, and once this lodgment is started, the jam continues to grow. The branches of the trees aid greatly in the growth of the raft by helping to catch and hold the floating trees.

The Red River is known to have been the site of a great raft. It commenced to form somewhere below Alexandria (Fig. 302), and

[1] Veatch, A. C., Professional Paper 46, U. S. Geol. Surv., 1906.

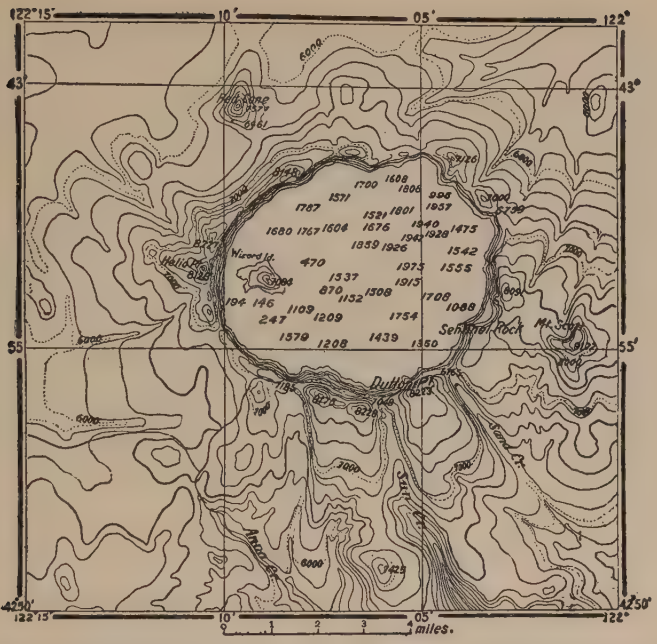


FIG. 298.—Map of Crater Lake, Ore. Contour interval 200 feet. Soundings in feet. Lake surface 6239 feet above the sea-level. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 299.—Western border of Crater Lake from Victor Rock to Llao Rock. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 300.—Mount Mazama (the name given to the former mountain where Crater Lake now is), as it is conceived to have been before the collapse which gave rise to the lake basin. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

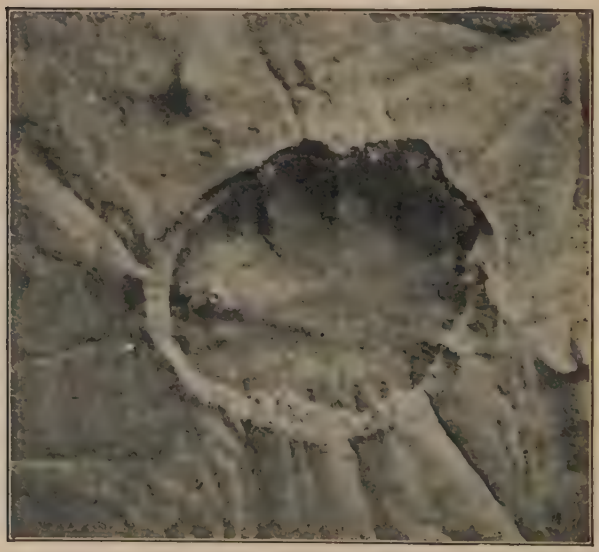


FIG. 301.—The rim of Crater Lake. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

its head had reached the vicinity of Alexandria by the latter part of the sixteenth century. The raft was really a series of more or less disconnected jams, each completely covering the river. The effect of the early jams was to pond the water of the river above, and to force it out of its old channel through low places in its banks. The whole river was thus diverted to a new

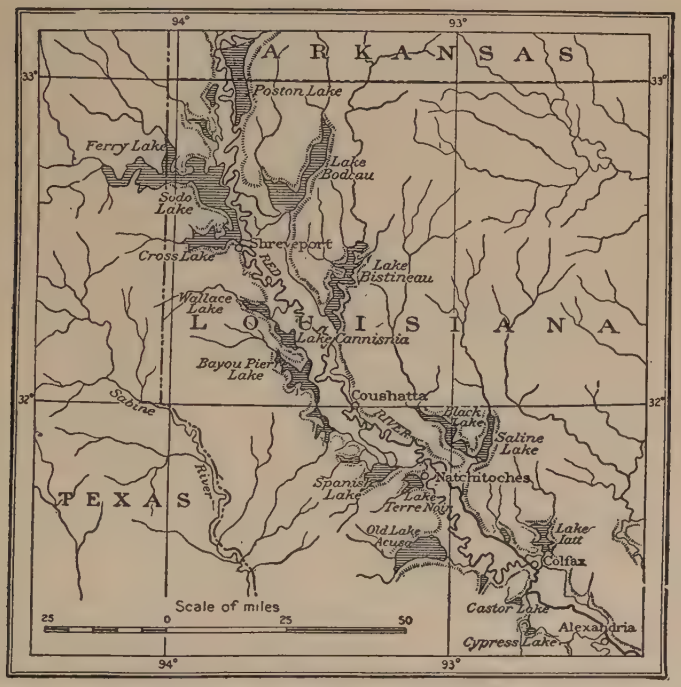


FIG. 302.—The lakes of Red River Valley, La., at their fullest recorded development. (Veatch, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

course below Alexandria (Fig. 303). Driftwood accumulated about the new outlet, forming another jam, and in this way the raft grew until it extended up the river about 160 miles. Between 1820 and 1872, its average rate of growth was about four-fifths of a mile per year, but in two instances accumulations of over five miles are recorded during freshets. As the raft grew up-stream, it obstructed tributaries, and developed lakes along them.

There is no good record of the lakes along the lower part of the raft-ridden section. At the time of the early settlement, its

lower end was near Natchitoches, and the location of this city was determined largely by the fact that the foot of the raft was the head of ordinary navigation. Record of the lakes along the upper portion of the raft is much fuller. The group of lakes near

FIG. 303.—Map showing the diversion of the Red River below Alexandria. The shaded areas are subject to overflow. (Veatch, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Shreveport was formed near the end of the eighteenth century. Before 1873, when the raft was finally removed, it had advanced almost to the Arkansas line, forming Poston Lake, the most northerly of the series (Fig. 302).

Since the removal of the raft, the river has lowered its channel 15 feet at a point 15 miles above Shreveport, and 3 feet at Shreve-

port. As a result of the deepening of the channel, tributaries have lowered their valleys in the attempt to adjust themselves to their main stream, and the lakes are being drained. In many places land which formerly was covered by lake water is now under cultivation. When the topographic adjustment of the tributaries has been completed, other areas still submerged will also be available for cultivation.

Rivers are partly or wholly responsible for a class of lakes which may be called *delta lakes*. Lake Pontchartrain in Louisiana

Fig. 304.—Maps showing lakes (ponds) along the shore of Lake Ontario, shut off from the main lake by sand-bars. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

is an example (Fig. 185). Here detritus brought down by the river was deposited around an area of shallow water, converting the latter into a basin. In some places, marshes, ponds and lakes are made by the building of alluvial cones or fans across a valley. Lake Tulare in California owes its basin to an alluvial fan made by a stream (King River) descending from the Sierras.

2. *Waves and shore currents.* Waves and shore currents give rise to lakes by shutting in the drowned ends of valleys or other bays. Illustrations are numerous along many coasts (Pl. XX and Fig. 304).

3. *Glacial lakes.* The relation between the distribution of lakes and the distribution of ice in former times is so close that it cannot be looked upon as accidental, and the study of lakes has shown that many of their basins are due to glaciation. Glaciers give rise to basins in many ways, some of which have been mentioned already.

a. The mountain glacier descending over a steep slope may dig out a basin at the base of that slope (Fig. 305). Hundreds of lake basins in the valleys of the western mountains of the United States, and many in similar positions in other parts of the world, were formed in this way. Most such lakes are small, and occupy rock basins.

b. Where glaciers pass over rocks of unequal hardness, they commonly erode the weaker more than the stronger, gouging out hollows in the former. Lake basins formed in this way are common in mountain valleys, and are not unknown within the area covered by the ice-sheets.

Lake basins of the above types are due to *glacial erosion.*

c. A glacier descending a mountain valley may obstruct the lower end of a tributary valley, giving rise to a lake above. Such

FIG. 305.—Shadow Lake, in a rock basin of glacial origin, near the head of San Joaquin Valley, Sierra Nevada Mountains, Cal. (Fairbanks.)

a basin has been called an *ice-barrier basin.* The Marjelen See in Switzerland is an example of such a lake. Many former lakes due to ice-barriers, for example Lake Agassiz (p. 245), have become extinct.

d. By far the larger number of lake basins due to glaciation arose through the disposition of the debris which the ice carried

and left on the surface when it melted. Of such basins there are many varieties: (1) The terminal moraines of mountain glaciers cross and obstruct many valleys, giving rise to basins and so to lakes (Fig. 258). (2) In many other cases, drift is so deposited with relation to a rock slope as to leave a depression between the main body of drift and the rock. Basins of this sort are enclosed partly by solid rock and partly by drift. Illustrations are furnished by many of the lakes of the United States and Europe. (3) Drift may fill a valley at two points, leaving the intermediate portion unfilled. The intermediate part becomes a basin and, under proper conditions of water-sppply, a lake. (4) Other lake basins owe their origin to the unequal disposition of the drift itself. Probably the larger number of lake basins in the northern part of North America and northern Europe are merely depressions in the surface of the drift. Lakes whose basins are of this type are not among the larger or the deeper lakes.

In some of the states within the glaciated area of North America, ponds and lakes are numbered by the thousand. The area of the lakes in Minnesota alone has been estimated at more than 5000 square miles.

Many glacial lakes owe their origin to a combination of the above conditions and relations. Here belong the Great Lakes. As already indicated, their basins probably are due (1) partly to glacial excavation, which gouged them out to considerable depths; (2) partly to the piling up of the debris thus eroded about the rims of the basins; and perhaps (3) partly to the down-warping of the surface beneath the water.

Lakes due to slumping. Valleys sometimes are obstructed by landslides, thus giving rise to basins which become the sites of lakes. Such a lake, five miles long and more than seven hundred feet deep, was formed on the Upper Ganges in 1892. Two years later, the dam which held back the water broke, and the resulting flood wrought great destruction in the valley below.

Solution, weathering, wind, etc. Basins suitable for ponds and lakes sometimes originate by solution of the underlying rock. Limestone sinks (p. 86) may become the sites of ponds and perhaps of lakes, but considerable basins of this origin are not known. Some basins are formed by solution of the surface rock. Some of the lake basins of Florida probably arose in this way.

The surface of rock weathers (p. 95) unequally. If the weathering of one area is greater than that of its surroundings, the weathered material may be blown away, leaving a depression suitable for holding water. Wind-driven sand scours out small depressions which hold pools of water. In some dry regions, as in Patagonia, basins of large size are believed to have originated in this way, though few of them hold water. Eolian sand may be piled up about low places, enclosing them, thus giving rise to marshes, ponds, and even lakes.

Glacial lakes an index of topographic age. Since rivers are antagonistic to lakes, and since rivers always are active, it follows that a region of abundant lakes is a region in its topographic youth, unless the lakes are in valley flats. Lakes at high altitudes are of relatively recent origin.

Map Work. See Exercise XIV in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

Salt Lakes

While most lakes are fresh, a few, such as Great Salt Lake, the Caspian, Aral, and Dead seas, are salt. Most salt lakes are in arid climates.

Fresh lakes may become salt, and salt lakes may become fresh, as a result of changes of climate. If aridity increases so that evaporation from a fresh lake exceeds the intake (precipitation and inflow), the lake may become salt. If evaporation from a salt lake becomes less than the intake of fresh water, the lake will be freshened, and, under proper conditions, may become altogether fresh. The best-known illustration of these changes is furnished by Great Salt Lake and the earlier lake which preceded it in the same region. Their history is somewhat as follows:

1. The first lake in this basin appears to have been fresh. Later the climate appears to have become more arid, so that evaporation from the lake exceeded the intake of fresh water, and the level of the lake was lowered. As the water evaporated, the mineral matter in solution was left behind. Salt was one of these substances, and as more and more water evaporated, the salinity of that which remained increased, and the lake became salt.

2. Another change of climate, this time in the direction of increased humidity, ensued. The intake of fresh water exceeded evaporation, and the saltness of the water was diminished by dilution. At the same time, the level of the lake rose until it

found an outlet by way of Snake River to the Columbia. The continued inflow of fresh water and the continued outflow of the diluted salt water resulted in the progressive freshening of the lake, and finally it became fresh. The ancient expanded lake is known as *Lake Bonneville* (Fig. 306), which, at its maximum, covered

FIG. 306.—Former lakes of the Great Basin. Present lakes in black. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

an area of about 17,000 square miles. Its surface was about 1000 feet higher than that of Great Salt Lake.

3. Another change of climate, this time in the direction of aridity, reduced Lake Bonneville. Its surface sank below its outlet, and, after this happened, its waters gradually became saline. Evaporation in excess of intake continuing, the great Lake Bonneville was in time reduced to the relatively small Great Salt Lake, with an area of about 2000 square miles and an average

depth of about 15 feet. Its waters are saturated with salt, and much salt has been deposited.

Farther west a similar series of changes is recorded by the former Lake Lahontan (Fig. 306), and by Mono Lake.

Salt Lake, and the sites of some extinct salt lakes, yield salt in commercial quantities. Great Salt Lake was estimated, a few years ago, to contain 400,000,000 tons of common salt, besides large quantities of other mineral matter. Much of the mineral matter formerly held in solution by this lake has been deposited already. Utah produced about 375,500 barrels of salt (value $231,500) in 1914. Deposits from extinct lakes and inland seas are the chief sources of salt. In some places these deposits are buried deeply. Accessible salt deposits and "salt-licks" determined, or helped to determine, the location of numerous early trans-Allegheny settlements, as in the Blue Grass region of Kentucky.

Climatic Effects of Lakes

The numerous lakes in the northern parts of the United States and Europe have some influence on the climate. They increase its humidity to some slight extent at least, and, since water is heated less readily than land and gives up its heat less readily, lakes have the effect of tempering the climate. Until they freeze over, they tend to keep the temperature of their surroundings a little higher than it would otherwise be in the autumn and early winter, and to reduce the temperature of spring. The temperature effects of lakes are felt chiefly on the sides toward which the prevailing winds blow from the lake.

Economic Advantages and Disadvantages

The question as to whether lakes are beneficial or harmful to mankind may be looked at from various points of view.

1. The Great Lakes serve as highways and make cheap transportation possible. In this way they serve a good purpose, as shown by their extensive commerce. 2. Many cities, like Chicago, draw their water-supply from lakes. Chicago could not readily get an adequate supply from any other source, except at far greater cost. 3. Lakes furnish a considerable supply of food material. 4. By tempering the climate, they modify, to some slight extent at least, agricultural pursuits. Thus the prevailing westerly winds temper the climate of the east shore of Lake Michigan in

such a way as to make it favorable for fruit-growing, while the west side of the lake, affected by winds not tempered by the lake, is much less favorable for this industry. In these and other ways the lakes serve mankind.

On the other hand, it is to be remembered that such a body of water as Lake Michigan occupies some 22,450 square miles of surface, much of which would, presumably, have been good farming land, if the lake basin had not been made. The value of such an area of good farming land would go far to offset the economic advantages of the lake.

Small lakes are of little consequence as highways, and their effect on climate is slight. The same may be said of marshes. There can be no doubt that if all the area occupied by lakes were cultivated land instead, the returns would be much greater than those which now accrue from any uses to which the lakes are put. But lakes have a value not to be estimated in dollars and cents. They beautify the landscape and afford the means for rest and recreation which could not well be spared. The value of lakes from this point of view is not easily estimated.

The advantages which a primitive people may derive from a location upon the shores or islands of a lake are suggested by the fact that the earliest European civilization arose about the lakes of Switzerland, while the lakes of Mexico and Peru were the seat of the ancient civilizations of those countries.

Topographic Features of Shores

In connection with the discussion concerning changes now taking place in lakes, reference was made to certain topographic features of lake shores, because their development has a bearing on the history of lake basins, and on the life of the lakes themselves; but the topic is of such importance that it merits more than incidental mention.

The topographic features developed by lakes along their shores are similar to those developed by the sea along its coasts, except that the latter are on a larger scale. A discussion of the development of the topographic features of lake shores is therefore applicable, in most of its details, to the shores of the sea.

Gradation is affecting the shores of oceans and lakes everywhere; diastrophism is affecting them in many places, though not universally, at least not to such an extent as to be sensible

from year to year, while the effects of vulcanism on shores are very limited and of little consequence in this connection.

Gradational Changes now taking Place along Shores

Waves, currents, rivers, winds, glaciers, ice formed along the shore, and various other agencies are working on the shores of seas and lakes, and each has some effect on the coast-line. Of these, waves and the movements to which waves give rise, are most important.

1. *Waves, Undertow, Shore Currents.* The top of a wave is its *crest,* and the depression between two adjacent crests is the *trough.* The vertical distance between the crest and the bottom of the trough is the *height* of the wave, and the horizontal distance between two adjacent crests is the *length.* The time which it takes one crest or one trough to travel the length of the wave is the *period* of the wave. In the open sea, storm waves often have a height of 20 to 30 feet, and in rare cases even 50 feet. On the shore their heights may be much greater, as we shall see. The length of great waves in some cases is as much as 1500 feet,and the velocity as much as 60 miles per hour. Such lengths and velocities are, however, far beyond the average.

In the open sea, wave motion does not involve forward movement of the water. Each particle of water describes a curve, and theoretically comes to rest at the point whence it started, though the *wave form* moves on. Some conception of the motion involved may be gained from a waving field of grain or grass, where each moving stem is fixed to the ground, though wave after wave crosses the field; or from a long piece of rope one end of which is fixed, while the other end is shaken up and down. Successive waves travel from the shaken end to the other end. If the water in a wave moved forward at the velocity at which the wave form travels, the sea would hardly be navigable.

Fig. 307 gives some idea of the nature of the movement of the water in the waves of the open sea.

When the wind is very strong, the top of a wave may be blown forward, that is, the wave "breaks," and so has a motion independent of the true wave motion. Even when waves do not break, the surface water is slipped along to some extent by the moving air.

High waves in the ocean are called "seas," and when a sailor says that there is a "high sea," he means that there are high

waves. The destructiveness of waves in the open sea depends quite as much on their length as on their height. With a given height, the longer the wave, the less its destructiveness.

Waves generated by a storm run far beyond the place where they started. They diminish in height, but keep their velocity and length if the water is deep and the waves are unobstructed by islands, etc. Waves which have outrun the storm which started them constitute the *swell* or *ground-swell*. In the case of great

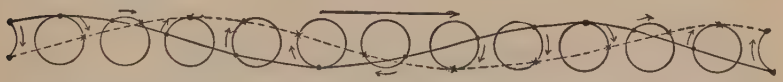


FIG. 307.—Diagram to illustrate the movement of water in waves. The small circles represent the movement of water particles. The full line shows one trough and two crests at one instant, and the dotted line the same features a little later.

hurricanes, destructive waves sometimes are felt a thousand miles from the storm. As a result of storms in different places, the open sea is rarely altogether quiet.

As a wave advances from the open sea into shallow water, it undergoes notable changes. Where the water is so shallow that wave motion is sensible down to its bottom, the wave "drags" bottom. The velocity and length of the wave are then diminished, and its height increased. The top then pitches forward as *surf*. In strong winds and in shallow water, therefore, there is a distinct forward movement of some of the water of a wave. Waves in which there is pronounced forward movement are *waves of translation*. The water thrown against the shore in the *wave* runs back again, and this from-shore motion is the *undertow*. The undertow tends to run down the steepest slope, but in many cases it is directed obliquely by incoming waves. Its movement is checked, too, by every incoming crest. Where waves strike a shore obliquely, the water moves more or less along shore, and the sum of these movements along shore gives rise to a *shore* or *littoral current*.

The waves, the undertow, and the shore currents all affect the shore. The waves erode the shore-line in some places, and all of these movements erode the bottom in some places. All the sediment acquired by erosion is deposited sooner or later. Wherever the movements of water along shores erode or deposit, they affect the outline of the coast, and in many cases its vertical configuration.

The amount of motion in waves diminishes rapidly downward, and is insensible below a few hundred feet. Submarine structures, such as piers, etc., rarely are disturbed below 30 feet.

Erosive work of waves. The force of the wave as it is hurled against the shore often is great. The surf sometimes is thrown up to heights of more than 100 feet with force enough to destroy lighthouses and wear cliffs of rock. Windows of the Dunnet Head lighthouse on the coast of Scotland, 300 feet above sea-level, are said to have been broken during severe gales. In some cases the bursting of doors and windows during such storms appears to be due to the expansion of the air within the buildings, as the surf dashed against them falls back. It has been estimated that, in exceptional storms, the strength of waves on the exposed coast of Britain has been as much as three tons per square foot, and that the average force of winter waves is about one ton per square foot. Such waves would move masses of rock tons in weight. It is clear, therefore, that the force of waves is adequate for powerful erosion.

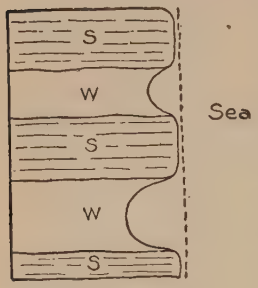


FIG. 308.—Diagram to illustrate the effect of wave erosion on rocks of unequal hardness. Starting with a straight line, indicated by the dotted line, the erosion of the waves would develop some such outline as shown: *W*, weak rock, and *S*, resistant rock.

If a coast-line were regular, but composed of rock of unequal resistance, it would not be likely to remain regular, for waves would wear the weaker rock more and the stronger rock less. The result would be the development of reentrants on the weaker rock, while the stronger rock would remain as projections of land into the sea (Fig. 308). These irregularities of coast would go on increasing, so far as wave erosion is concerned, until the reentrants had become so deep that the diminished force of the waves in them would wear the weaker rock no faster than the stronger waves wear the stronger rock of the projecting points between. When this stage is reached, the shape of the coast-line is stable, so far as wave erosion is concerned. Since coast-lines are of stronger and weaker rock structures, irregularities of this sort are constantly in process of development. They are greater along seacoasts than on lake shores, because the waves of seas are stronger than those of lakes.

Where a coast is very irregular, especially where there are projections of land into the sea, the waves attack projecting points of land more forcibly than they attack the reentrants, such as the heads of bays. If the irregularities of the coast were developed by some force other than wave erosion, the projecting points might be worn back more than the heads of the bays. Wave erosion tends to reduce the irregularities of a very irregular coast, unless the projecting points are of rock which is much more resistant than that of other parts of the coast.

Wave erosion therefore tends to develop small irregularities of coast-line, but not great ones. Their extent depends on (1) the "fetch" of the waves, that is, the distance they have been traveling, (2) the strength of the winds, (3) the depth of the water, (4) the exposure of the coast attacked, (5) the kind and abundance of the tools (such as gravel, bowlders, etc.) with which the waves work, and (6) the resistance of the rock against which the waves beat.

Without tools to work with, waves are relatively ineffective against hard rock which has no bedding or jointing planes. Thus on the Outer Hebrides, where gravel and stones of suitable size for the waves to move are absent, barnacles are said to be as abundant after a storm as before. Rock affected by cleavage planes, whether bedding or jointing, may be effectively worn by waves, irrespective of the debris which they move.

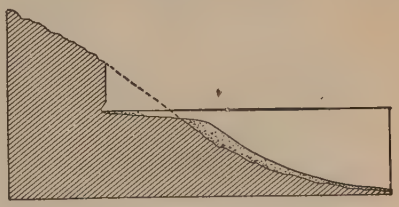


Fig. 309.—Diagram illustrating high sea cliff. It shows also a submerged terrace, due partly to wave-cutting and partly to building.

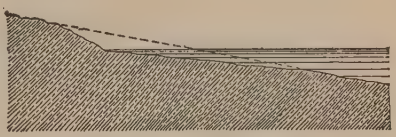


Fig. 310.—Diagram showing a low sea cliff.

Irregularities developed by wave erosion are extremely numerous. Here belong many, if not most, of the small projections of high land into the sea. Their outlines are, as a rule, somewhat angular (Fig. 1, Pl. XXII). Here, too, belong the islands of some coasts, especially those of solid rock, many of which have been isolated from the mainland by wave erosion. Such islands are likely to be destroyed in time by the same processes which brought them into existence.

FIG. 311.—A high sea cliff, La Jolla, Cal.

FIG. 312.—A high cliff with a beach, shore of Lake Michigan. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

The cutting of waves affects the vertical as well as the horizontal configuration of the shores. Where the sea is advancing on the land, steep slopes, called *sea cliffs* (Figs. 309–313), are developed. Sea cliffs are high or low, depending on the elevation of the land into which the waves cut. Cliffs are of common occurrence along seacoasts; where they are absent, the waves are not cutting, and

Fig. 313.—Steep Cliff developed by waves; Allen Point, Grand Island, Lake Champlain. (Perry.)

the sea is not advancing on the land, or at least not as a result of its own cutting. Slumping is likely to accompany wave erosion.

The sea cliff commonly is bordered by a *wave-cut terrace* a little below the surface of the water (Fig. 309). The area of this terrace represents, in a rough way, the area which the sea has gained from the land by wave-cutting.

Deposition by waves, shore currents, etc. Shore waters are aggradational as well as degradational. The material cut from

the land by waves, or brought down by rivers, is shifted about by the undertow and the shore currents, but ultimately it comes to rest. While this material is being moved about by the shore waters, it constitutes *shore drift*, whether brought in by rivers or worn from the coast by waves. If shore drift is left at the shore-line, it makes a *beach* (Figs. 312, 314 and 315), which is sometimes defined as the area of sand, gravel, etc., between high and low tides.

FIG. 314.—Cross-section of a beach. (Gilbert.)

In some places deposits of gravel and sand continuous with those of the beach are made at greater depths, the material being carried out by the undertow and by the shore currents which

FIG. 315.—A lake beach (barrier), Griffins Bay, Lake Ontario, shutting in a small lagoon behind it.

diverge from the coast-line. In places it is carried out and deposited at the outer edge of the wave-cut terrace (Fig. 309); and in others it is disposed as a terrace along shore (Fig. 316) where there is no wave-cut terrace.

In places waves build *reefs* or barriers a little out from the shore-line. They are developed near the line of breakers, where the incoming wave is no longer able to carry forward the bulk of the debris which it is moving toward the shore. The undertow may contribute material to the reef. In places there are several

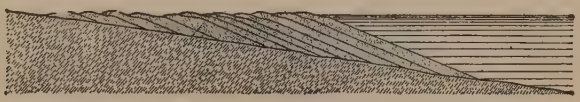


Fig. 316.—A wave-built terrace. (Gilbert, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

such reefs parallel to the coast and to one another. Bars, reefs, etc., may hinder the movements of ocean vessels, as where they close the entrances of harbors. In general, reefs discourage navigation. After the *reef* is developed, waves may build its crest above the surface of the water, converting it into land (Fig. 317). Such seems to have been the origin of many of the low, narrow belts of sandy land parallel to coasts, with marshes and lagoons behind them. This type of irregularity is illustrated by the coast of the United States at various points between New York and Texas (Fig. 318).

Currents along the shore (*littoral currents*) shift sediment in the direction of their motion; but where such a current reaches a bay, it commonly does not follow the outline of the bay, but tends rather to cross its mouth in the direction in which it was moving previously. Under such circumstances, it tends to build an embankment of gravel and sand across the bay. Such embankments are *spits*. Currents do not build spits above the water, but waves may accomplish this result by washing material from their slopes up to their tops (Fig. 317). They may thus become land, after which dunes may develop on them. When spits cross bays they become *bars* (Figs. 319 and 320). Some spits and bars are hooked (Fig. 321), as the result of the shifting of the currents while they are in process of building.

Fig. 317.—Section of a barrier. (Gilbert, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Spits and hooks form many harbors, and so have determined the location of numerous settlements and towns. A great hook makes Provincetown harbor, where the Pilgrims first landed,

and the harbor whose shores they finally chose for settlement is formed by a large spit. A hook-formed harbor upon an otherwise regular coast determined the location of Erie, Pennsylvania.

If shore drift is deposited against the mainland, it extends the land into the water. A coast-line developed by deposition

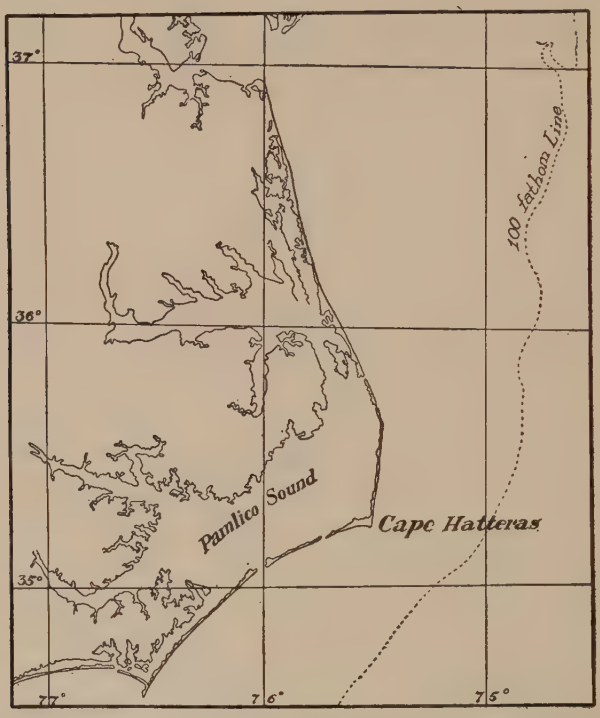


FIG. 318.—Map showing the early stages in the simplification of a shore-line, and showing that at this stage the irregularities are increased.

is in contrast with one developed by erosion, for the former has no sea cliff. Land developed from reefs and spits may greatly increase the irregularity of the coast-line temporarily (Fig. 318), but these irregularities really represent an initial stage in the development of regularity, for after the reefs have become land, the lagoons behind them are likely to be filled with sediment, organic matter, etc., and converted into land (Fig. 322). The sediment which contributes to this end is washed down from the land or blown in. After the lagoon is filled, the shore-line is

much more regular than before, but the first effect of the making of the reef-land is to make the coast more irregular.

The disposition of deposits along shore to simplify coast-lines is shown in another way. In places deposits are made between islands near the shore of the mainland, and the mainland itself (Pl. XXII and Fig. 323). Nahant Island, on the coast of Massachusetts, and the Rock of Gibraltar, on the coast of Spain, have been "tied" to the mainland by the deposits of waves and shore currents. While this tying process gives rise to a notable irregularity of the mainland, it simplifies the outline of the land areas in the sense that it unites islands to mainland.

FIG. 319.—Map of the head of Lake Superior. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 320.—Bar joining Empire and Sleeping Bear bluffs, Lake Michigan. (Gilbert, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

2. *Rivers.* Rivers erode and deposit at or near coasts. The erosion of streams has little effect on the horizontal configuration of the coast-line, though it develops low places, thus affecting

its vertical configuration. Working alone, rivers do not develop bays or other similar bodies of water projecting into the land.

FIG. 321.—A recurved spit, Dutch Point, Grand Traverse Bay, Lake Michigan. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 322.—Sketch-map of a part of the New Jersey coast. The dotted belt at the east is the barrier modified by the wind. The area marked by diagonal lines is the mainland; the intervening tract is marsh-land. The numbers show the depth of water in feet. Scale, ¼ inch—1 mile.

The deposition of sediment brought down to coasts by streams is of more consequence in modifying the outline of the land. This is especially the case where deltas are built into lakes or seas. At the lower end of the Mississippi, for example, a great delta has been built out into the Gulf (Fig. 185). The great irregularity which the delta itself constitutes has smaller irregularities about its borders. Deltas in lakes show the same general features on a smaller scale. The forms of deltas have been noted (p. 175). Delta-land, as developed by rivers, is always low. Subsequent changes, as by diastrophism, may change its position.

3. *Winds.* The chief effect of wind along shores is to blow about dry sand. The sand may be piled up into considerable

Fig. 323.—Sheep Island, Penobscot Bay, Me., a small, land-tied island. (Bastin, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

dunes, as we have seen; but the shifting of the sand by the wind does not greatly change the outline of the land area. The wind piles up sand on some low bars and on low coasts, building them up much higher than they were before, even though it does not change the position of the coast-line. Plate V shows a coast where the land has been built up notably by wind-driven sand. At Nag Head, N. C., the land is said to have gained on the sea 350 feet in ten years as a result of wind deposits.

4. *Glaciers.* Glaciers descend to the level of the sea in some places, as in Greenland and Alaska. Where this is the case, the glaciers move down to the sea through valleys. If the ice is thick, the glaciers gouge out the valleys, in places to great depths below the level of the sea.

When glaciers which have gouged out such valleys melt, the lower ends of the valleys are filled with sea-water, making narrow bays, or *fiords.*

This is the explanation, or a part of the explanation, of many of the fiords of Norway, Alaska (Fig. 324), Greenland, southern Chile, and some other coasts.

Glaciers which descend to the sea deposit their drift where they end, but much of the drift, being loose material, is soon

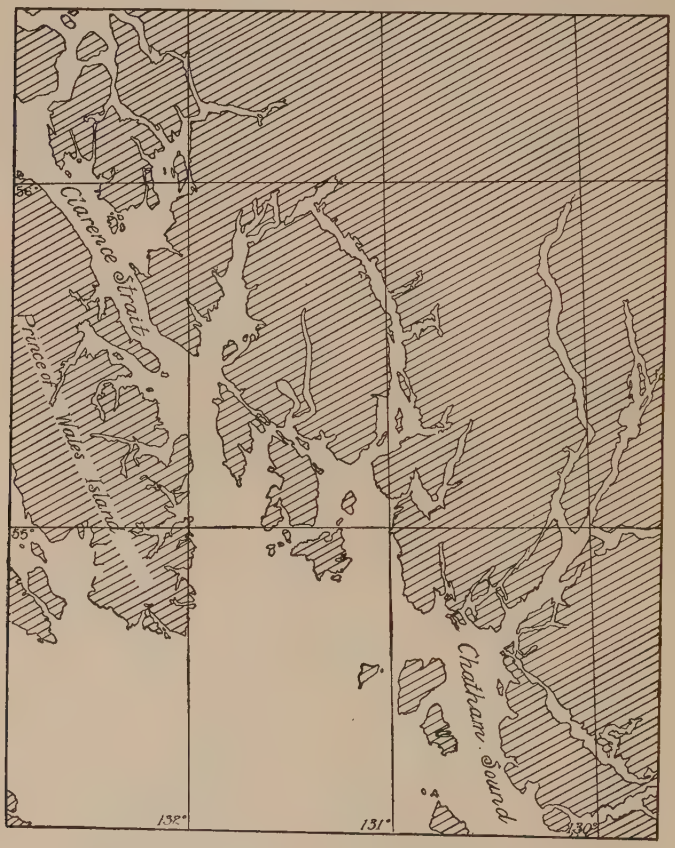


Fig. 324.—Alaska fiords. (C. and G. Surv.)

washed away by the waves, and in most places does not give rise to enduring irregularities of coast-line. Drift-made land in lakes is less readily swept away, because the waves are weaker.

5. *Shore ice* is another agency which is working on the coast-lines, but does not greatly modify their outlines.

Extinct Lakes

Many former lakes have become extinct. Extinct lakes are recognized by various features. If a lake basin became extinct by having its basin filled, the former area of the lake is marked by a flat (Fig. 325) covered with deposits such as are formed in lakes. These deposits may be of gravel or sand along the shores, but the materials deposited far from shore are fine. Such a flat is a *lacustrine plain*. A lacustrine plain is a minor type of plain, and may lie in mountains, on plateaus, or on plains of a larger type.

If a lake became extinct by the lowering of its outlet or by evaporation, the old bed of the lake would be less flat. It might even depart much from flatness.

The former borders of some extinct lakes, are marked by various shore features, such as deltas, terraces, beaches, etc.; while

Fig. 325.—A part of the flat of Lake Agassiz, Moorhead, Minn. (Goode.)

above the terraces, in places at least, old shore cliffs are found, especially if the lake was large. Conspicuous shore features mark the former borders of Lake Bonneville. Some of them are shown in Fig. 326. The lower slope, marked by terraces developed about the shores of the lake in relatively recent times, is in striking contrast with the upper slope, the topography of which was developed by running water while the lake was in existence, or before. The topography of the terraces is young; that of the slopes above, much more advanced. This relation between a slope of older topography above and a surface of younger topography below, has been called a *topographic unconformity*. In this case the lower ends of the ravines and valleys were filled and obliterated by the deposits along the shore of the lake, the water of which stood at various levels at various times.

Shore features, less conspicuous than those about Lake Bonneville, but none the less distinctive, mark the borders of the extinct Lake Agassiz (p. 245) and many other extinct lakes. They also appear about many existing lakes well above their present shores, thus recording their previous higher levels.

FIG. 326.—Shore of former lake Bonneville, Wellsville, Utah. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

All shore features developed by lakes are likely to be destroyed in time by the agents of degradation. The aridity of the Great Basin has favored the preservation of the shore features of Lake Bonneville and Lake Lahontan.

MAP WORK. See Exercise XV in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

REFERENCES

1. RUSSELL, *Lakes of North America:* Ginn & Co.

2. TAYLOR, *Short History of the Great Lakes*, in *Studies in Indiana Geography.*

3. CHAMBERLIN AND SALISBURY, *Earth History*, Vol. III, pp. 394–403.

4. GILBERT, *Topographic Features of Lake Shores*, in 5th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., and Mono. I, U. S. Geol. Surv.

5. DILLER, *Crater Lake, etc.:* Prof. Paper No. 3, U. S. Geol. Surv.; Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. VIII, pp. 33–48, and Am. Jour. Sci., Vol. III, 1897, pp. 165–172.

6. RUSSELL, *Geography of the Laurentian Basin:* Bull. Am. Geog. Soc., Vol. XXX, pp. 226–254, and Jour. of Geol., Vol. I, pp. 394–408.

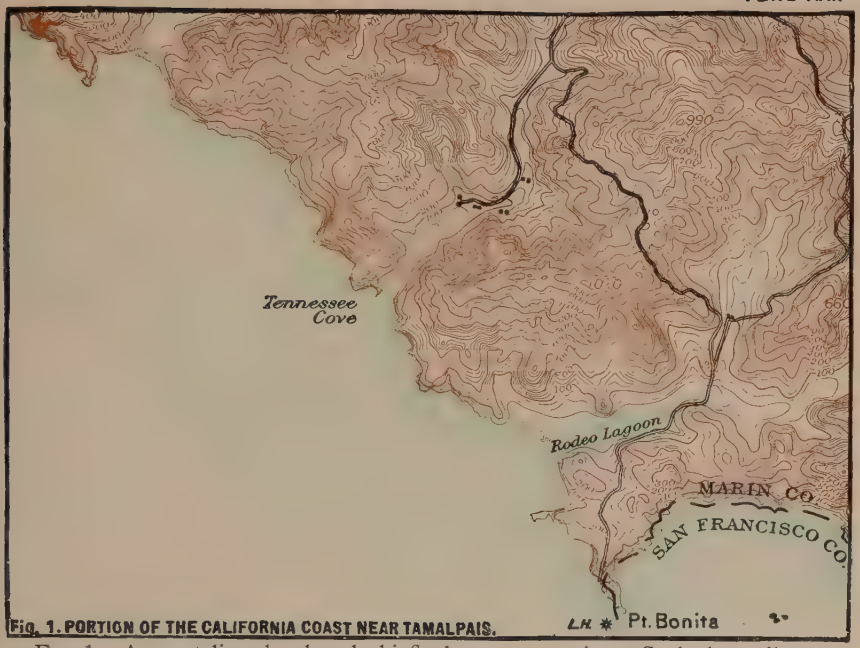


FIG. 1.—A coast line developed chiefly by wave erosion. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Tamalpais, Cal., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 2.—An island tied to the mainland by a "beach." The "beach" is really a bar, in spite of the name popularly applied to it. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Boston Bay, Mass., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

7. Tarr, For New York lakes, see *Physical Geography of New York: The Great Lakes:* Bull. Am. Geog. Soc., Vol. XXXI, pp. 101–117, 217–235, and 315–343; and *Lake Cayuga:* Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., Vol. V, pp. 339–356.

8. Upham, *Glacial Lakes in Canada:* Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., Vol. II, pp. 243–274.

9. Brigham, *Lakes: a Study for Teachers:* Jour. of Sch. Geog., Vol. I, pp. 65–72.

10. Fenneman, *Lakes of Southeastern Wisconsin:* Bull. 8, Wis. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv.

11. Kemp, *Physiography of Lake George:* Annals N. Y. Acad. of Sci., Vol. XIV, pp. 141–142, and Science, Vol. XIV, p. 774.

12. Murdoch, *Fall of Water Level in Great Salt Lake:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XIV, 1903, pp. 75–77.

13. Mill, *Bathymetric Survey of the English Lakes:* Geog. Jour., Vol. VI, pp. 46–73 and 135–166.

14. Murray, *Bathymetric Survey of the Fresh-water Lochs of Scotland:* Scot. Geog. Mag., Vol. XVII, p. 169; Vol. XIX, pp. 449 and 561; and Vol. XX, pp. 1, 169, 235, 449, 589, and 628.

Extinct Lakes, Shore Features, etc.

15. Russell, *Present and Extinct Lakes of Nevada,* in *Physiography of the United States:* Am. Bk. Co.

16. Shaler, *Sea-coast Swamps of the Eastern United States:* 6th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv.; also *Sea and Land:* Scribner's.

17. Gilbert, *Lake Bonneville:* Mono. I, U. S. Geol. Surv. Also 5th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 75–123.

18. Russell, *Lake Lahontan:* Mono. XI, U. S. Geol. Surv.; and *Mono Lake:* 8th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv.

19. Geikie, J., *Earth Sculpture,* Chapter XV: Putnam.

20. Geikie, Sir A., *Scenery of Scotland,* Chapter III: Macmillan.

21. Salisbury and Kummel, Lake Passaic: Geol. Surv. of N. J. Ann. Rept. State Geologist, 1893, pp. 225–328.

22. Upham. Lake Agassiz: Mono. XXV, U. S. Geol. Surv.

See also references 26–32, p.252.

CHAPTER VII

VULCANISM

A Volcano is a vent in the earth's crust out of which hot rock issues. The hot rock may be liquid (*lava*) and flow out, or it may be solid and be ejected violently in pieces. If the vent is in the form of a long crack or *fissure*, it commonly is not called a volcano.

Fig. 327.—Typical cinder cone, Clayton Valley, Cal. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

The rock material which comes out of a volcano is likely to be built up into mounds or cones (Fig. 327). They may be mere mounds, hills, or even high mountains. The cones often are called volcanoes, though they are really the results of volcanic

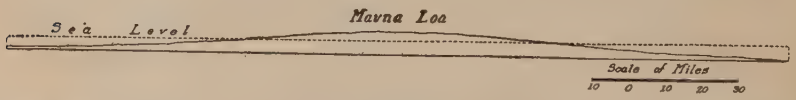


Fig. 328.—Profile of the cone of Mauna Loa. Vertical scale same as horizontal. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

activity. The volcano from which lava flows makes a cone with low slopes (Fig. 328). The volcano from which solid matter is thrown makes a cone with steeper slopes. Many volcanoes send out both liquid rock (lava) and solid rock. In this case both may

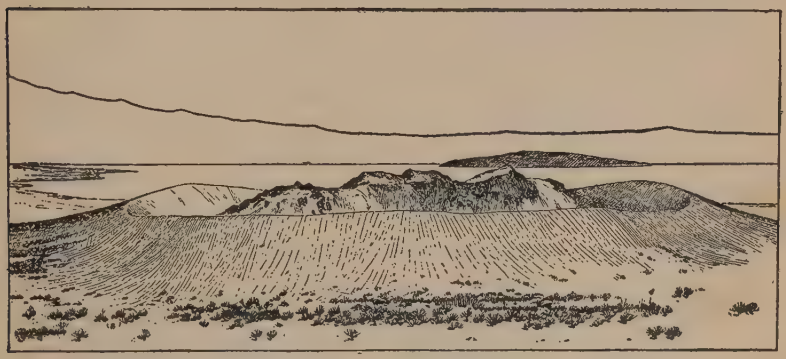


Fig. 329.—Panum crater, Cal., the crater partly occupied by a cone; Lake Mono and Paona Island in the distance. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

be issuing at about the same time, or lava may flow out at one time and solid rock be ejected at another. Along with the hot rock, quantities of gases and vapors, some of them poisonous, are discharged. So long as a volcano is active, there is likely to be a hollow, called *the crater* (Figs. 329 and 330), in the summit of its

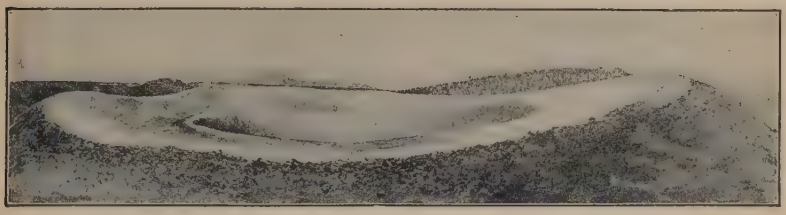


Fig. 330.—Sketch of the crater of the cinder cone near Lassen Peak, Cal., showing the peculiar feature of two rings. The funnel is 240 feet deep. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

cone. From the crater an opening leads down to the source of the lava, at an unknown depth. Craters vary greatly in size. Some of them are a mile or more across, and some but a small fraction of a mile. The sizes and shapes of the openings leading down to the sources of the lava cannot be seen while the volcano is active, but they doubtless vary much in size and shape, and perhaps in length.

Volcanoes exhibit two great types of eruption. These are (1) *the quiet type* and (2) *the explosive type.* In the former the liquid lava rises in the crater, and either (*a*) flows over its rim or (*b*) breaks through the cone and flows down its sides. In the latter the material is blown out by explosions from within. In this case the material may be either liquid or solid when it is thrown out, but the liquid lava cools rapidly in the air and becomes solid quickly. Small masses of liquid lava blown out of a volcanic vent may be solid when they fall, after even a few seconds of flight through the air. Some volcanoes discharge quietly at one time and explosively at another, and in some there is a measure of explosive violence at all times, accompanied by the outflow of lava.

From the following accounts of a few active volcanoes, many of the features of volcanic action will be gathered.

Examples of Active Volcanoes

Stromboli. The cone of this volcano is an island 4 or 5 miles in diameter, in the Mediterranean Sea, north of Sicily. The cone is built up from the bottom of the sea, and is about a mile high, though but little more than half of it projects above the water. About 1000 feet below its top there is an opening in the side of the mountain, from which steam issues constantly. At a distance, the condensed water vapor looks like smoke.

It is sometimes possible to climb up to the opening or crater and look in. The floor of the crater is then seen to be of black rock composed of hardened lava. There are cracks in the floor, and from some of them steam puffs out somewhat as from an engine. In other cracks liquid lava may be seen to be boiling. Bubbles form in it and burst, much as bubbles form and burst in a pot of boiling mush. When they burst, fragments of the lava of which the bubbles are composed are hurled hundreds of feet into the air, and fall on the slopes of the cone, increasing its size. At night the glowing lava in the cracks of the crater floor lights up the clouds which hover over the mountain. For this reason Stromboli is known as "the lighthouse of the Mediterranean."

The eruptions of Stromboli occasionally are so violent that the roar of the escaping steam may be heard for miles, while the ejected material is hurled so high and so far that it is scattered not only over the entire mountain, but into the surrounding sea. Stromboli is an example of a volcano which is at the present time constantly

active. Stromboli is one of many volcanoes which have existed in this part of the Mediterranean Sea. Some of the others, such as Etna, are still active, while others are dormant or extinct.

Vesuvius. Vesuvius probably is the best-known volcano. Its cone is a mountain about 4000 feet high, on the shore of the Bay of Naples, about 10 miles from the city of the same name. The present cone of the volcano (Fig. 331) rises within the half-destroyed rim of an older and much larger crater.

Previous to 79 A.D. Vesuvius was, so far as then known, only a conical mountain in whose summit was a deep crater three miles

FIG. 331.—Cinder cone forming the summit of Mt. Vesuvius.

in diameter. The slopes and even the bottom of the crater were covered with vegetation. In that year a destructive explosion occurred, and blew away half the rim of the old crater. Much of the rock blown out was broken into such small pieces as to constitute *dust* (often called *volcanic ash*), and as it fell on the surrounding country, it buried and destroyed not only plants, but even cities. Pompeii, a city of some 20,000 inhabitants, was thus buried, locally to a depth of 25 to 30 feet, and about 2000 of its people were killed. During this eruption there were no streams of lava. Heavy rains accompanied or followed the eruption. Falling on the volcanic dust, the water gave rise to devastating streams of hot mud. Herculaneum was overwhelmed by such a

stream, perhaps 60 feet deep at a maximum. The present cone of Vesuvius has been built up inside the remnant of the rim of the older cone since this eruption.

Since the outburst of 79 A.D., Vesuvius has had other violent eruptions, separated by periods when it was quiet or when its activity was mild. The eruption of 1631 was especially violent destroying 18,000 lives. The emission of steam and volcanic dust was followed by outflows of lava, some of which reached the sea. Other eruptions of importance occurred in 1737, 1794, 1822, and 1872. For several months before the principal eruption of 1872 there had been mild activity, during which steam and fine fragments of rock matter were ejected from the crater, and flows of lava issued from cracks on the mountain-side. The activity gradually increased in violence until April, when the eruption culminated. Two huge fissures and several smaller ones opened on the flanks of the cone, and from them great streams of lava flowed into the neighboring valleys, overwhelming two villages. At the same time, two large openings were made at the summit, from which enormous quantities of steam, dust, and bomb-like masses of molten rock were hurled 4000 feet or more into the air, with a noise which could be heard for many miles. At night the cloud overhanging the mountain was brightly illuminated by the glowing lava in the crater. Earthquakes were felt throughout the entire region. The discharges continued with great violence for four days. After the eruption was over, two craters 750 feet deep, with nearly vertical walls, were found at the summit. An enormous amount of loose material had accumulated on the sides of the mountain, and the lava which issued from the fissures lower down covered a large area.

When Vesuvius is but mildly active it is possible to climb to the rim of its crater and look in. It is advisable to climb up on the windward side, because of the noxious vapors which are blown to leeward. Even on the windward side it is necessary to be mindful of the course which is followed, for stifling and poisonous gases issue from numerous little vents. Fortunately the poisonous gases have such a disagreeable odor that they are detected readily.

The phenomena which may be seen and felt on the mountain differ from time to time, but the conditions of a particular day (in June, 1887) may be taken as fairly characteristic. Soon after the ascent on that day began, rumbling noises were heard, accom-

panied by slight tremors or quakings. As the summit was approached, the noises grew louder, and the shaking of the mountain more distinct, until, by the time the top was reached, both noises and tremblings were nearly continuous.

From the rim of the crater it could be seen that there were three places where the floor of the crater was not crusted over. In these openings, the lava boiled and bubbled like viscous liquid in huge caldrons About three times a minute there were explosions within these openings, which shook the whole top of the mountain. At the same instant, hundreds of fragments of the glowing lava were shot several hundred feet into the air. As they fell, they were so scattered and came down from such great heights, that it was not difficult to dodge them. Many of them were glowing-hot as they started upward, but quickly cooled enough to stop glowing, and when they reached the surface of the cone they were dark, slag-like pieces of rock, though the larger pieces were not thoroughly solid. Some of the material ejected was in very small fragments, and some of it in pieces weighing scores and hundreds of pounds. Steam and many ill-smelling vapors were also issuing constantly from the crater. The water vapor which issued, soon was condensed into clouds as it rose and cooled, so that clouds hung over the mountain.

From the rim of the crater it was clear that the explosions which blew out the lava were the cause of the noises and the quaking. At night the glowing lava of the uncrusted openings in the bottom of the crater lighted up the clouds above, most brightly during explosions when hotter lava from greater depths was exposed.

Vesuvius was again disastrously active in the spring of 1906, when quantities of dust and flows of lava were sent forth, causing much destruction of property and some loss of life.

Professor Jaggar has described the conditions late in April as follows: "The lava-fields of 1872 and 1898 were found buried under 5 or 6 inches of sand and dust, which formed a heavy mantle, but not sufficient wholly to disguise the slaggy contortions beneath. The whole cone of Vesuvius became cleared of clouds in the course of the afternoon, and it was seen to be covered with straight sand-slides of whitish-gray color, which occasionally slipped downward as on the steeper slopes of a dune. Pure white steam boiled up slowly from the crater. In one instance it burst out radially over

the edge of the crater, showing a ring on the border, a dome of cumulus above and within, and a second still higher outer ring made of an older rain-cloud which had been punctured and pushed up bodily. The effect was like a hat on the mountain's crown. At night the cone was clear and entirely without luminosity."

As seen from the top, the crater was so full of steam, etc., that little could be seen; but occasionally "we could make out an inward slope of 35 or more degrees, covered with hot sand and

FIG. 332.—The Cauliflower cloud above Vesuvius, April 7, 1906. (Jaggar, Nat. Geog. Mag.)

broken rock fragments, terminated about 120 feet (vertically) below by jutting ledges which appeared to be precipitous. Beyond was steam and sulphurous heat and obscurity. The ledges fumed in places. No noise could be heard above the howling of the wind. The curvature of the crater edge was irregular with embayments, and it showed much irregularity in height. We could not see the opposite side of the caldron, but from the curvature it was estimated that the crater could not be less than from one-fourth to one-half mile in diameter — unusually large for Vesuvius."

The history of the above eruption is summed up by the same author as follows: "In May, 1905, lava flowed from a split in the

northwest side of the cone and continued in active motion throughout the year. It ceased flowing at the time when the present eruption opened a new vent on the south side of the cone. On April 4, 1906, a splendid black 'cauliflower' cloud rose from the crater. On April 4, 5, 6, and 7 lava mouths opened along the southern rift above mentioned, first 500 feet below the summit, then 1300 feet lower, and finally 600 feet lower still, all in the same radial line. The lowest mouth was more than half-way down the mountain, and from this orifice came the destructive streams. It

FIG. 333.—Vesuvius in 1906. (Hobbs.)

should be borne in mind that these flows are not floods of lava which cover the whole slope of the mountain, but relatively narrow, snake-like trickles, none the less deadly when they push their way through a closely built town. The molten rock crusted over and cracked, making a tumble of porous bowlders at its front.

"At 8 P.M., April 7, a column of dust-laden steam shot up four miles from the crater vertically. The cloud snapped with incessant lightnings. New lava mouths opened, and the flows moved forward, crushing and burning and swallowing parts of Boscotrecase, the stream forking so as to spare some portions of the town. Meantime torrents of ashes fell on Ottajano, on the opposite side of the volcano, and many roofs collapsed and lives were lost. At the observatory Dr. Matteuci and his colleagues were obliged to

retreat, as the observatory was rocking violently and heavy stones were falling. . . .

"Boscotrecase was ruined wholly by lava; Ottajano by falling gravel. Boscotrecase is traversed in two places by the clinkery lava stream, and in some cases houses were literally cut in two. The stream of lava had forked about a spur of the mountain, leaving the higher land with its vineyards untouched. The lower land with its town was invaded. There is so little timber in the Italian masonry

FIG. 334.—The ruins of Ottajano. The roofs have fallen in under the load of ashes.

construction that the uninvaded part of the town was not burned at all. At Ottajano the roofs fell in under the weight of sand and gravel. The roofs were largely flat or slightly sloping tiled affairs. The ash and lapilli reached a depth of three feet on level surfaces. The roofs carried the walls with them in many cases, but there was no significant earthquake. There was no fire, destructive lightning, nor strong wind. The persons who perished were all found in the houses, where the sole cause of death was entombment in the ruins."

Like Stromboli, Vesuvius is situated in a region where there have been other volcanoes, some of which have been active within historic times.

Krakatoa. One of the most violent and destructive volcanic explosions of which there is historical record was that of 1883, in Krakatoa, a volcanic island in the Strait of Sunda, between Sumatra and Java.

Previous to the great eruption, the island had been shaken by earthquakes and minor explosions for some years. On the morning of the 27th of August there was a series of terrible explosions, the sound of which was heard in southern Australia, 2200 mile

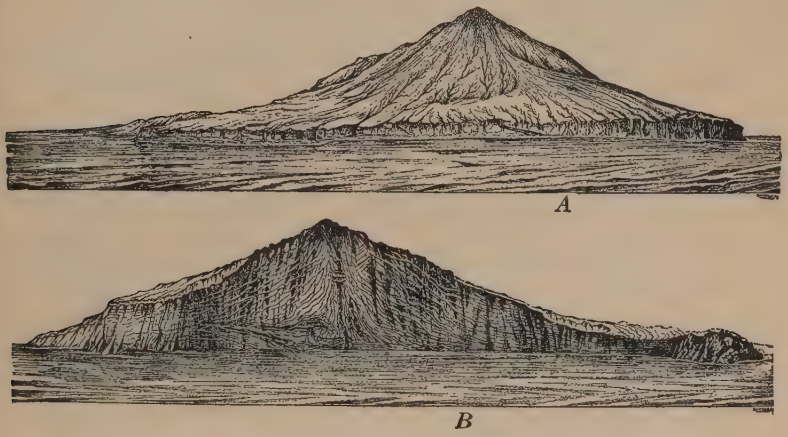


FIG. 335.—Krakatoa after the eruption. *A*, as seen from the southwest, and *B*, from the north. (Rept. of the Roy. Soc.)

away. About two-thirds of the island was blown away (Fig. 335), and the sea is now 1000 feet deep where the centre of the mountain formerly stood. Enormous sea-waves were formed, which traveled half-way around the earth. On the shores of the neighboring islands the water rose 50 feet, causing great destruction. More than 36,000 persons perished, mostly by drowning, and 295 villages were wholly or partially destroyed. The sky over the island and the bordering coasts became black as night from the clouds of dust. It was estimated that steam and dust were shot up into the air 17 to 23 miles. The explosion produced great air-waves which traveled three and more times around the earth. Its passage was recorded by barometers in all parts of the world. The dust ejected during this explosion has been noted already (p. 50).

Over a circle 10 to 12 miles from the centre of Krakatoa, the sea bottom outside the crater was built up 10 to 12 feet by the

material thrown out in the explosion. Along a line to the west, the depth of the water was increased by the sinking of the bottom.

The cause of this awful explosion was probably the same as that of the milder eruptions of Stromboli, that is, the sudden escape or explosion of superheated steam.

Something of the conjectured history of this volcano is shown by Fig. 336, which is suggestive of the changes undergone by

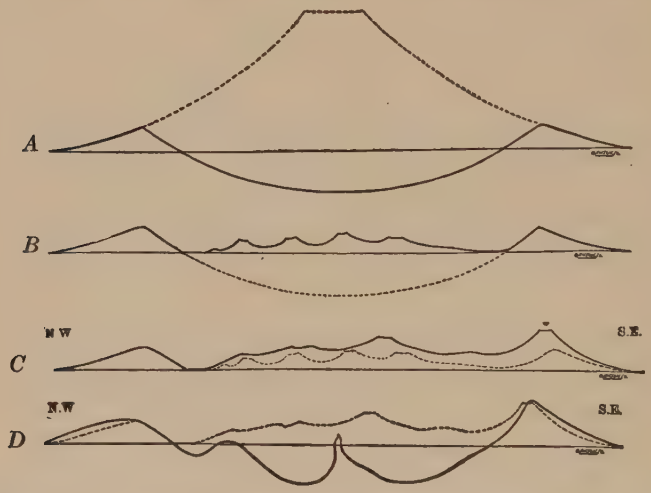


Fig. 336.—*A*. Probable outline of the great crater ring of the Krakatoa volcano after the ancient paroxysmal outbursts. The dotted line indicates the mass which was blown away.

B. Probable outline of the Krakatoa volcano after the great crater indicated by the dotted line had been filled up by growth of numerous small cones within.

C. Form of Krakatoa in historical time, after the formation of the great lateral cone of Rakata and the growth of other cones within the great crater.

D. Outline of the crater of Krakatoa as it is now. The dotted lines indicate the parts blown away by the outburst of 1883 and the change in form of the flanks by the fall of ejected matter. (Rept. of the Roy. Soc.)

volcanic cones. The explanation beneath the figure gives its interpretation.

There are many other volcanoes, living and dead, in the vicinity of Krakatoa.

Mont Pelée and Soufrière. The volcano of Mont Pelée is situated on the island of Martinique (Fig. 339), one of the Lesser Antilles, at the eastern border of the Caribbean Sea. Its cone descends by steep slopes to the sea on all sides but the south, where

it is bordered by a plain on which, prior to the eruption of 1902, stood the city of St. Pierre, with a population of about 26,000. The crater of Pelée was half a mile in diameter, and its floor 2000 feet below the highest part of the crater rim. This rim was interrupted at the southwest by a deep gash, through which a stream flowed. In the crater there was formerly a lake, but it is said to have been dry for about half a century.

FIG. 337.—Krakatoa Island and surroundings before the eruption of 1883. The numbers indicate the depth of the water in fathoms.

Previous to the eruption of 1902, Pelée had had two periods of moderate activity within historic times, namely, in 1762 and in 1851. Neither was destructive to life. From 1851 to 1902 the volcano slumbered. In the later part of April of the latter year activity was renewed by (1) the discharge of steam, vapors, and ashes, some of which were thrown 1300 feet above the top of the mountain, and (2) by the opening of three vents in the basin of the old crater. By April 25 sulphurous vapors had become so abundant that horses dropped dead in the streets of St. Pierre, and a little later the traffic of the streets was obstructed by the volcanic dust or "ashes." On May 5 the mud which had accumulated in the basin of the crater broke out and flowed down the valley, overwhelming a factory and destroying a number of lives. During these early stages of activity there were numerous earth-

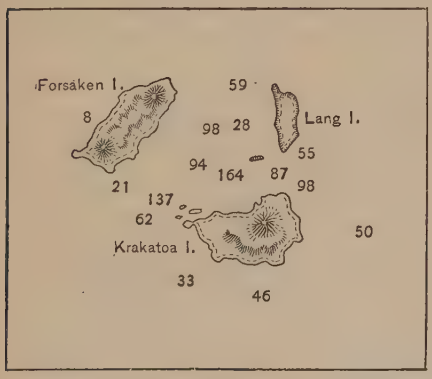


FIG. 338.—Krakatoa Island and surroundings after the eruption of 1883. The numbers indicate the depths of the water in fathoms.

quakes, and all cables from Martinique were broken. Detonations like the report of artillery were heard 300 miles away.

On May 8 the activity of the volcano reached its climax. On that day a heavy black cloud swept down through the gash in the crater rim over the plain to the southwest, and two minutes later struck the city of St. Pierre, five miles distant. The city was at once demolished. Buildings were thrown down, statues hurled from their pedestals, and trees torn up. Explosions were heard in St. Pierre as the cloud reached it, and the city burst into flames, fired either by the heat of the gases or the red-hot particles of rock which the gases carried. A few moments later a deluge of rain, mud, and stones fell, continuing the destruction. With very few exceptions, the entire population, increased to some 30,000 by refugees from the surrounding country, was wiped out of existence.

FIG. 339.—Sketch-map of Martinique. (Nat. Geog. Mag.)

Study of the region after the eruption showed that the cloud was probably composed of steam, sulphurous vapors, and dust. It is estimated to have had a temperature of 1400° to 1500° F. (800° C.). The gases were heavier than air, and so swept along the ground instead of rising. Combustible gases seem not to have been abundant, for the vegetation in the path of the blast was not burned, but only dried and withered. The bodies of the victims were scorched, burned, or scalded. Except in the axis of the blast, the clothing of the bodies was unburned, though the flesh beneath was burned and scalded. The chief causes of death seem to have been suffocation by the noxious vapors and gases, and the great heat. Minor causes were blows from stones thrown from the volcano, burns from hot stones, dust, and steam, cremation in burning buildings, etc.

Other eruptions occurred on May 20, 26, June 6, July 9, and August 30. The first of these was similar in character and violence

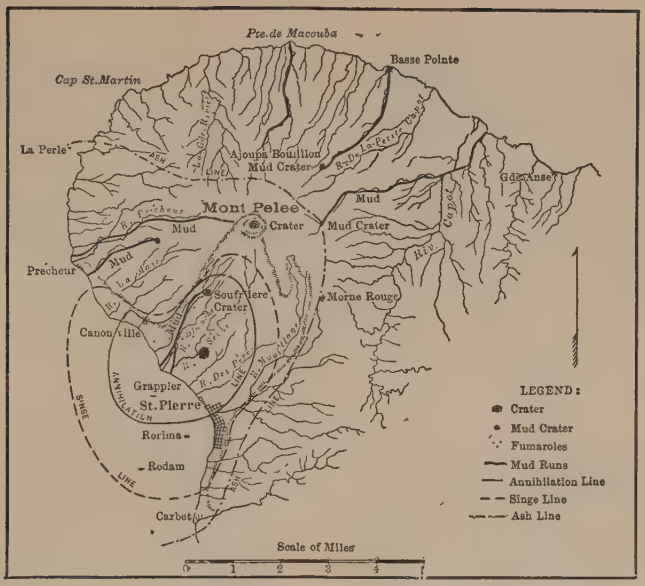


FIG. 340.—Map of that part of Martinique devastated by the volcanic outburst of 1902. (Hill, Nat. Geog. Mag.)

FIG. 341.—Outside of southern rim of crater of Pelée. The serrate edge is due to landslides. (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

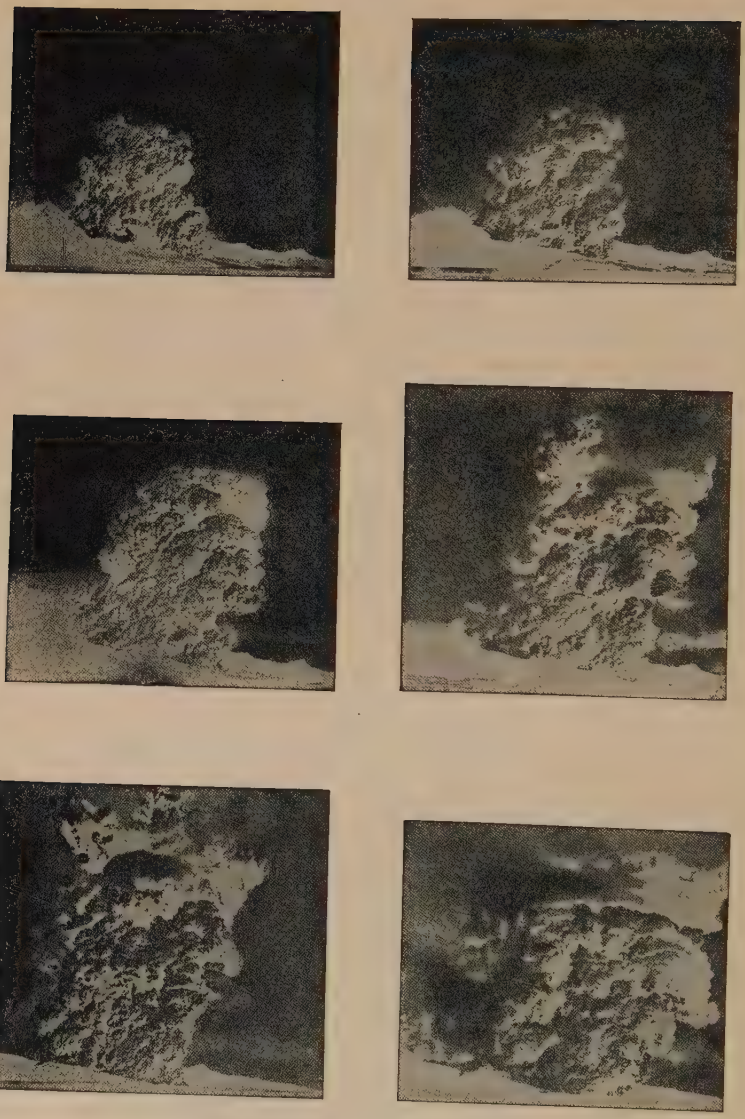


FIG. 342.—Successive stages of the dust-cloud of the eruption of Mt. Pelée December 16, 1902. (La Croix.)

FIG. 343.—Great rocks thrown out by the eruption of August 30, 1902 (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

FIG. 344.—St. Pierre after the eruption of Mt. Pelée, which is seen in the distance. (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

to that of May 8, and destroyed such portions of the town as had been spared by the first eruption. The blast of August 30 took a path somewhat different from that of the earlier ones, and devastated a number of villages in the vicinity of St. Pierre, adding about 2000 to the list of human victims. Clouds of steam and ashes were thrown to heights of 6 and 7 miles.

Fig. 345.—Spire of Mt. Pelée. The spire rose about 1210 feet above the crater rim. (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

The great crater of Mont Pelée is now occupied by a cone of fragmental material and some lava. The cone overtops the crater rim, and for a time terminated in a spire which rose hundreds of feet above the shallow crater. Unlike the cone, the spire was of solid rock and was beleived to be the lava which filled the vent like a cork, and was pushed up by the expansive forces beneath. The spire crumbled rapidly and soon ceased to be conspicuous.

La Soufrirère. An interesting case of sympathetic action was shown by a volcano on the island of St. Vincent (Fig. 346), about 90 miles south of Martinique. After two days of premonitory symptoms the first eruption of the Soufrière occurred on May 7. The eruption was similar to that of Mont Pelée, but as there was no considerable city in the path of the steam-cloud, the loss of life was much smaller, about 1350. The discharges from the vent were not confined and directed by a valley so definitely as those of Mont Pelée; hence they spread over a larger area, with less violence. A later eruption, on May 18, preceded, by a short period, an outburst of Mont Pelée, and another, on September 3, followed a great eruption of the sister volcano.

From both centres of activity the dust driven out was carried long distances. On St. Vincent it formed beds 50 and 60 feet thick in some places. There were no lava-flows in connection with any of these eruptions.

Earthquake tremors felt in China on May 8 are supposed to have been connected with the violent eruption of that date.

FIG. 346.—Sketch-map of the Island of St. Vincent, showing the zones of devastation. On the black area the destruction of life was nearly complete; in the checked area, slight. (Russell, Nat. Geog. Mag.)

Mt. Lassen. Until recently, it could almost have been said that there was no active volcano in the United States proper, but since the end of May, 1914, Mt. Lassen, in northern California, has been in eruption intermittently. The activity is at the top of an old volcanic cone, 10,437 feet high. The new crater is inside an older and larger one.

The early eruptions were all of the explosive type. The material ejected consisted of gases, dust (rock flour), and fragments of

FIG. 347.—The Soufrière, St. Vincent. (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

rock, small pieces of which were hurled as much as a mile. Large blocks, one of them 15 feet in diameter and weighing 63 tons,

were thrown short distances, and in one eruption masses several feet in diameter were carried a long distance from the crater.

In May (19th and 22d), 1915, eruptions were more violent than before. Prior to this time, the lava in the bottom of the crater had been rising. Its surface crusted over, forming a solid cap to the rising column. Bursting out from beneath this cap, a blast of hot gas flowed down the valleys of Hat Creek and Lost Creek, on the 19th of May. The hot gas and the flood caused by

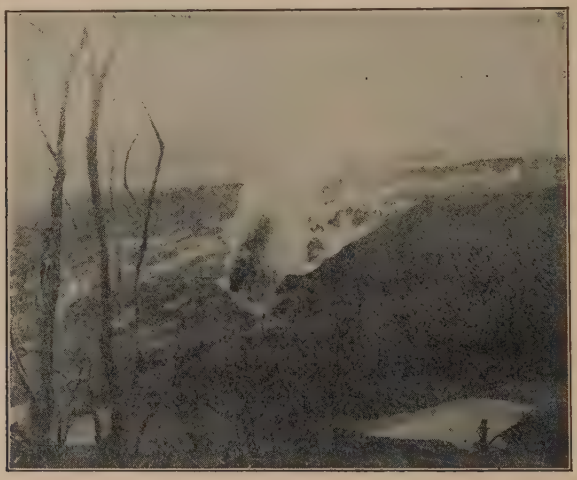


Fig. 348.—An eruption of steam from the ashes of the Walliban Valley. (Hovey, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

the melting of snow, devastated the bottom of the valley of Lost Creek for 10 miles. Along the course of the gas flow, vegetation was killed, and leaves were charred in spots, and in two cases fires are said to have been started by the great heat. Three days later a mushroom-shaped cloud was shot up nearly 4 miles, and lava issued from beneath the lid of solid rock, and flowed over the rim of the crater, descending the west side of the mountain slope 1000 feet. At the time of this eruption, a great fissure, 1000 feet long, was opened at the top of the cone, on the northwest side.

After the early eruptions the crater was in the form of an elongate gash, which on June 5, 1914, was about 275 feet long. By early September, after many more eruptions, it was about 800 feet long, and 350 feet wide, and in March, 1915, when more than

FIG. 349.—The Soufrière in eruption. Ruins of Walliban sugar-factory in the foreground. (Photograph by Wilson.)

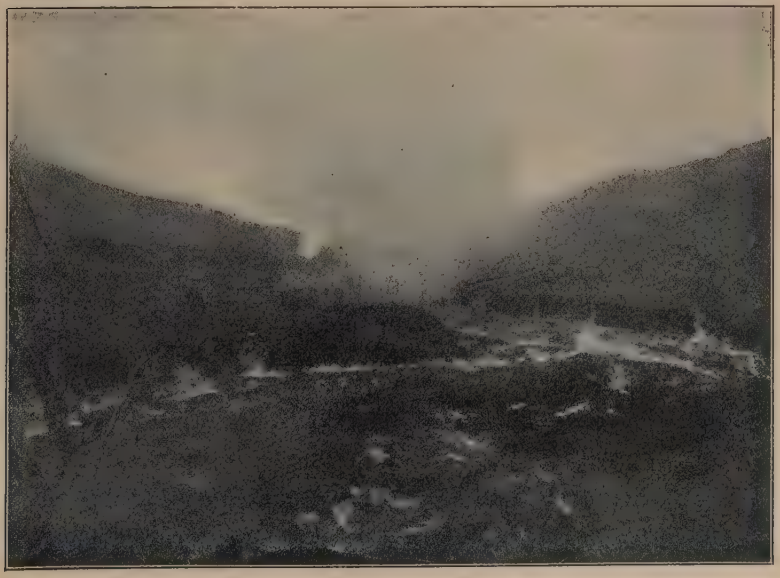


FIG. 350.—A river of mud pouring from La Soufrière; the steam is rising from hundreds of points in the hot stream. (Russell.)

150 eruptions had taken place, it was about 1000 feet long and 700 feet wide. The total amount of material ejected is small. Fumaroles (vents from which hot gases issue) were developed on the north and west sides of the mountain near its top. Mt. Lassen is in the midst of a region in which there are abundant evidences of great heat near the surface. Hot springs and fumaroles are found at numerous points within a few miles of the volcano.

Fig. 351.—Mt. Lassen, Calif., in eruption, 1915. Photograph by B. F. Loomis.

While Mt. Lassen is the only volcano in the United States which can be said to be really active, Mt. Rainier and Mt. Shasta both emit hot vapors, and Mt. Baker and Mt. St. Helens (Washington) were in eruption in 1843, spreading a blanket of volcanic dust over considerable areas. Mt. Baker was in eruption also in 1854 and 1858.

Hawaiian volcanoes. The eruptions of the volcanoes thus far described are more or less violent; but in the Hawaiian Islands there are volcanoes whose eruptions are relatively quiet. Mauna Loa is the largest of the four volcanic cones whose united mass forms the island of Hawaii, which is 80 miles across. Mauna Loa rises 14,000 feet above the sea. So far as known, almost the whole island is made up of volcanic materials. The highest point of the island is about 14,000 feet above the sea, but the island has been built up from the sea bottom by the lava poured out from the craters, and since the water around the island is about 16,000 feet deep, the volcanic pile, the top of which is the island, is really

about 30,000 feet high. This is about the height of the highest mountain above sea-level.

The crater of Mauna Loa (Fig. 352) is 3 miles long, 2 miles wide, and about 1000 feet deep — a very large crater. When the

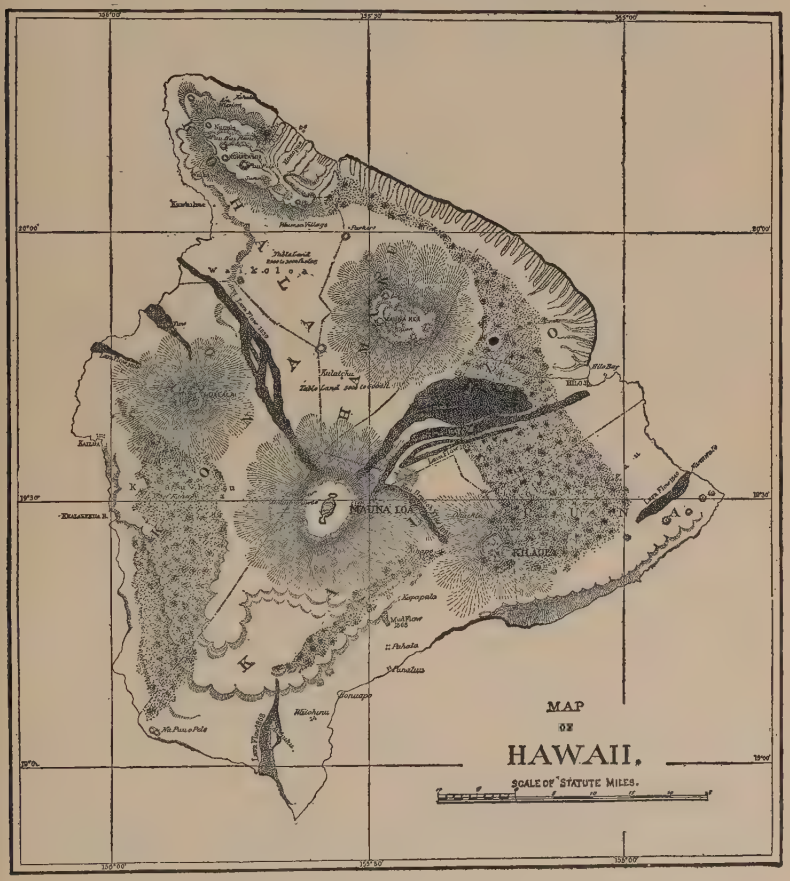


FIG. 352.—Map of Hawaii. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

volcano is not active, it is possible to descend into the crater and to walk about on its hard but hot floor. Cracks and other openings are, however, generally present, and give evidence of the hot liquid rock beneath.

Before an eruption the floor of the crater rises, and lakes of lava appear in the enlarged openings in it. At intervals, fountains

of lava may rise from the lakes, sometimes to heights of several hundred feet. Finally the eruption occurs; but the lava does not usually flow over the rim of the crater. It generally comes out through fissures which open on the side of the mountain, some of them far from the top. Through them the liquid lava spouts, sometimes for hundreds of feet, into the air, and then flows down the sides of the mountain in streams. Some such streams are half a mile in width, and flow for 50 miles. The lava streams are somewhat like mountain glaciers in form. Their rate of advance

Fig. 353.—View of crater of Kilauea. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

is, however, much faster than that of glaciers, though much slower than that of rivers. The lava flows faster at first, and more slowly as it advances and becomes cooler. Residents in the cities below go out at intervals when the volcanoes are discharging, to see how the streams of lava are coming on, and whether they are likely to descend so far as to endanger life and property in the settled regions below. As the lava streams reach flatter ground, they spread out, and the lava here and there collects in hollows, forming pools and lakes which soon harden. The lava occasionally falls over cliffs (Fig. 354), sometimes into the sea.

After it becomes hard the surface of a lava-flow may be nearly smooth (Fig. 355), but in many cases it is rough. It may be ropy (Fig. 356) or clinkery (Fig. 357). The ropiness is due to movement of the surface lava after it is partially hardened. The clinkery surface results from the breaking up of the hardened crust of the lava stream.

As the lava flows out, the lava lake in the crater at the summit subsides, and great masses of the floor of the crater, formerly held up by the lava below, sink.

FIG. 354.—Lava falling over cliffs, Kilauea. (H. M. S. Challenger Rept.)

FIG. 355.—Relatively smooth lava surface near the Jordan craters, Malheur Co., Ore. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

During the eruptions of the Hawaiian volcanoes little steam is discharged, and there are no showers of dust or cinders, no loud

FIG. 356.—Ropy surface of lava, Mauna Loa, flow of 1881. (Calvin.)

FIG. 357.—Clinkery lava, Cinder Buttes, Idaho. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

rumbling or explosive reports, and earthquakes are rare. An eruption may continue for months at a time with so little disturbance that only persons in the vicinity are aware of it.

Hawaii is one of a chain of volcanic islands, 400 miles long. Mauna Loa, therefore, like the other volcanoes studied, is one of a considerable number in its region.

Common phenomena of an eruption. From the preceding descriptions the essential features of eruptions may be gleaned. In the explosive type of eruption, rumblings and earthquake shocks

FIG. 358.—The Volcano of Colima, Mex., in an active condition, March 24, 1903. (Arreola.)

due to explosions within the throat of the volcano occur in many cases for weeks or even months previous to a violent outbreak. As the explosions become violent ashes, cinders and bombs are shot forth and fall upon the sides of the cone, while the summit of the mountain is shaken. The clouds of condensed steam and dust rising from the crater darken the sky, and torrents of rain, falling upon the fine dust, form rivers of hot mud. Liquid lava may or may not accompany the discharge of dust, cinders, etc. In the quiet type of eruption, the lava rises in the crater and occasionally overflows its rim; but more commonly a crack is opened in the

side of the cone by an earthquake shock, or by the pressure of the molten rock within, and the lava issues below the top. There is little or no burning in a volcano, for there is little or nothing to burn. There is therefore no smoke. What appears as smoke is mostly condensed water vapor (cloud), often blackened by dust.

The Products of Volcanoes

The materials which come out of volcanoes are partly solid, partly liquid, and partly gaseous. The dust, the cinders, and the larger pieces of rock are solid, the flowing lava is liquid, while the number of vapors and gases which issue is large.

Lava. All the liquid rock which issues from a volcano is *lava*. The term is also applied to the rock formed when the liquid lava becomes solid on cooling.

Lava never flows so freely as water, and in some cases it is very stiff or viscous. The distance to which it flows depends on its amount, on the slope of the surface over which it flows, and on its liquidity. The greater the amount of lava, the steeper the slope on which it flows, and the greater its fluidity, the farther it will flow.

As lava flows, its upper surface cools and hardens. The surface of a lava stream may thus become solid while the interior is still fluid. The fluid part may then break out at the side or end of the hardened shell and flow away, leaving the hollow crust. On further cooling the shell contracts and cracks, and parts of it fall in. In some cases the hardened surface is broken by the movement of the fluid lava below, and the solid fragments, displaced and upturned by the moving liquid, give the surface a jagged appearance (Fig. 357). In 1872 the Modoc Indians of southeastern Oregon, from their nearly inaccessible retreat among the lava-beds of this sort, waged a warfare which was for some time successful against the United States troops.

Lava takes on various forms as it becomes solid. If it hardens under little pressure, as at the surface, the gases and vapors which it contains expand, and it is converted into a sort of rock froth. If the lava solidifies quickly, without becoming frothy, it makes *volcanic glass* or *obsidian*. If the lava cools slowly under pressure, the substances of which it is composed crystallize into the form of various minerals. The kinds and proportions of the minerals depend on the composition of the lava.

Cinders, ashes, etc. Much of the fragmental material which is blown out of a volcano is nothing more than portions of lava which solidified before ejection, or during their flight in the air. The fragments range in size from masses tons in weight to minute particles of dust.

The light particles of dust thrown far into the air, are caught by winds, and shifted incredible distances, as already noted (p. 50). While, therefore, the fluid lava and the larger fragmental materials ejected from a volcano stay near the vent, the fine materials are scattered broadcast.

Gases and vapors. The gases and vapors which issue from volcanoes are of many kinds. Among the commoner ones are those of water (H_2O), carbon dioxide (CO_2), chlorine (Cl), hydrochloric acid (HCl), sulphur dioxide (SO_2), and hydrogen sulphide (H_2S); but with these more important ones are many others. Some of the gases are poisonous, and, as in the case of Pelée, their temperature may be so high as to be destructive to life.

Number, Distribution, etc.

Number. The number of volcanoes is not easily determined. Various reasons make such determination difficult. In the first place, it may be impossible to say whether a quiet volcano is dormant or extinct. If dormant, it should be counted; if dead, it should not. Again, the vent of a volcano often changes. Instead of discharging lava through a single crater, it may discharge through several subordinate vents more or less closely associated with the main one. There may be differences of opinion as to whether these several vents should be regarded as separate volcanoes. For this and other reasons, the number of active volcanoes is not capable of definite statement. According to the more common estimates there are between 300 and 400. Something like two-thirds of them are on islands, and the remainder on the continents. There may be many in the sea which are not known, for volcanoes in the *deep* sea may not be readily detected.

Distribution. The general distribution of active volcanoes is shown in Fig. 359. Many of them are arranged in belts, and within the belts, some of them are in lines. The most marked belt nearly encircles the Pacific Ocean, as with a girdle of steaming vents. This belt may be said to begin with the volcanic islands south of South America, and includes the numerous vents in the

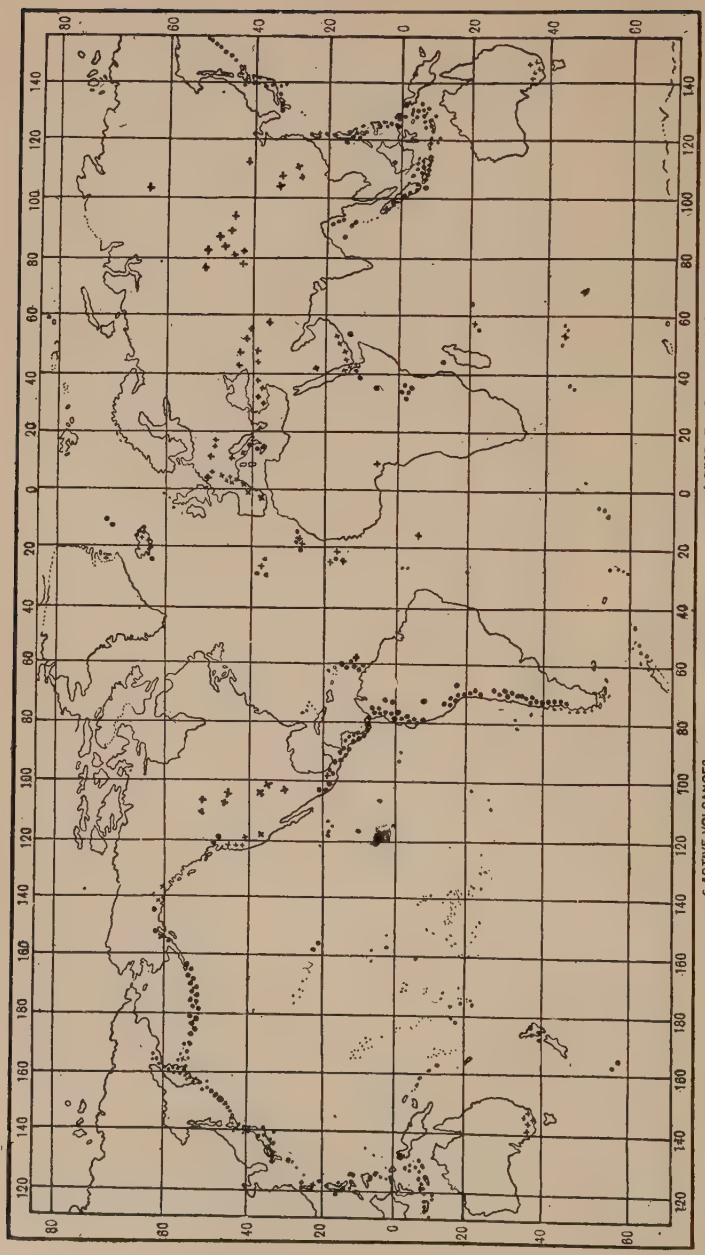


FIG. 359.—Map showing the distribution of volcanoes. (After Russell.)

Andes and in the mountains of Central America and Mexico. The belt widens in the western part of the United States, where the volcanoes are extinct, but narrows again in Alaska and the Aleutian Islands. On the west side of the Pacific, the volcanoes form a well-marked belt, with many active vents through Kamchatka, Corea, Japan, the Philippine Islands, New Guinea, New Hebrides, and New Zealand. A branch belt includes the volcanoes in the islands of Java and Sumatra. The volcanoes of the West Indies sometimes are considered as an eastern branch of the same belt. Volcanoes also are numerous in the Mediterranean Sea, and there are not a few which cannot be regarded as parts of any well-defined belt.

Most volcanoes are in the sea or near it. Not a few of them are in mountain regions, but it is by no means true that all mountain regions have them. Not a few are on ridges or swells on the sea bottom, or on ridges or swells which rise above the sea. Such, for example, are the West Indian volcanoes. While the volcanoes which are on the continents are on the whole near the shores, they are not all near shores, nor do they occur along the borders of all continents. There is an active volcano in Africa 700 miles from the sea, and there are fresh cones of extinct volcanoes 500 to 800 miles from the sea in Arizona, Colorado, and Thibet. It cannot be said, therefore, that nearness to the sea or mountain ridges are conditions necessary for volcanoes. Many of the active volcanoes are near the descent from the continental plateau to the oceanic basins. Perhaps this is the most significant feature of their distribution. Volcanoes are, on the whole, not notably more abundant in one latitude than in another. At any rate, they have a wide range in latitude.

The data which are now in hand seem to point to the general conclusion that volcanoes on land are commonly associated with lands which have been recently in movement. It is conceived that these movements of the surface have some effect upon the pressures and temperatures of the deeper zones beneath them, and that these variations of pressure and temperature are among the conditions necessary for the extrusion of lava from beneath the surface.

Historical. Volcanoes have existed throughout the history of the earth, so far as this history is now known, even back to the earliest ages; but volcanic processes do not seem to have been equally active at all times. There seem to have been periods of

great volcanic activity, alternating with much longer periods of much less activity. There is no knowledge, however, that vulcanism ever ceased altogether at any time.

While vulcanism seems to have been continuous, but more or less periodic in its violence, the sites of volcanic activity have shifted from time to time, and the areas where they now exist are not the areas where they existed in former times.

What is now known of vulcanism seems to indicate that, generally speaking a volcano has a beginning, runs a given course, and dies. The vulcanism of a given region appears to have a similiar history. It appears also that the phase of vulcanism may change in a given region. In some volcanic regions fissure eruptions came early in the course of the volcanic history. As activity declined, fissure eruptions gave place to volcanoes, and the volcanoes became less and less active, and finally extinct.

Even after vulcanism proper ceases, associated phenomena continue. Thus in the Yellowstone National Park there are numerous geysers, hot springs, and other vents out of which hot vapors issue. Such phenomena probably represent the last phases of volcanic activity in the region.

Igneous Phenomena not Strictly Volcanic

Fissure eruptions. Lava sometimes rises to the surface through great fissures instead of through the relatively small vents of volcanoes. From such fissures, floods of lava spread over the surrounding country, in some cases hundreds of miles. Such lava floods once occurred in Oregon, Washington, and Idaho, where, by successive flows, the pre-existing hills and valleys were buried, and a vast plateau 200,000 square miles or more in extent was built up (Fig. 360). Locally, the nearly level surface of the lava plateau meets the mountains along its border, somewhat as the sea meets the land, while islands of older rock rise above it.

In this lava plateau the Snake River (Fig. 23) has excavated a great canyon 4000 feet deep in some places, and 15 miles wide. The walls of the canyon show the structure of the plateau. They show, among other things, the edges of the successive lava-flows, sometimes separated by beds of sediment, with soils in which the roots and trunks of trees still are preserved. These beds of sediment and these soils, show that long periods of time elapsed between successive lava-flows. At one point in the walls of the

canyon, a peak of older rock rising 2500 feet above the river is buried by 1500 feet of lava. A rugged mountain region was here transformed into a plateau by the lava floods. A part of the plateau has since been deeply dissected by streams, parts still remain nearly plane, parts have been broken into blocks which have been tilted into mountain ridges, while still other parts have been arched up into great dome mountains. The Blue Mountains of Oregon are a case in point. Badger Mountain of Washington is an elongate dome or anticline.

FIG. 360.—Lava-flows of the northwestern part of the U. S.

There is an older lava plateau of still greater size in India. Owing to its greater age, its nearness to the sea, and the humid climate, it is more dissected than the Oregon plateau. It is said that the lava has in some areas given rise to a soil of great fertility, to which the Deccan owes its fame as a cotton-growing country. Prominent hills of lava along the dissected edges of the flows frequently have served as natural forts of great strength in

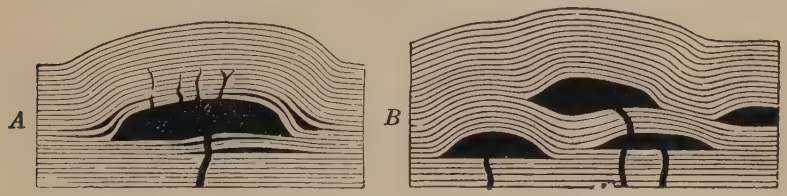


FIG. 361.—*A*. Ideal cross-section of a laccolith with accompanying sheet and dikes. *B*. Ideal cross-section of a group of laccoliths. (Gilbert, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

the wars of the country. Other dissected lava plateaus are found on the north coast of Ireland and the west coast of Scotland. Some of the islands off Scotland are remnants of an old lava plateau.

Fissure eruptions have occurred in Iceland within historic times. In 1783 such flows took place from a fissure 20 miles or

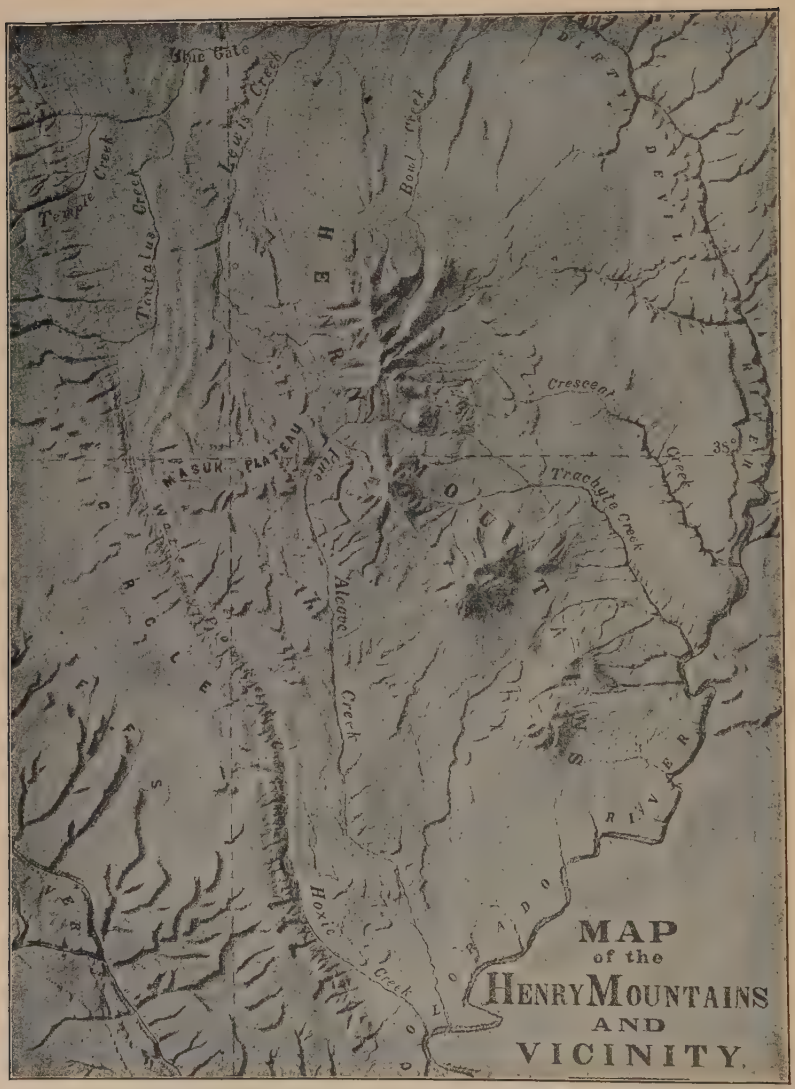


FIG. 362.—Relief-map of the Henry Mountains. (Gilbert, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

so in length. The lava spread out in sheets on both sides of the fissure, advancing in the valleys farther than on the uplands between them. In this respect the lava-flows resemble the movement of glacier ice.

While fissure eruptions of lava build up plateaus or raise the level of the plains on which they spread, they do not commonly give rise to mountains; but mountains may be developed from them, as they are dissected by stream erosion.

Intrusions of lava. Lava is intruded from below into the crust of the lithosphere, without rising to the surface. In such cases the surface strata may be arched up over the intrusion, making domes which

FIG. 363.—Diagrammatic representation of the relations of igneous rock to stratified rock. The igneous rocks represented in black have been forced up from beneath.

sometimes reach the size of mountains. Such mountains (Figs. 361, 362), of which the Henry Mountains of Utah are examples, are called *laccoliths*. Other intrusions take on other forms. Thus intrusions of very great size are *batholiths*, and sheets of lava intruded between beds of stratified rock are *sills* (Fig. 363). Lava is in places forced into cracks of the rock, solidifying there as *dikes* (*a*, Fig. 363).

CAUSES OF VULCANISM

The causes of vulcanism are somewhat outside the province of physiography, but it may be stated that the lava of volcanoes does not appear to come from a liquid interior, and the lavas from adjacent vents do not appear to come from a common reservoir of liquid rock. This is suggested by the fact that some adjacent vents discharge different sorts of lava, and by the further fact that the lava in adjacent craters often stands at very different heights at the same time.

In explanation of volcanoes, two things are to be accounted for: (1) the liquid lava and the heat necessary for its production, and (2) the force which brings it to the surface.

Lava is to be regarded as a solution of mineral matter in mineral matter, rather than as melted rock. The solution, however, takes place only at high temperatures. Various views have been entertained as to the source of the heat necessary to cause minerals to dissolve in one another. These views may be grouped into two classes: (1) those according to which the heat is *primary*, and (2) those according to which the heat which liquefies the rock is *secondary*. According to the first, the interior of the earth has been hot always, or at any rate since the earth attained its present size; according to the second, the heat was developed in rock (relatively near the surface) which was once cool. Some of the hypotheses of volcanic action based on these views may be considered briefly.

Heat Primary

1. It was formerly thought that the whole interior of the earth was liquid, and that volcanic vents were connected with this liquid interior. This view was based on certain familiar facts. Deep mines and borings of all sorts show that temperature increases with increasing depth. The rate of increase varies widely from 1° for 17 feet, to 1° for more than 200 feet. The average rate of increase as indicated by the records of those deep mines and other borings which seem to afford the most reliable data, is about 1° for 80 to 100 feet, down to the greatest depths yet penetrated. It is to be remembered, however, that the deepest excavations are but little more than a mile in depth, and that most excavations on which the generalizations are based are much shallower. If the heat increases at the average rate of 1° per 100 feet, a temperature of 3000° would be reached at a depth of about 60 miles. Such a temperature would be enough to liquefy rocks *at the surface*, but we are not to conclude that rocks are liquid at this depth, even if the temperature is 3000°. At this depth, the pressure due to the overlying rock is enormous. Rock expands when it liquefies, and the pressure at this depth may be enough to prevent expansion, and so to prevent general liquefaction. There are many reasons for believing that, though the temperature of the interior of the earth is very high, the rock is still solid. The fundamental element of the hypothesis, that all volcanoes start from a common liquid center, is therefore believed to be wrong.

2. It has been suggested that there is a liquid layer below the solid crust and above a great solid centre. This hypothesis does

not seem to be well supported, and does not seem to meet the objections to the preceding hypothesis.

3. Another view has been that while the earth is virtually solid, it is solid *in spite* of its internal temperature, and that if the pressure were lessened at some place beneath the surface, the hot rock would expand and become liquid. The pressure below the surface, it is conceived, would be lessened where the outer part of the earth is folded up, as in some mountains. This hypothesis has found much favor, but it does not seem to account for some of the fundamental facts connected with volcanoes, such as their distribution.

Heat Secondary

The hypotheses that the heat involved in volcanic action is secondary, seek to explain the heat by (1) the crushing of rock, such as takes place when beds of rock are folded, or (2) chemical action between the elements of the rocks, or between these elements and water which descends from the surface. These hypotheses have little acceptance at the present time.

Conclusion. No one of the preceding hypotheses, nor all combined, seem to explain vulcanism adequately, and no hypothesis which seems altogether satisfactory has been put into definite form. It seems possible (1) that the local formation of liquid lava is a process which is constantly but slowly going on in the deep interior, perhaps where the rock material is more readily soluble than the average; and (2) that the liquid rock is continually finding its way to the surface, faster and in greater quantities at some times and places than at others. The regions where the crust is least stable, that is, where there is movement, are the regions most likely to afford the lava a place of escape, for it is in such places that it is weakest.

The principal forces involved in the extrusion of lavas are apparently two, (1) gravity, and (2) the expansive and explosive force of vapors and gases in the lavas, especially water vapor.

Lava beneath the surface would, if lighter than the solid rock above, tend to find its way to the surface, or, more strictly, the heavier rock above would tend to sink down squeezing out the lighter liquid rock beneath. This has probably been an important factor — perhaps the most important one — in the eruption of some volcanoes, and in some fissure eruptions. If at the same time the region concerned is affected by lateral pressure, this

pressure might help to squeeze out the liquid lava. Pressure from above or from the sides seems to be the principal factor involved in the extrusion of lavas in quiet eruptions. Gases and vapors in the lava tend to expand it, especially as pressure is relieved, and so tend to diminish its specific gravity.

In the case of violent eruptions the gases and vapors, especially water vapor, appear to play a principal part. Even in these cases, however, it is probable that gravity is the principal factor in getting the lava up near to the surface, and that the vapors and gases come into effective function only as the surface of the lithosphere is approached.

The source of the vapors which issue from volcanoes is a matter about which there is much difference of opinion. Among the vapors are those which might have been derived from sea-water. From this fact it formerly was inferred that sea-water had access to the sources of the lava. It is now thought, however, that water probably does not descend more than a few miles beneath the surface, for below some such depth, pores and cracks, without which water cannot descend, do not exist. It seems certain that the sources of lava are much deeper, and it therefore seems improbable that descending water, either from sea or land, reaches the sources of vulcanism.

It seems probable that lava from depths far below all groundwater is forced up to within a short distance of the surface before coming into contact with water. In its passage through the outer part of the crust, which contains water, the lava doubtless converts water into steam; and the steam thus produced is possibly an important factor in the rise of the lava through the outermost portion of the earth's crust. But there is the best of reasons for believing that lava brings up vapors and gases, and among them water vapor, from much greater depths. Such gases and vapors must, it would seem, have been long within the earth. It is probable, indeed, that some of them are now reaching the surface of the earth for the first time. If this be true, they are to be looked upon as original constituents of the earth.

Topographic Effects of Volcanic Action

Many volcanoes build up great cones, some of them mountain-high, as already indicated. The first stages of growth have been observed in a few cases.

Volcanic cones. In 1538 a small volcano appeared on the north shore of the Bay of Naples, and built up a cone 440 feet high and half a mile in diameter at its base, in a few days. Its crater was more than 400 feet deep. The development of the volcano was preceded by earthquakes, which were felt in the same region for two years before the volcano was formed.

In 1770 the volcano Izalco in Central America broke out in the midst of a plain which was then a cattle-ranch. Since that time it has built up a symmetrical cone about 3000 feet high, with steep slopes. In the earlier part of its history, lava-flows, attended with streams of cinders, etc., were of frequent occurrence. For many years no lava has flowed out, though the volcano has remained active, discharging explosively. Earthquakes and rumblings preceded the original eruption.

In January, 1880, a volcano broke out in Lake Ilopango, San Salvador, Central America. The eruption continued more than a month, heating the waters of the lake, killing the fish, and forming a cone-shaped island rising 160 feet above the lake, which was 600 feet deep. A violent earthquake occurred in this region a few months before the birth of the volcano. After the earthquake the water of the lake sank 35 feet.

Early in the last century a volcanic island (Graham Island) arose in the Mediterranean, between Sicily and Africa, where the water had been 800 feet deep. In 1831 a ship near the place felt earthquake shocks. In July a sea-captain reported that he saw a column of water 60 feet high and 800 yards in diameter rising from the sea, and soon afterward a column of steam which rose 1800 feet. A few days later there was a small island 12 feet high where the disturbance had been, and in its centre there was a crater, from which eruptions were taking place. By the end of the month, the island was 50 to 90 feet high and ¾ of a mile in circumference. On August 4 it was 200 feet high and 3 miles in circumference. Activity soon ceased, and early in 1832 the island had been destroyed by waves. This volcano was short-lived, as was the island which it built.

Volcanoes recently have built up islands off the coast of Alaska. In 1795 such an island appeared about 40 miles west of Unalaska. In 1872 this island was 850 feet above the sea, but had no crater. In 1883 another island appeared close by, and was later joined to the first. In 1884 it was 500 to 800 feet high.

Great mountains, as well as small ones, are formed by volcanoes. Thus Mt. Rainier in Washington (Fig. 364), Mt. Hood in Oregon (Fig. 198), Mt. Shasta in California (Fig. 365), and the San Francisco Mountain in Arizona, as well as numerous other high and well-known mountain peaks, were built up by volcanoes. The volcanoes themselves long have been dead. Rainier, Hood, and Shasta are all so high that, in spite of their origin, snow-fields and even glaciers are found on them.

Many small islands, and some large ones, such as Iceland, are due chiefly or wholly to the building up of volcanic cones which have their foundations on the ocean bottom. The Aleutian Islands,

Fig. 364.—Mt. Rainier, Wash.

the Kurile Islands, and many of the islands of Australasia were formed in this way. Among the latter are the famous Spice Islands (Moluccas) so important in connection with the early history of America.

By the making of cones, volcanoes become an important factor in shaping the surface of the lithosphere. The number of volcanic cones which have assumed mountain size is large, but in spite of their great number, their aggregate area is relatively small. The total area of mountainous lands developed by volcanoes is but a fraction of the area of mountain land developed in other ways.

Intrusions of lava may give rise to mounds, mountains, or even plateau-like swells, as already indicated (p. 325).

In Arizona (near Canyon Diablo) there is a crater-like depression with a distinct rim about it, composed of the material which was blown out of the depression. The rim is high enough to be seen from a great distance, and is known as *Coon Butte* (Fig. 366). It formerly was thought that a great explosion beneath the surface

had blown out the rock from the crater-like depression, forming the high rim. The formation of the depression was looked upon as a sort of first step toward the development of a volcano. It is now believed, however, that the "crater" was due to the fall of a large meteorite. As it buried itself in the earth because of the great force of its fall, it became so heated that it exploded, the explosion throwing out the rock which built the rim about the depression. Fragments of the meteorite were found in the rim and in the debris in the "crater."

Destruction of volcanic cones. 1. Some volcanic cones are partially destroyed by violent explosions, as in the cases of Krakatoa and Vesuvius, already cited. Enormous depressions, called *calderas*, several miles in diameter and hundreds of feet deep, may be developed in this way from previous cones and craters.

A volcanic cone may be undermined by the withdrawal of the liquid lava in the core of the mountain, if it escapes at a lower level. The entire summit of the mountain may then sink and be engulfed, thus forming a caldera. Crater Lake, Oregon (p. 264), occupies a caldera in the stump of a great volcanic cone (Figs. 298, 301). There are several large calderas in the Azores, and the floors of some of them are the sites of villages.

2. Volcanic cones are also destroyed by weathering and erosion. The destruction of Graham Island by waves has been cited (p. 329). Wind and rain attack volcanic cones as soon as they are formed, but their results are not conspicuous until the cone stops growing. Cones composed largely of cinders, etc., are worn away with comparative ease, while those of lava resist longer. Glaciers may aid in their degradation. Among the many extinct volcanic peaks in the western part of the United States, it is possible to find illustrations of various stages of destruction. Only those of relatively recent origin still show their unmodified or but slightly modified forms. All volcanic cones except those of recent origin have lost their craters and the symmetry of slope which they once possessed.

Examples of fresh cones. In Arizona, California (Fig. 328), Idaho, Oregon, and elsewhere in the United States, there are volcanic cones, so recent that their conical forms have been but little disfigured by erosion, and their surface materials appear to have been but little changed by weathering. Cones of similar freshness are found in other lands, as in the Auvergne (France).

FIG. 365.—Mt. Shasta, a typical volcanic cone furrowed by erosion, but retaining its general form. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

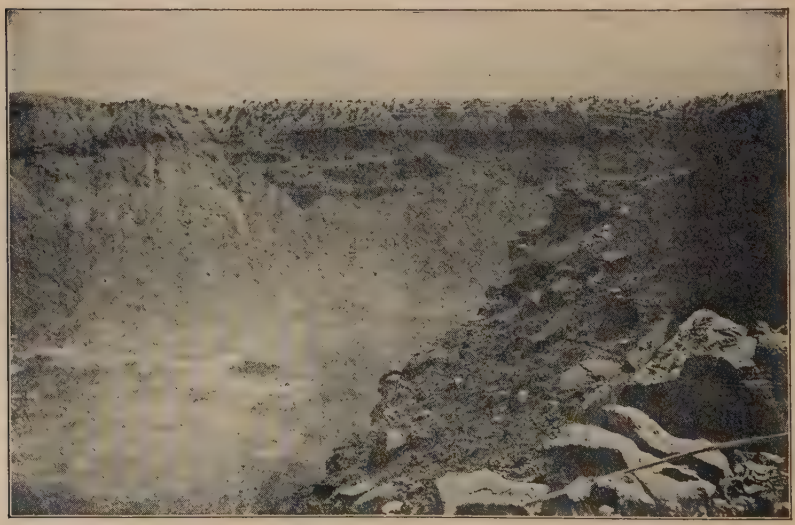


FIG. 366.—A part of the "crater" of Coon Butte, Ariz. The "butte" is only the rim built up about the "crater" by the material blown out. (R. T. Chamberlin.)

Examples of worn cones. *Mt. Shasta* (Fig. 365), in northern California, is a volcanic cone which rises 2 miles above its base 17 miles in diameter, to a height of 14,162 feet above the sea. It is partly of lava and partly of fragmental material. Its upper slopes are steep and furrowed with ravines. About 2000 feet below the summit on the west side is a fresher and therefore younger cone, known as Shastina, with a crater in its top. There are remains of more than 20 smaller cones on the lower flanks of Shasta. Near the base are several lava-fields which, from the roughness of their surfaces and the absence of soil, are known to have been formed since the glaciers occupied the summit. The fact that the Sacramento River has cut a narrow gorge 100 feet deep across one of them proves, however, that the last eruption was many years ago. Mt. Shasta is a good example of a volcanic cone which has suffered some erosion, but about which evidences of recent eruptions have not been destroyed. The great changes which Shasta has undergone are made clear by the fact that the once hot mountain now harbors several glaciers, which, moving over its slopes, are helping to waste it away.

Mt. Rainier (Fig. 364) is another splendid mountain developed by a former volcano. Various features of the mountain show that a second period of volcanic activity followed a long period of quiescence in the history of this snow-capped mountain. Hot vapors still issue from some small vents in the mountain, though the discharge of rock material ceased long ago. The mountain is snow-covered and the home of several glaciers.

Mt. Hood (Fig. 198), one of the peaks of the Cascade Range, has been eroded more than Rainier. Only a part of the wall of its summit crater remains, and its sides are furrowed deeply by ravines, which are separated by sharp, jagged ridges, and precipices hundreds of feet in height. Nevertheless, sulphurous fumes are still escaping from openings in the rocks, even on the snowclad summit.

The Marysville Buttes. This circular cluster of hills (Fig. 367), 10 miles in diameter, rises 1700 to 2000 feet above the level of the Sacramento River in California. The buttes are composed of lava with an outer layer of fragmental material (or tuff). The volcanic cone, which probably once rivaled Vesuvius has been dissected into a group of hills with jagged and fantastic outlines. So deeply have the roots of the mountain been laid bare that the

broken and distorted layers of sedimentary rock through which the lava was erupted are exposed.

The *San Francisco Mountain*, Ariz., is another example of a volcanic mountain partially destroyed by erosion. The form of the old cone is known but imperfectly. Numerous minor volcanoes existed

Fig. 367.—Marysville buttes in contour. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

about the main one after the latter became extinct. It is said that the number of fresh volcanic cones in this vicinity is more than 300. Many of them are so young that they show little sign of erosion.

Indirect Topographic Effects of Vulcanism

Volcanic necks. When a volcano becomes extinct, the throat, or passage from the interior, may be filled with hardened lava. This may be of much more resistant rock than the rest of the cone. After the cone is worn away, the *plug*, transformed into a hill,

may still mark the site of the former volcano. Some of these volcanic *necks* or *plugs* are conspicuous. East of the Mt. Taylor

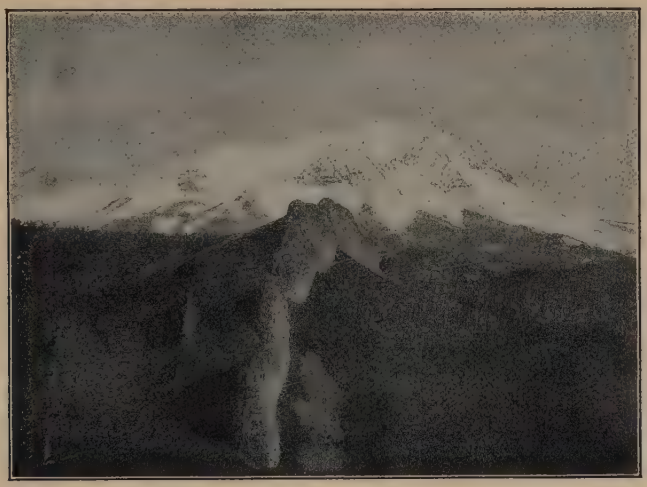


Fig. 368.—A dike isolated by erosion, Spanish Peaks region, Colo. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Fig. 369.—The Palisade Ridge.

plateau, in central Mexico, a number of them rise by precipitous slopes 800 to 1500 feet above their surroundings. Massive intrusions of lava have the same effect (Fig. 151).

Intrusions of lava may give rise to topographic features of importance after erosion has affected the regions where they occur, for the hardened lava or igneous rock is in some cases harder than its surroundings. Thus dikes give rise to ridges (Fig. 368). Sills also, if they have been tilted notably from a horizontal position, give rise to ridges which may be so high as to be called mountains. The Palisade Ridge of the Hudson (Fig. 369) and most of the mountains of the Connecticut River Valley are illustrations. A sheet of lava poured out on the

A *B*

FIG. 370.—*A*. Columnar structure in basalt, Giants Causeway, Ireland. *B*. Columnar structure on a larger scale.

surface and subsequently buried by sediment may have the same effect on topography as a sill. The Watchung Mountains of New Jersey are the projecting edges of extrusive sheets of lava, once buried beneath sedimentary rocks, then tilted, and later isolated by erosion. Sills and extrusive sheets of lava may also give rise to buttes, mesas, rock terraces, etc.,—indeed, to all the topographic forms which result from the erosion of rock of unequal hardness (p. 141).

Columnar structure. Hardened lava locally assumes a columnar structure (Figs. 370 and 371). This probably is the result of the contraction incident to cooling. The surface of the homogeneous lava contracts about equally in all directions on cooling. The contractile force may be thought of as centering about equi-

distant points. About a given point the least number of cracks which will relieve the tension in all directions is three (*A*, Fig.

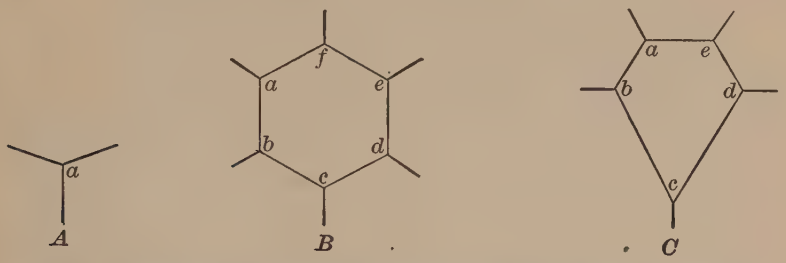


Fig. 371.—Diagrams to illustrate the formation of columns in basalt: *A*. The first stage is the development of a hexagonal column. *B*. The completion of a hexagonal column. *C*. A pentagonal column.

371). If these radiate symmetrically from the point, the angle between any two is 120°, the angle of the hexagonal prism.

Fig. 372.—Mud cones, Yellowstone National Park. (Fairbanks.)

Similar radiating cracks from other centers complete the columns (*B*, Fig. 371). A five-sided column would arise from the failure of the cracks to develop about some one of the points (*C*, Fig. 371).

Mud Volcanoes

Mud volcanoes have some features in common with volcanoes and some in common with geysers, while in others they depart from both. Like volcanoes and geysers, they are eruptive, but, as the name implies, their discharge is mud, instead of lava or water. The general conditions which seem necessary for their existence are (1) sufficient heat beneath the surface, presumably at a relatively slight depth, to produce steam, and (2) a surface layer of earthy material, which, when moist, becomes mud. The steam escaping through the mud forces some of it out, building up small cones which simulate volcanic cones in form, though not in constitution. They never reach great size.

Like geysers, mud volcanoes are found in regions of present or relatively recent vulcanism, for the most part. Some of them are violently explosive, and some are not. Some of them erupt at infrequent intervals, and some nearly continuously.

The "paint-pots" (Fig. 372) of the Yellowstone Park belong to the same category, though from them there is little discharge, and they do not build considerable cones.

When quantities of gas escape from beneath the surface, eruptions somewhat like those of mud volcanoes may take place, even in the absence of heat.

Map Work. See Exercise XVI in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

REFERENCES

1. Standard text-books on Geology.
2. Russell, *Volcanoes of North America:* Macmillan.
3. Judd, *Volcanoes:* Appleton.
4. Bonney, *Volcanoes:* G. P. Putnam's Sons.
5. *Recent Eruptions in the West Indies.* Heilprin, *Mt. Pelée and the Tragedy of Martinique,* Lippincott; Hill, Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XIII, pp. 223–267; Russell, Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XIII, pp. 267–285, 415–435; Hovey, Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. XIII, pp. 444–459, Am. Jour. Sci., Vol. XIV, 1902, pp. 319–358, and Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Vol. XVI, pp. 333–372.
6. Rept. of the Roy. Soc. on *The Eruption of Krakatoa:* Trübner & Co.
7. Diller, *Mt. Shasta,* in *Physiography of the United States:* Am. Book Co.
8. Dutton, *Hawaiian Volcanoes:* 4th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv.; and *Mt. Taylor and the Zuñi Plateau:* 6th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv.
9. Gilbert, *Geology of the Henry Mountains:* U. S. Geol. Surv.
10. Diller and Patton, *Geology and Petrography of Crater Lake Park,* Part I: Professional Paper 3, U. S. Geol. Surv.

CHAPTER VIII

CRUSTAL MOVEMENTS. DIASTROPHISM

Secular Changes

In many places the coastal lands appear recently to have risen from the sea, while in others they appear to have been submerged. The most obvious evidence of the apparent rise is found in the beaches and other shore features now well above sea-level, and the most obvious evidence of sinking is found in the drowned lower ends of valleys (p. 150). These relative changes of level of the land are seen best along the sea-shore, because the sea-level is the plane from which land elevations are measured. Movements of the outer portions of the solid part of the earth also are in progress, or have taken place recently, far from coasts, but they are not detected so readily and therefore are less well known. Some of them have been referred to incidentally in other connections (p. 150). Most of these changes of level are so slow that no motion is seen from day to day, or even from year to year. All that is seen is the result of changes which have been going on slowly for centuries.

Movements of the earth's crust (outer parts of the lithosphere) were first *inferred* from various phenomena seen along shores; subsequently they were *demonstrated* by measurements which have shown not only the fact of movement, but in some cases its rate.

It is to be noted that beaches or other shore marks above the present level of the sea do not necessarily mean that the land has risen. They may mean depression of the sea-level instead; but in either case they mean increased emergence of the land. Similarly, the lower ends of valleys would be drowned by the rise of the sea just as effectively as by the sinking of the land; but in either case there has been a depression of the land *relative to sea-level.* In some situations and relations it may be possible to say whether it is the land or the sea surface which has changed its position; but in general it is best to think of the changes as relative.

Evidences of (Relative) Elevation of Land

1. **Human structures.** In certain regions which have been long inhabited, structures which were once at sea-level are now above it. Thus on the island of Crete, in the Mediterranean Sea, the remains of old docks are in some places as much as 27 feet above the water. This is the more extraordinary since other parts of the same island have sunk so as to submerge human structures, the ruins of which are still visible beneath the water.

2. **Rocks.** Several rocks in the Baltic Sea which within historic time were at sea-level, or so little below it as to be dangerous to navigators, are now well above the water. One is said to have risen about 60 feet in 50 years. From an inscription supposed to be about 500 years old, the land at one point is inferred to have risen about 13 feet in the 50 years preceding 1730.

3. **Measurements.** Changes of level were recognized long ago in Scandinavia, and excited so much interest that marks were made on the shore at different places and kept under observation for a period of years to determine the rate of change of level between land and water. Recently it has been found that the larger part of the coast of Scandinavia is rising relative to sea-level, though at different rates, but that the southern extremity is sinking. In some localities the rate of rise has been found to be about $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet per century.

4. **Organic remains; fossils.** Another line of evidence pointing to the rise of coasts is found in the shells, tests, etc., of marine animals found above sea-level. Thus barnacle shells are found in some places above the surface of the water, attached to the rocks where they grew. There is no escape from the conclusion that in such places the sea-level has sunk, or the land risen, to the extent of their height above sea-level. Beds of marine shells accumulated beneath the sea also are found above sea-level in places. Such shells are conclusive of the relative rise of the land, *in case they are known to have been deposited by sea-water*. The evidence from unattached shells must, however, be carefully scrutinized, since birds and other animals frequently carry marine shells inland and up to considerable heights.

Beds containing sea-shells which were certainly deposited beneath the sea are now found above the water at various points, as along the coast of Sweden, and at some points in North Greenland, where they occur up to heights of 100 to 200 feet. The shells

here are so fresh that in some cases they are still covered with the epidermis. The sand in which they are imbedded is frozen throughout the year, and the low temperature undoubtedly keeps the organic matter from decay. Darwin long ago found shells, etc.,

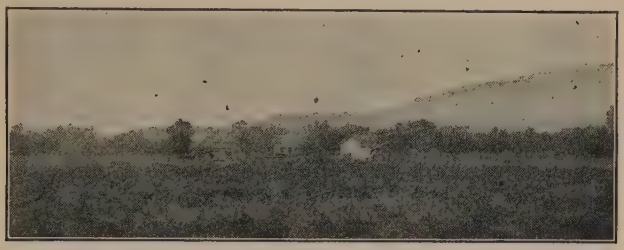


FIG. 373.—Elevated wave-cut terraces and sea cliff. West side of Ojai Valley, Cal. (Arnold.)

along the west coast of South America up to elevations of 1300 feet above sea-level. On the coast of Peru a reef of corals of modern species is said to exist at an elevation of nearly 3000 feet. On the coast of the New Hebrides, there are coral reefs up to 2000 feet, and on the coast of Cuba up to heights of 1000 feet or more.

5. **Raised beaches, etc.** Raised beaches and terraces along the shore also are evidences of change of level. Such features are

FIG. 374.—Elevated wave-cut terraces and sea cliff. Bottle and glass. St. Vincent. (Hovey. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.)

found along many parts of the northern coast of western Europe and eastern North America, about the West Indies, on the California coast, and in many other places. Along certain coasts, for example those of California and Scotland, towns are situated on

these elevated terraces, and wagon-roads and railroads follow them for considerable distances. A significant fact concerning the elevated beaches and other shore features is that they are no longer horizontal. The surface on which they rest has been warped.

6. **Sea cliffs.** Sea cliffs (Fig. 373 and p. 279) found above some elevated shore terraces.

7. **Sea caves.** Waves here and there develop sea caves at water level. There are caves developed in this way on the coast of Scotland up to levels of 100 feet.

All these phenomena testify that the land has risen *relative to the sea,* in many places, in recent times.

Evidences of Relative Depression

Evidences of the sinking of land are, in the nature of the case, less readily seen, because they are for the most part beneath the water.

1. **Human structures.** It has been noted that at the east end of the island of Crete ancient buildings are submerged. Certain portions of the coast of Greenland likewise have been sinking recently, for various human structures on low coasts have sunk, and are now beneath the water. The southern end of Scandinavia, as already noted, has been sinking recently, while the rest of the peninsula appears to have been rising. "At Malmö one of the present streets is over-flooded by the waters of the Baltic when the wind is high, and excavations made some years ago disclosed an ancient street at a depth of eight feet below the present one."

2. **Submerged forests.** Along some coasts there are evidences of submerged forests. This is the case, for example, at some points north of Liverpool, England (Fig. 375). Here, when the tide is out, numerous stumps may be seen standing on the beach where the trees once grew. Since trees of the varieties represented by these stumps do not grow in salt water, there is no alternative but to conclude that the land where they grew, once dry, has since sunk below the level of high water. On the coast of New Jersey stumps have been found seven feet below sea-level at low tide.

3. **Submerged valleys.** Some river valleys on land are continuous with valleys in the shallow sea bottom far out beyond the coast-line (Fig. 376). Such submerged valleys are thought to indicate that the surface in which they are cut was land when they were excavated, and that subsequent sinking has submerged them.

The numerous bays along the eastern coast of the United States between Rhode Island and the Carolinas indicate recent sinking

FIG. 375.—Stumps laid bare on the beach at low tide. Leasowe, Cheshire, Eng. (Ward.)

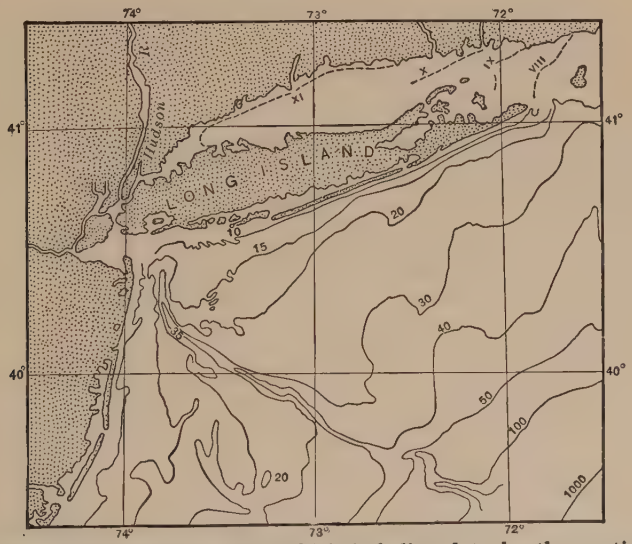


FIG. 376.—The submerged valley which is believed to be the continuation of the Hudson Valley. The position of the valley is indicated by the contours. Depths in fathoms. (Data from C. and G. Survey.)

of the land to such an extent as to drown the lower ends of the former valleys, converting them into bays. Submerged valleys of this sort exist in many parts of the earth, and show that sub-

mergence of coastal lands is now taking place, or has recently taken place, along many coasts.

4. **An Italian temple.** One of the most striking cases of change of level appears to involve both upward and downward movement. On the shore of Italy, near Naples, are the ruins of an old temple. From inscriptions it is known to have been above water as late as 235 A.D. In 1749 several columns of the temple were still standing. Their bases were buried to a depth of 12 feet in sediment deposited by the sea. For 9 feet above the sediment, the columns were marked by holes bored by marine animals. It is inferred, therefore, that between the years 235 and 1749, the land on which the temple stood sank until the water stood 21 feet above the bases of the columns, and then rose again so that its floor was above sea-level.

Is it the Land or the Sea which Changes its Level?

It is clear that if the outside of the lithosphere, commonly called the *crust of the earth*, is subject to warping, some parts rising and some sinking, the observed phenomena of coasts could be readily explained; and, in most discussions of the changes of relative level of land and sea, it is assumed that the land, rather than the sea, is the element which changes. The validity of this assumption has, however, been questioned, and with reason. The alternatives are: (1) Is it the sea rather than the land which changes its level? Or (2) do both land and sea change their levels? In the latter case (*a*) does each rise and fall, or (*b*) does land rise *and* fall while the sea rises *or* falls only? Certain general considerations make it clear that some of these alternatives are not tenable.

Other conditions remaining constant, the sea-level would be depressed everywhere if depressed at one point, because all oceans are connected. In this case, all coasts would *appear to have risen.* Similarly, if the sea-level rose at one point, it would seem that it should rise everywhere, in which case all coasts should appear to be sinking at the same time. Since some coasts seem to be rising while others seem to be sinking, it is clear that the changes of level of the sea surface do not explain the observed phenomena. It does not follow, however, that such changes may not be one of the elements involved in the explanation of the observed phenomena.

Without discussing all the other alternatives separately, the principles involved in the problem may be readily understood.

Let us suppose the sea-level to be lowered at all points, as it would be by the sinking of the bottom of any one of the ocean basins, and let us suppose further that the continents sink at the same time. Under this general conception various cases arise. (1) If the lands are lowered as much as the sea-level, and lowered equally everywhere, the relation of coasts to sea-level would not

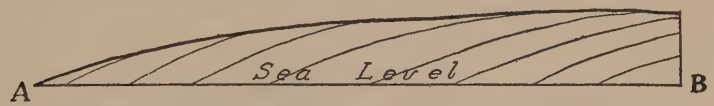


FIG. 377.—Diagram showing a cross section of coastal tract.

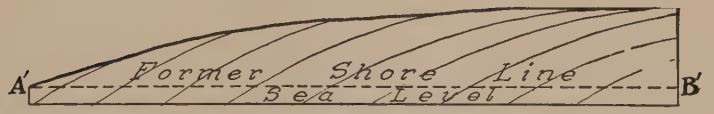


FIG. 378.—Diagram showing the same coast as Fig. 377, after the sea-level has been lowered uniformly. The land appears to have risen.

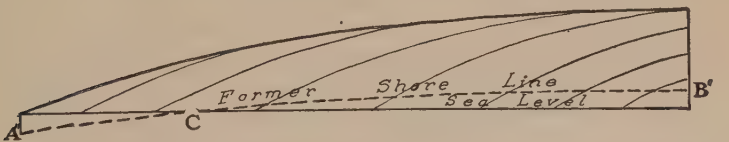


FIG. 379.—Diagram showing the same area as the preceding. The sea has sunk as much as in Fig. 378, but the land at the left also has sunk, and has sunk more than the sea-level has. At the left, therefore, the land seems to have sunk and at the right it seems to have risen, while at one point, *C*, it appears to have neither risen nor sunk.

be changed. (2) If the land is lowered more than the sea, and lowered equally everywhere, the old coast-lines would all be submerged. (3) If the land were lowered less than the sea, and lowered equally everywhere, all coasts would appear to have risen. (4) If different parts of the coasts sank unequally, those parts which sank less than the sea would appear to have risen, those which sank as much as the sea would not have changed their position relative to sea-level, and those which sank more than the sea would appear to have sunk.

All these relations are illustrated by Figs. 377 to 379. The sea-level, which in Fig. 377 is at *AB*, is represented in Fig. 378 as having sunk to *A'B'*. In Fig. 379 the coast-line of Fig. 377

is represented as having sunk more than the sea from A'' to C, as much as the sea at C, and less than the sea from C to B''. From A'' to C the coast seems to have sunk, from C to B'' it seems to have risen.

It appears, therefore, that all apparent risings and sinkings along coasts might be explained by unequal sinking of land while the sea-level is being lowered; but it does not follow that this is necessarily the true explanation. Existing phenomena about coasts may be explained on the supposition that coastal lands rise locally and sink locally, as well as on the supposition that they sink only. They may be equally well explained on the supposition that the sea-level sometimes rises and sometimes sinks, at the same time that the coasts are being warped, in some places up and in some places down. On the whole, it seems probable that the sea-level does change, sometimes rising and sometimes sinking, and that coastal lands are warped upward in some places and downward in others, and that observed phenomena involve all these movements.

Current theories of the origin and history of the earth all proceed on the assumption that the earth is a contracting body. If this is true, it is clear that depressions rather than elevations of the surface must be the rule, and that such elevations as take place are incidental to the general lowering of surface which results from contraction.

We may now inquire into the causes which make, or which may make, the surface of the sea rise and fall, and into the causes which make the surface of the lithosphere rise in some places, and fall in others.

Why the Sea-level Changes

Sedimentation. Rivers carry a large amount of sediment from land to sea each year (p. 132). This material, deposited on the sea bottom, tends to fill the ocean basins. The result must be rise of the sea-level. The detritus worn from the shores by waves blown from the land by winds, and brought to the sea by glaciers, likewise is deposited beneath the water and produces the same result. The material extracted from the sea-water by plants and animals, and deposited on its bottom when they die, also helps to raise the surface of the sea, for the space occupied by shells, etc., exceeds the reduction of volume suffered by the water when the

material of the shells is extracted from it. Rise of the surface of the sea due to sedimentation would be universal.

The rise of the sea due to sedimentation is extremely slow, too slow to be obvious from year to year, or perhaps even in a lifetime. But if existing lands were base-leveled, the resulting rise of sea-level would be hundreds of feet, enough to submerge a very considerable part of the existing land, and a much larger part of the land as it would be after base-leveling. There is reason to believe that great areas have been nearly base-leveled in the past. Degradation of the land and aggradation of the sea bottom may, therefore, have been very important factors in the repeated submergence of great areas of land in past ages.

It is presumed that evaporation from the sea is balanced approximately by rainfall and by the inflow of rivers. If this is the case, evaporation and precipitation do not affect its level. But if great quantities of water evaporated from the sea were retained on the land in the form of ice, as in the glacial period, the result would be a lowering of the sea-level. The melting of the ice, on the other hand, would cause the sea-level to rise. The ice of the glacial period was of such quantity that its withdrawal, on the one hand, and its return, on the other, would have influenced the surface of the sea sensibly.

Submarine volcanic extrusions. Extrusions of lava beneath the sea likewise cause its surface to rise, as would also laccolithic and other intrusions beneath its bottom.

Diastrophism. While sedimentation and vulcanism surely have caused changes in the level of the sea, it is not believed that they have been the only causes which have produced such changes; neither is it believed that, in the long course of time, they have been the causes of the most profound changes.

If the earth is progressively cooling, progressive shrinking is a necessary consequence. Very possibly the matter of the earth's interior has been aggregating itself into denser and denser compounds through the ages, and shrinkage from this cause may exceed that due to cooling. Shrinkage has resulted in the deformation of its outer part, for somewhat the same reason that the skin of an apple wrinkles when its juice evaporates. As the contraction is constant, it appears that slow warpings of the crust may also be constant; but it appears also that the rigidity of the earth may be such that its outer parts are able to withstand for a time the strain

set up by contraction. As the stresses accumulate, they ultimately overcome the resistance, and the outer part of the earth yields. If the yielding results in the sinking of the ocean basin, the surface of the water is drawn down, and the surrounding lands seem to rise, unless they sink as much as the surface of the sea does at the same time. The lowering of the sea surface, because of the sinking of the sea bottom, is probably the most fundamental single cause of the apparent rise of land.

The periodic emergences of the continents (alternating with periodic submergences) in the course of geological history, are perhaps to be thus explained. Periodic submergences, on the other hand, might be explained by the sinking of the continental segments of the earth, or by such sinking combined with the processes already referred to which cause the surface of the sea to rise.

Why the Land Changes Level

The reasons assigned for changes of level of the lithosphere beneath the sea have equal force when applied to the land. It is probable that the continents sink more in the course of ages than they rise, but that they sink less than the ocean basins. The sinking of ocean basins may crowd up the continental area between, and the same principle may be applicable to smaller areas, such as the borders of continents. Again, in volcanic regions, the intrusion of lava may cause the surface to rise, as over a laccolith. The bringing of hot rock near to the surface heats the surface rocks and perhaps expands them enough to cause sensible rise.

We conclude, therefore, that the apparent rise of land along many coasts is probably due in part to (1) the sinking of the sea, in part to (2) the lesser sinking of the coastal lands, as compared with the sea, and in part (3) to actual rise of the land itself.

Changes of Level in the Interiors of Continents

General facts. Changes of level are perhaps as common in the interiors of continents as along coasts, though less easily detected. There are raised beaches about many lakes, as about the Great Lakes and Great Salt Lake (Fig. 326). Raised lake beaches result from the lowering of the lakes, either by the cutting down of their outlets or by evaporation. They do not, therefore, indicate a rise of the land. In both the cases cited, however, the old shorelines should remain horizontal; but about many lakes the old

shore-lines are not level, as they must have been when formed. Some parts of one of the old shore-lines about Lake Bonneville (p. 273) are 300 feet higher than other parts formed at the same time. An old shore-line about the east end of Lake Ontario is more than 400 feet above the lake, while the same shore-line traced westward passes beneath the water at the west end of the lake. Similar phenomena are found about the shores of all the Great Lakes, though the departure from horizontality is not so great in most cases. Such deformed shore-lines show that the surface about the lake basins has warped since the old shore-lines were formed.

The former shore-lines of many smaller lakes and of some extinct lakes tell the same story. The shore-lines of Lake Agassiz (p. 245) are a notable example.

Changes of level are still in progress. The accurate observations and measurements of recent years have shown that the area of the Great Lakes is being tilted upward to the northeast, and downward to the southwest relatively. The rate has been shown to be less than six inches per hundred miles per century.

Extent. So wide-spread are the evidences of changes of level that it may be said that, within regions so situated as to furnish evidence readily, more of the earth's surface has been sinking or rising in recent times, than has been standing still. This seems to point to great instability of the earth's crust, but it should be supplemented by the statement that these changes go on, as a rule, with extreme slowness and, in general, without violent disturbance. The amount of movement is, perhaps, to be reckoned in fractions of an inch per year, more commonly than in larger terms.

The instability of the earth's exterior is believed to indicate that it is not in perfect adjustment to the interior, and that the continued lack of adjustment is the result of the continued shrinking of the earth as a whole.

Ancient changes of level. Old shore-lines and all features connected with ocean shores are destroyed in time by erosion; but the evidence of movements which took place so long ago that no traces of shore-lines remain, is firm. Thus layers of rock which were once deposited as sediment (sand, mud, etc.) beneath the sea are now found over great areas, far above sea-level. Most of the solid rock beneath the Mississippi basin, for example, was deposited as sediment beneath the sea. The land has emerged, perhaps because the sea-level has been drawn down by the sink-

ing of the sea basin. In the Appalachian Mountains, rocks similarly formed are found up to altitudes of a few thousand feet. In the Rocky Mountains they reach heights of 10,000 feet or even more. In the Andes Mountains they exist in limited areas up to 16,000 feet or more, and in the Himalaya Mountains at still greater heights. In such places, at least, it seems probable that there has been an actual rise of the crust.

Future changes of level. Not only have changes of level between land and sea been taking place for untold ages, but they are likely to continue. The wear of the land and the transfer of sediment to the sea tends to raise the sea-level, as already noted (p. 346). This tends to increase the area of the sea and to correspondingly diminish the area of the land. In the past there seem to have been occasional sinkings of the ocean basins, increasing their capacity and drawing down the level of the sea, thus causing the continents, as a whole, to appear to rise, and such changes are likely to occur in the future, so far as can now be seen. On the average, the lowering of the sea-level due to the subsidence of its basins, has probably been greater than the rise of the sea-level due to sedimentation from the land. The result is that as the continents have been brought low by wind and water and ice, they have been renewed, periodically, by the sinking of the sea.

In this general sequence of events appears to lie the explanation of the fact that though rain and river and ice erosion tend to bring the land to base-level, and though wave erosion tends to reduce it even below sea-level, the land is not destroyed.

As the great ocean-basin segments of the earth have settled down, it seems possible that the smaller continental segments between may have been wedged up, and perhaps warped and deformed at the same time. In this process may lie the explanation of many mountains, plateaus, and plains, the physiographic features of the second order.

Crustal Deformation

The foregoing discussion of changes of level has implied a measure of deformation of the outside of the solid part of the earth. This deformation sometimes takes the form (1) of gentle *warping*, sometimes (2) of *folding*, and sometimes shows itself (3) in *faulting*.

Warping and folding. Warping may be gentle, resulting in slight arching or tilting of the beds of rock, or it may be so great

FIG. 380.—Open anticlinal fold, near Hancock, Md. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 381.—Closed anticlinal fold, near Levis Station, Quebec. (U.S. Geol. Surv.)

that the arches grade into folds (Figs. 380 and 381). Most rock strata of the land are at least gently deformed, and folding is com-

mon in many mountain regions, and in some plains which were once high but which have been brought low by erosion.

Warping and folding give rise to great topographic features, but in most mountains of folded rock, the present topography is

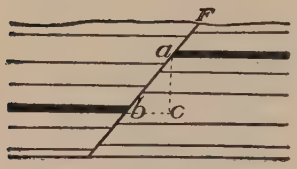


Fig. 382.—Diagram of a normal fault.

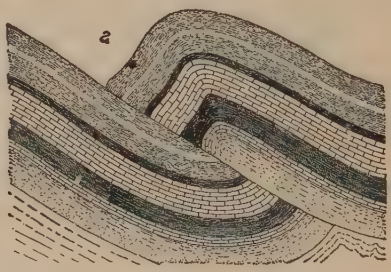


Fig. 383.—Diagram of a reversed or thrust fault. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

the result of erosion rather than of folding. The structure of the rock resulting from the folding has, in many cases, determined or greatly influenced the topography which has resulted from erosion.

Faulting. At many times and in many places portions of the earth's surface have sunk or risen along a plane of fracture, as

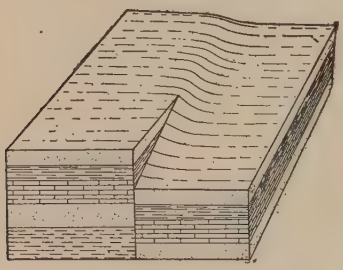


Fig. 384.—Fault passing into a monoclinal fold.

Fig. 385.—A branching fault. (Powell, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

shown by Figs. 382 and 383. Such movements are *faults*. Fig. 382 represents a *normal* or *gravity* fault, and Fig. 383, a *reversed* or *thrust* fault. The former implies tension when it was made, and the adjustment takes place under the control of gravity. The latter implies lateral thrust, and the adjustment takes place under its control.

Faults of both types are common, but thrust faults are common only in regions where the rocks have been folded. Fig. 383 suggests the relation between such a fault and a fold. A fold which is not faulted in one place may pass into a reversed or thrust fault. Normal faults also may grade into folds, or warps (Fig. 384). Faulted blocks of the earth's crust are in some places tilted. They

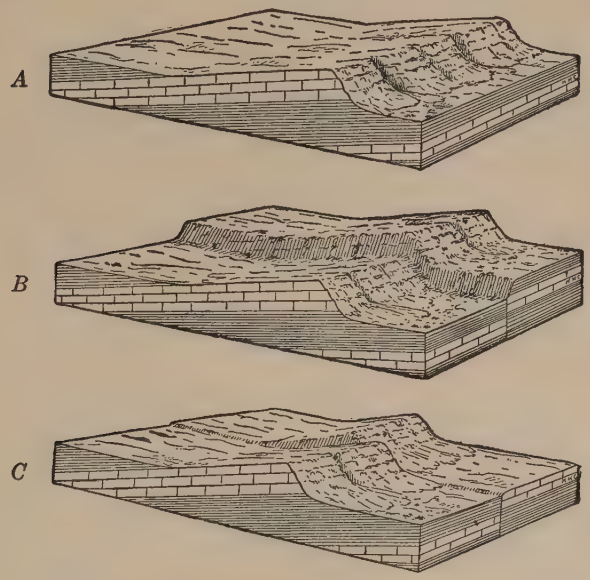


FIG. 386.—Diagrams to illustrate the history of a fault-scarp. *A* shows an unfaulted block with a line of cliffs due to the superior hardness of one formation. *B* shows the same faulted, with a pronounced fault-scarp. *C* shows the fault-scarp partly worn down. (Huntington and Goldthwait.)

may be of such size and so displaced as to give rise to mountains, basins, etc. (Figs. 385 and 386). Normal faulting has taken place on a great scale in the plateau region of the West, between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierras, and many of the more striking topographic features of that region, including numerous mountain ranges and lines of cliffs are the result of such movements. Cliffs or mountain slopes due to faulting are called *fault-scarps*. The steep slopes at the borders of the continental segments probably are fault-scarps in some cases. Great faults probably are not developed by a single movement, but by repeated displacements along the same plane.

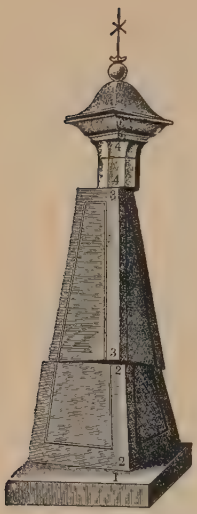
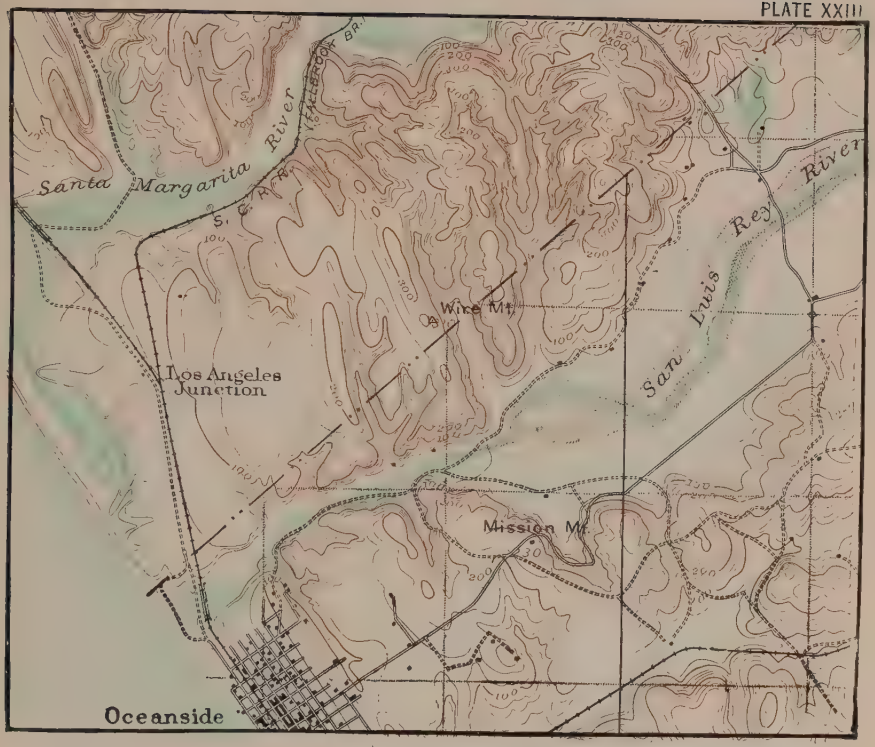


FIG. 387.—Monument disturbed by earthquake. (Falb.)

FIG. 388.—A chapel in Kasina injured in an earthquake of November 9, 1880. (Wähner.)

FIG. 389.—Horizontal and vertical displacement during an earthquake Bengal-Assam earthquake of July 12, 1897. (From Dutton's Earthquakes, by permission of G. P. Putnam's Sons.)

PLATE XXIII



A section of the California coast, showing lands, near the coast, which have recently emerged. Scale 1+ mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Oceanside, Cal., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XXIV

Cushetunk and Round Mountains, New Jersey; examples of isolated mountains left by the removal of less resistant surroundings. Scale 1+ mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (High Bridge Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Though faults are common phenomena, only those of recent times now show themselves in the topography of the surface. Fault-scarps of earlier ages have been obliterated by erosion, though the faults still show themselves in the structure and relations of the rock.

Faults have determined the positions of valleys in many cases, so that many present topographic features are closely associated with them, even though the fault-scarps have vanished.

Earthquakes

Definition. Earthquakes are tremors or quakings of the earth's surface, due to causes not connected with human activities. The passing of a railway-train causes the surface near the track to vibrate, and this vibration often is enough to be felt in adjacent

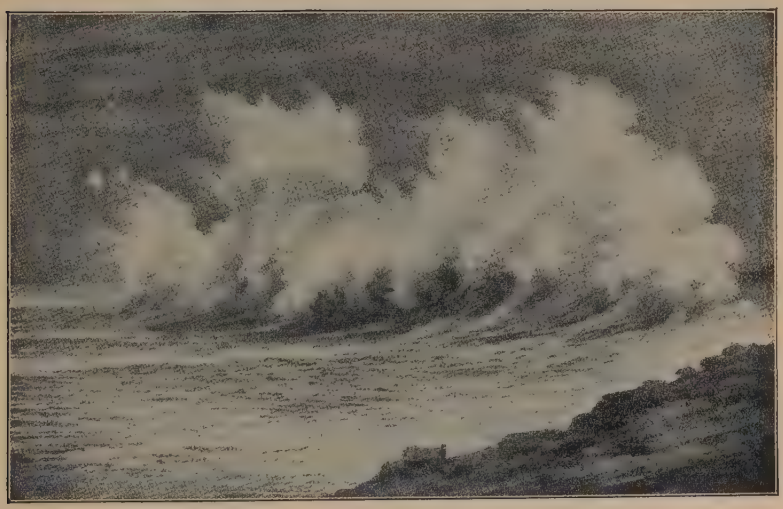


Fig. 390.—Great sea-wave on the coast of Ceylon. (Sieberg.)

buildings. In this case, the shaking is not called an earthquake; but an equal amount of quaking due to causes which are not known would be called an earthquake, especially if felt over a considerable area.

Strength and destructiveness. Earthquakes vary much in strength. Some are so gentle as scarcely to be felt; others are so violent that buildings are overthrown, crevasses opened in the

surface of the land, and masses of rock loosened from cliffs and precipitated into the valleys below. Earthquakes sometimes disturb the waters of the sea, causing destructive sea waves.

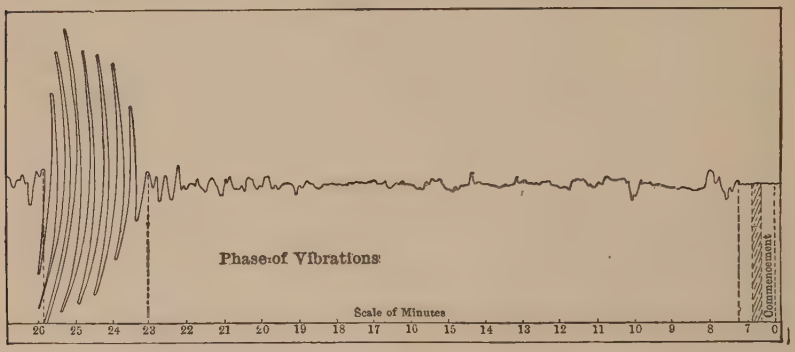


Fig. 391.—Seismogram of earthquake in Punjab, India, April 4, 1905, showing the actual amount of movement. (De Montessus de Ballore.)

Besides quakings which are sensible, there are many earth tremors so slight as not to be felt. They are known only by means

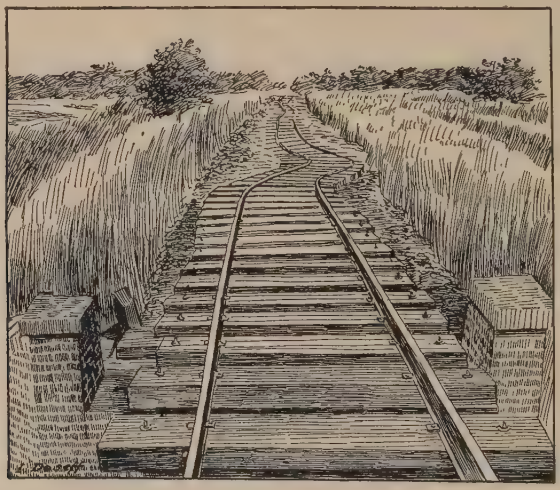


Fig. 392.—The bending of railway track in India, earthquake of 1897. (Oldham.)

of delicate instruments set up for the purpose of recording all vibrations of the surface. The number of such tremors too slight

to be generally noticed is much greater than the number of earthquakes strong enough to be felt.

Although some earthquakes are very destructive to buildings and to life, the amount of movement of the surface is usually so slight as to be measured in millimetres (a millimetre is about $\frac{1}{25}$ of an inch) rather than in inches or feet. Bodies on the surface may move much more than the solid crust. The difference in motions between the rock and objects resting on it is illustrated by the fact that a blow on the floor may cause a ball which rests on

Fig. 393.—Fault in Japan, 1891. (Koto.)

it to bound up inches or even feet, though the floor itself moves but a small fraction of an inch.

While earthquakes are among the most disastrous and appalling of natural phenomena, so far as human affairs are concerned, those of historic times, at least, have left few important marks on the surface of the earth. Their destructiveness to human life comes largely from the fall of buildings and from the "great sea waves." Destruction of life results from the advance of these waves upon a low coast which is densely populated. In the Lisbon earthquake of 1755 a wave 60 feet high swept upon the shore and destroyed some 60,000 human lives. Vessels in harbors have been swept in by waves and left high and dry above the water-level after the wave subsides.

Examples. Some of the principal features of earthquakes may be brought out by the study of a few striking examples.

1. On October 28, 1891, an earthquake on the main island of Japan opened a fissure traceable for more than 40 miles. The ground on one side of this fissure sank 2 to 20 feet (a *fault*) be-

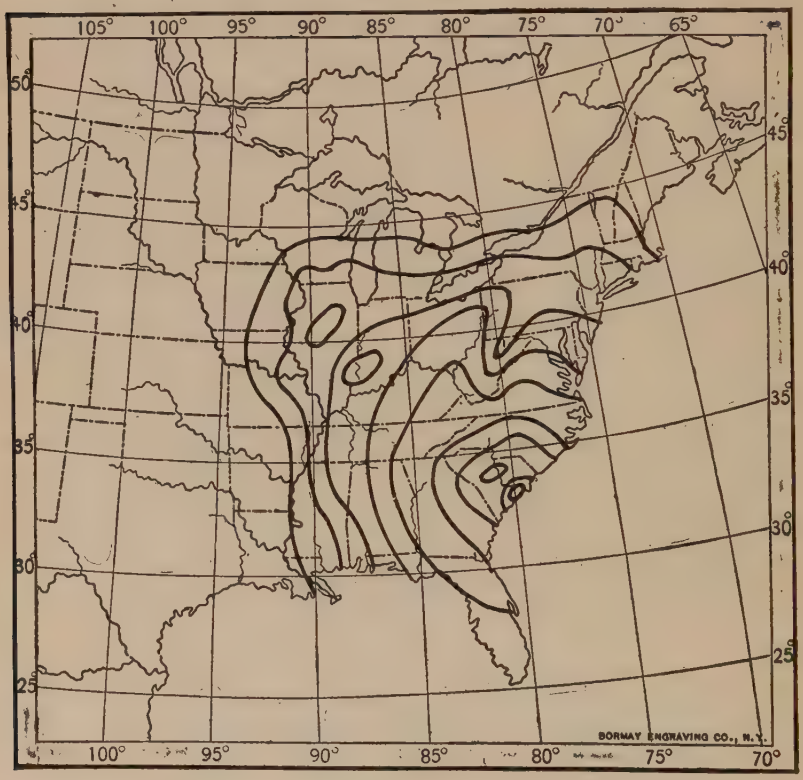


Fig. 394.—Isoseismal (equal intensity of disturbance) curves (that is, curves connecting points having the same amount of disturbance) of the Charleston earthquake. (Dutton, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

low that on the other. At the same time, the east wall of the fissure was pushed horizontally about 13 feet northward. In some places the cracking of the rock "showed itself at the surface as a cracked ridge, like the track of a mole just below the surface." Several tracts of land became lakes, one on the depressed side of the fissure, the others in hollows formed by the shocks.

2. On the evening of August 31, 1886, the city of Charleston, South Carolina, was disturbed by an earthquake which was felt over a large part of the United States. Strange noises and slight tremblings of the earth had been noted for several days

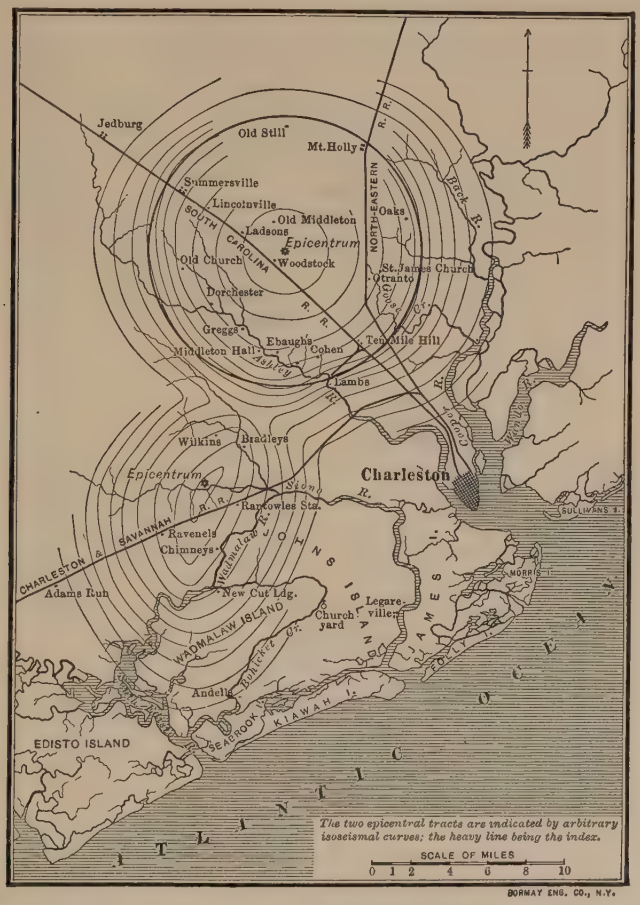


FIG. 395.—Epicentral tracts (*i.e.*, tracts over the centers of disturbance) of the Charleston earthquake, with isoseismal lines. (Dutton, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

previous to the destructive quaking, but they excited no great alarm. About ten o'clock in the evening of the fateful day, a low rumbling sound was heard, which rapidly deepened into an awful roar. The slight trembling of the ground increased until

it became destructively violent. The motion then subsided slightly, but increased again in intensity and then died away. The

FIG. 396.—A wreck of the Charleston earthquake. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

FIG. 397.—A large craterlet formed during the Charleston earthquake. Hundreds of them were formed near Summerville, S. C. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

violent disturbance lasted 70 seconds. A second shock, almost as severe as the first, occurred eight minutes later, and six or seven

more or less severe ones were felt before morning, and slight tremors occurred at intervals until the following April. During the shocks, buildings swayed, chimneys were thrown down, walls were cracked, houses moved from their foundations, railroad-tracks displaced and the rails bent, and trees disturbed in the

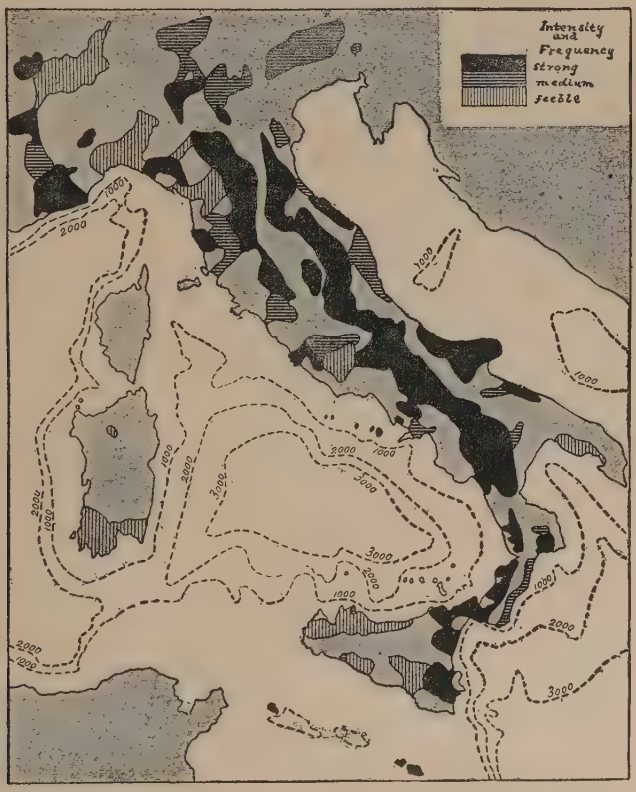


Fig. 398.—Map showing the intensity of earthquakes in Italy. (Baratta and Gerland.)

ground. Numerous fissures were formed in the earth, and from some of them streams of water, mud, and sand were forced out. Hardly a large building in the entire city but was damaged, and 27 persons were killed, chiefly by falling masonry. The people fled in terror from their homes, and for several days and nights a large part of the population camped in the public parks.

Outside the vicinity of Charleston the earthquake shock was less violent, but the quaking was felt over an area of between 2,000,000 and 3,000,000 square miles. It was felt earliest near Charleston, and later at increasing distances from the city. The

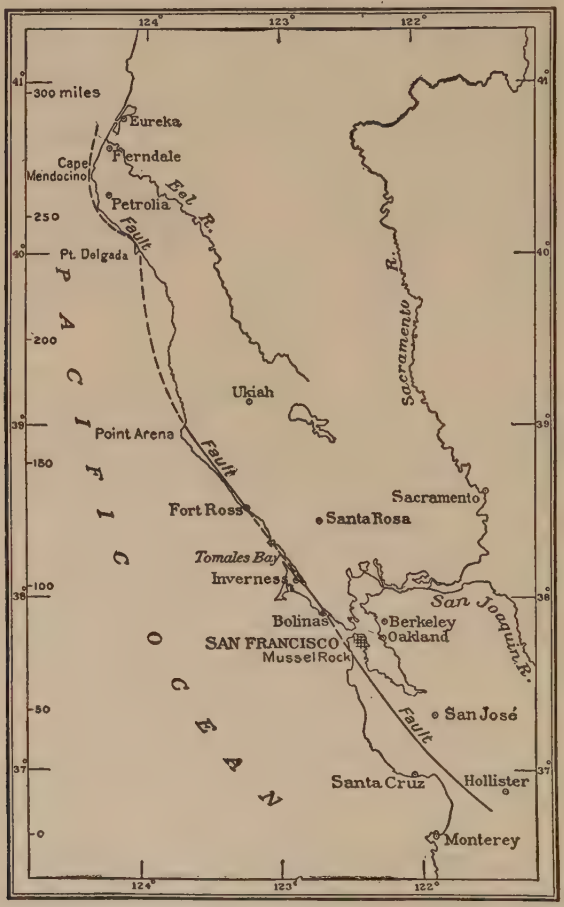


Fig. 399.—Map showing the position of the San Francisco earthquake fault. The position of the line north of Point Arena is uncertain. (Gilbert.)

intensity of the shock decreased with increasing distance from Charleston (Fig. 394). There were two centers of disturbance (Fig. 395), and the earthquake wave spread at the rate of about 150 miles per minute.

There was no volcano near Charleston, and this earthquake appears to have been altogether independent of any volcanic eruption.

3. In 1822 and again in 1835 the coast of Chile was shaken by earthquakes for 1200 miles. In both years the shocks continued for several months. When they were over, it was found that the coast-lands had been elevated 2 to 4 feet. In 1835 a volcano broke out beneath the sea (San Fernandez Island) at the time of the earthquake shocks on the coast, and many of the Andean volcanoes were active. The same region again was shaken disastrously in August, 1906, causing great destruction of life and property in some of the principal cities of the country. Ruins of wrecked buildings are yet to be seen in Valparaiso.

FIG. 400.—The fault line (gash) four miles west of the fault line east of Half Moon Bay. (Photo. by Dudley.)

4. In 1819 a part of the delta of the Indus River experienced a series of shocks lasting four days. During the disturbance an area some 2000 square miles in extent subsided so as to be covered by the sea, while a neighboring belt, 50 miles long and 16 miles wide, rose about 10 feet.

5. The earthquake of Kangra, in the same country, April, 1905, affected an area of 1,625,000 square miles, and killed about 20,000 people. In this case, the vibrations spread from two centers, and traveled at the rate of about two miles per second. The same region had been shaken in 1897.

6. A series of earthquake shocks, during 1811, 1812 and 1813, affected the Mississippi Valley just below the mouth of the Ohio. Many fissures were formed in the deposits of the flood plain of

the Mississippi, and some of them remained open for years. Parts of the flood plain sank, and the sunken portions gave rise to marshes and lakes, some of which still remain. The trunks of the

FIG. 401.—Deformed railway, Seventh and Mission Streets, San Francisco. (Lindgren, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

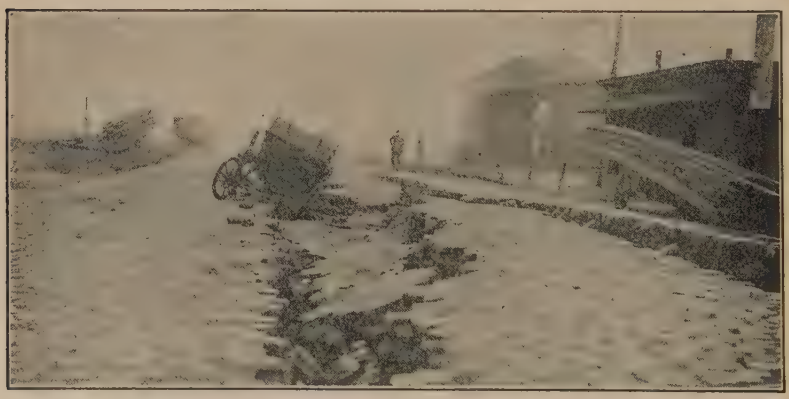


FIG. 402.—A fissure on East Street, San Francisco, near the water front. "Made" ground. (Lindgren, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

drowned trees are in some cases yet standing above the water of these lakes and marshes. The Orleans, the first steamboat built west of the Appalachians, narrowly escaped destruction at New Madrid (Mo.) during this earthquake.

7. In 1812, nearly 10,000 persons were killed in a violent earthquake which destroyed Caracas, Venezuela.

FIG. 403.—A water-pipe buckled out of the ground by the earthquake. Alpine road, Portola Valley, Cal. (Photo. by Dudley.)

8. Earthquakes have been very destructive in southern Italy. Some 20,000 lives were lost here in 1688, 43,000 in 1693, and 32,000 in 1783; in all about 100,000 in a single century.

9. On April 18, 1906, there was a destructive earthquake on the coast of California, in and about San Francisco. Many buildings were injured by the earthquake and some practically destroyed, both in San Francisco and elsewhere. Fire broke out at various points in San Francisco after the shocks, and as the quaking had broken water pipes and had cut off the city's supply of water, none was available for fighting the flames, and a large part of the city was burned. This earthquake, the most disastrous in North America in historic times, was caused by a horizontal fault of 8 to 20 or more feet, which soon was traced some 300

FIG. 404. — County Bridge, Pajaro River, Chittenden, Cal. (Photo. by Dudley.)

miles. Figs. 399 to 405 show some of the phenomena of this disturbance.

Earthquakes starting beneath the sea. Earthquakes sometimes seem to start beneath the sea, and to spread thence to the land. The record of the accompanying changes beneath the sea rarely is distinct, but in a few cases some facts are known about them. This is especially the case with reference to some of the

FIG. 405.—Tree uprooted by the earthquake. Searsville road, Cal. (Photo. by Dudley.)

earthquakes which have occurred about the coast of Greece, for, in a number of cases, cables have been broken, and soundings taken when they were repaired gave some indication of what had happened. In one case, the soundings from the bow and the stern of the vessel which repaired the cable are said to have shown differences of more than 1500 feet in the depth of the water, *where the bottom had been nearly level when the cable was laid.*

The earthquake wave. An earthquake usually spreads over the surface, somewhat as a water wave spreads from a center. Hence we have come to speak of the earthquake *wave*. The actual movement is a wave, but the wave is unlike that of water, though there are some points of similarity. The center of an earthquake wave may be a line, a belt, or a point, and in many cases it is not readily located.

FIG. 406.—Track of electric railway, between South San Francisco and San Bruno Point. (Photo. by Moran.)

FIG. 407.—A street railway on loose ground. Union Street, near Pierce Street. (Photo. by Moran.)

FIG. 408.—The Agassiz statue, Stanford University. (Branner.)

FIG. 409.—The great arch, Stanford University. (Branner.)

FIG. 410.—The University Chapel. Stanford University. (Branner.)

FIG. 411.—The Library, Stanford University. (Branner.)

Points distant from the center feel the earthquake shock later than those nearer to it. Lines drawn upon the surface connecting points where a given earthquake wave is felt at the same time are *coseismic* lines (Fig. 412). These lines are rarely circles. Most of them are closed curves, and many are irregular. Their irregularity appears to be due to the fact that the wave motion spreads faster in some directions than in others. This is another way of saying that the rocks in some parts of the earth's crust transmit

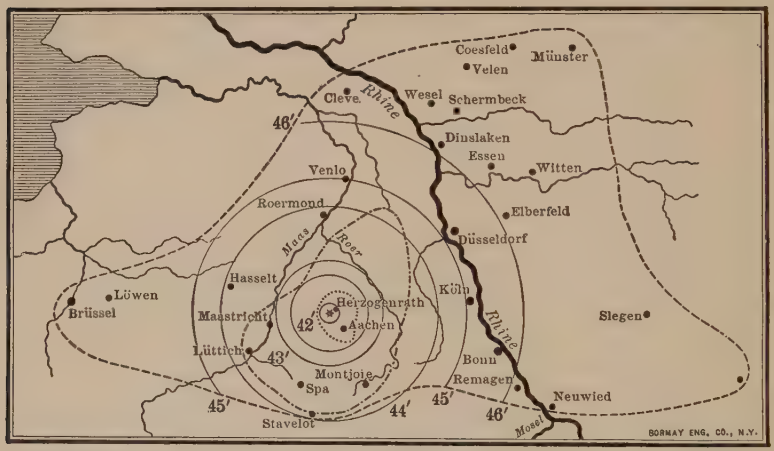


FIG. 412.—Coseismic (at the same time) lines for each minute, Herzogenrath (Germany), earthquake of October 22, 1873. (Lasaulx.)

the motion faster than others. If a circular metal plate were set vibrating at its center, the vibrations would spread from the center in all directions at about the same rate, and would reach the border of the plate at about the same time. But if the plate were made of sectors of different material, one sector being of steel, another of hard wood, and another of cork, the vibrations started at the center would pass outward through these sectors with different velocities, and would extend to different distances in a given time. The more porous and open the medium, the less the distance which the vibrations would travel before being completely deadened. The principle illustrated here has some application in earthquakes.

In general, the earthquake waves diminish in violence with increasing distance from the centers of disturbance.

Frequency. Earthquakes are of very common occurrence, though fortunately those which are violent enough to be destructive are rare. From 1889 to 1899 an average of 36 per year were recorded in California alone, but most of them were so slight as to cause no destruction. In Japan, earthquakes have been recorded at the rate of several per day for many years, but this includes many very trivial quakings, and only a few of sufficient violence to be destructive.

The Isthmus of Panama and its surroundings were under careful observation with reference to earthquakes for several years, because of the bearing which the frequency and violence of earthquakes was to have on the site to be selected for the canal. In the 40 months between January, 1901 and April, 1904, 169 earthquakes were recorded at San Jose, near the eastern end of the proposed Nicarauguan route. Of these, 43 were mere tremors, 91 slight shocks, and 35 strong shocks. During the same period, 6 tremors and 4 slight shocks were recorded at Panama, at one end of the route selected.

Many of the slight tremors probably would not be known but for the observatories, many of which have been established in recent times, where all earth-tremors are recorded by delicate instruments (seismometers) devised for this purpose.

In view of the records at the stations in various parts of the civilized world where seismometers have been set up, it has been said that *some part of the earth's surface probably is shaking all the time.*

Distribution. Earthquakes are perhaps most common in volcanic regions, though not confined to them. It can hardly be said that all such earthquakes are caused by volcanoes, since many of them do not occur at the time of volcanic eruptions. It is perhaps better to regard earthquakes and volcanoes as the result of a common cause, rather than to regard one of them as the general cause of the other.

Many great earthquakes have occurred near the edges of the continental platforms. Mountain regions in general seem to be more subject to them than plains, though some earthquakes originating in mountain regions spread to plains. Not all earthquakes, on the other hand, start in mountain regions. As in the case of the Charleston earthquake, some of them originate beneath plains.

Causes of earthquakes. Earthquakes probably are due to various causes. Some small ones are perhaps due to the falling in of the roofs of underground caves. Earthquakes accompany violent volcanic eruptions, and in these cases the explosions which cause the eruption are doubtless also the cause of the earthquakes.

FIG. 413.—Map showing in black the principal earthquake regions of the Old World. (Montessus de Ballore.)

Great landslides and avalanches are the causes of some minor earthquakes, and it is possible that slumping on the slopes of deltas and on the outer faces of the continental shelves produces similar results.

Many great earthquakes appear to be connected with other forms of crustal movement. As already noted, fissures are sometimes opened in the surface of the land during an earthquake.

This is best seen where there is little or no soil, and where solid rock lies close to the surface. There is a great crack of this sort in Arizona (Fig. 416), and similar fissures have been formed in New Zealand, Japan, and elsewhere during earthquakes. It is not always clear whether the fissure should be looked on as the cause

Fig. 414.—Map showing the principal earthquake regions of the New World. (Montessus de Ballore.)

or the result of the earthquake. In some cases it is found that one side of such a fissure is higher than the other after the earthquake, indicating that the rock on one side was raised or that on the other sunk, or both;—in other words, that the strata have been *faulted*. *Faulting* probably is the principal cause of earthquakes, for the slipping of one great body of rock past another would cause vibrations which would spread far from the center of disturbance.

There is horizontal as well as vertical displacement along the cracks, as already noted, and the horizontal displacement is the principal one in some cases, as in the recent earthquake of

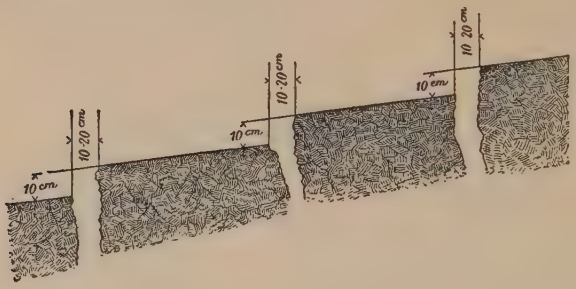


Fig. 415.—Faulting accompanying the Sinjan earthquake of 1898. (Faidiga.)

California. Horizontal displacement shows itself in the distortion or breaking of lines which were straight or continuous before the faulting. Thus fences or rows of trees which were straight before an earthquake are bent or broken and offset along the line of displacement. The force which causes this displacement is the real cause of the earthquake.

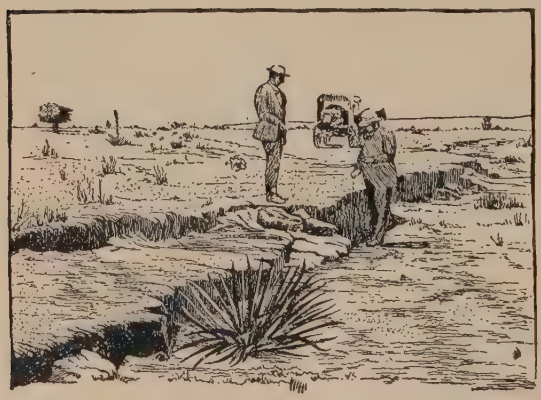


Fig. 416.—Fissure produced by earthquake. Arizona.

Again, great thicknesses of rock strata are folded and crumpled. The process of mountain folding has never been seen, and it is probably much too slow to be seen from day to day or from year to year. But there can be no doubt that beds now folded so as to stand on edge were once horizontal or nearly so. No series of horizontal beds can be folded, as many beds have been, without more or less slipping of layer on layer. The amount of slipping at any one time

may be slight, but it must be real. This, too, is probably a cause of earthquakes, and of earth-tremors which are not sensible.

It is probable that most earthquakes are to be looked on as but one expression of the wide-spread movements to which the crust of the earth is subject, movements which are due primarily to the continued adjustment of the outside of the earth to a shrinking interior. In general, these movements are too slow to produce sensible vibrations; but locally and periodically they are sufficient to cause distinct quakings.

Surface changes caused by earthquakes. The changes in the surface of the land made by earthquakes are numerous if not important. In addition to the cracks and fissures, and the risings and sinkings of surface which have been noted, drainage often is disturbed. This is partly because of the cracks and fissures which are opened, and partly for other reasons. If an open fissure is developed athwart the course of a stream, the stream will plunge into it. Springs are disturbed, old ones ceasing to flow and new ones appearing. This probably is because the earthquake movement has ruptured the rock beneath the surface, and so changed the course of the ground-water circulation. Temporary spouting springs sometimes are formed, water being forced up violently through them (p. 360). Some earthquakes cause landslides, and if the material from a mountain-side slides down, it may dam the valley below so as to disturb its drainage (p. 271).

From some fissures and from lesser vents noxious gases issue. In some cases, too, loose sand is thrust up into cracks from beneath during earthquakes.

Earthquake waves have a singularly destructive effect on aquatic life. It has been recorded in many cases that the animals of rivers, bays, and even of the ocean are killed in extraordinary numbers during an earthquake.

Map Work. See Exercise XVII in *Interpretation of Topographic Maps.*

REFERENCES

1. Standard text-books on Geology, under *Changes of Level, Secular Changes of Level, Crustal Movements, Earthquakes,* etc.

2. Milne, *Earthquakes:* Appleton, and *Movements of the Earth's Crust:* Geog. Jour., Vol. VII, 1896, pp. 229–250.

3. Dutton, *Earthquakes:* Putnam.

4. Hobbs, *Earthquakes:* Appleton.

5. Dutton, *The Charleston Earthquake.* 9th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv.

6. Gilbert: Pop. Sci. Mo. Vol. LXIX, 1906, p. 97.

7. Jordan: Pop. Sci. Mo., Vol. LXIX, 1906, p. 289.

8. Shaler: Chapter in *Aspects of the Earth* (Scribners).

9. McGee, *The Gulf of Mexico as a Measure of Isostasy.* Am. Jour. Sci., Vol. XLIV, 1892, pp. 177–192.

10. Shepard, *New Madrid Earthquake:* Jour. Geol., Vol. XIII, pp. 45–56.

11. Le Conte, *Earth Crust Movements and their Causes:* Science, Vol. V, 1897, pp. 321–330.

Many of the references under Volcanoes (p. 338) also touch on earthquakes.

CHAPTER IX

ORIGIN AND HISTORY OF PHYSIOGRAPHIC FEATURES

We may now review the principal physiographic types in the light of the knowledge afforded by the preceding study of physiographic processes.

Plains

Plains, considered as one of the three great divisions of land surfaces, have arisen in various ways. In many cases their materials show that they were once below sea-level. From this position

Fig 417.—Arid plain, western United States. A mesa or plateau at the right. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

they were (1) *bowed up*, (2) *faulted up*, (3) or *built up* so as to emerge from the water; or (4) the *sea-level* was *drawn down* so as to leave them dry. Plains have arisen also (5) by the *degradation of plateaus or mountains*. In many cases, two or more of these processes have operated jointly in the development of plains.

After plains are developed, they are modified by *gradation*, in all cases by winds, in most cases by streams, and in some by glacier erosion; *by diastrophism*, which deforms them; or *by vulcanism*, which in some cases builds them up by lava-flows or diversifies them by the development of volcanic cones.

FIG. 418.—Bird's-eye view of Colorado Plateau. (Powell.)

All existing plains of great extent have been modified in some or all these ways. Thus the Coastal Plain of the Eastern United States, developed by aggradation and diastrophism, has been much changed by erosion, and perhaps somewhat by warping, since its origin. The great Interior Plain of the United States has been much modified by rain and river erosion, and at the North by glaciation. These processes have led to the development of many minor features, as already shown. Valleys have been made by running water, and ridges and hills left in the process. Mounds, hills, and ridges, with associated kettle-like, saucer-like, trough-like, and irregular depressions, have been made by the continental glaciers. Many of these depressions have become the sites of lakes, ponds, and marshes. Lands thus modified sometimes are called *glacial plains*. In the bottoms of the larger valleys, *river plains* have been developed, and about many lakes whose basins have been partly filled, or whose levels have been drawn down by the lowering of their outlets, *lacustrine plains* have been developed. Similar flats occupy the sites of many former lakes which have become extinct. River plains and lacustrine plains are minor types of plains. Either may be developed in plains of larger area, or in plateaus or mountains.

In addition to the changes produced by gradation, the Interior Plain probably has been somewhat changed by unobtrusive expressions of diastrophism.

Various plains in the West have been modified by the ejection of volcanic matter, as well as by gradation and diastrophism, and most plains have been affected to some extent by the wind.

Plateaus

Plateaus may originate through the operation of some of the processes which give rise to plains (Chap. I). *Sufficient* up-warping or up-wedging of the sort which gives rise to plains would give rise to plateaus. So also would sufficient up-building, especially by lava-flows. It may be doubted whether the sea-level ever was lowered enough at one time to convert coastal plains into plateaus, and plateaus are not made by the degradation of higher lands. After they come into existence, plateaus are modified by all the processes which modify plains. All existing plateaus have felt the effect of some of these processes, and most of them of several. On account of their greater height, the relief of plateaus is greater than that of plains.

Mountains

Some study has already been made of mountains as topographic features, but some points concerning them could not well be considered until the processes of vulcanism and diastrophism had been outlined. We may now note the various forms mountains assume, how they are grouped, what their structure is, and what purposes they serve in the economy of nature.

Mountains have been defined as masses of land high enough to be very conspicuous in their surroundings, but without a great expanse of surface at the top. It is to be understood, however, that between large-topped mountains and small plateaus there are all gradations.

Those who have never seen mountains, but who have seen hills and ridges, may get some conception of mountains by thinking of them as hills and ridges which, in their surroundings, appear to be very high. Some of them are but a few hundred feet above their environs, while others are many thousand feet. As in the cases of hills and low ridges, the slopes of some mountains are steep, those of others gentle.

A *single mountain* may be a big hill (Fig. 419 and Pl. XXIV); but there are all gradations between a big hill and a little mountain. Whether an isolated elevation is called a hill or a mountain depends on its surroundings, or on the judgment of those who

FIG. 419.—Dome-shaped mountain in the Uinta Mountains. (Church.)

named it. A single mountain may stand in the same relation to a mountain region, that a single hill does to a hilly region.

A mountain may be a high ridge rather than a high hill (Pl. XXV). A *mountain ridge* often is called a *mountain range.* A mountain range may have a nearly even crest (Pl. XXV), or its

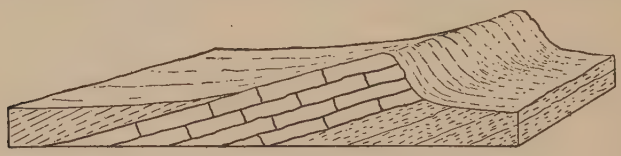


FIG. 420.—An asymmetrical mountain ridge.

crest may be a series of high points partially separated from one another by depressions (Pl. XXVI). A mountain range or ridge may have its opposite slopes much alike, or they may be very unequal (Fig. 420).

A *mountain group* is made up of several or many mountain peaks, or short mountain ridges. The Catskill Mountains and the Black Hills are examples.

A *mountain chain* or *system* is an elongate mountain group, made up of many single mountains or mountain ranges, or of

both. The individual ridges commonly have a pronounced trend in a common direction. The Appalachian Mountain system is an example (Fig. 21, p. 27). A few mountain systems, like the Alps, are not much longer in one direction than in another. The more conspicuous elevations of a system have separate names, and are, individually, mountains.

Distribution of mountains. In some of the continents the more important mountains are toward the borders of the land rather than in the interiors. It is to be noted, however, that even in some of the continents where this is true, the mountains are not all near the coast. In the western part of North America, for example, some of the higher ranges are nearly 1000 miles from the Pacific, while portions of the eastern mountains are some 400 miles from the Atlantic. In the narrow part of the continent at the south, nearly all the land is mountainous.

In South America the high mountains (the Andes) are confined to a belt rarely exceeding 300 miles in width near the coast, while some of the lower mountains to the east are farther from the sea.

In Africa, the highest mountains are near the southeastern border of the continent. Mountains also occur on the northwest border and at some other points; but, on the whole, it can hardly be said that mountainous borders are especially characteristic of this continent. In Australia, also, the more important mountains are near the coast, though most of the coast is not mountainous.

The mountains of Europe and Asia, taken as a whole, can hardly be said to be near the oceans, though some of them have such positions.

Heights. Mountains range in height from large hills or ridges but a few hundred feet high, to elevations of nearly 30,000 feet. The highest mountains in the United States, outside of Alaska, are found in the Sierra Nevada range of California, where the highest peak (Mt. Whitney) reaches an elevation of nearly 15,000 feet. The highest peaks of the Rocky Mountains are but little lower, many peaks exceeding 14,000 feet in elevation. In Colorado alone there are about 40 peaks reaching an elevation of between 14,000 and 14,500 feet. Mt. Rainier in Washington also reaches an elevation of a little more than 14,000 feet. The highest mountain in Alaska, Mt. McKinley, has an altitude of 20,300 feet.

The high points in the Andes Mountains attain an elevation of about 23,000 feet, and many peaks rise above 20,000 feet.

The high peaks of the highest mountains of Europe, the Alps, attain an elevation of nearly 16,000 feet, and the highest peaks in the Caucasus are but little less. In the Himalayas, the loftiest mountains of the earth, the highest peak, Mt. Everest, is nearly 30,000 feet above sea-level.

The mountains of Africa and Australia are, for the most part, much lower. A few volcanic peaks in the former attain an elevation of nearly 20,000 feet, while the greatest elevation of Australia falls short of 8000 feet.

Oceanic mountains. Mountains exist in the ocean basins as well as on the continental platforms. Many oceanic mountains are partly or wholly beneath the water, but the crests of some of them are not.

If the height of a mountain were reckoned in terms of elevation above its base, rather than in terms of elevation above sea-level, some of the volcanic cones of the ocean would rank among the highest mountains of the earth. Thus Mauna (Mount) Kea (Fig. 352), on the island of Hawaii, rises nearly 14,000 feet above the sea. Measured from the ocean floor, from which the island rises, its height is more than 30,000 feet. It is, in one sense, nearly or quite the highest mountain of the earth, though not the highest above sea-level. Parts of the Antillean mountain system (including the West Indies and the mountains of Central America, etc.) also rise from a depth of 16,000 to 18,000 feet below sea-level to a maximum height of more than 10,000 feet above. They are therefore among the greatest mountains of the earth, if their elevation is reckoned from their real base.

Changes taking place in mountains. Most of the processes of degradation already studied are in operation in mountains, but their relative importance is not the same as in lower lands. The differences are due partly to the steepness of the mountain slopes, and partly to the differences of climate incident to altitude.

Because of their steep slopes, erosion by mechanical processes is more rapid in mountains than on plains. Streams in mountains are, as a rule, rapid, at least in the early stages of an erosion cycle, and make deep valleys. Chiefly for this reason, mountains are the roughest portions of the earth's surface. Rapid erosion means

that weathered rock is removed promptly. The accumulation of mantle rock is therefore less in mountains than where erosion is less rapid, and bare rock is, accordingly, more common.

The temperature decreases on the average about 1° Fahr. for every 300 feet of rise. If a mountain is 3000 feet higher than its

Fig. 421.—A mountain valley. The narrow part of the canyon shown here became the site of a dam 310 feet high, for a reservoir for irrigation purposes. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

surroundings, the temperature at its top is therefore some 10° colder than at the bottom. Because of their low temperature, high mountains have little vegetation. The absence of vegetation allows running water and wind to remove weathered rock readily. When a mountain is so cold as not to allow the growth of vegetation, the absence of plants, together with the steepness of slope

characteristic of mountains, leaves the bare rock freely exposed to all processes of weathering. Daily changes of rock temperature in high altitudes are great, especially on sunny days, and rock breaking, due to this cause, is most effective. The steep slopes allow the rock-masses broken off in this way to fall or to

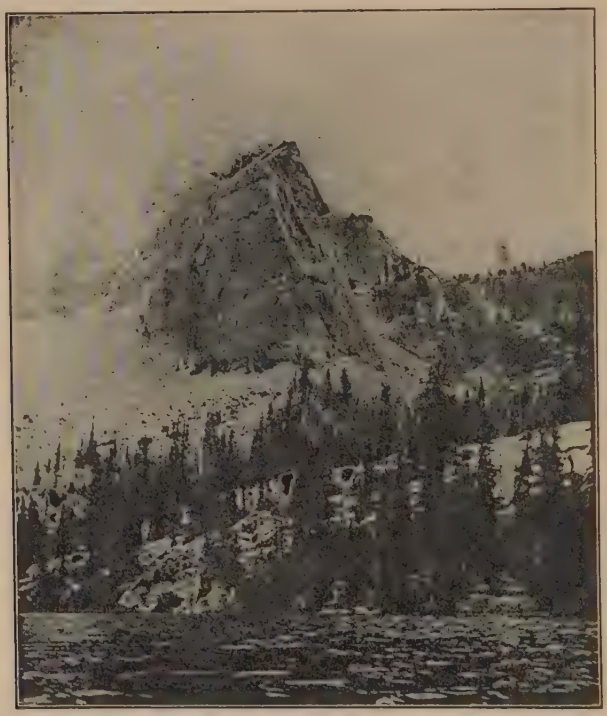


Fig. 422.—Quartzite Peak, Wasatch Mountains, with quantities of talus at its base. (Chamberlin.)

be carried down readily (Fig. 422), thus exposing fresh surfaces of rock to the same changes.

In general, there is more precipitation (rain and snow) in mountains than on plains, and more of it falls as snow. The snow accumulates through a considerable part of the year, to be melted at a later time. When it melts, the water running off has much the effect of concentrated rainfall. If snow accumulates in sufficient quantity it gives rise to glaciers, which, except in very high latitudes, do not exist outside of mountain regions. On

the whole, therefore, erosion is more rapid in mountains than elsewhere.

The deposition of sediment, on the other hand, is relatively less in mountains than on plains, because of the steep slopes and swift streams. Much of the debris which falls or is carried down steep slopes is temporarily lodged at their bases.

FIG. 423.—A mountain tree, Near Granite, Colo. (Capps.)

Winds often are strong in mountain regions, though they produce relatively little direct effect on the land, (1) because it is less commonly dry, and (2) because there is little material fine enough to be blown.

The winds in the mountains have a notable effect on the character of the trees (Fig. 423), especially where they are scattered, or near the upper limit of their growth (*the timber line*).

Origin of Mountains

Mountains originate in very different ways, but all may be grouped in three general classes, according to the forces dominant in their production. In the case of many mountains, however, two or even three sets of processes play important parts.

Volcanic mountains. Figs. 362 and 364 show isolated mountains of volcanic origin. Single mountains having this structure are among the high mountains of the earth. Besides Shasta, Rainier, and others already mentioned (pp. 378–84), the Spanish Peaks of Colorado (13,620 feet) and Mt. Wrangell of Alaska (17,500 feet) belong to this class. So, also, do Orizaba (18,200 feet) and Popocatepetl (17,523 feet) in Mexico; Tajamulco (18,317 feet) and others of Central America; Aconcagua (22,860 feet), Chimborazo (21,498 feet), and numerous others in the Andes; Elbruz (18,470 feet), Demavend (18,000 feet), Great Ararat (nearly 17,000 feet), Fuji-yama (12,365 feet), and others in Asia; and Kilimanjaro (19,780 feet) and Kenia (18,000 feet) in Africa.

The highest mountain peaks of Africa and South America are volcanic. Mountains formed by volcanoes are peaks rather than

FIG. 424.—Mountains of horizontal strata, Timpanagas Mountain, Utah. (Church.)

systems or ranges, but in many ranges and systems, vulcanism has played a part.

Mountains produced by erosion. One type of mountain structure is represented by Figs. 424 and 425. Mountains of this sort

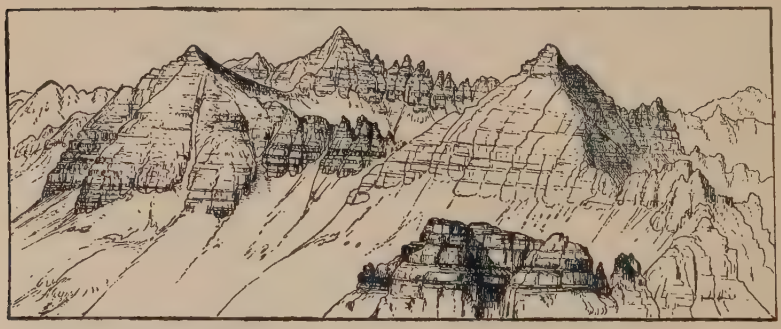


FIG. 425.—Mountains shaped by the erosion of horizontal beds of stratified rock. Castle Group, Colo. (Holmes, Hayden Surv.)

occur singly, but most of them are in groups. They are clearly the result of erosion, their surroundings having been worn away.

Mountains of this sort are developed from plateaus in the course of their degradation. The Catskill Mountains are an illustration. There are other illustrations in the arid regions of the West, where the isolated masses of rock often are called buttes (Fig. 153).

Fig. 426.—Mountains shaped by erosion, where the rock is massive. Elk Mountains, Colo. (Holmes, Hayden Surv.)

Intrusion and uplift. Fig. 35 (p. 37) represents another common type of mountain structure. Mountains of this type may constitute single mountains or groups of mountains, and either may be large or small. In many cases the bedded rocks which lie on the sides once extended over the crests, and have been cut away by erosion. The Black Hills and the Adirondacks are examples of large groups of mountains of this type. Numerous small ones occur about the Black Hills and at many other points in the West. The Henry Mountains of Utah (Figs. 361 and 362), are a well-known illustration of this general type. Mountains of this

Fig. 427.—Section of the western Jura Mountains.

type may be linear, making a mountain range rather than a mountain group. The Sierra Nevada Mountains of California are an example, though their east slope is a fault scarp (Fig. 432).

Mountains produced by folding. Fig. 427 represents still another type of mountain structure illustrated by the Jura Mountains, and Figs. 428 and 429 represent variations of the type. The Jura Mountains as they now are, are the result of the upswell-

ing (without renewed folding) of a worn-down mountain system produced originally by folding. In other words, the folded structure of the former mountains has been lifted up bodily in recent

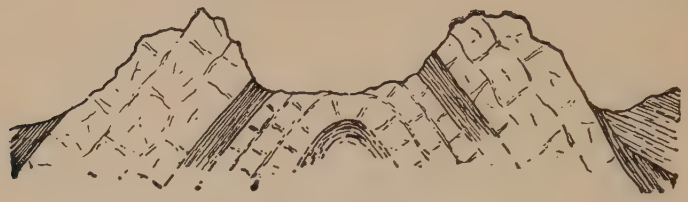


FIG. 428.—Section across the Shortenkopf, Bavarian Alps. (Frass.)

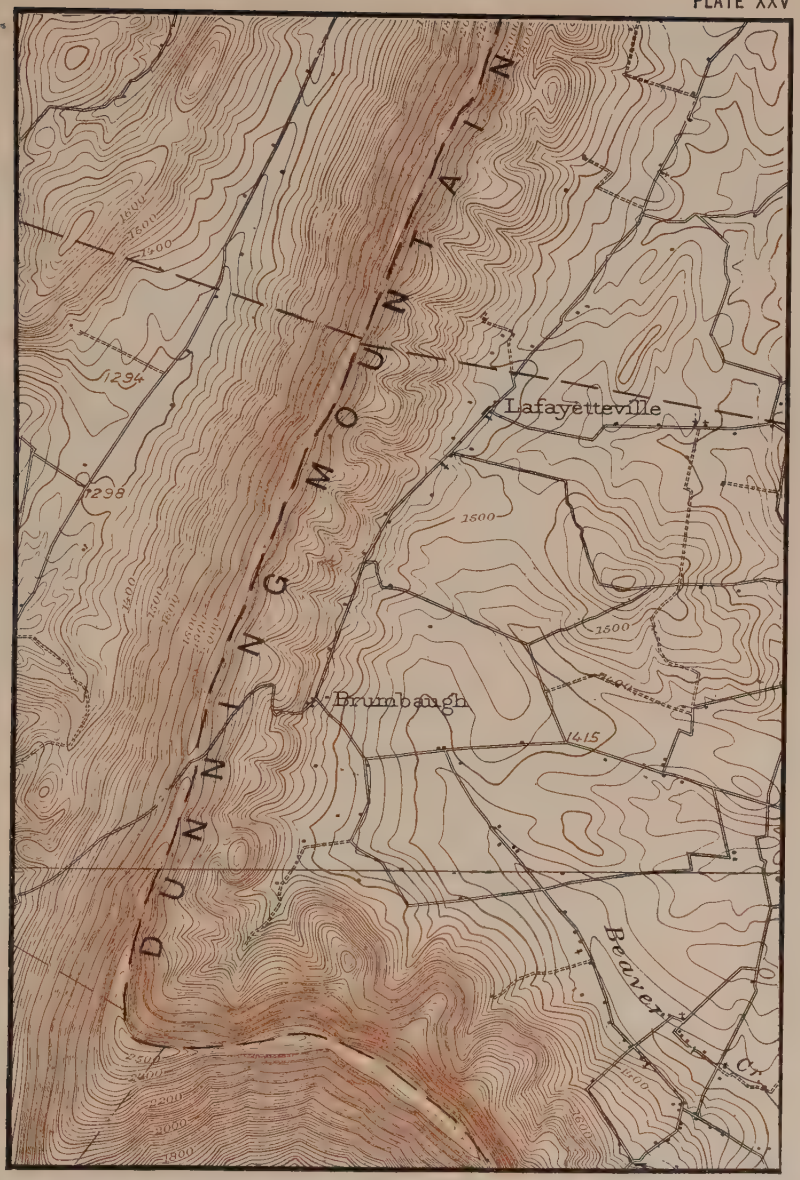
times. The details of the present mountains are the result of erosion on this up-warped structure.

It is to be noted that the present topography of mountains whose component strata are folded was not, in all cases, produced by folding. It was indeed produced in this way in but few cases. The folding doubtless gave rise to ridges, perhaps to ridges of great height, as in the case of the Appalachians. The mountains thus produced were then brought low by erosion. Later, the planed-down region of folded rocks was bowed up, relative to its surroundings, but bowed up as a unit, without further folding. The present

FIG. 429.—Appalachian structure. (Rogers.)

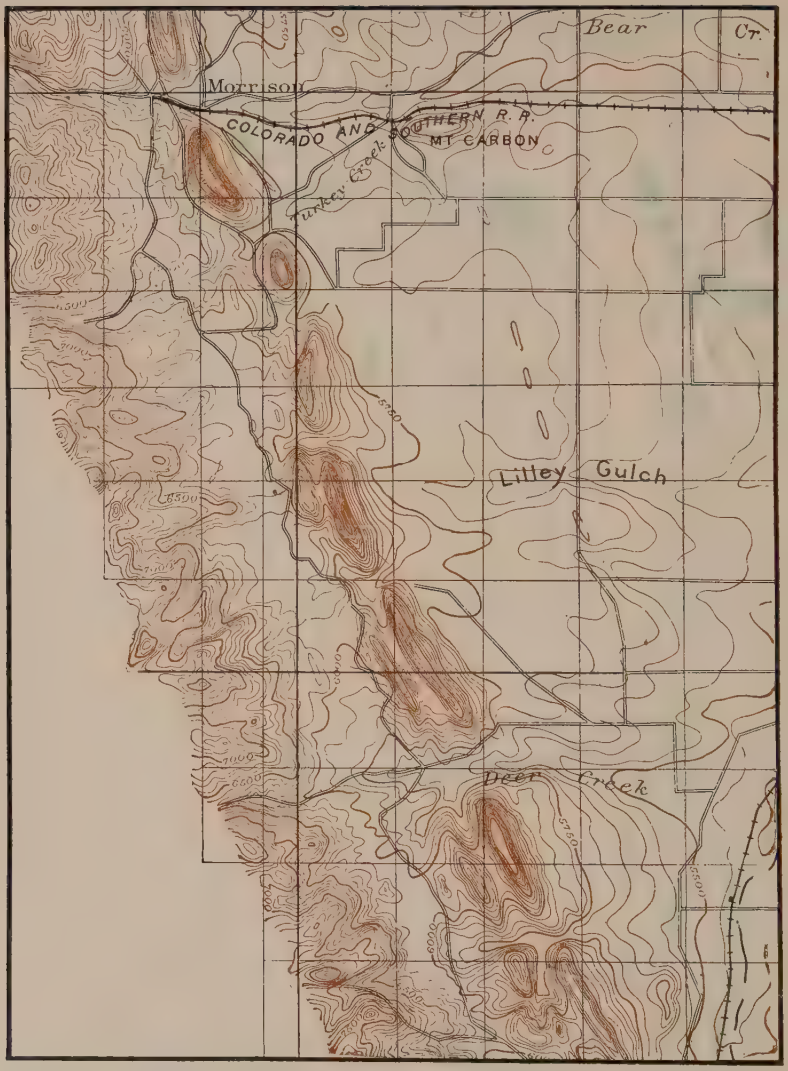
mountain crests are the outcrops of the harder layers, isolated by erosion subsequent to this later uplift (Fig. 431). It is now known that many other mountains of folded structure have had a similar history. Most mountains produced by folding have been extensively modified by erosion, as the accompanying figures suggest.

Mountains produced by faulting. Figs. 432 and 433 represent another type of mountain structure. Such mountains sometimes are called *block mountains*, because great blocks of the earth's crust, bordered by distinct planes of fracture, have been tilted so that one edge at least is well above its surroundings. In many such cases, it is probable that the surroundings have sunk, rather than the mountains themselves that have been elevated. Many of the mountains between the Rockies and the Sierras belong to this



Dunning Mountain, Pennsylvania; a good example of a mountain ridge due to the superior hardness (resistance) of a tilted layer of rock, the outcrop of which was left as a ridge after the less resistant surroundings were worn away. Scale 1— mile per inch. Contour interval 20 feet. (Everett Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

PLATE XXVI



An area southwest of Denver, showing a mountain ridge dissected by erosion. The outcropping hard layer appears in the form of a series of short ridges, or "hog-backs." (Compare Pl. XXV.) Scale 2— miles per inch. Contour interval 50 feet. (Denver, Colo., Sheet, U. S. Geol. Surv.)

type, as elsewhere noted. This type of mountains sometimes is known as the *Basin Range* type.

These illustrations show that mountains have various structures; they also suggest how mountains originated, though they

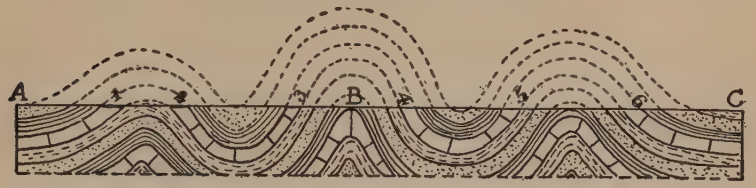


Fig. 430.—Diagram suggesting the type of structure possessed by the simple folding of strata. The diagram shows the folded surface worn down.

do not in all cases indicate the causes which brought them into existence.

Summary. It will be seen from the foregoing that mountains are developed (1) by the degradation of their surroundings (Fig.

Fig. 431.—The same as Fig. 430, after upwarp and subsequent erosion. No further folding is shown, and erosion has isolated the hard layers as mountain ridges. This represents, in a general way, the present condition of the Appalachians.

424); (2) by the subsidence of their surroundings, either by down-warping or down-wedging (Fig. 432); (3) by elevation, either by

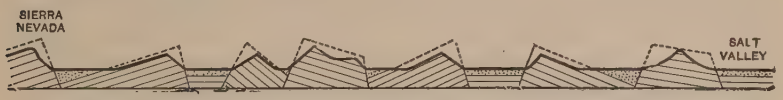


Fig. 432.—Ranges of the Great Basin. Length of section, 120 miles. (Gilbert.)

up-warping (folding) or up-wedging; (4) by up-swelling, due to intrusions of igneous rock (Fig. 361); and (5) by up-building, as in the case of volcanic cones. Mountains which originate by

diastrophism or vulcanism are subject to erosion, and most existing mountains of volcanic or diastrophic origin have been so largely modified by erosion, that the details of their present surfaces are the result of degradation.

Effects of Mountains on Mankind

Climatic Effects. Directly and indirectly, mountains play an important part in the affairs of men. In the first place, *they affect climate.* The winds blowing over high mountains are cooled, and

Fig. 433.—Section across the Vosges and Black Forest mountains. (Penck. From Geikie's Earth Sculpture, by permission of G. P. Putnam's Sons.)

as they are cooled a part of their moisture often condenses and falls. Thus mountains, and especially the windward sides of mountains, are generally the sites of heavy rainfall, and therefore become the sources of important streams. On the other hand, plains and plateaus on the leeward side of mountains are likely to have light rainfall, because the air, after passing over the mountains where it has left much of its moisture, is drying rather than rain-giving. This is the reason why the tracts east of the Sierra and Rocky mountains are arid or semi-arid (Fig. 434), and therefore sparsely settled. The state of Nevada, with an area considerably greater than that of Ohio and Illinois together, has less than 1 per cent of their population. The aridity of the climate of Nevada is a chief cause of the difference.

Though mountains make the country to leeward arid, many of them furnish water which may be utilized in irrigating these lands, for as the water which falls in the mountains flows out from them, it may be diverted from its natural courses and carried out by ditches to the fields.

The work of storing water in preparation for irrigation has been well started in the western part of the United States (p. 166), and still more extensive work in this direction is planned. But only a small part of the arid lands of the West can be irrigated,

for the amount of water available is too small to supply more than a fraction of all the land which needs water.

The effect of mountains on the temperature, winds, cloudiness, etc., of their surroundings is considerable, though perhaps less important to man than their effect on precipitation.

Mountains are barriers to transportation. It is true that railroads now cross mountain systems, but the cost of building them, and operating them after they are built, is much greater than

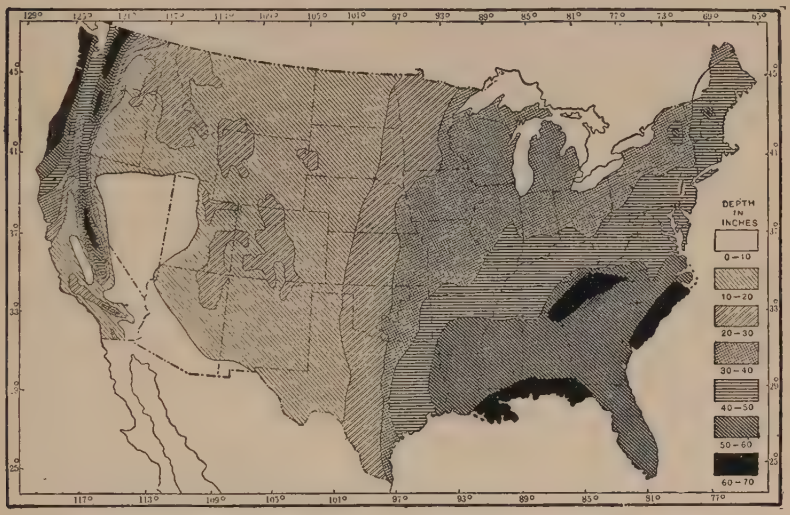
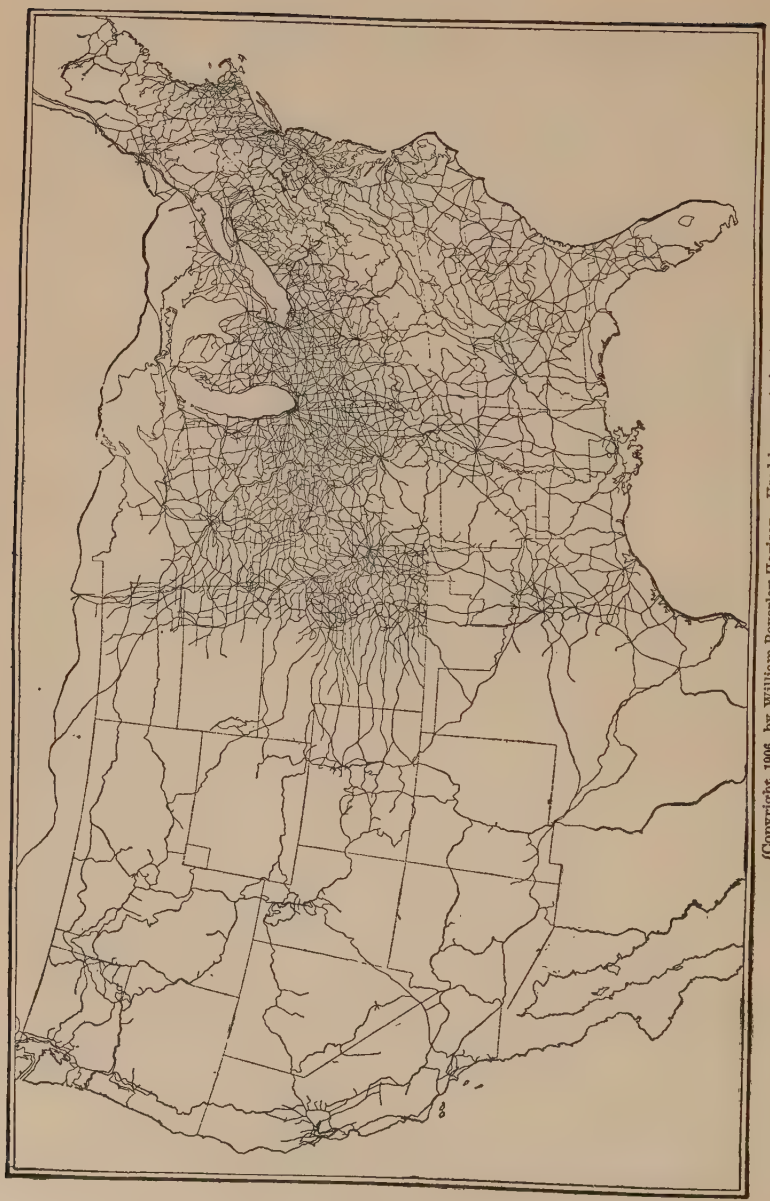


FIG. 434.—Rainfall of the United States. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

on plains. A railroad map of the United States shows that there are few railroads in the eastern or western mountains, as compared with the number in the interior. Mountains are however much less effective barriers to mankind now than in former times, before railway engineering had reached its present development.

Mountains are effective barriers to animals and plants. Most animals lower than man do not possess, and are unable to devise, means of crossing mountains, and to many of them high mountains are effective barriers. The climate of high altitudes is such as to prevent the migration of some plants from one side to the other, except by human help.

Mountains contain ores of various metals. The fact that mining is the most distinctive industry of many mountains



(Copyright, 1906, by William Beverley Harison. Used by permission.)

FIG. 435.—Railway map of the United States.

has been referred to elsewhere. It may be added here that most of the gold and silver and much of the copper of the United States come from the western mountains. From the same sources also comes much, but not all, of the lead and zinc. Iron and coal, on the other hand, the two most important products of mining, are not derived chiefly from mountain regions, though some iron and much coal is mined both in the eastern and western mountains of the United States.

Agriculture in mountains. Many mountain valleys are fertile, and many of them are under cultivation. Colorado, a mountainous state, produced more than $52,600,000 worth of minerals in 1914. This was nearly the same as the value of the products of the soil in the same state in 1910. A considerable portion of the cultivated land is in the valleys in the mountains.

Scenic effects. Quite apart from economic considerations, mountains have a value not to be set down in figures, in the scenery which they afford. The man who has not seen mountains, and who has not lived with them long enough to really make their acquaintance, has missed one of the good things of life. The Adirondacks, the Catskills, and the other mountains within a few hours' ride of such great cities as New York, Philadelphia, and Boston, are of inestimable value. The mountains of the West are far grander. They are, unfortunately, frequented by fewer people, because much farther from most great centers of population.

The Outlines of the Continents

Any good map of the continents makes it clear that some coast-lines are regular and others irregular. The coasts of the northern part of North America and Eurasia are strikingly irregular, and in strong contrast with the coasts of Africa, Australia, and most of South America. The west coast of the southern part of South America is very irregular.

Even the more regular coast-lines present contrasts, for some of them are nearly straight, while others are notably curved; and where the continental outlines present large irregularities, individual parts of the coast, considered by themselves, are regular. Illustrations of such regularity are found on the west coast of India and the southeast coast of Arabia, though India and Arabia themselves constitute coastal irregularities of great size.

Irregular coasts present great variety. Broadly speaking, it may be said that there are two great types of irregularity, namely (1) projections of the water into the land, and (2) projections of the land into water. The former are *bays*, *gulfs*, etc., and the latter are *peninsulas*, *capes*, etc.

Coastal irregularities may be further classified in various ways, as on the basis of (1) size, (2) position with reference to the general trend of the coast, (3) relief, (4) origin, etc., and each classification brings out certain significant features.

Size. The projections of water into the land, like the projections of land into the water, may be large or small. The Gulf of Mexico, Hudson Bay, the Bay of Bengal, and the Baltic Sea are examples of large projections of water into the land, while Delaware, Chesapeake, Narragansett, and San Francisco bays, and Puget Sound, are examples of smaller projections of water into the land. The little bays on the sides of Chesapeake Bay (Fig. 156) are examples of still smaller indentations of the same sort. On the coasts of Alaska (Fig. 436), Norway, Chile, and some other places, there are numerous narrow but deep bays or *fiords* (p. 288).

Examples of large projections of land into the sea are afforded by the north coast of Australia, the east coast of Africa, the south coast of Asia, and both the south and west coasts of Europe. North America, too, furnishes illustrations of this sort, especially in Alaska and Labrador, and, on a somewhat smaller scale, in Florida, Yucatan, and Lower California. Small projections of land into the sea abound on most coasts. Cape Cod, Cape May, and Cape Mendocino are examples.

Many of the projections of water into the land and of land into the water are closely related. If two bodies of water near each other project into the land, they leave between them a projection of land into the water. A good illustration is afforded by the Bay of Bengal and the Arabian Sea with India between. India may therefore be looked upon as a projection of land into the sea, or as an area of land left by the projection of two great arms of the sea into the land. Similarly, if two areas of land not far apart project into the sea, they enclose a body of water. The land east and west of the Gulf of Carpentaria on the north coast of Australia is an example.

Position. Arms of the sea may project into the land, or areas of land into the sea, nearly *at right angles to the trend of the*

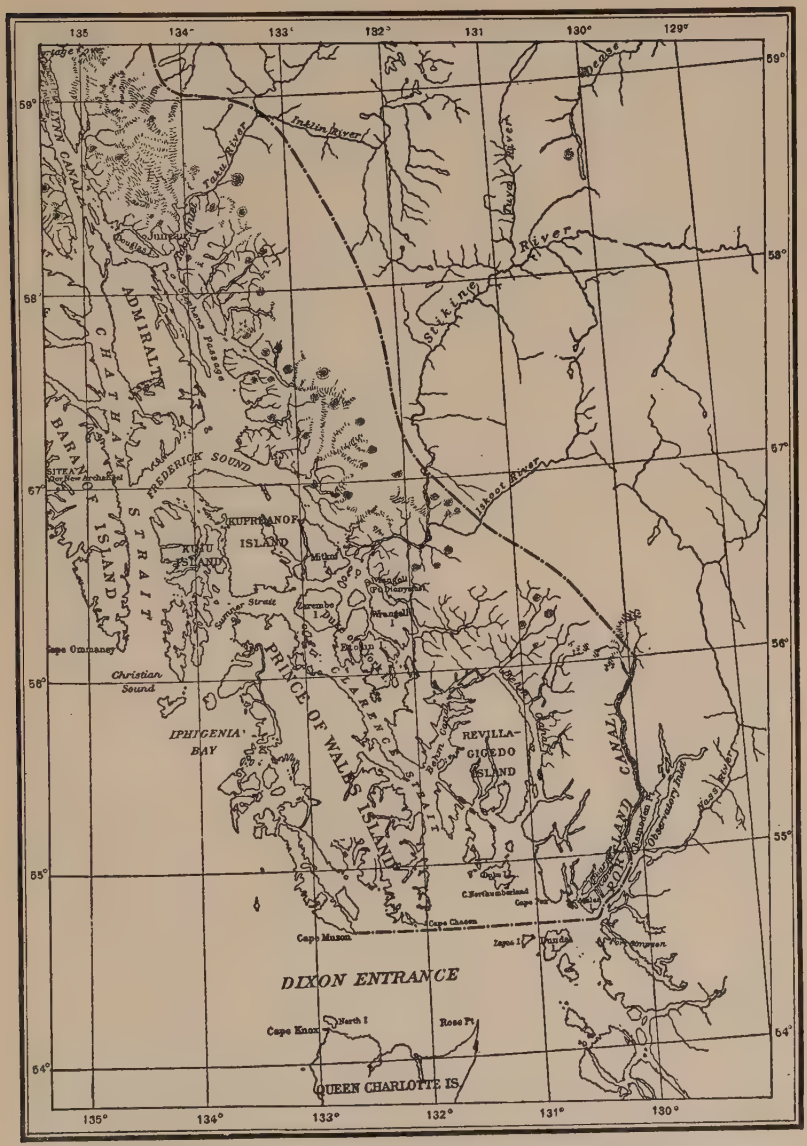


FIG. 436.—Map of part of the coast of southern Alaska, showing islands, which were once a part of the mainland, isolated by glacial and wave erosion, and by sinking.

coast: or they may have positions *nearly parallel to the general trend of the coast.* Florida, India, Hudson Bay, and the Gulf of Mexico are examples of the former, and the Gulf and Peninsula of Lower California and many small irregularities along the Atlantic coast of the United States (Fig. 437) are examples of the latter. It will be seen that both large and small irregularities may occupy either position. They also occupy positions intermediate between the two.

FIG. 437.—Portion of the coast of Texas, showing the tendency of shore deposition to simplify the coast line. The deposits (narrow necks of land parallel to the coast) shut in bays. (Coast and Geodetic Surv.)

Relief. Some coasts are high and some low, and the differences are so great that the lands present strong contrasts when seen from the sea. The irregularities of coastlines as seen on maps affect both coasts which are low and those which are high. Some of the great peninsulas which project out into the water, such as Scandinavia, the Iberian Peninsula, India, Lower California, and much of Alaska, are high, and others, such as Florida and Yucatan, are low. Small projections of land into the sea present the same contrasts. Some of them, as those on the coasts of Maine, Alaska, and Chile, are high, while others, such as those along the eastern coasts of the United States south of New York, are low.

The water in some bays, gulfs, fiords, etc., is deep, and in others shallow, and its depth is measurably independent of area. It is deep, for example, in the gulfs of Mexico and California, the Mediterranean and Arabian seas, in many fiords, etc., but shallow in the Baltic Sea, Hudson Bay, and the Gulf of Carpentaria.

Distribution of various types of irregularities. From the maps showing the outlines of the continents, it appears that great

irregularities are distributed with less inequality than small ones. While the northern continents have both large and small irregularities in greater numbers than the southern continents, the contrast between the small irregularities of the northern and southern continents is greater than that between the large ones.

The great irregularities are not notably greater in the northern parts of the northern continents than in their southern parts. So far as this class of irregularities is concerned, the coast-lines of southern Asia and Europe are as irregular as those of other parts of these continents. The small irregularities of northern Europe, and especially of northwestern Europe, are, however, more conspicuous than those of southern Europe. The same holds, in a general way, for North America. While this continent has great and small irregularities both at the north and south, small irregularities are more numerous in high latitudes than in low.

Again, the small irregularities in the southern part of North America are more commonly low, while many of those in the northern part have greater vertical range. Many of the former are parallel to the trend of the coast, while more of the latter are at right angles to it.

Irregularities of coasts stand in some relation to the width of the continental shelf. Large irregularities of outline are, in general, more common where the continental shelf is wide than where it is narrow. High shores are, on the whole, more irregular in outline than low ones, though to this general rule there are many exceptions.

The islands along many of the coasts of continents are to be looked on as parts of the coastal irregularities, for, as we shall see later, many islands along coasts were once part of the mainland. Here belong many of the islands off the coast of Alaska (Fig. 436), Chile, Scandinavia, etc.

All these numerous and varied irregularities call for explanation, and our studies of processes now in operation have furnished the data necessary for understanding why some coast-lines are regular and others irregular, why some coasts are high and others low, why the slopes of some coasts are steep and those of others gentle. They also have given us a basis for some conception of the origin of great and small projections of land into the sea, and of great and small projections of the sea into the land.

Agents of gradation. In preceding chapters we have seen the results produced by agents of gradation on the horizontal configuration of coasts. We have seen (p. 278) that waves tend to develop indentations of water where rock is weak, leaving projections of land where rock is resistant, and that irregularities thus developed are relatively small. The capes, etc., thus formed will be low or high, depending on the relief of the land from which they were developed. The reëntrants of water developed by wave erosion always are shallow.

We have seen also that deposition along shores develops irregularities, especially by the formation of strips of land roughly parallel to the trend of the coast, across the debouchures of bays, etc., and that the irregularities thus developed are a step in the direction of final simplification of the shore-line (Fig. 437). The lands developed by shore deposition are always low, as left by the waves, and the lagoons shut in behind them are shallow.

We have seen also (p. 287) that glaciers descending to the sea may gouge out deep valleys, which become fiords when the ice melts. Glacial erosion may otherwise modify the coast-line, both by erosion and deposition. Glaciation, once much more extensive than now, affords the explanation, or at least a part of the explanation, of the many fiords of high latitudes. Subsidence may also be a factor in their development.

Rivers make coast-lines irregular by building deltas at their debouchures, but through their *erosive* work they do little to make coast-lines irregular horizontally. On the other hand, they make high coast-lands irregular vertically, by developing valleys in them.

Winds have little effect on the horizontal configuration of coasts, but by piling up dunes they affect the relief of coast-lands to some extent.

This brief review makes it clear that agents of gradation are competent to produce many irregularities of coast, especially those of small size.

Diastrophism. If the bottom of the ocean were somewhat depressed, increasing the capacity of the basins, the water would be drawn down about the borders of the continents and all the coast-lines would be shifted seaward. On such a coast as that of the eastern part of the United States, the border of the continent would become notably more regular than now, because the

topography of the continental shelf, now submerged, is nearly plane. Some coasts which are comparatively regular owe their regularity to recent emergence.

If, on the other hand, the borders of continents were depressed, the coast-lines would in general become somewhat more irregular than now, for the depression of the land would allow the sea-water to extend up the valleys, developing bays where there are none now, and extending those which now exist.

Some indented coasts, like that of the United States between New York and the Carolinas, owe their numerous bays to recent subsidence. Where the river valleys were normal to the coast, as commonly is the case, the bays are normal to the coast.

Again, sufficient up-warp of a submerged tract along the coasts of continents would develop peninsulas. These peninsulas might be normal to the coast or roughly parallel to it, or at any angle between. A corresponding down-warp would develop a bay or gulf, and many large bays and gulfs probably have arisen in this way. The elevated or depressed area might be faulted instead of warped, with similar results, so far as horizontal configuration of the coast is concerned.

Vulcanism. Volcanoes affect coast-lines locally, but their influence is relatively slight as compared with that of gradation and diastrophism. Volcanoes make islands near coasts more commonly than they produce modifications of the coasts of mainlands. Many igneous rocks are more resistant than sedimentary rocks, and so affect the forms of coast lines developed by erosion.

Application

By the application of the above principles to coast-lines, the chief features of many of them may be understood. Where there are numerous bays along the coast-line projecting into the land at right angles (roughly) to its general trend, it may be inferred with some confidence either that the region has recently sunk, drowning the lower ends of the rivers, or that it has been glaciated recently, converting the lower ends of the valleys into fiords. Subsidence may have accompanied or followed the glaciation. If the area concerned is in low latitude, the chances are in favor of the first interpretation; if in high latitude, and especially if the altitude be high, glaciation is a probable cause of the indentations.

Chesapeake Bay and the numerous bays tributary to it, Delaware Bay and others of the same sort on the eastern coast of the United States, point clearly to recent submergence of the land. Farther north, the indentations of the coast of Maine find their explanation partly in subsidence perhaps, but largely in glacier erosion, for the ice of the continental glacier passed out to sea over this coast. The fiords of such coasts as that of Alaska, Chile, Scandinavia and Scotland are largely the result of glacial erosion, though subsidence may have deepened and extended the indentations of water.

Where there are long, narrow belts of low land, roughly parallel to the general trend of the coast, deposition by waves and shore currents is to be inferred. Illustrations are afforded by many parts of the coast between New York and Texas.

Where there are great irregularities of outline, such as the Gulf of Mexico, the Gulf of California, the Adriatic Sea, the Bay of Bengal, the Arabian Sea, the Iberian Peninsula, Italy, India, Kamchatka, the peninsulas of Lower California, Yucatan, Florida, etc., diastrophism probably has been the chief factor concerned.

The irregularities of coast produced by diastrophism are not all of great size. Puget Sound, though large, is much smaller than most of the irregularities just mentioned, and is believed to have had its origin in a down-warp.

Where coasts are high, diastrophism or wave-cutting, or both, are suggested. Steep slopes, even where not high, give the same suggestions, while low coastal lands without cliffs are characteristic of areas of shore deposition.

It is to be borne in mind that coast-lines are not permanent, and that the coast-lines of to-day are not precisely the same as those of yesterday, and those of to-morrow will not be precisely the same as those of to-day, for gradation and diastrophism are constantly changing them, and vulcanism occasionally.

Historical bearing. The character of the coast-lines has had an important influence upon the development of many countries. The irregular coasts of northwestern Europe and the northeastern part of the United States abound in harbors, and favor the development of ocean commerce. On the other hand, a smooth, regular coast always has rendered sea trade difficult, and in some cases has discouraged it completely. The southeastern states,

eastern Mexico, most of South America, Africa, and India all have experienced, in varying degrees, the disadvantages of such a coast.

Wherever a people has occupied an indented coast, with offlying islands and an infertile mainland, it has early turned to the sea for a living, and has developed daring seamen; and this regardless of race or inherent abilities. Examples are the Northmen, the Indians of southern Alaska, the blacks of northwestern Madagascar, and the Malays of the Tenasserim coast. On the other hand, a harborless coast invariably has prevented the development of the sea-going habit.

Islands

As already indicated, many islands are really shore features, being developed by the same agents and processes which develop the horizontal configuration of continental coasts.

Like other natural features, islands may be classified in various ways, and each classification brings out certain significant facts. Thus, on the basis of *size*, they are large and small; on the basis of *height*, they are high and low; on the basis of *position*, they are continental and oceanic; and on the basis of *fertility*, they are fertile and barren. Between the extremes of each of the above groups there are all gradations. Other comparable bases of grouping may be suggested. The most significant classification, from the physiographic point of view, is based on *origin*. Islands arise through the processes of *diastrophism*, *vulcanism*, and *gradation*, and, if the action of organisms be excluded from gradation, by *organic action*.

1. By diastrophism. The rise of any portion of sea bottom enough to cause it to emerge from the water, gives rise to an island, if the new land is not connected with a continent. Similarly, the subsidence of the sea might cause the emergence of elevated portions of sea bottom, giving rise to islands. Cuba and the other large islands of the West Indies belong to this general class.

The rise of the sea-level might transform the elevations of coastal lands into islands, by submerging the surrounding lowland. The same result might be brought about by the sinking of coastal lands of strong relief. Great Britain was thus separated from the mainland. Had it remained connected with the continent, the course of European history probably would have been very different.

2. **By vulcanism.** Many submarine volcanoes have built up their cones so that their tops emerge from the sea. Far from coasts, islands of this sort are more common than any others. Volcanic islands are, however, not confined to the deep sea.

3. **By gradation.** Islands arise both by aggradational and degradational processes, and both aggradation and degradation are effected by different agents.

(a) *By erosion.* *Waves* may so erode a coast as to isolate small areas of resistant rock, converting them into islands (Fig. 438).

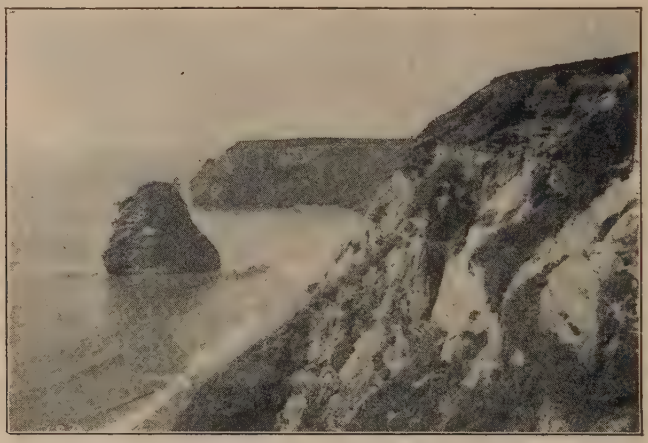


Fig. 438.—Finn Rock and Cape Blanco, Oregon. (U. S. Geol. Surv.)

Glaciers descending from the land to the sea may, by erosion, isolate coastal promontories, converting them into islands. It is probable that some of the islands on glaciated coasts arose in this way.

Islands sometimes are formed in a river by the erosion of the stream (Fig. 439). The jointing of the rock affords conditions for the development of some such islands. The erosive action of the James River transformed the Jamestown peninsula into an island toward the end of the 17th century, a thing the colonists had planned to do for purposes of defence. River islands are also sometimes developed through the meandering of the streams (Fig. 174).

(*b*) *By deposition.* Islands arise by the deposition of sediment along sea and lake shores, and in rivers. Most such islands are

low and sandy, and all are near other land. The processes which give rise to them have been indicated. Many of them are affected by dunes. Glacier deposits also give rise to islands, as in Boston harbor. Islands which have cores of solid rock may be enlarged by various processes of deposition.

4. **By combinations of diastrophism, gradation, and vulcanism.** Many existing islands owe their origin and form to the combination of two or more of the above agents. River or glacier

FIG. 439.—Lone Rock. An island in the Wisconsin River, isolated as an island by the notable widening of a series of joints in the sandstone. (Meyers.)

erosion often develops an uneven topography along shore, and a slight subsidence of the coast, or a rise of the sea-level there, gives rise to islands, because the land has been properly prepared in advance. It is to a combination of degradation and diastrophism that many of the islands of glaciated coasts, such as those of Maine, Alaska, Norway, etc., are due.

Other combinations, too, of the several agents operative on coasts may give rise to islands. Thus, an island which was primarily volcanic may be enlarged in area by the deposition of sediment about it, the sediment being brought down from the higher parts of the island. Iceland is an example.

Whatever their origin, most existing islands have been more or less notably modified by erosion.

Island coasts are subject to all the changes which affect the coasts of continents. Islands are subject to destruction by waves, on the one hand, and they may cease to be islands by being

Fig. 440.—Diagram of a fringing reef.

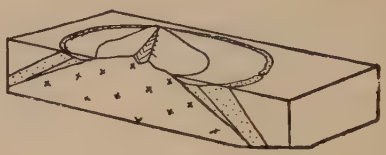


Fig. 441.—Diagram of a barrier reef.

attached to continents. Such connection may be brought about by diastrophism or gradation (Pl. XXII). Thus, an island may

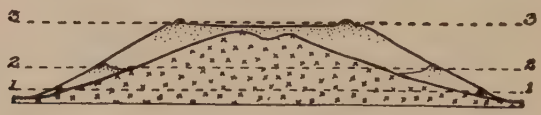


Fig. 442.—Diagram suggesting the development of a barrier reef and an atoll, successively, from a fringing reef, by sinking. 1, Fringing reef, formed in shallow water; 2, barrier reef, developed from fringing reef during subsidence; 3, the atoll which succeeds the barrier reef.

be tied to the mainland by deposition. After being joined to the mainland, the former island becomes a part of a striking irregularity of the coast.

Fig. 443.—Diagram suggesting the origin of a barrier reef without subsidence. The reef starts in shallow water near shore. Material broken from it falls down, making a sort of talus slope, the lower part of the shaded portion, and the polyps build out on this slope, but always remain in shallow water (1, 2, 3, 4). The outer edge of the reef thus comes to be in deep water.

5. **By organic processes.** There are in some parts of the world numerous islands composed of coral. The little animals (*polyps*) which secrete the coral live (1) where the water is 120 feet or less in depth; (2) where the temperature never falls below about 68° F.; (3) where the water has the saltness of normal sea-water; (4) where the water is nearly free from sediment; and (5) where it is subject to some movement by the wind. In such situations they thrive, and make reefs and islands.

Polyps are not free-moving animals, except in the early part of their lives, before they begin coral-making. Through the larger part of their lives they are attached to the bottom. They flourish about many islands of volcanic origin and along some continental

Fig. 444.—An atoll. (From Dana's Corals and Coral Islands, by permission of Dodd, Mead & Co.)

coasts, as along the east coast of Australia. They also flourish in some places far from islands or continents, if there is shallow water of the right temperature.

Figs. 440 and 441 show coral reefs. Those which are far enough from the land to leave a somewhat wide and deep lagoon inside are *barrier* reefs; those close to the land are *fringing* reefs.

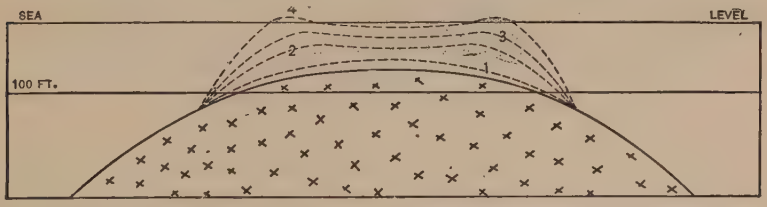


Fig. 445.—Coral island developed from a submerged volcano (or other rock.)

It is probable that some fringing reefs become barrier reefs by the sinking of the island or coast on which they are built, as illustrated by Fig. 442. The sinking should not proceed faster than the polyps build up the reef. It has been pointed out that a reef on a steep slope may come to have a long outer slope, with its bottom in water far below 120 feet, if coral broken off from the upper part of the reef falls down the slope into deep water. This process is illustrated by Fig. 443. It is possible that barrier reefs have been developed in this way, but the subsidence theory orig-

inally propounded by Darwin, is the more probable for most well known reefs at least. Several other hypotheses of the origin of coral reefs have been proposed, but none of them has a firm foundation in known facts.

Coral reefs are, as a rule, interrupted where fresh water descends from the land, so that a reef rarely encircles an island completely, and is rarely continuous for great stretches along any coast.

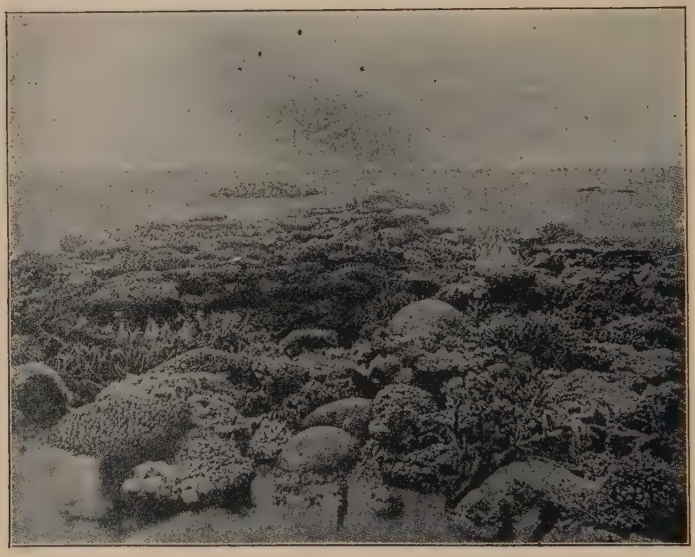


Fig. 446.—Coral growing.

It is manifest that the barrier reef about a small island may become an island or atoll by subsidence. This is illustrated by Fig. 442. Coral islands might also arise by the development of reefs on volcanic cones which did not rise into islands (Fig. 445).

Polyps do not build reefs or atolls above water; but when they have built up to water-level, the waves may build higher, much as they convert sand reefs into land. Once land appears, the wind may make it higher by piling up coral sand. The growth of vegetation may help along the building, both by its own growth and by helping the lodgment of wind-blown sediment.

Coral islands and reefs would always remain low if it were not for diastrophism. There are indeed no very high coral islands,

but there are coral reefs 2000 or 3000 feet above sea-level. Either the land where such reefs occur has risen greatly, or the sea-level has been depressed.

REFERENCES

1. Standard text-books on Geology.

2. Folios of the U. S. Geol. Surv., of areas in mountain regions.

3. Willis, *Mechanics of Appalachian Structure:* 13th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Surv., Pt. II, pp. 217–283.

4. LeConte, *On the Structure and Origin of Mountains*, etc.: Am. Jour. Sci., Vol. XXXVIII, 1889, pp. 257–263; *Theories of the Origin of Mountain Ranges:* Jour. Geol., Vol. I, pp. 543–573.

5. Dana, *On the Origin of Mountains:* Ann. Jour. Sci., Vol. V, 1873, pp. 347, 423, and 474, and Vol. VI, pp. 6, 104, 161, 304, and 381.

6. Powell, *Types of Orographic Structure:* Ann. Jour. Sci., Vol. XII, 1876, pp. 414–428.

7. Tarr, *Mountains of New York*, in Physical Geography of New York State.

8. Gulliver, *Shoreline Topography:* Am. Acad. Arts and Sci., Vol. XXXIV.

9. Darwin, *The Structure and Distribution of Coral Islands:* Appleton.

10. Dana, *Corals and Coral Islands:* Dodd, Mead & Co.

11. Agassiz, Various Papers in Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard.

12. Heilprin, *The Bermuda Islands:* Appleton.

13. Various Papers on *coral islands* in *Nature*, Vols. 22, 35, 37, 39, 40, 41, 42, 51, and 55.

14. Davis, *A Shaler Memorial Study of Coral Reefs:* Amer. Jour. Sci. 40 (1915), 223–271.

CHAPTER X

TERRESTRIAL MAGNETISM

THE earth is a great magnet and, like the small magnet with which we are familiar, has two poles. One of these poles is called the *North Magnetic Pole* and the other the *South Magnetic Pole.* Generally speaking, one end of the magnetic or compass needle points toward one of these poles, and the other toward the other. If we were to follow the directions pointed by the compass needle, we would be led to the North Magnetic Pole in the one case, and to the South Magnetic Pole in the other.

The North Magnetic Pole is in latitude a little above 70°, and in longitude about 97° W., as nearly as known. Captain Amundsen reports that this pole "has no immediate situation" which probably means that it is not a definite point. The South Magnetic Pole is in latitude 72° 25′ S. and in longitude about 155° 16′ E. This position is calculated from the directions in which the compass needle dips at various stations in the vicinity of the pole. It was first reached by members of the Shackleton Expedition (under Professor David) in January, 1909.

It will be seen from the foregoing that the magnetic poles are far from the geographic poles, and that they are not exactly opposite each other. It is believed, too, that they are not quite constant in position, though they are not known to wander widely. The North Magnetic Pole has been thought to have shifted its position some 50 or 60 miles in as many years, following 1830, though this determination does not appear to be conclusive.

Since the north end of the magnetic needle points to the North Magnetic Pole, it follows that the compass does not indicate true north and south in many places. At points northward from the North Magnetic Pole, the "north" end of the needle points in a southerly direction. At points to the south it points to the northward, at points east, westward, and at points west, eastward. The departure of the needle from the true north and south is *magnetic declination.* Lines connecting places of equal declination are

isogonic lines. A line connecting places of no declination is an *agonic line.*

Fig. 447 shows an agonic line in the United States passing from Lake Superior to South Carolina. Along this line the magnetic needle points due north and south. All places east of this line have *west declination,* and all places west of this line have *east declination.* In general, declination increases with increasing distance from the agonic line. In Maine, for example, the declination is more than 20° W. at a maximum, and in Washington more than 20° E. (Fig. 447). At Chicago the declination is about 3° E.;

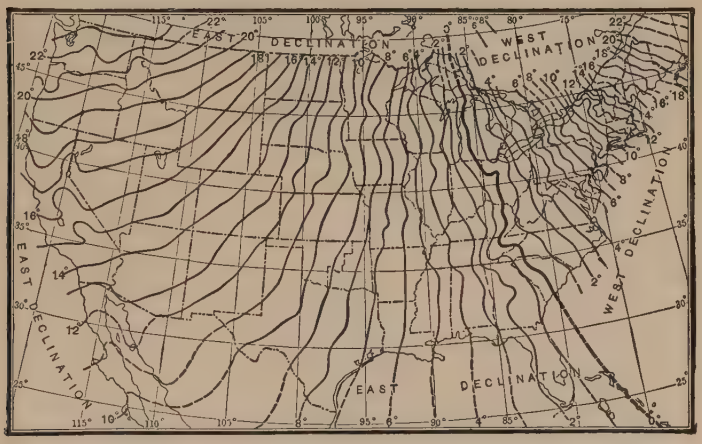


Fig. 447.—Isogonic lines for the United States, 1902. The heavy line is an agonic line, or line of no declination. (U. S. Coast and Geodetic Surv.)

at New York nearly 10° W.; at Denver about 13° E.; and at San Francisco about 18° E. It will be seen that it is important to know the magnetic declination of a region, if the compass is to be used there for determining directions.

The declinations shown in Figs. 447 and 448 are interfered with locally by certain rock formations, especially magnetic iron ore. In the vicinity of large bodies of such ore, the needle may depart widely from the declination indicated by the lines of Figs. 447 and 448.

Since the magnetic poles shift slowly, the declination at any place varies. It is not certain, however, that all variations in magnetic declination are due to the shifting of the magnetic

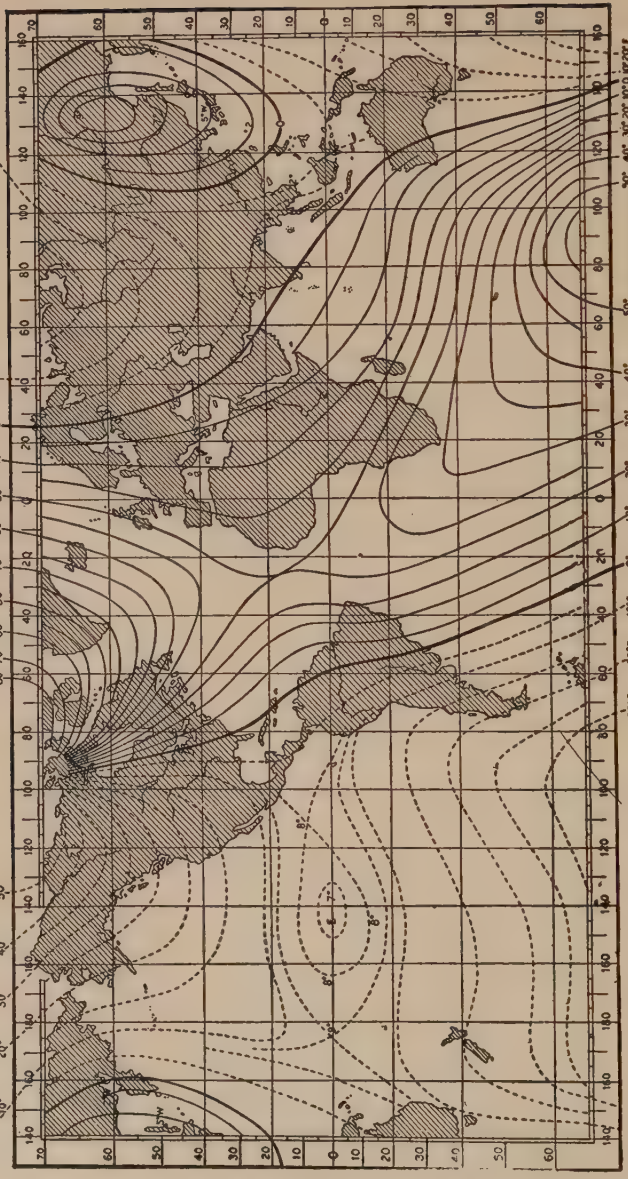


FIG. 448.—Lines of equal magnetic declination, 1905. (British Admiralty.)

pole. The declination at Chicago has shifted more than 2° since 1820.

Dip. The magnetic needle does not take a horizontal position in most places. At the magnetic poles it should be vertical, and the north end would be down at the North Magnetic Pole. Its position would be reversed at the South Magnetic Pole. Half-way between the magnetic poles, that is, at the magnetic equator, the needle should be horizontal.

Intensity. Magnetic intensity varies greatly from place to place, and slightly from time to time in the same place.

The causes and the conditions of change of terrestrial magnetism are not well understood.

PART II

CHAPTER XI

EARTH RELATIONS

Form. The form of the earth approaches that of a sphere, but, since it is not exactly a sphere, it is said to be a spheroid. The form has been determined in various ways: (1) Ships have sailed quite around it. This proves that it is everywhere bounded by curved surfaces, though it does not prove that it is a sphere or even a spheroid. If it had the shape of an egg, it would be possible to sail around it. (2) It has been found that when vessels go to sea their lower parts disappear first. When a vessel has gone four miles, the lower five feet of its hull is out of sight to an observer on the shore, if his eye is five feet above the level of the sea. Similarly, when a vessel approaches land, its highest parts are seen first by observers on the land, while to observers on the vessel high lands are seen first and the low lands later. From the vessel the spires and chimneys of houses appear before the roofs, and the roofs before the lower parts. These phenomena show only that the earth has a curved surface; but it is found that in whatever direction vessels sail, and from whatever port they start, objects on land disappear at about the same rate. This means that the curvature is *nearly the same in all directions.* A body whose curvature is *the same* in all directions is a sphere, and a body whose curvature is nearly the same in all directions is nearly a sphere. The form of the earth therefore does not depart greatly from that of a sphere. (3) Again, the earth sometimes gets directly between the sun and the moon. It then casts a shadow on the moon, and this shadow always appears to be circular, though its edges are not very clearly defined. (4) The direction of the plumb-line (the perpendicular to a horizontal surface on the earth) changes from point to point on the earth's surface, and it changes by an angle which is almost (but not quite) exactly proportional to the distance between the points, wherever they are. If the change of

direction were *exactly* proportional to the distance between two points, wherever taken, the earth would be a sphere (Fig. 449).

This point may be put in another way. The stars are very far from the earth. As one travels along the earth's surface, the apparent directions of the stars change, and the angle of change is almost exactly proportional to the distance traveled, wherever the starting-point, and whatever the direction of travel. The

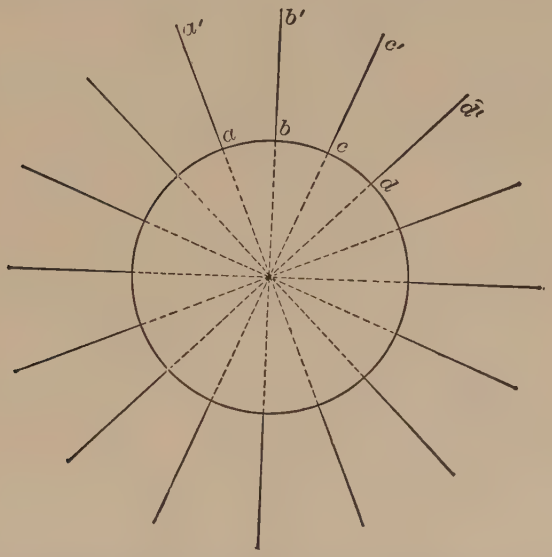


FIG. 449.—The circle represents the earth's circumference. The extensions of the radii represent the directions of the plumb-lines at various positions. The distance from *a* to *b* is the same as that from *b* to *c* and *c* to *d*, and the change in the direction of the plumb-line, that is, the angle between *aa'* and *bb'*, is nearly the same as that between *bb'* and *cc'*, *cc'* and *dd'*, etc. This is true for all parts of the earth. Though the angles are nearly the same, they are not precisely the same.

significance of this change in the position of the stars appears to have been correctly interpreted, in general terms at least, by certain Greek students as early as 640 B.C. The same idea appears to have been entertained at various subsequent times by individual students. Columbus recognized it in the statement: "I have always read that the world, comprising the land and the water, is spherical, as testified by the investigations of Ptolemy and others, who have proved it by the eclipses of the moon and other observations made from east to west, as well as *by the elevation of the pole*

(pole star) *from north to south.*"[1] In these and other ways[2] it is known that the form of the earth does not depart greatly from that of a sphere.

Size. The circumference of the earth is nearly 25,000 miles and its diameter nearly 8000 miles. Since the earth is not a perfect sphere, its various diameters and circumferences are not exactly equal. Its longest diameter is 7926.5 miles, and its shortest nearly 27 miles less (7899.7 miles). The shortest circumference is about 42 miles shorter than the longest.

The surface area of the earth is nearly 197,000,000 square miles, and its volume, exclusive of the atmosphere, about 260,000,000,000 cubic miles. The earth is between five and six times as heavy as an equal volume of water would be.

Motions

The earth has two principal motions. These are (1) rotation, and (2) revolution around the sun. The earth rotates on its shortest diameter, called its *axis*. The ends of the axis of rotation are the *poles*, and the circumference midway between them is the *equator*. The equator is the longest circumference of the earth. Lines from pole to pole on the earth's surface are *meridians*, and all meridians converge at each pole.

Rotation. The rotation of the earth is demonstrated by simple experiments. 1. If a body is dropped from a high tower, it does not fall to a point immediately beneath that from which it fell. Instead, it always falls a little to the east of the point from which it started. This is explained as follows: If the earth rotates, any point must move faster than any other point which is nearer its center, for the same reason that a point on the rim of a wheel moves faster than a point between the rim and the hub. If the earth is rotating, the top of a tower must be moving forward faster than the bottom. In this case, the falling body, starting from the top of the tower, has a forward velocity greater than that possessed by the base of the tower. Under these circumstances, the falling body must gain on the base of the tower in the direction of rotation; that is, if the earth rotates to the east, the falling body will be farther to the east, relative to the base of the tower, when it reaches the ground than when it started; it seems to fall away from

[1] Hakluyt Soc. Pub., *History of Columbus's Third Voyage*, Vol. II., p. 129.

[2] See Moulton's Introduction to Astronomy, pp. 114–124.

the tower to the east (Fig. 451). If the earth rotated to the west, the body would fall the other way. Since such a body always falls to the east, and since nothing but the rotation of the earth to the east seems to explain this fact, it is taken as proof that the earth rotates in that direction. The actual deviation in our latitude is about one inch for 500 feet of fall.

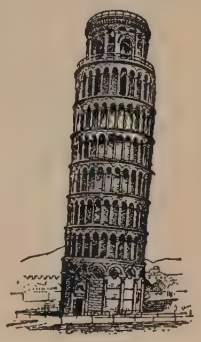


FIG. 450.—The leaning tower of Pisa, where some of Galileo's famous experiments on falling bodies were performed.

Fig. 451 illustrates the principle involved in the falling body. Let AB = the earth's radius, and m the top of a tower (height greatly exaggerated) above the earth's surface. Suppose a body is dropped from m. If the earth were not rotating, it would fall in the direction of the plumb-line, and would strike the surface at B. Suppose, however, the earth is rotating at such a rate that BA turns to $B'A$ while m is falling to the surface. If it were not for the attraction of the earth, m would go in a straight line to m'. Gravitative attraction is at right angles to this line mm', and, though it does not change the amount of motion of m in the direction m', it imposes upon it a new motion toward the earth. The result is that it describes the curved line mR, and strikes the earth at R, a little beyond the foot of the perpendicular $m'B'$[1].

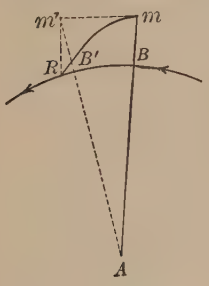


FIG. 451.—Figure to illustrate the effect of rotation on a falling body as explained in text.

2. Another experiment, which shows the same thing, may be performed with a pendulum (known as *Foucault's pendulum*). If a pendulum attached to a ceiling is set swinging parallel to a given line on the earth's surface, as, for example, parallel to a line on the floor, it will be found a little later to be swinging in a plane which is not parallel to the original line. The pendulum changes its direction, with reference to the line along which it was started, more rapidly near the poles and less rapidly near the equator. If it could be set swinging along a meridian so near a pole that one end of the swing barely reached the pole, it would be found that the pendulum was swinging at right angles to the

[1] Moulton's Introduction to Astronomy, pp. 148-149.

meridian on which it started after the earth had turned a quarter of the way around. This is illustrated by Fig. 452. If the pendulum were set swinging half-way between a pole and the equator, it would have departed from the plane in which it was started much less when the earth had turned a quarter of the way around. This also is illustrated by Fig. 452. If the pendulum were set swinging at the equator so that half the swing was on either side of it, the swing would remain parallel with its original position.

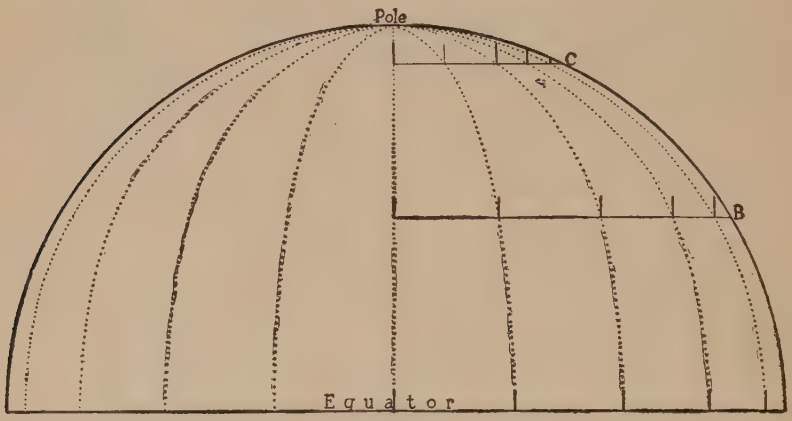


FIG. 452.—Diagram to illustrate the fact that the direction of the swing of the pendulum changes more rapidly in high latitudes than in low latitudes. A pendulum set swinging with the central meridian of the diagram, in different latitudes, will depart from the meridians, as shown at the right, in six hours. There is no departure at the equator, much in middle latitudes, and still more in high latitudes.

The departure of the pendulum, except at the equator, from the plane of the meridian in which it was set swinging often is said to mean that the meridian in the plane of which it first swung has changed its position, and in its new position is not parallel to the position in which the pendulum started to swing. The pendulum itself continues to swing in its original plane, but this plane is no longer parallel to the meridian in its changed position. According to this statement, the pendulum *seems* to have changed its direction, because we determine direction by meridians, and the successive positions of a meridian on a spherical rotating body do not remain parallel with one another, except at the equator of the rotating body.

This change in the direction of the pendulum, which is universal except at the equator, is always in the same direction in the northern hemisphere, and always in the same direction in the southern hemisphere, and proves that the earth rotates. Change in the direction of the pendulum does not take place at the equator, so the explanation runs, because the meridians there are all parallel with one another, and the successive positions of a given meridian therefore are all parallel. According to this statement of the case, the apparent change in the direction of swing of the pendulum takes place less rapidly midway between the equator and the poles than near the poles (Fig. 452), because the meridians are more nearly parallel with one another in the former position than in the latter.

If this were the full explanation of the matter, the swing of the pendulum should always be parallel to its original position at the end of 24 hours, whether the pendulum was near the equator or near the pole. This is not the case, and the above statement is therefore not an adequate explanation of the phenomenon. Though full explanation of the dependence of the rate of variation of the direction of the pendulum's swing on latitude cannot be given here, it is well understood.

The form of the earth is consistent with its rotation, but can hardly be said to prove it. Any body which is not perfectly rigid (and no body is) would be somewhat flattened at its poles, and somewhat bulged at its equator, by rotating. This is the condition of the earth, for the diameter between the poles is the shortest diameter, and the diameters in the plane of the equator are the longest. The amount of flattening which would result from rotation depends on (1) the rate of rotation, and (2) the rigidity of the body. The faster the rotation and the less rigid the body, the greater the polar flattening.

The rate at which a point on the surface of the earth moves, as a result of rotation, varies greatly. Points on the equator move fastest, because they have farthest to go in the time of one complete rotation. At the equator, where the circumference is nearly 25,000 miles, a point moves nearly 25,000 miles a day, as a result of rotation. Half-way between the equator and either pole, a point moves about 17,600 miles per day, while at the poles the rate of motion resulting from rotation is zero.

Effect of rotation. The most obvious effect of rotation is the alternation of day and night, for one side of the earth and then

the other is turned toward the sun during each rotation. But it is to be noted that the alternation of day and night does not of itself prove rotation. Day and night might be brought about equally well by the revolution of the sun around the earth each day. The period of rotation, 24 hours, determines the length of a day (day and night).

Revolution. The second principal motion of the earth is revolution about the sun. No simple experiment can be cited to prove this motion; but the fact of revolution may be illustrated in various ways.

If the positions of individual stars be observed for long periods of time, they appear to describe small circuits each year. Some of the circuits are nearly circular and some are nearly straight lines. Some of them are larger and some smaller. This annual change in the apparent position of the stars is their *annual parallax*. Either the stars make this annual circuit, *and all of them in the same length of time*, or the earth makes a yearly circuit in space, which causes the apparent annual movement of the stars. The fact that these apparent circuits of the stars are all made in the same length of time makes it more probable that they are due to motion of the earth, than that they are due to the individual motions of the stars themselves. The varying sizes of the apparent annual paths of the stars is accounted for by the fact that some of them are nearer to the earth than others, and the nearer they are, the larger the annual circuits they appear to describe. The varying shapes of the annual paths would be accounted for by the directions of the stars, some being in a polar direction from the observer and some in an equatorial direction.

Various other physical and astronomical phenomena, which need not be cited here, also show that the earth makes an annual circuit around the sun.

The length of time which the earth requires to make its revolution about the sun determines the length of the year. It is a little more than 365 days.

The path of the earth around the sun is its *orbit*. The orbit of the earth is not a circle, but an ellipse (Fig. 453), and the sun is in one of the foci, more than 1,500,000 miles from the center of the ellipse. When the earth is nearest the sun, the distance between the earth and sun is more than 3,000,000 miles less than when they are farthest apart. It so happens that the earth is nearest (about

91,500,000 miles) the sun in the early winter (early in January) of the northern hemisphere, and farthest (about 94,500,000 miles) from it in early summer (early in July). The *perihelion* (nearest the sun) and *aphelion* (farthest from the sun) dates are subject to slow periodic change. The perihelion date 4000 B.C. was September 21. It will be March 21 in 6590 A.D.

The motion of the earth through space during its revolution about the sun is at the rate of about 600,000,000 miles a year.

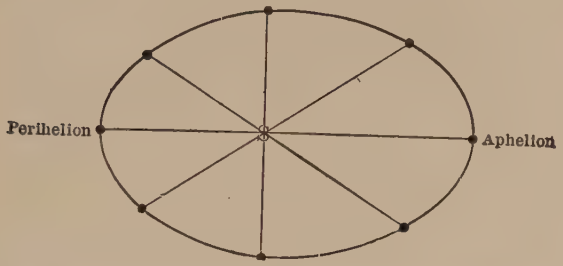


FIG. 453.—The orbit of the earth is an ellipse, with the sun in one of the foci.

This means that the earth travels about 1,600,000 miles daily, or about 66,666 miles hourly.

The earth's axis is inclined toward the plane of its orbit about $23\frac{1}{2}°$. This position of the axis, together with the motions of the earth, have much to do with the distribution of the heat and light received from the sun, and so with variations in the length of day (daylight) and night (darkness), and with the succession of the seasons. But before attempting to see how these changes are brought about, we must become familiar with certain terms which are used in the discussion of these changes.

Latitude, Longitude, and Time

Latitude. Circles parallel to the equator are *parallels.* The number of parallels which might be drawn is infinite, though but a few are represented on maps. On maps of small scale parallels are drawn every 5° or 10°. On maps of large scale they are drawn for every 1° or 2°, or in some cases even for fractions of a degree. The length of parallels varies greatly, those near the equator being longer, and those near the poles shorter.

The planes of all parallels are perpendicular to the earth's axis, but no circle perpendicular to the axis, except the equator,

is a great circle. This is shown in Fig. 454, which represents the earth in two positions. In the left-hand part, the half of each parallel and meridian represented is shown. In the right-hand part, the relation of parallels to the North Pole is shown. The distance between the equator and either pole is a *quadrant* (quarter of a circle), and is divided into 90 parts (90°) called *degrees*. The degrees are numbered from the equator to the poles. Each degree is divided into 60 parts (60′) called *minutes*, and the minutes, like degrees, are numbered from the equator toward the poles. Each

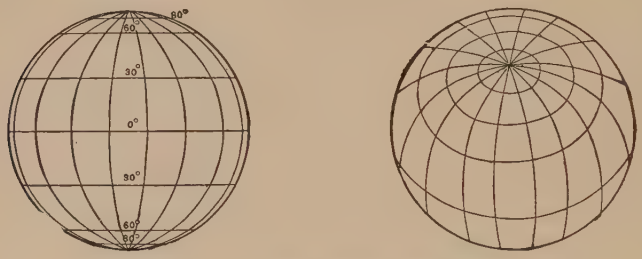


Fig. 454.—Parallels and meridians.

minute is divided into 60 parts (60″) called *seconds*, and the seconds are numbered in the same direction as the larger divisions. Distance north or south of the equator may therefore be indicated exactly by parallels. This distance is called latitude, the latitude of the equator being 0°.

In reality, *geographic latitude*, as distinct from *astronomic latitude* and *geocentric latitude*, is the angle between the plane of the equator, and the perpendicular to the standard spheroid at the place of observation. The angle is measured by the arc at the surface, and the length of the arc is commonly called the latitude.

If the latitude of a place is 40° 40′ 40″ N., its distance and its direction from the equator are accurately known, but, since the parallel of 40° 40′ 40″ runs quite around the earth, it is clear that the statement of the latitude of a place indicates only what parallel it is on, but not its position on that parallel.

Longitude. Position on a parallel is indicated by means of *meridians* (p. 412). The number of possible meridians is infinite, but, as in the case of parallels, only a few commonly are indicated on maps. One meridian, that passing through Greenwich, England, long ago was arbitrarily chosen as the meridian from which

distances east and west are reckoned. This meridian is the meridian of 0°. Distance east or west of this meridian is *longitude.* Places east of longitude 0° are in *east longitude,* and those west of it are in *west longitude.* East and west longitude respectively are regarded as extending 180° from the meridian 0°, that is, half-way around the earth. Degrees of longitude, like degrees of latitude, are divided into minutes and seconds.

The position of a place on the earth's surface is located precisely by means of meridians and parallels. If a place is in longitude 30° E., its distance east of the meridian 0° is known. If, at the same time, it is in latitude 30° N., it must be where the parallel of 30° N. crosses the meridian of 30° E. This gives its position on the earth's surface exactly.

Every meridian reaches each pole It might seem therefore that each pole has all longitude. But longitude is distance east or west of the meridian 0°, and there is neither east nor west at either pole. At the north pole the only direction is south, and at the south pole the only direction is north. The poles therefore cannot be said to have longitude, since they are not east or west of the meridian 0°.

Longitude and time. There is a definite relation between longitude and time. Since the earth turns through 360° in 24 hours, it turns 15° in one hour, or 15′ of longitude in one minute of time. The sun therefore rises one hour earlier at a place in longitude 0° than at a place in the same latitude in longitude 15° W., and one hour later than at a place in the same latitude in longitude 15° E. Similarly, noon comes an hour earlier in longitude 0° than in longitude 15° W. and an hour later than in longitude 15° E. All places on a given meridian have noon and midnight at the same time, and such places are said to have the *same time;* but places on different meridians have different times. Thus, when places on the meridian of Chicago have noon, it is afternoon on meridians farther east, and before noon on meridians farther west. If the longitude of two places is known, therefore, their difference of time may be readily calculated. Fig. 455 represents three cities on or near the parallel of 40°, and about 15° apart in longitude. On June 21 the sun would be 73½° above the horizon at noon in latitude 40°. Fig. 455 may be taken to represent noon at Philadelphia. *At this hour* (noon at Philadelphia) the sun is not so high above the horizon at St. Louis 15° farther west, and it

is still lower at Denver, 15° farther west than St. Louis. After the earth has turned 15°, it will be noon at St. Louis, and the sun will be 73½° above the horizon there, while it will have become lower at Philadelphia and higher at Denver. When the earth has turned 15° more (i.e., an hour after noon at St. Louis) it will be noon at Denver, and the sun will be 73½° above the horizon there. It is then an hour past noon at St. Louis, and two hours past noon at Philadelphia, by true, or sun time.

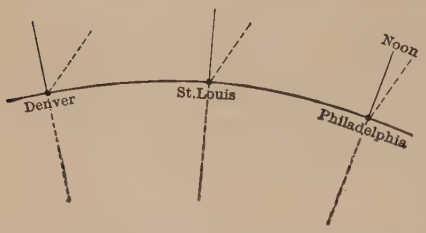


FIG. 455. — Diagram to illustrate the change in the altitude of the sun from hour to hour, in places in the same latitude. The diagram represents noon at Philadelphia at the time of the summer solstice. At this time the sun is there but a few degrees from the zenith, as represented by the dotted line. At St. Louis, in about the same latitude, but farther west, the sun is much farther from the zenith at the same hour; but when the noon hour arrives at St. Louis the sun will be as near the zenith there as it is at Philadelphia in the diagram. At Denver, which is still farther west than St. Louis, the sun is farther from the zenith than at St. Louis at the noon hour of Philadelphia. When it is noon at St. Louis the sun will be as far from the zenith at Denver as it is in the diagram at St. Louis. At this hour the sun will be about equally distant from the zenith at Denver and at Philadelphia, but at Philadelphia it will be west of south and at Denver east of south. When it is noon at Denver the sun will be as near the zenith there as it is in the diagram at Philadelphia, and the position of the sun in St. Louis will be as far from the zenith as it is in the diagram, but the sun will be west of south instead of east of south.

Though all places on a given meridian have noon and midnight at the same time, they do not have sunrise and sunset at the same hour at all times of year, for reasons which will appear later.

Variations of time with changes of longitude become apparent when long journeys are made either east or west. Thus a watch which has the correct local time in New York has not the correct local time when carried to Chicago. To avoid the difficulties of time-keeping growing out of travel, railroads have adopted a system of standard time. Under this system the country is divided into north-south belts, about 15° wide, and all places in each belt use the time which is correct for the central meridian of that belt. The railway time in adjacent belts differs by one hour. By this system, the clocks and watches do not show correct *local* time anywhere

except on the central meridians of each belt. Fig. 456 shows the standard-time zones.

Lengths of degrees. The length of a degree of longitude, as measured on the surface of the earth, is the $\frac{1}{360}$ part of a parallel. Since the parallels are very much shorter near the

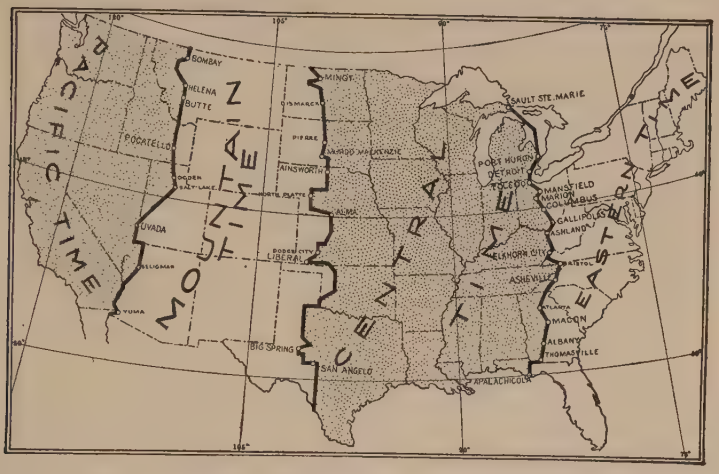


FIG. 456.—Map showing the standard-time zones now in use in the United States.

poles than near the equator, the length of a degree of longitude varies with the latitude. At the poles, where the length of the parallel becomes zero, the length of a degree of longitude also becomes zero.

In latitude	0°,	1° of longitude	=	69.65 miles
" "	10°,	1° " "	=	68.16 "
" "	30°,	1° " "	=	59.95 "
" "	60°,	1° " "	=	34.67 "
" "	75°,	1° " "	=	17.96 "

Degrees of latitude are measured along meridians. They also vary in length. The length of a degree of latitude has been measured in several places. In India it is about $68\frac{3}{4}$ miles, while in Sweden, the most northerly land where it has been measured, it is $69\frac{1}{4}$ miles. At the poles, it is calculated that it must be about $69\frac{4}{10}$ miles. In the United States, the average length is about 69

miles. The lengths of the degrees of latitude at different distances from the equator are shown below:

In latitude	0°,	1° of latitude	= 68.704	miles
" "	30°,	1° " "	= 68.881	"
" "	60°,	1° " "	= 69.230	"
" "	90°,	1° " "	= 69.407	"

Degrees of latitude increase in length as the poles are approached, because the earth is flattened a little at the poles. That this is the meaning of the variation in the length of the degree is

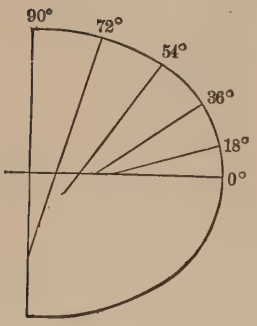


Fig. 457.

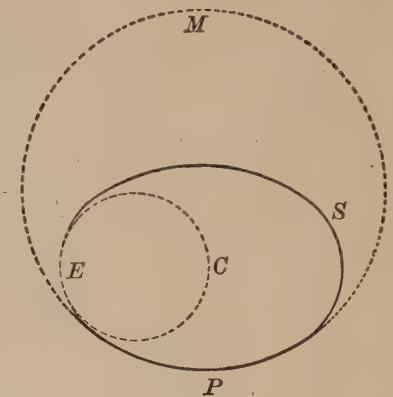


Fig. 458.

Fig. 457.—Figure to illustrate the fact that the longer degrees of latitude toward the poles means polar flattening. The curve is the half of a spheroid, more oblate than the earth. The radiating lines are represented as 18° apart; that is, the distance from 0° to 18° is 18/360 of the circle of which this arc is a part. Similarly the distance from 18° to 36° is 18/360 of the circumference of which this curve is an arc, and so on. The curve between 72° and 90° is much longer than the curve between 0° and 18°.

Fig. 458.—The curve S represents a meridian section of the earth (the flattening being greatly exaggerated). The circle C coincides with S near the equator E, and the larger circle M coincides with it near the pole. A degree of arc on S near P is of about the same length as one on M, while one on S near E is of about the same length as one on C. Since the circle M is larger than the circle C, a degree on S near P is longer than one near E.

shown by Figs. 457 and 458. In the study of Fig. 457 it is to be remembered that a degree is $\frac{1}{360}$ of the angular distance about a point, and, measured on a circumference, it is the $\frac{1}{360}$ part of the circumference described about the point from which the angle is

measured. Since the degree is longer in high latitudes than in low, it means that the arc on which it is measured *is the arc of a larger circle* than that on which the degree in low latitudes is measured. The $\frac{1}{360}$ of a larger circumference is longer than the $\frac{1}{360}$ part of a smaller circumference. Thus, the distance on the circumference between 0° and 18° is much less than that between 72° and 90° (=18°). In other words, the center of the circumference on which a high-latitude degree is measured, is not the same as the center from which a low-latitude degree is measured (Fig. 457).

Fig. 458 shows the same thing in another way. The oblate curve S represents a meridional section of the earth, with the flattening greatly exaggerated. The circle C coincides with S at the equator E, while the circle M coincides with it at one pole, P. A degree of arc on the curve S near P is about as long as a degree on M, while a degree of arc on S near E is about as long as a degree on C. A degree of arc on M is clearly much longer than a degree of arc on C.

The actual measurement of the length of a degree of latitude is a difficult matter, but the principle on which it is measured is easily understood. At any given point in the northern hemisphere the north star is a certain number of degrees above the horizon. When the observer, starting from a given point, has gone directly northward until the star appears one degree higher above the horizon at the corresponding hour, he has gone one degree (Fig. 459.) In practice, the measurement is complicated, because the surface of the land is everywhere somewhat uneven, and allowance must be made for every irregularity. A line measured along the uneven land surface would be too long. Again, the degree is to be measured at sea-level. The land is above sea-level, and therefore the measurement on the land surface must be corrected, not only for all unevennesses of surface, but for elevation above sea-level.

Fig. 459.—Diagram to illustrate the way in which a degree of latitude is measured. When the observer has traveled so far along the surface that the position of the pole-star has changed 1°, the distance between the two stations, A and B, is a degree.

Inclination of axis and its effects. The sun's rays illuminate one-half of the earth all the time. The border of the illuminated half is called the *circle of illumination* (Fig. 460). All places within the circle of illumination have day, while all places outside it

have night. If the axis about which the earth rotates were perpendicular to the plane in which the earth revolves about the sun, the circle of illumination would always pass through the poles. Under these conditions the half of each parallel would be illuminated all the time. When the half of each parallel is constantly illuminated, the days and nights on each parallel are equal, for it takes just as long for a place at A (Fig. 460) to move to B (6 hours) as for it to move from B to A' (6 hours). If the axis of the earth were perpendicular to the plane of its orbit, days and nights would always be equal everywhere. Since days and nights are not equal at all seasons on most parts of the earth, it follows that the axis on which the earth rotates is not perpendicular to the plane of its orbit.

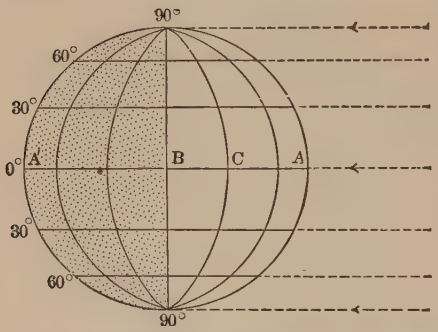


FIG. 460.—Diagram to illustrate the fact that half of the earth is illuminated by the sun at any one time. The line between the illuminated half and the half which is not illuminated, is *the circle of illumination*.

If the earth rotated on an axis perpendicular to the plane of its orbit, the sun's rays would always fall on a given place at the same angle at the same hour of the day. Thus at A, Fig. 460, the sun's rays would fall vertically at noon; while at the same hour (noon at A) they would fall at a lesser angle at C; but the angles of the rays at A, at C, and at B would always be, respectively, the same at the same hour of the day, in whatever part of its orbit the earth found itself. The same relations would hold for points on all parallels. Now the sun's rays do not fall at the same angle at the same place at the same hour at all times of the year. In middle northern latitudes, for example, the sun is much higher above the horizon at noon in summer than in winter. This variation of the angle at which the sun's rays strike the earth at a given place at a given hour of day, as well as the unequal lengths of days and nights in most places at most times of year, is the result of inclination of the axis on which the earth rotates as it revolves around the sun. The position of the axis is essentially constant throughout the year, and though its changes are more considerable in long

periods of time, they may be disregarded when short periods are considered.

The effect of the inclination of the axis is illustrated by Fig. 461, which represents the earth in four positions in its orbit. In the position marked March 21, the half of each parallel is illuminated. At this time, therefore, days and nights are equal everywhere. In the position marked June 21, more than half of all the parallels of the northern hemisphere are illuminated, and there the days are more than 12 hours long and the nights correspond-

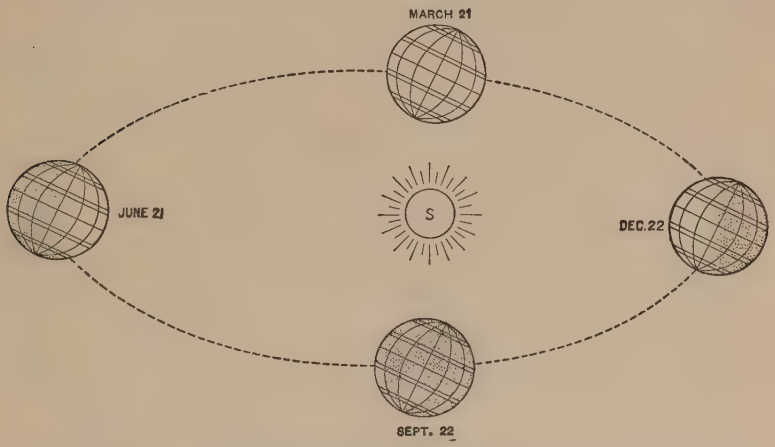


FIG. 461.—Diagram showing the position of the earth and of its illumination at the solstices and equinoxes.

ingly shorter. In the southern hemisphere the nights are longer than the days. In the third position, September 22, the days and nights are again equal everywhere, for the circle of illumination bisects every parallel. In the fourth position, December 22, more than half of each parallel in the southern hemisphere is within the circle of illumination, and there the days are longer than the nights, while in the northern hemisphere the nights are longer than the days. Twice during the year, therefore, on March 21 and September 22, the days and nights are equal everywhere. These times are known as *equinoxes*. The March equinox is the *vernal* equinox, and that in September the *autumnal* equinox.

When the earth is in the relation to the sun shown in the position marked June 21, Fig. 461, the days are longer at all places in the northern hemisphere than at any other time, and the rays of

the sun fall perpendicularly on the surface farther north (in lat. 23° 27½′) than at any other time. This is the *summer solstice*. The *winter solstice* comes six months later, when the sun's rays strike the earth vertically nearly 23½° south of the equator. Days in the southern hemisphere then are longer than at any other time of year, and those of the northern hemisphere shorter. The distribution of light and the relative lengths of day and night in various latitudes are further illustrated for the solstitial dates by Figs. 462 and 463.

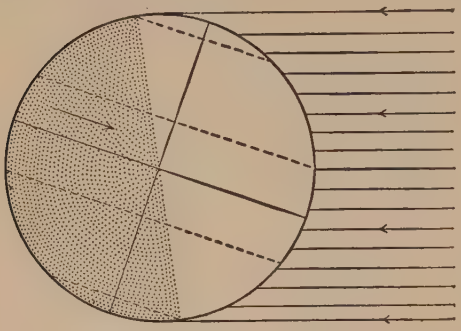


Fig. 462. — Diagram to illustrate the effect of inclination of the earth's axis on the length of day and night. In the figure, more than half of every parallel of the northern hemisphere is illuminated. The days are therefore more than twelve hours long, and the nights less, since the half of each parallel is the measure of 180° of longitude, and 180° of longitude corresponds to twelve hours of time. Similarly less than half of every parallel of the southern hemisphere is illuminated, and the nights are therefore more than twelve hours long.

These figures also show that the *days and nights are always equal at the equator*, since the equator is always bisected by the circle of illumination. *Days and nights are not always equal in any other latitude*, unless at the poles, where there is one day of six months and one night of six months, each year.

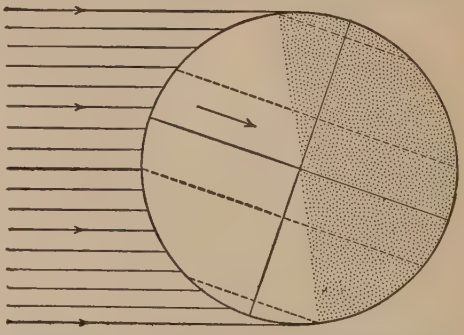


Fig. 463.—The relation of the earth to the sun's rays at a time six months later than that represented in Fig. 462. The conditions of day and night in the hemispheres are reversed.

Apparent motion of the sun. The effect of the inclination of the axis of the earth is *to make the sun appear to move north and south* once during each revolution of the earth about the sun. The effect on the earth is illustrated by Fig. 464. That is, the revolution of the earth about the sun, while it rotates on an axis in-

clined toward the plane of its orbit, makes the sun *appear* to move from a place where his rays are vertical 23½° (nearly) north of the equator (direction *S*, Fig. 464), to a place where they are vertical 23½° (nearly) south of the equator (direction *W*), and back again, in one year.[1] The result, so far as the earth is concerned, is as if the sun moved from *S*, which corresponds to the time of the summer solstice, to *A*, which corresponds to the time of the autumn equinox, to *W*, which corresponds to the time of the winter solstice, then back again to *Sp*, which corresponds to the spring equinox, and to *S*, while the earth is making one circuit about the sun.

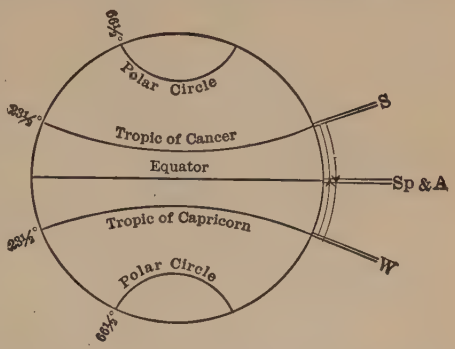


FIG. 464.—The inclination of the earth's axis, as it revolves about the sun, makes the sun appear to travel north and south. The sun is vertical at the equator on the 21st of March (Sp.), then appears to move northward until it is vertical 23½° north of the equator (S), then appears to move southward until it is vertical again at the equator (A), then south until it is vertical 23½° south of the equator (W.), and then north again until it is vertical at the equator. These changes are accomplished in the course of one year as a result of the revolution.

When the sun's rays are vertical in latitudes north of *Sp*, the days are longer than the nights in the northern hemisphere, and the sun's rays strike the surface in the northern hemisphere less obliquely than they do in the southern hemisphere. When the suns rays are vertical at *Sp*, days and nights are equal everywhere, and when they are vertical south of *Sp*, days are longer than nights in the southern hemisphere, and the sun's rays are more nearly vertical there than in the northern hemisphere.

The northernmost parallel where the sun's rays are ever vertical is called the *tropic of Cancer*. The corresponding southernmost parallel is the *tropic of Capricorn*. The tropics are nearly 23½° from the equator, because the axis of the earth is inclined by that amount toward the plane of its orbit. The sun is vertical at the

[1] The inclination of the earth's axis is not quite constant. Its inclination in 1908 was 23° 27′ 4.5″. Three thousand years ago its inclination was about 23°. The extreme variation possible is 2° 37′.

tropic of Cancer at the time of the summer solstice, and at the tropic of Capricorn at the time of the winter solstice. The parallels just touched by the circle of illumination at the time of the solstices are the *polar circles*. They are as far from the poles as the tropics are from the equator. They are, therefore, in latitude about 66½° (66° 33′). The one in north latitude is the *Arctic circle*, and the one in south latitude the *Antarctic circle*.

The effects of inclination of the earth's axis on the length of days and nights may well be emphasized by comparing the lengths of days and nights as they now exist, in our own region, with those which would exist if the axis of the earth were inclined 45° toward the plane of its orbit instead of 23½°. It is also instructive to study the conditions which would exist with reference to day and night (1) if the earth did not rotate during its revolution around the sun, and (2) if it rotated once in the period of its revolution. In the latter case, the results would depend on the *direction* of rotation.

Latitude and sun altitude. The solution of certain problems in the determination of latitude and sun altitude will help to a clearer understanding of the changes in the relations of sun and earth due to the movements of the latter.

At the time of equinox, the sun is directly overhead at the equator at noon. One degree north of the equator, i.e., in latitude 1° N., the sun will appear 1° from the *zenith* (i.e., the point directly overhead) at noon, or 89° above the horizon. This is the same as saying that the *altitude of the sun* is 89°. Five degrees north of the equator (lat. 5° N.) the sun will appear 5° from the zenith at noon, and his altitude (above the horizon) is 85°.

If, therefore, the altitude of the sun at a given place at noon at the time of an equinox is known, the latitude may be determined. Thus if the altitude of the sun is 30° at the time of an equinox, the observer must be 60° from the place where it is vertical, that is, in latitude 60° N. or 60° S. Similarly if the latitude is known, the altitude of the sun at noon at the time of equinox may be determined. Thus in latitude 40°, the sun must be 50° above the horizon at noon, for latitude 40° is 40° from the place where the sun is vertical.

Any other dates besides the equinoxes may be used if the latitude where the sun is vertical is known. Thus at the time of the summer solstice, when the sun is vertical in latitude 23½° N., it is 23½° from the zenith, or has a noon altitude of 66½°, at the

equator. It has the same altitude in latitude 47° N., for this place, like the equator, is 23½° from the place where the sun is vertical.

Reversing the problem, we may determine the latitude of a place if we know the noonday altitude of the sun there, and the latitude where the noonday sun is then in the zenith. Suppose, for example, the altitude of the sun is 40° at noon at the time of the June solstice, what is the latitude of the place? Since the altitude of the sun is 40°, the place must be 50° from the place where the sun is vertical, that is, 50° from latitude 23½° N. This is 73½° N. or 26½° S.

Problems.

Note. In the solution of these problems the student will find it helpful, in many cases, to make diagrams representing the conditions of the problem.

1. What is the altitude of the sun at noon at the time of an equinox, (1) In latitude 50° N.? (2) In latitude 50° S.? (3) In latitude 75°?

2. What is the altitude of the sun at noon at the time of the summer solstice. (1) In latitude 30° N.? (2) In latitude 30° S.? (3) In the latitude of New York? (4) In the latitude of Vancouver? (5) In latitude 75° N.? (6) In latitude 66½° S.? (7) At the north pole?

3. Formulate a rule for finding the altitude of the sun (*a*) at the time of an equinox, and (*b*) at the time of a solstice, the latitude of the place being given.

4. In what latitude or latitudes is the sun 30° above the horizon at noon at the time of an equinox?

5. In what latitude or latitudes is the sun 75° above the horizon at noon at the time of an equinox?

6. In what latitude or latitudes is the sun 40° above the horizon at noon at the time of the June solstice?

7. In what latitude or latitudes is the sun 80° above the horizon at noon at the time of the December solstice?

8. What is the latitude of the place or places where the sun is 10° above the horizon at noon at the time of the June solstice?

9. Formulate a rule for finding the latitude of a place from the noon altitude of the sun.

10. In what direction and at what altitude would the sun appear (*a*) at midnight, and (*b*) at noon, to an observer in latitude 75° N. at the time of the summer solstice?

11. To an observer at the equator, in what direction would the sun appear to rise on June 21? What would be the noon altitude of the sun at the equator on the same day?

12. What would be the noon altitude of the sun at Chicago on June 21? On December 21?

13. In what latitude is the altitude of the sun the same, at noon, at the time of an equinox and on June 21?

14. What would be the effect on the length of days and nights at the time of the summer solstice, if the axis of the earth were inclined 45°?

15. What would be the conditions of day and night in our latitude, if the earth did not rotate on its axis?

16. What would be the effect on day and night if the earth rotated on its axis in the same time that it revolves about the sun?

The Solar System

The solar system includes the sun and all the bodies which revolve about it. There are eight planets, of which the earth is one. Named in the order of their distance from the sun, commencing with the nearest, the planets are; Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. Most of the planets have satellites corresponding to our moon. The following table shows some of the more important facts about the planets;

	Diameters in Miles	Volume Earth = 1.	Mass Sun = 1.	Density Water = 1.	Mean Distance from Sun in Million Miles.	Sidereal Period in Years.	Inclination of Orbit to Ecliptic.	Number of Satellites.
Mercury...	2,765	0.05	$\frac{1}{9,647,000}$	3.70	36.0	0.24	7° 0′	0
Venus.....	7,826	0.89	$\frac{1}{405,000}$	4.89	67.2	0.62	3 24	0
Earth.....	7,926.5* 7,799.7†	1.00	$\frac{1}{332,000}$	5.53	92.9	1.00	0 0	1
Mars.....	4,352* 4,312†	0.14	$\frac{1}{3,020,000}$	3.95	141.5	1.88	1 51	2
Jupiter.....	90,190* 84,570†	1264.00	$\frac{1}{1,047}$	1.33	483.3	11.86	1 19	9
Saturn.....	76,470* 69,780†	759.00	$\frac{1}{3,502}$	0.72	886.0	29.46	2 30	10
Uranus.....	34,900	63.40	$\frac{1}{22,760}$	1.22	1781.9	84.02	0 46	4
Neptune....	32,900	82.30	$\frac{1}{19,500}$	1.11	2791.6	164.78	1 47	1

*Equatorial. † Polar.

Besides the planets and their satellites, the solar system includes numerous (more than 600) *asteroids*, bodies much smaller than the planets, intermediate in position between Mars and Jupiter, and those *comets* which revolve about the sun. These bodies have little influence on the earth, and nothing further need be said of them in this place.

REFERENCES

1. Johnson, Mathematical Geography: Am. Bk. Co.
2. Moulton, Introduction to Astronomy: Macmillan.
3. Comstock, A Textbook of Astronomy: Appleton.
4. Young, General Astronomy: Ginn & Co.
5. Todd, A New Astronomy: Am. Bk. Co.

PART III

THE ATMOSPHERE

CHAPTER XII

GENERAL CONCEPTION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Substantiality. When the atmosphere is still, we are hardly conscious of its existence. We walk through it without feeling its resistance. Compared with land or even with water, it seems most unsubstantial. But when the air is in motion, that is, when the wind blows, we are conscious that it is very real and substantial, for the force of the wind may be so great that it is difficult to stand or walk against it. Trees and buildings occasionally are blown down, and quantities of dust and sand are picked up and carried to great heights. These familiar phenomena show that the air is a real substance, and that, when it moves rapidly, even strong objects give way before it.

A strong wind is not equally strong at every instant; it comes in gusts. When a strong gust of wind strikes a high building, the air is reflected from the wall, much as a ball is. If a strong gust of wind is followed the next instant by a weak wind or a lull, the air rebounding from the wall may have great force in a direction opposed to that of the main wind. These reflected winds occasionally blow people down, for they blow in the direction opposite to that against which the body is braced. Such accidents are convincing arguments that the air is very substantial.

The same conclusion may be reached in still another way. If the air is pumped out of a cylinder whose top is covered by a thin piece of rubber, the rubber cover is pressed down into the cylinder, and may even be broken. The force which presses it down is the weight of the air above it. If the cylinder is of weak material, such as thin glass, the pressure of the air outside may crush it when the air inside is pumped out. The cylinder does not break when full of air, because the pressure on the inside balances

that on the outside. If the cylinder is of tin instead of glass, the pressure of the air on the outside may bend in its sides when the air is pumped out. These experiments, as well as the phenomena of the wind, show that the air is something real, and that it has weight. The amount of pressure which the air exerts, that is, its weight, has been determined. At sea-level, it is nearly 15 (14.7) pounds to the square inch.

Relation to the rest of the earth. The atmosphere is commonly called an envelope of the earth. More properly it is *an envelope of the rest of the earth*, for it is itself as much a part of the earth as the rocks are. It goes with the rest of the earth through space, and is essential to life and to most of the processes which are in operation on the earth's surface. It is the medium through which moisture is distributed, and it has much to do with the temperature of the earth. Without the air, therefore, the earth would be a very different body. Some conception of its functions may be gained by trying to think what the earth would be without it. This point will be recalled from time to time, as our study proceeds.

The atmosphere is in reality more than an envelope of the rest of the earth, for it penetrates the soil and rocks down as far as there are holes and cracks, and its constituents are dissolved in the waters of the sea, and in all the waters on the land and beneath its surface.

Density. The laws which govern the distribution of gaseous matter are known. From them it is known that the air, which is but a mixture of gases, is denser below and progressively less dense above. This is the same as saying that there is more air in a cubic foot of space at sea-level than in a cubic foot of space at higher levels. To this general rule there are exceptions, locally and temporarily, but they need not be considered here. Similarly there is more air in a cubic foot of space 1000 feet above sea-level than in the same space 2000 feet above sea-level, and so on. This means that the particles of which gases are composed are nearer together at low altitudes than at high altitudes. The reason is readily understood.

If a cubic foot of air were pressed from all sides, it could be squeezed into a smaller space, and the more the pressure, the smaller the space into which it could be compressed. Now at the bottom of the atmosphere the air is pressed down by all the air

above. At the height of 1000 feet above the sea, the air is pressed down by all the air above that level, and so on. The bottom of the air in low places is under most pressure, and therefore is densest

It is largely because the air becomes rarer with increase of altitude that mountain-climbing is difficult. As the climber goes higher and higher, it becomes more and more difficult to breathe. He may take in the same number of cubic inches of air each time he inhales, but each cubic inch contains less air the higher he goes. Finally the air gets so rare as to stop further ascent. It should be noted, however, that it is not simply the decreasing amount of air taken into the lungs which makes it difficult to ascend to great heights. The cold, the snow and ice, and perhaps the very steep slopes of high altitudes, all are obstacles. Furthermore, the body is not adjusted to the lessened pressures of the higher altitudes.

Height. How high above the sea and land does the air extend? No positive answer can be given to this question, though something is known about it.

1. The greatest altitude reached by any mountain-climber is about 24,000 feet, or more than four and one half miles. At this altitude there was air enough to make breathing possible to one exercising actively. A considerable quantity of air, therefore, exists at a height of more than four miles. Its upper limit must be considerably higher.

2. Men have ascended to heights of more than six miles in balloons, and in one case (Coxwell and Glaisher, 1862) to a height of more than seven miles. In some cases the occupants of the balloons have become unconscious at high elevations, but in one case (Dr. Berson, Berlin, 1894 who reached 32,800 feet) this difficulty was overcome by carrying oxygen for breathing. Balloons without human occupants have risen nearly twenty miles. At the upper limit of their ascent, the air was still dense enough to carry the balloon.

3. From the phenomena of twilight, due to the refraction of light as it passes through the atmosphere, it may be demonstrated that the air extends to a height of at least 45 miles.

4. On almost any clear night "shooting stars" may be seen. These shooting stars, or *meteors*, are small solid bodies which come into the earth's atmosphere from outside. When they enter the atmosphere, they are very cold, for the temperature of space, outside the earth's atmosphere, is believed to be about −459° F.

As they approach the earth, they are traveling (falling) very fast, say 12 to 45 miles per second. In passing through the atmosphere, their movement is resisted by the air. The result is friction, and the friction with the air heats them. When they get red-hot, they may be seen. Now the height at which they begin to glow has been estimated in some cases, and is found to be, at a maximum, nearly 200 miles above sea-level. This shows that the atmosphere is *much more than 200 miles high, for the meteors must have come through the rare, cold upper air a very considerable distance before becoming red-hot.*

5. The aurora or "northern lights" sometimes seen in high latitudes is believed to be an electric phenomenon in very rare air. The height of the aurora is sometimes more than 100 miles. The southern ends of the streamers have even been calculated to be as much as 400 miles high. This shows that the air is dense enough to show electric phenomena at that height.

6. We know the weight of the atmosphere. We know also the rate at which a gas, or a mixture of gases, like the air, gets lighter with increase of altitude. The law is that the density is proportional to the pressure. If we go up till half the air is below us, the air at that height should be half as dense as it was at the bottom. If we rise again until half of the upper half of the air is below us, the air at that level is half as dense as it was at the first station. On this principle it would appear that there should be no upper limit; the air should simply get rarer and rarer without having a definite upper surface. Though this law holds in all places where experiments can be carried on, it is not known that it holds when the air is very rare.

7. All gases have a tendency to fly away from the earth, but are held by gravity. Gravity becomes weaker with increasing distance from the earth's center, and, at a sufficiently great distance, the earth would not be able to hold the gases of its atmosphere. That distance would be less for lighter gases, and greater for heavy ones. It is calculated that none of the gases of the atmosphere could be held by the earth at a distance greater than about 620,000 miles from the center of the earth.

From the above considerations it appears to be certain that the air extends much more than 100 miles above the rest of the earth, but how much more is unknown. Whatever its height, one-half the atmosphere (by weight) lies below a plane about 3.6 miles

above sea-level, three-fourths of it below a plane 6.8 miles above the same level, and seven-eighths of it below a plane 10.2 miles up. The highest mountain is about 6 miles high, so that nearly three-fourths of the atmosphere lies below the level of its top.

Volume. Since the height of the air is not known, its volume cannot be determined. If it extended up but 200 miles, its volume would be about one-sixth that of the rest of the earth; if it extended up 500 miles, its volume is nearly half that of the rest of the earth.

Mass. Great as is the volume of the atmosphere, its mass (measured by weight) is far less than that of the solid part of the earth, or even than that of the water. It has been estimated at about $\frac{1}{270}$ that of the water, and about $\frac{1}{1200000}$ that of the solid part of the earth. Its weight is about equal to that of a layer of water completely covering the earth to a depth of 33 feet. Sir John Herschel estimated the weight of the air resting on the other parts of the earth at $11\frac{2}{3}$ trillion pounds.

History. It is probable that the atmosphere has undergone changes in mass and volume in the course of its history. It was formerly assumed that the atmosphere is being gradually diminished, and that it would in time disappear, as the moon's atmosphere was assumed to have disappeared. But this assumption does not appear to be well founded. It is more probable that the moon never had an atmosphere, than that it has lost one it once had. Furthermore, the atmosphere is now gaining various gases from volcanic and other vents (p. 319), and probably always has done so. It probably is acquiring gases from space also. Though contributions from this source are inconsiderable now, they may not have been so always. The atmosphere is losing as well as gaining. Some gases, especially light ones like hydrogen, probably escape the attractive control of the earth and pass off into space. Other constituents of the air, like oxygen (p. 63) and carbon dioxide, are withdrawn from the air and locked up for long periods, if not permanently, in the rocks. The rates both of supply and loss fluctuate. When loss exceeds supply, the mass of the atmosphere must decrease; when supply exceeds loss, the mass must increase. It is believed that at least slight fluctuations of mass must have taken place repeatedly. Fluctuations in composition may have been more significant than fluctuations of mass and volume.

REFERENCES

The following references apply to Chapters XII to XIX. Numbers 1 to 6 are the most serviceable for the general student; Number 14 is helpful for the topic indicated by the title, and 15 is valuable constantly.

1. Milham, *Meteorology*: The Macmillan Co., 1912.

2. Waldo, *Elementary Meteorology:* Am. Bk. Co.; *Modern Meteorology:* Scribners.

3. Davis, *Elementary Meteorology:* Ginn & Co.

4. Bartholomew, *Physical Atlas; Meteorology:* Constable, London.

5. Moore, *Descriptive Meteorology:* D. Appleton & Co., 1910.

6. Ward, *Climate,* considered especially in relation to man: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1908.

7. Ward, *Practical Exercises in Meteorology:* Ginn & Co. Also Bull. Am. Geog. Soc., Vol. XXXVII, 1905, p. 385, and Vol. XXXVIII, 1906, p. 401.

8. Hann, *Handbook of Climatology:* The Macmillan Co.

9. Greely, *American Weather:* Dodd, Mead & Co.

10. *Illustrated Cloud Forms:* U. S. Hydrographic Office, Washington.

11. Davis, *The Temperature Zones:* Jour. Sch. Geog., Vol. I, Pp. 139–143.

12. Hayden, *The Great Storm off the Atlantic Coast of the United States, March 11-14, 1888:* Nat. Geog. Mag. Vol. I, pp. 40–58.

13. Greely, *Rainfall Types of the United States:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. V, pp. 45–58.

14. Moore, *Storms and Weather Forecasts:* Nat. Geog. Mag., Vol. VIII, pp. 65–82, and Vol. XVI, pp. 255–305.

15. *The Monthly Weather Review:* U. S. Weather Bureau, Washington.

16. Bulletin Mount Weather Observatory, U. S. Weather Bureau, Washington.

CHAPTER XIII

CONSTITUTION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Principal constituents. The atmosphere is remarkably constant in composition, and is composed chiefly of two gases, namely, *nitrogen*, which makes up about 78 per cent of dry air, and *oxygen*, which makes about 21 per cent. Some students of this subject think that the composition at great heights may be very different from that below, but up to heights of 10 miles at least, there appears to be little variation.[1]

Minor constituents. Beside these two principal constituents, the proportions of which do not vary much, there are several minor constituents, of which *argon* is most abundant. Other minor but extremely important constituents of air are *carbon dioxide* and *water vapor*. The former makes up about $\frac{3}{10000}$ by weight of the whole atmosphere, and its amount is nearly constant from day to day and year to year. *Water vapor* is water in particles too small to be seen. The total amount in the atmosphere at any one time varies within relatively narrow limits; but the amount varies greatly from place to place at the same time, and from time to time in the same place. Since this is the case, and since much of it frequently comes out of the atmosphere in the form of rain and snow, it often is regarded as something in the air, rather than as a part of it. The total amount in the air at one time is but a fraction of one per cent of the mass of the atmosphere. The water-vapor in the lower part of the atmosphere is no measure of the amount above. At the bottom of the atmosphere, water vapor may make as much as 4 per cent of the air in moist tropical regions.

Impurities. The air always contains some other gases which commonly are looked on as impurities, though they are not necessarily injurious to life or to natural processes in general. Gases arise from combustion and decay of organic matter, from various

[1] Humphreys has calculated that at a height of 80 kilometers (about 50 miles) $\frac{3}{4}$ of the air is hydrogen, though hydrogen is not more than $\frac{1}{3}$ as plentiful as CO_2 at the bottom of the air. At an elevation of 100 miles, according to the same calculation, there is little but hydrogen.

chemical processes used in manufacturing, from volcanic and other vents in the earth's crusts, etc. Their aggregate amount is small, but locally, as about some vents, they are so abundant as to be injurious to life. Thus in Death Valley in Yellowstone Park, animals straying into certain parts of the valley are overcome and killed.

The air always contains numerous solid particles, which collectively are dust. Though the dust in the air serves important functions, it is to be looked upon as an impurity rather than as a constituent.

Relations of constituents to one another. The various gaseous constituents of the air are mixed with one another, and each of them retains its own characteristics. The oxygen behaves essentially as if no nitrogen were present, and the nitrogen as if no oxygen were present. That the several constituents of the air are merely mixed, and not chemically united, may be shown in various ways. One of them is as follows: When air is liquefied and allowed to stand, its constituents evaporate independently. Nitrogen and carbon dioxide evaporate faster than oxygen, so that as the liquid air stands, the proportion of oxygen increases.

The Functions of the Atmospheric Elements

The various constituents of the air play various rôles in the economy of the earth.

Nitrogen is inactive. Though it is inhaled with the oxygen in breathing, it does not appear to be of direct use to animals. Both animals and plants need nitrogen, though few of them use the nitrogen of the air directly. Before most plants can make use of it, it must be combined with something else, into *nitrogen compounds*. From such compounds, animals and most plants derive the nitrogen they need.

Oxygen from the air is being consumed constantly by all animals. Air-breathing animals take it directly from the air, and water-breathing animals take it from the water in which it is dissolved. Oxygen is consumed by plants also, especially by green plants. Oxygen is consumed wherever combustion is going on, for combustion is primarily the union of oxygen with other substances, chiefly carbon. When oxygen enters into combination, it loses its distinctive characteristics. When organic matter decays, oxygen is consumed, for the decay of such matter is slow

combustion. In spite of the constant and rapid consumption of atmospheric oxygen by animals, and in all combustion, its amount does not appear to decrease. We must therefore infer that oxygen is supplied to the air about as fast as it is consumed. The sources of supply are several. Plants break up CO_2 into its elements, C and O, and set some of the oxygen free. This is perhaps the greatest source of supply of free oxygen. Oxygen received by the air in this way is not (or may not be) new to the air. Much of it at least is only returned to the air, after having been temporarily withdrawn. Oxygen also reaches the atmosphere from volcanic vents, by changes (deoxidation) which take place in certain kinds of rocks, and perhaps from other sources.

The *carbon dioxide* (CO_2) of the atmosphere, though a very minor constituent so far as quantity is concerned, is very important. We have already seen that it is being constantly produced by the burning of coal, wood, peat, gas, etc., and by the decay of all organic matter. It is also added to the air by all animal respiration, and it is poured into the air from volcanic vents, often in great quantity. It is probable that some "shooting stars" contain carbon, for some of the corresponding bodies (*meteorites*), which are so large that they are not reduced to dust in the atmosphere, but reach the earth as masses of rock or metal, contain carbon. Any carbon which meteors contain must be burned to CO_2 in the upper air. It is probable that there are still other minor sources of this gas.

Carbon dioxide is supplied to the atmosphere very rapidly from these various sources. For example, about 75 per cent of common bituminous coal is carbon. When burned, a ton of such coal would make about $2\frac{3}{4}$ tons of carbon dioxide, all of which goes into the atmosphere. A ton of hard coal, which contains a higher proportion of carbon, would produce still more carbon dioxide. If we knew the number of tons of coal burned daily, we could calculate the amount of CO_2 poured into the atmosphere daily as a result of its combustion. About a billion[1] tons of coal are mined each year, and if each ton of coal makes $2\frac{3}{4}$ tons of carbon dioxide it will be seen that the atmosphere would be supplied with CO_2 at the rate of $2\frac{3}{4}$ billion tons a year from this source alone. This figure takes no account of other fuels, such as wood, peat, natural gas, oil, etc. Neither does it take account of

[1] See Mineral Resources of the United States, an annual publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey.

the slow combustion (decay) of vegetable matter, nor of the CO_2 produced by respiration. When these and all other sources of carbon dioxide are considered, it seems safe to say that carbon dioxide is being supplied to the atmosphere at the rate of several billion tons a year; yet the amount in the air does not increase enough to be noted from year to year, or even from generation to generation. It must therefore be taken out of the atmosphere about as rapidly as it enters.

The losses of carbon dioxide from the air come chiefly (1) through green plants, of which it is the chief food, and (2) through combination with mineral matter, for the CO_2 of the air is constantly uniting with mineral matter in the solid part of the earth. It will be seen therefore that some of the CO_2 is making a continuous round of change. It is taken out of the air by plants, and its constituents, or some of them, become a part of the woody tissue of the plant. In this process of transformation some of the oxygen is set free in the air. The carbon of the plant is then burned either in a fire or by decay, and the carbon dioxide produced passes back into the air to be used by plants again. Much carbon dioxide goes through this round each year, for much vegetation grown during one warm season is burned or partially decayed before the next. It will readily be seen, too, that some of this gas might go through a cycle of change involving its return to the atmosphere more than once in a season.

The various sources of supply of carbon dioxide are not always equal at the same place, and are not equal at different places. Thus, the amount produced by stove and furnace combustion is much greater in winter than in summer, while the amount produced by the decay of plant and animal matter is much greater in summer than in winter. It is to be remembered, however, that the warm season in one hemisphere corresponds to the cold season in the other; but since there are fewer people in the southern hemisphere than in the northern, there is less burning of fuel there, and since there is much less land in the southern hemisphere, there is less decay of land vegetation. Volcanoes are more active at some times than others, and probably give forth most carbon dioxide when most active. The amount produced by animal respiration is probably nearly the same throughout the year.

The rate at which carbon dioxide is taken from the air also varies. Since plants use it during the growing season only, the

plants of middle and high latitudes draw on the supply in the atmosphere chiefly during the summer. Though summer alternates in the hemispheres, there is much more plant life on land in the northern hemisphere than in the southern, and, so far as land plants are concerned, carbon dioxide must be consumed more rapidly in the northern summer than in the northern winter. Carbon dioxide also enters into combination with mineral matter more readily when it is warm than when it is cold, so that there must be some variation from season to season in the amount taken out of the air in this way.

At first thought it would seem that carbon dioxide should greatly increase in one hemisphere during the winter season, and diminish in the same hemisphere during the summer; but this is not the case. The reason is twofold. In the first place, the winds distribute the carbon dioxide. In the second place, even without winds, the carbon dioxide, like any other gas, tends to diffuse equally through the atmosphere. It is, for example, produced in great quantities in a large city in winter, for the thousands of tons of coal consumed daily in such a city produce enormous quantities of carbon dioxide. But instead of accumulating in great quantities over the city, it diffuses through the atmosphere, so that, even without winds, there would be no great excess over the region where it is produced. A slight excess in such situations is often noticed, for diffusion does not bring about equality of distribution instantaneously.

At present the supply and loss of carbon dioxide so nearly balance that no change in its amount is noted; but it seems quite possible that in the course of long periods of time the supply may have exceeded the loss, or vice versa. While therefore the amount of carbon dioxide varies but little from year to year, there is no warrant for the inference that it has not varied so from age to age.

Though a very minor constituent of the atmosphere, carbon dioxide has an important function other than in supplying food to plants. It has the power of retaining some of the heat radiated from the solid part of the earth into space. It therefore serves as a blanket to hold in the heat of the earth, and thin (tenuous) as the blanket now is, it is effective. If it were thicker, it would be more effective, making the earth warmer. So important is its function in this respect, that, if the amount of this gas in the atmosphere were doubled, the temperature of the earth, and espe-

cially of high latitudes, would be increased notably. On the other hand, if the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere were decreased: the climate would be much colder than now.

The Water Vapor in the atmosphere is a variable quantity. It is entering the atmosphere constantly, and is being condensed and precipitated in the form of rain, snow, dew, frost, etc., again to be evaporated, condensed, and precipitated. Like much of the carbon dioxide, it is making continuous rounds. The amount which the atmosphere may contain at any time depends on the temperature; but various other factors, such as the available local supply, help to determine the amount which is actually held. The importance of water vapor in the general economy of the earth will be referred to in later chapters, but it may be stated here that, like the carbon dioxide, it serves as a blanket to keep the earth warm. Furthermore, it is to be remembered that the water vapor of the air, constantly renewed, is the source of all the rain and snow, the work of which has been described on preceding pages.

The *dust* in the atmosphere includes all solid particles held in it. Ordinarily we do not see them, though clouds of dust are sometimes visible on windy days. The settling of dust from the air on all objects indoors or out is sufficient evidence of its universal presence (p. 49). It may be seen in indoor air if the room is darkened and light allowed to enter only through a narrow crack or small hole. Even air which appears clear may in this way be seen to contain innumerable particles of solid matter. The amount of dust sometimes is very great, as over cities and in dry and windy regions. During the fogs of February, 1891, it was estimated that the amount of dust deposited on glass roofs in and near London was six tons per square mile. The variety of matter in the dust was great, carbon (soot) being most abundant.

Some years since a method was devised for counting the dust particles in a given volume of air. The result showed that in the air of great cities there are hundreds of thousands of dust particles in each cubic centimetre (a centimetre is less than $\frac{4}{10}$ of an inch) of air; and that even in the pure air of the country, far from towns and factories, there are hundreds of motes per cubic centimetre. It has been estimated that "every puff of smoke from a cigarette contains about 4000 million separate granules of dust." The amount of dust in the air is greater over the land than over the sea, and in the lower atmosphere than in the upper.

The dust particles consist of *inorganic materials*, such as (1) tiny particles of mineral matter blown up from dry roads and fields, 2) particles of smoke from chimneys, (3) frequently of tiny bits of rock matter blown out of volcanoes, and (4) meteoric dust, or the dust which comes to the earth from outside space—such as the dust to which "shooting stars" are reduced in the atmosphere; and *organic particles*. Among the organic dust particles are the spores of many plants. The "dust" that is thrown into the air when a dry puff ball is broken may serve as an illustration. The fact that plant spores are nearly universal in the air is shown by the promptness with which a moist piece of bread or cake, or a moist piece of leather, becomes mouldy, especially in a dark, warm place. The moulds are plants, and the spores from which they grow were floating in the air, until they found a lodging-place suitable for their growth. In the blossoming season, the winds get much pollen dust from flowers. The scattering of pollen by the wind serves an important purpose in the plant world.

The number of bacteria found in a cubic metre of air at Montsouris (France) Observatory was 345, while in the same amount of air in the heart of Paris the number was 4790. These figures give some idea of the relative purity of country and city air.

Dust particles in the atmosphere play an important role in various other ways. They help to "scatter" the light of the sun, so as to illuminate better the whole atmosphere. The sun would appear more brilliant than now, if there were no dust in the atmosphere. The color of the sky, and sunset and sunrise tints, are affected by dust in the atmosphere. Dust particles also serve as nuclei about which water vapor condenses. It was formerly held that they were necessary for the condensation of water vapor in the atmosphere, but this appears not to be the case.

CHAPTER XIV

TEMPERATURE OF THE AIR

The temperature of the air varies from season to season, from day to day, and even from one part of a day to another. Because of the importance of temperature in all human affairs, it is convenient to have some method of measuring and recording it.

The thermometer. The temperature is measured by means of the *thermometer*, the principle of which is understood readily. It consists of a glass tube of uniform diameter, except for a bulb at one end. The bulb and the lower part of the tube are filled with some liquid, in most cases mercury. The mercury is then heated to its boiling temperature, so as to expel all air. When the tube is full of boiling mercury from which all air has been driven by the heat, it is sealed. On cooling, the mercury contracts so that it but partly fills the tube. Above it is a vacuum. When the temperature rises, the mercury in the tube expands and rises. When the temperature falls, the mercury contracts and sinks. The amount of rise or fall of the mercury in the tube indicates the amount of temperature change.

That the temperature may be read directly from the thermometer, a scale is marked on the tube. Two scales are in common use — the *Fahrenheit* and the *Centigrade*. The scales are made as follows: The thermometer tube is placed in boiling water, or in steam just over boiling water, at sea-level (760 mm. pressure), and allowed to remain there until the tube and its contents acquire the temperature of the water. The point to which the mercury rises in the tube under these circumstances is marked 212°, if the Fahrenheit scale is to be used. The tube of mercury is then put into moist pounded ice or snow, where it remains until the level of the mercury in the tube becomes stationary, and the level at which the mercury then stands is marked 32°. The space between the 212° mark and the 32° mark is then divided into 180 equal parts, each being called a degree (1° Fahr.). The marks on the tube may be made for each degree, for every two degrees, or for

every five degrees, according to the delicacy which is required of the thermometer.

The space below the freezing temperature is divided similarly into degrees, degree marks below 32° having the same spacing on the tube as the corresponding marks above. The 0° of this scale is 32° below the freezing-point. The scale is carried still lower on the tube, and the temperature below 0° is called "below zero." Thus 20° below zero means 52° below the freezing-point, and is written −20° Fahr. or −20° F.

The Centigrade scale is much simpler and better, though unfortunately in less common use in English-speaking countries. The height of the mercury at the freezing temperature under normal atmospheric pressure is marked 0°, and the boiling temperature 100°. The space between is divided into 100 parts, each of which is a degree (1° C.). The degree marks below zero have the same spacing on the scale as the degrees above. It will be seen that 1° C. is equal to 1⅘° Fahr. If this relation of degrees is remembered, degrees Fahrenheit may be translated readily to degrees Centigrade, or vice versa.

Heating of the Atmosphere

Sources of heat. The atmosphere receives heat from several sources, but that received from the sun so far exceeds that from all other sources that the others need not be considered here.

That much heat is received from the sun is shown by the fact that the temperature, as a rule, rises when the sun rises and sinks when the sun goes down, and by the further fact that the temperature generally is warmer on a sunny day than on a cloudy one, at the same season. It is true there are occasional exceptions to these general rules, for now and then a night is warmer than a day, and a cloudy day warmer than a sunny one. But these exceptions do not interfere with the general truth of the statement. The source of atmospheric heat which is second in importance is the interior of the earth; but the heat from this source is not enough to affect the temperature of the atmosphere sensibly.

Sun heating: insolation. The temperature of space is supposed to be about −273° C. (−459° F.). The more genial temperature which we enjoy results chiefly from the heat received from the sun; yet the earth receives but a very small part (less than $\frac{1}{2000000000}$) of the heat given off by that luminary. The amount received each

year, if equally distributed, is enough to melt a layer of ice about 141 feet thick over the entire earth, or to evaporate a layer of water 18 feet deep.

Each hemisphere receives the same amount of heat from the sun each year, but, because of the inclination of the earth's axis, the amount of heat in different latitudes is not the same. Two considerations are especially important in this connection. (1) Other things being equal, the earth gets most heat per unit area where the sun shines the greatest number of hours per day. In summer, the days are longest in the highest latitudes. *So far as length of day is concerned*, therefore, the poles should get more heat than any other part of the earth in summer. (2) Other things being equal, the land or water surface gets most heat per unit area where the sun's rays fall most nearly vertically. This is because (a) vertical rays are most concentrated, and because (b) vertical rays pass through a lesser thickness of the air which absorbs some of their heat. This is shown by Fig. 465. A given bundle of rays, 1, falling vertically on the surface, is distributed over a given space, while an equal bundle of rays, 2 or 3, falling obliquely on the surface, is distributed over a much great area, and therefore heats each part less. Again, the oblique rays, 2 and 3, pass through a greater thickness of atmosphere, and more of their heat has been absorbed before they reach the surface of the solid part of the earth. The angle at which the sun's rays reach the earth varies from place to place. It also varies at the same place from time to time, because the earth's axis of rotation is inclined to the plane of its orbit as the earth revolves about the sun. This is illustrated by Fig. 464, which already has been explained.

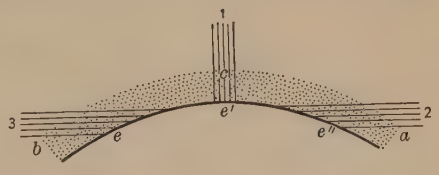


FIG. 465.—Diagram to illustrate the unequal heating power of the sun at different altitudes. When its rays are vertical they are concentrated on less space on the surface of the earth, and at the same time pass through less atmosphere, than when they strike the surface of the earth obliquely.

Primary distribution of heat. Remembering that it is the rotation of the earth on an inclined axis while it revolves about the sun (Fig. 461) which makes the sun appear to move north and south during the year (Fig. 464), we may study the effects of this

apparent motion of the sun on the distribution of heat received by insolation. From Fig. 463 we see that when the sun's rays are perpendicular to the surface of the earth 23½° south of the equator, they are most oblique at all points in the northern hemisphere, and least oblique at all points in the southern hemisphere. At this time, therefore, the southern hemisphere is receiving more heat than the northern, because of the direction of the sun's rays. At the same time, the days are longer in the southern hemisphere than in the northern, and this is a second reason why the southern hemisphere is receiving more heat than the northern at this time. After the time (winter solstice, December 22) when the sun's rays are vertical at 23½° S., they become perpendicular to the surface at points farther and farther north, and on March 21 they are vertical at the equator (Fig. 464). Days and nights are then equal everywhere, and the sun's rays are equally oblique in corresponding latitudes north and south of the equator. Any latitude in one hemisphere is then receiving the same amount of heat as the corresponding latitude in the other hemisphere.

After March 21, the sun appears to continue its journey northward until, on June 21, its rays are vertical at the tropic of Cancer, 23½° N. (Fig. 464), when the days of the northern hemisphere attain their greatest length, and the nights of the same hemisphere become shortest in all latitudes where there is alternation of day and night (Fig. 462). At the same time, the rays of the sun are less oblique in the northern hemisphere, as a whole, than at any other time. In the southern hemisphere the conditions are reversed. At this time, therefore, the northern hemisphere is being heated by the sun faster than at any other time of the year,while the southern hemisphere is receiving less heat than at any other time.

From June 21 to December 22 the sun appears to move so that its rays become vertical farther and farther south, and the preceding sequence of events is reversed.

The latitudes where the sun's rays fall vertically range from the tropic of Cancer to the tropic of Capricorn (Fig. 464). For the whole year, however, the sun's rays are, *on the average*, least oblique in the lowest latitudes. This is why the low latitudes are, on the whole, warmer than the high latitudes.

The actual amount of sun heat received during a day in different latitudes is determined by the length of day (hours of

sunshine) and the direction of the sun's rays; but it is to be noted that latitudes which have the longest days never have the vertical rays of the sun. Calculations based on these two factors have been made, showing the proportion of heat received in different latitudes during the whole year and during different seasons. For the year, the equator receives more heat than any other part of the earth. If the average amount of heat received there each day be taken as 1, the amount of heat received in a year is 365.2. The proportionate amount received in various other latitudes is shown in the following table:

Latitude	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°
Thermal days, or relative amount of heat yearly	365.2	360.2	345.2	321.0	288.5	249.7	207.8	173.0	156.6	151.6

From this table it is seen that latitude 40° receives about three-fourths as much heat as the equator, and latitude 70° a little less than one-half as much.

During the half of the year when the sun's rays are vertical north of the equator, most heat is received in latitude 25° N. During this half of the year the sun's rays are most nearly vertical, on the average, in latitude 11¾° (half-way between the equator and latitude 23½°); but the days are longer farther north. During the three months centering about June 21, the zone of greatest heat is in latitude 41° N. The sun's rays are here less nearly vertical than in latitudes near the tropic of Cancer, but the days are much longer. Between May 31 and July 16[1] the north pole receives more heat than any other part of the earth, the continuous day offsetting the great obliquity of the sun's rays at this time. At the time of the summer solstice, the area immediately about the north pole receives 20% more heat than an equal area at the equator ever receives, and 36% more than the equatorial region receives at that time. Fig. 466 shows the amount of heat received from the sun in various latitudes of the northern hemisphere from the time of the vernal equinox to the time of the summer solstice.

[1] Hann gives these dates May 10 to August 3, a period of 56 days.

The temperature of one place is not necessarily higher than that of another because it receives more heat. No amount of heat for example, would make the temperature of Greenland warm *until after the snow and ice were melted.* All the heat received tending to raise the temperature above 32° F. would be expended in melting and evaporating the snow, without raising its temperature above 32° F. (0° C.). The region about the north pole does not get very warm, even when it receives more heat than the equator, because much of the heat is expended in melting ice and in warming ice-cold water, which heats very slowly, and runs away as soon as the heating is well begun.

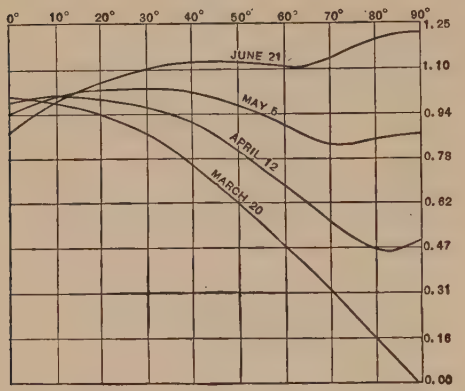


FIG. 466.—Diagram showing receipt of heat in different latitudes of the northern hemisphere for four dates between the vernal equinox and the summer solstice. The latitudes are indicated at the top of the figure, and the relative amounts of heat at the right. (After Wiener.)

What the sun does for the earth in the matter of heat is shown by the following table, which gives the estimated average temperatures (Centigrade) which would exist on the earth in different latitudes if there were no atmosphere. The figures in the upper part of the table are for the warmest and coldest months.

	Equator	Lat. 10°	Lat. 20°	Lat. 30°	Lat. 40°	Lat. 50°	Lat. 60°	Lat. 70°	Lat. 80°	Pole.
Warmest month,	67	67	70	74	75	75	73	76	80	82
Coldest "	56	50	36	16	−10	−45	−103	−273	−273	−273
Annual mean,	62	61	57	50	39	24	1	−43	−81	−105

Heating and cooling. Three processes are involved in the receipt, the loss, and the transference of heat by the air. These are *radiation*, *conduction*, and *convection*. To understand the distribution of temperatures on the earth, these processes must be understood.

1. *Radiation.* When the sun shines, the surface which its rays strike is warmed by absorbing the heat which the sun radiates. An object in front of a fire also is warmed by absorbing the heat radiated by the fire. A body need not be glowing hot, like the sun, to radiate heat. Any body warmer than its surroundings radiates heat. The body which radiates heat is itself cooled. A stove ceases to radiate heat soon after the fire has gone out. The land warmed by absorbing heat radiated from the sun during the day, is cooled by radiating its heat during the night. The rate at which a given body loses heat by radiation depends on the difference of temperature between it and its surroundings. Thus a hot stove will cool much more quickly in a cold room than in a warm one.

2. *Conduction.* If one end of a bar of iron, such as an iron poker, be put in the fire, the other end soon becomes hot. This means that the molecular motion, known as heat or *heat-energy*, set up in one end of the rod by the fire, is passed along from particle to particle to the other end. This method of transmitting heat is *conduction.* Any cold body in contact with a hot body is warmed by conduction. Thus, the bottom of the air is warmed by contact with the land, that is, by conduction, wherever the temperature of the land is higher than that of the air.

3. *Convection.* When a kettle of water is placed on a hot stove, the water in the bottom is heated by conduction, that is, by contact with the hot kettle. The heating of water causes it to expand, and when the water in the bottom of the kettle expands, it becomes lighter than the water above. The heavier water above then sinks and pushes the warmer lighter water below up to the top. This sort of movement is *convection.* Other illustrations of convection are afforded by stoves, fireplaces, etc. A thin sheet of light paper may be momentarily sustained in the air over a hot stove, or even carried up by the rising air of the convection current. Again, as the air in a chimney is heated, it expands and becomes less dense than the air about it. The cooler, denser air about the base of the chimney or stove crowds in below the expanded air in the chimney, and crowds it up out of the chimney. Since the air entering the chimney is being expanded continually, the updraught continues as long as there is fire. Every draught from a chimney therefore is an example of convection. It will be seen that in convection the molecules of the gas or liquid change their

position relative to one another, while in conduction in a solid, they do not.

Convection is of so much importance in connection with the temperature of air and water, that the process may be analyzed a little more fully. Suppose a vessel of water (Fig. 467) heated at the central point of its bottom. (1) This water heated at *a* expands, lifting the overlying column of water, producing a very low dome on the surface at 1. (2) Under the influence of gravity, water flows off the dome. The results in unequal pressures at the bottom of the dish. It is greater at *c* than at *a*, because there are more molecules above *c* than above *a*. (3) Because of the excess of pressure at *c*, water moves from *c* to *a*, displacing (lifting) the warmer water at that point, and producing the upward movement indicated in the center of the figure. (4) The centerward movement from *c* causes the water above *c* to sink to take the place of the water which has moved toward *a*, while the lifting of the water over *a*, by continued heating renews the dome, and the lateral motion from center to side at the surface.

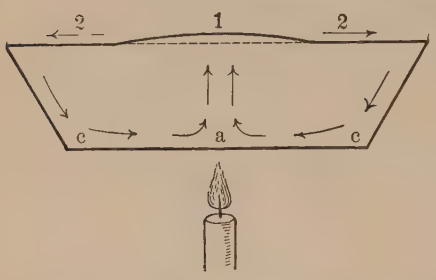


FIG. 467.—Diagram to illustrate convection in a vessel of water heated at one point at the bottom. Surface dome greatly exaggerated.

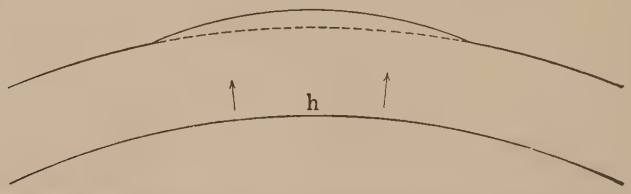


FIG. 468.—The initial rise of air, as a result of heating, is due to the expansion of the part heated.

When the surface of the land is warmed by the heat radiated from the sun, it heats the air above it, partly by conduction, but chiefly by radiation. The heated air expands and rises. The beginning of the rise is due to expansion (Fig. 468). If the air in a

given region were expanded as shown in the figure, the air at the top of the expanded column would run over (spread) much as water would under similar conditions. *After this has taken place,* the amount of air at the base of the column *h* will be less than the amount at the same level outside the heated area, and air from outside the heated column will flow in to balance the deficiency. This inflow will push up the column of warmed and expanded air, and

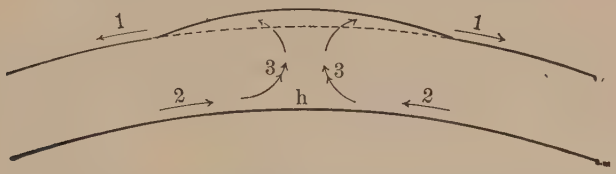


FIG. 469.—The permanent heating of the air over a given region gives rise to permanent convection currents.

further overflow above will cause inflow at the bottom. If the heated area continues to be heated, a permanent convection current will be established in the heated area (Fig. 469).

It is not necessary that the expanding air actually raise the upper surface of the air sensibly, as shown in Fig. 469, to establish a convection current. As it expands upward it compresses the

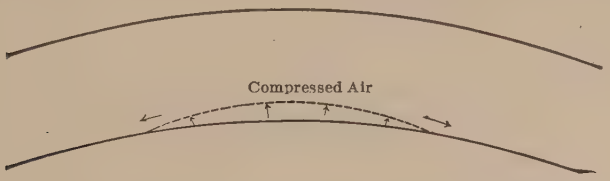


Fig. 470—Flow of air from above a heated area would take place even if the surface of the air were not raised.

air above the lower, heated, expanding part (Fig. 470). Where this compression takes place, the compressed air is heavier than that *at the same level about it,* and flows sideways to balance the discrepancy. This is what actually takes place in the air. It will be seen that convection *gives rise to horizontal, as well as to vertical, movements,* and that the horizontal movements take place at various levels.

How the sun heats the atmosphere. The atmosphere is heated by the sun in two principal ways; (1) It is warmed by the heat radiated from the sun as the rays of the sun come through it, and (2) the land and water below the atmosphere are warmed by absorbing the heat radiated from the sun, and they then radiate back into and through the air much of the heat they have received by insolation. Much of the heat thus radiated in absorbed by the air, which is thus warmed.

The amount of heat absorbed by the air from the direct rays of the sun is different in different latitudes, and depends chiefly on the distance the rays travel in the air: that is, on the verticality of the sun's rays (Fig. 465). The amount for different altitudes of the sun is shown in the following table:[1]

Altitude of the sun	0°	5°	10°	20°	30°	50°	70°	90°
Thickness of the atmosphere in units.....	35.5	10.2	5.56	2.90	1.99	1.31	1.06	1.00
Proportion of solar radiation reaching the bottom of the atmosphere	0.00	0.05	0.20	0.43	0.56	0.69	0.74	0.75

The non-luminous heat radiated into the air from land and water is more readily absorbed by the air than the luminous heat radiated by the sun, so that the atmosphere is heated more by radiation from below than by direct insolation. The lowest air is heated most by both earth radiation and insolation, because it is densest; and, being warmed, it gives rise to convection currents which warm the air above. Since convection currents involve horizontal as well as vertical movements, regions which are heated much give of their heat to regions which are heated less.

Whenever the land and water are warmer than the air which rests on them, they also warm it by conduction, and convection results. Warmer air also radiates heat to cooler air.

Heating and cooling of land and water. Land and water are heated unequally by the sun, the former being heated four or five times as fast as the latter by insolation. The reasons are several:

1. The absorption of a given amount of heat by a given amount of soil or rock raises the temperature of the soil or rock more

[1] Copied from Waldo's Elementary Meteorology, p. 28.

(about four times as much) than that of the same amount of water; that is, the *specific heat* of water is higher than that of the land.

2. Water is a good reflector, while the land is not. The latter therefore absorbs a larger proportion of the heat of the sun's rays.

3. Convection currents or movements are established in water as soon as its surface is heated locally. This prevents excessive heating at any one point. The land, on the other hand, being solid, is without movements of convection.

4. There is more evaporation from a water surface than from a land surface, other conditions being the same, and evaporation cools the surface from which it takes place.

5. Soil and rock are essentially impenetrable to light and heat rays, while water is not. The heat of insolation is, therefore, distributed, to begin with, through a greater thickness of water than of land. Being confined essentially to the surface of the latter, the temperature of the surface is made higher.

6. In addition to the foregoing reasons for the greater heating of land than of water by day, land cools[1] more readily than water by night. The result is that temperatures on land change more from day to night (and from summer to winter) than those of water.

Secondary distribution of heat. From what has preceded, it is clear that after heat is received by the earth from the sun, it is to some extent redistributed. This redistribution is accomplished chiefly by movements of convection, which affect both the air and water, especially the water of the ocean. It is also effected by air movements and water movements which are not convectional. The importance of ocean currents in redistributing heat received by insolation is great. It has been estimated that without them the average temperature of the equator would be about 131° F., instead of about 80° F. as now, and that of the poles about −108° F., instead of 0° (average for the year) as now.

What has been said above with reference to the temperature of the air has reference to its lower portion, up to a height of 2 or 3 miles. While within this zone the temperature decreases with increase of altitude, it decreases irregularly, chiefly because of (1) the very unequal heating of the surface beneath, (2) the

[1] The rate of cooling depends on radiation, conduction, specific heat, and rate of air movement.

movements of convection, and (3) storm movements (Chapter XVI).

From a horizon 2 or 3 miles above the bottom of the atmosphere up to a height of about 6 miles, the temperature decreases much more uniformly than in the lower zone, and at a height of 7 to 10 miles is very low, —60° to —71° F.

The isothermal layer. Above a height of 7 (lat. 51°-52°) to 10 (lat. 0°) miles, the temperature ceases to fall with increase of altitude. From this horizon, 7 to 10 miles above the bottom of the atmosphere, up to such heights as have been investigated (by balloons), the temperature varies so little that this part of the atmosphere has been called the *isothermal layer*. The temperature at its bottom is a little colder (about—71° F.) in winter than in summer (about —60° F.), and distinctly colder in low latitudes than in middle latitudes. Humphreys states that the earth has two atmospheres, (1) a low turbulent one, with a temperature which decreases upward, containing ⅔ to ¾ of the oxygen, nitrogen and argon, a still larger proportion of the CO_2, and most of the water vapor, and (2) a higher or outer one—the isothermal layer—floating on the first. This statement seems to imply that the isothermal layer extends to the top of the atmosphere; but there appears to be no warrant for this conclusion.

The explanation of the isothermal layer is not altogether agreed upon by those who have studied it, and a discussion of the explanations which have been offered, is beyond the scope of this chapter.[1]

The Seasons

In most latitudes the seasons commonly are said to be four—spring, summer, autumn, and winter; but they are not sharply separated from one another, and their exact limits are arbitrarily defined. In the United States, March, April, and May commonly are called the spring months; June, July, and August, the summer months; September, October, and November, the autumn months; and December, January, and February the winter months. Sometimes, however, spring is defined as the time between the vernal equinox and the summer solstice; summer the time between the

[1]Milham: Meteorology, p. 52; Rotch: Monthly Weather Review, May, 1908; Humphreys: Bull. of the Mount Weather Observatory, Vol. 2, 1909, p. 1; Dines: Monthly Weather Review, Vol. 43, Nov. 1915, pp. 551-56.

summer solstice and the autumnal equinox; autumn the time between the autumnal equinox and the winter solstice; and winter the time between the winter solstice and the vernal equinox. In the southern hemisphere the spring season comes at the time of autumn in the northern hemisphere, and the summer season there comes at the time of our winter, and so on. The vernal equinox of the northern hemisphere is the autumnal equinox of the southern, and the summer solstice of the northern is the winter solstice of the southern.

The first definition of season limits given above is based primarily on temperature. Summer is the three warmest months, so far as intermediate (temperate) latitudes are concerned, and winter the three coldest. The second definition of seasonal limits has an astronomical basis. The limits of the seasons are defined in still other ways in some countries. In our latitudes the conception of seasons is based primarily on temperature; but in some parts of the earth the distinction between seasons is based partly, or even largely, on elements other than temperature. Thus, in some low latitudes, where the temperature is always high, *wet* and *dry* seasons are more distinct than *warm* and *cold* ones. In the polar regions, on the other hand, while the temperature of winters is very much lower than that of summers, there is also a striking difference in the matter of light, and the warm season is the *light* season, and the cold season the *dark* one.

Differences between summer and winter. Aside from the higher temperature of summer in our latitude (middle latitude of the northern hemisphere), there are certain other obvious differences between summer and winter. The most important are (1) the days are more than 12 hours long in summer, and the nights less, while in winter the days are less than 12 hours long, and the nights more; and (2) the sun is much higher above the horizon at any given hour of the day (as noon) in summer, than at the corresponding hour in winter. This is the same as saying that the sun's rays are less oblique, at any given hour of the day, in summer than in winter (Fig. 461). Other differences between summer and winter in our latitude are the following: (3) the direction of sunrise and of sunset. In summer the sun rises to the north of east, and sets to the north of west. At the equinoxes it rises in the east and sets in the west. In the winter it rises to the south of east and sets to the south of west. (4) The amount of moisture

in the air varies with the season; but in some regions it is the warm season which is wet, while in others it is the cool season. (5) In some regions the winds change their direction and force with the change of seasons, as will be noted later. Along some coasts, the last point is of great importance. The change of directions of winds in these situations, is the result of changes of temperature.

Why we have summer when we do. Since the earth receives most of its surface heat from the sun, it follows that the period of the year when days are long and nights short must be warmer than the period when days are short and nights long; for long days and short nights mean long periods of heating and short periods of cooling daily, while short days and long nights mean short periods of heating and long periods of cooling daily. Not only this, but the sun's rays are more nearly vertical when the days are long, as shown by Fig. 471, and so have greater heating power. It follows, therefore, that in summer the surface is not only heated more hours a day than in winter, but the heat per hour is greater while the sun shines. These are the immediate reasons why summer is warmer than winter. The reasons why the days are longer at one time of the year than another have already been given (p. 426).

Change of seasons. The change of seasons may be understood from a study of Figs. 461 and 471. We have already seen (1) that the sun's rays are vertical at the equator at the equinoxes, and that days and nights are then equal everywhere; (2) that the northern hemisphere is being heated most by the sun at the time of the summer solstice, and least at the time of the winter solstice; (3) that the days are longer than the nights in the northern hemisphere from March 21 to September 22 (except in very high latitudes where there is continuous day for a long period); (4) that the sun's rays are less oblique in either hemisphere during the half of the year when the days are longer than the nights; and (5) that the relative lengths of day and night, and the angle of the sun's rays, are reversed in each hemisphere every half-year.

Since the northern hemisphere is being heated most at the time of summer solstice and least at the time of winter solstice, it would seem, at first thought, that these dates, respectively, should be the middle points of the hot and cold seasons; but this is not the case. It therefore follows that the temperature of any

given latitude is not altogether dependent on the amount of heat it is receiving from the sun at that time. Again, since the value of insolation in corresponding latitudes in the two hemispheres is equal at the equinoxes, it would seem, at first thought, that corresponding latitudes in the two hemispheres should have the same temperature at these times; but this, again, is not the case. In our own latitude, for example, March 21 is much colder than September 22.

The reason why places in our latitude are warmer at the time of autumnal than at the time of vernal equinox is because the warmth of the summer just passed has not all been lost. The soil and the rocks and the surface water still retain some of the summer heat. At this time, therefore, the northern hemisphere has a temperature higher than that which it would have if it depended solely on daily insolation. On the other hand, the temperature at the time of vernal equinox is lower than that which would seem appropriate from the insolation then taking place, because the cold of the winter just passed has not been altogether overcome. The soil, the surface rocks and waters still retain part of the cold of the winter just passed. The cold of spring is rather more enduring than the heat of autumn, for it is in some sense "stored up" in the snow, the ice, and the frozen ground.

Similarly, our summer solstice is not the hottest part of the year in the northern hemisphere, or the coldest in the southern, for the summer's heat has not altogether overcome the effect of the preceding winter in the northern hemisphere, and the heat of the preceding summer still tempers the cold in the southern hemisphere. The time of *maximum heat* therefore lags behind the season of *maximum heating.* Similarly, the time of *maximum cold* does not come till after the season of *minimum heating.* In middle latitudes the lag is about a month, but it is greater over the ocean than over the lands because the latter are heated and cooled more readily.

Seasons in other latitudes. Attention to the subdivisions of the year in latitudes other than our own will help to an understanding of the fundamental principles involved. At the equator, for example, the sun's rays are vertical twice each year, that is, at the times of the equinoxes. Twice a year, too, the sun's rays are vertical $23\frac{1}{2}°$ from the equator, once to the north and once to the south. The equator, therefore, has two seasons, occurring

at the time of our early spring and early autumn, which are somewhat warmer than two other seasons occurring at the time of our mid-summer and mid-winter. The variations in temperature at the equator are much less than in our own latitude, for the length of day and night never varies, and the angle of the sun's rays varies but 23½°, while with us, in middle latitudes, it varies 47°. At the equator, therefore, there is a fourfold division of the year, but the divisions do not correspond very closely with those of middle latitudes. The two divisions centering about the equinoxes are alike, and are warmer than the two (also alike) centering about the solstices. It might be said that there are two pairs of seasons at the equator.

In high latitudes the conditions are still different. The succession of seasons in latitude 75° N. may be taken to illustrate the conditions in latitudes above the polar circles generally. When the sun's rays are vertical 15° south of the equator (D, Fig. 471), the sun would appear on the horizon at noon in latitude 75° N. (d, Fig. 471), for this latitude is 90° from the place where the sun's rays are vertical. When they are vertical farther south than 15° S., points on the parallel of 75° N. will not receive the sun's rays. When the sun's rays are vertical in latitude 15° N. (B, Fig. 471), or in any latitude farther north, no point on the parallel of 75° N. will be in darkness during any part of the twenty-four-hour day. When the sun's rays are vertical in any latitude between 15° S. and 15° N., a part of the parallel of 75° N. will be illuminated, and all points on that parallel will have alternating light and darkness in the course of the twenty-four-hour day. (See explanation below Fig. 471.)

In latitude 75° then, there is a natural fourfold division of the year; one (summer) when daylight is continuous, one (winter) when darkness is continuous, one (spring) when there is alternation of day and night with the days lengthening, and one (autumn) when there is alternation of day and night with the nights lengthening. In other words, summer, according to this subdivision of the year, is the time during which the sun appears to move from 15° N. to 23½° N. (*B* to *A*, Fig. 471) and back again to 15° N. Autumn is the time during which the sun appears to pass from a position where its rays are vertical 15° N. to a position where its rays are vertical 15° S. (*B* to *D*). Winter is the time during which the sun appears to pass from 15° S. to 23½° S. (*D* to *E*) and back again to

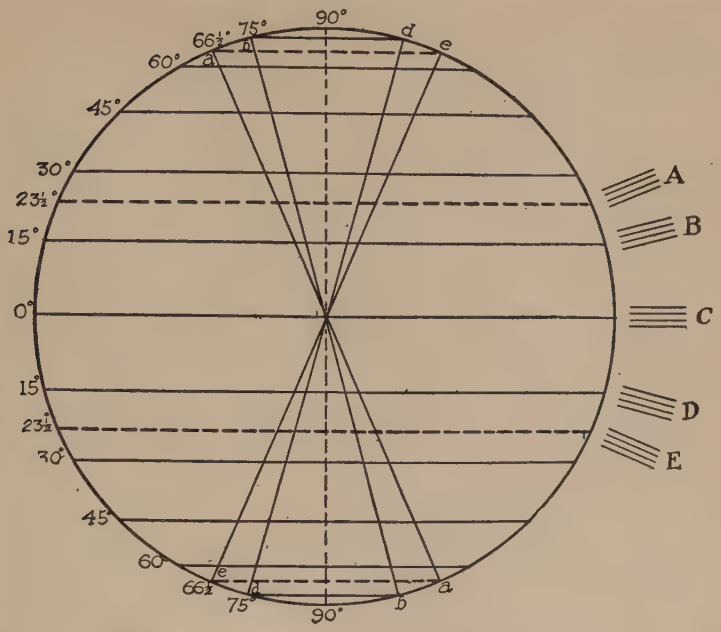


FIG. 471.—Diagram to illustrate seasons in latitude 75°. When the sun's rays are vertical at *C*, the circle of illumination is represented by the line 90°–90°. The half of each parallel of 75° is then illuminated, and days and nights on that parallel are therefore equal. The same is true of all other latitudes. When the sun's rays are vertical at *B*, in latitude 15° N., the circle of illumination is represented by *b*-*b*, the whole of the parallel of 75° N. is illuminated, and daylight is continuous throughout the twenty-four hours. No part of the parallel of 75° S. is illuminated at this time, and on that parallel darkness is continuous. When the sun is vertical at *A*, in latitude 23½° N., the circle of illumination is represented by *a*-*a*. While the sun appears to move from position *B* to position *A* and back again to *B*, the parallel of 75° N. is continuously illuminated, while the parallel of 75° S. at the same time is continuously in darkness. When the sun appears to move from the position where its rays are vertical at *B* to the position where its rays are vertical at *D*, a part of each parallel of 75° is illuminated, and during this time, therefore, there is light and darkness in the course of the twenty-four hours. When the sun's rays are vertical between *B* and *C*, more than half of the parallel of 75° N. is illuminated, and less than half of the parallel of 75° S. When the sun is vertical at *C* the half of each parallel of 75° (and of all other parallels) is illuminated, and days and nights are equal. While the sun appears to be passing from *C* to *D* less than half of the parallel of 75° N. is illuminated, and more than half of the parallel of 75° S. During this time, therefore, nights are longer than days in latitude 75° N., and days are longer than nights in latitude 75° S. When the sun is in a position where its rays are vertical at *D*, the circle of illumination is *d*-*d*. At this time all of the parallel of 75° N. is in darkness, and all of the parallel of 75° S. is in light. This condition continues while the sun appears to move on from the position where its rays are vertical at *D* to the position where its rays are vertical at *E*, and back again.

15° S., and spring the time when the sun is passing from 15° S. to 15° N. (*D* to *B*).

It will be noted that the lengths of the several seasons defined in this way are not the same. In latitude 75° the summer would be as long as the winter, and the spring as long as the autumn; but the spring and autumn would be nearly twice as long as the summer and winter, for during each of the former the sun moves through 30°, and during each of the latter but 17°. Not only this, but the lengths of the several seasons would vary with the latitude. In latitude 85° the summer and winter would be longer than in latitude 75°, and the springs and autumns correspondingly shorter.

There is a prevalent idea that in polar regions there is a day of six months and a night of six months each year; but it will be seen from the above, as well as from what has been stated before, that this notion is not correct. There is a six-months day and a six-months night at the poles only.

Effect of varying distance of the sun. Since the orbit of the earth is an ellipse, the distance of the earth from the sun varies in the course of a year. On this account, the amount of heat which the earth receives daily varies a little, being somewhat greater when the earth is nearer the sun, somewhat less when it is farther from it. But the variations in the amount of heat received by the earth because of its varying distance from the sun are of relatively little importance. At the present time, the northern hemisphere has its summers when the earth is farthest from the sun (*aphelion*), and its winters when it is nearest (*perihelion*). The southern hemisphere, on the other hand, has its summers when the earth is nearest the sun, and its winters when it is farthest from it. This condition of things is reversed every 10,500 years. At the present time, the southern hemisphere receives a little more heat from the sun in a day at the time of the winter solstice in the northern hemisphere, than the northern hemisphere does at the time of its summer solstice.

Effect of altitude on temperature. High altitudes are colder than low ones, and the average rate of decrease of temperature in the lower part of the atmosphere is about 1° F. for 300 feet (1° C. for 540 feet) of rise, for altitudes where observations are common. Decrease of temperature with altitude varies, however, from time to time and from place to place, being especially influenced by the temperature of the land or water surface beneath.

The rate of decrease of temperature for the first 100 feet or so of rise at the bottom of the atmosphere is much more rapid where the land or water is warm. One mile of ascent in the air means about the same decrease of temperature as a poleward movement of 800 miles.

When air rises it expands, because there is less weight of air above it tending to compress it. As a gas expands it is cooled, and as it is compressed it is warmed. Dry air should be cooled about 1° F. for every 183 feet it rises (1° C. for 329 feet). Moist air cools much less rapidly with expansion, for reasons which will appear later. Conversely, air is warmed as it descends and becomes denser.

High altitudes are colder than low, primarily because the air is thinner; but, in the case of isolated elevations, also because of the more complete exposure. The thinner air (*a*) absorbs less heat from the direct rays of the sun, chiefly because there is less carbon dioxide, less water vapor, and less dust; and (*b*) being thinner, it is less effective in retaining the heat radiated from the surface below.

In sunny days in summer the sunny sides of bare mountain surfaces, when free from snow, get very warm. If the air remained in contact with the warm rock surface for long periods of time, it would be notably warmed; but since it is, as a rule, moved on quickly, especially about isolated elevations of notable height, it is heated but little before it is replaced by other and colder air. On the sunny sides of high mountains, therefore, there may be great differences in temperature between the rock surface and the air above.

On the other hand, there are likely to be many cloudy days in mountains, and clouds shelter the rocks from the sun. This tends to reduce the *average* temperature of mountains as compared with that of low lands.

Again, where mountains are sufficiently high and not too steep to retain snow throughout the year, *their surfaces never are warmed above a temperature of 32° F.*, the melting temperature of snow. Temperatures have been observed in balloons up to elevations of about 7 miles. Sounding balloons have gone up to heights of about 16 miles. Temperatures of −70° F. have been recorded repeatedly by self-registering thermometers in "sounding" balloons sent up for this purpose. In one case a temperature of −90° F.

was recorded at an altitude of 47,600 feet. In this particular case, a temperature of -72° was found 6500 feet higher (at 54,100 feet). The temperature in the free air at high altitudes repeatedly has been found to be less than that of mountains at the same elevation.

It is to be noted that land surfaces at high altitudes may be heated quite as effectively by the sun as land surfaces at low altitudes. That this is the case is shown by familiar experiences in high mountain regions, where the surface of the rock may be very warm though the air is cool. A mountain surface such as that shown in Fig. 472 may receive the sun's rays much more perpendicularly than a flat surface. The rock is correspondingly heated while the sun shines; but as the sun goes down, the heated rock surface cools readily, and may, during the night, become much cooler than the surface of lower land.

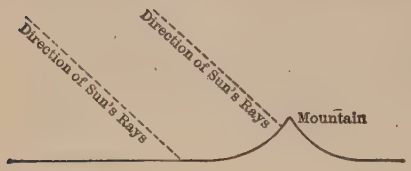


Fig. 472.—Diagram to show that the sun's rays may fall less obliquely on a mountain slope than on the plain adjacent. Under these circumstances they have greater heating power, so far as the surface of the land is concerned, on the mountain than on the plain.

It is to be noted that only the equatorward sides (the southern sides in the northern hemisphere and the northern sides in the southern hemisphere) of mountains receive the sun's rays more perpendicularly than a flat surface. The poleward slopes of mountains (outside tropical latitudes and sometimes within them) receive the sun's rays much more obliquely than flat surfaces, and they receive them fewer hours per day. This serves to reduce *the average temperature of mountain regions.*

Representation of Temperature on Maps

Distribution of temperature over the earth, and various other facts concerning temperature and its variations, are shown on *thermal maps* or *charts.* The principle on which they are constructed is simple.

Isotherms. A line may be drawn on the surface of the earth connecting points having the same temperature. Such a line is *an isotherm.* An isotherm connecting places having the same

average temperature for the year is an *annual isotherm.* An isotherm connecting places which have the same summer or the same winter temperature is a *seasonal isotherm.* Similarly there may be monthly isotherms, daily isotherms, etc. A map showing the distribution of isotherms for a year, a season, a month, or a day, is an isothermal map or chart. The line of highest temperature about the earth is the *thermal equator.* This line is not straight, and in general it lies a little north of the geographic equator.

Isothermal charts. Fig. 473 shows annual isotherms. It shows an isotherm of 80° enclosing a considerable area in the tropical region extending from the Americas eastward to northern Australia. This isotherm shows that all points enclosed by it have an average temperature of more than 80°. There are two isotherms of 70°, one north of the equator and one south of it. All points between the isotherm of 70° and the isotherm of 80° have an average annual temperature of more than 70° and less than 80°. In the Pacific, all points between the two 70° isotherms have a temperature of more than 70° and less than 80°. The map also shows two isotherms of 50°, one in the northern hemisphere and one in the southern. All points between the isotherms of 50° and 70° have an average temperature between these limits. The warmer portion of these zones in either hemisphere is the portion near the higher isotherm, that is, nearer the equator.

The chart expresses the general fact that temperatures are higher in equatorial regions and lower toward the poles, and this shows that there is a relationship between isotherms and latitude. The reason for this relationship has already been explained.

Fig. 474 shows the isotherms for January. As compared with the preceding map, this shows that the zone of highest temperature, and all isotherms, have been shifted to the south. The fact that the sun is shining vertically some distance south of the equator at this season, seems to be a sufficient reason for the change. This conclusion may be tested by referring to the isothermal chart for July (Fig. 475), for if the conclusion be right, the thermal equator and all isotherms should there be found farther north than in Fig. 473 or Fig. 474. Fig. 475 shows this to be the case.

Fig. 474 shows that the thermal equator is mostly south of the geographic equator in January, and Fig. 475 shows that the ther-

mal equator is wholly north of the geographic equator in July. In the former case it is in latitude 20° S. (nearly) in South Africa, and in the latter in latitude 40° N. (nearly) in southwestern Asia. In both charts it is farther from the equator on land than on sea. In Africa, the thermal equator is fully 40° farther north in July than in January, and in the Americas the shifting is still greater.

A comparison of Figs. 474 and 475 shows that the range of temperature between January and July is greater in high latitudes than in low. Thus in the southern part of Hudson Bay it is 80°; at Montreal about 50°; in Florida less than 30°; and at the equator in South America, less than 10°. The same charts show that the range is greater in the interiors of continents than on coasts or over the sea in the same latitude.

The general distribution of atmospheric temperature in latitude is shown in Fig. 476.

The positions and courses of isotherms. 1. A relationship between isotherms and parallels is suggested by the fact that the isotherms have a general east-west direction. Some of them are notably irregular, but none of them runs north and south, or nearly north and south, for any considerable distance. Some of them have a nearly straight east-west course, and, in all, the east-west direction is the general one. Since, however, the isotherms do not follow the parallels exactly, it is clear that latitude is not the only factor which determines their position. Some other cause or causes besides the length of day and the angle of the sun's rays must therefore influence temperature, and so the position of the isotherms.

2. From Figs. 473, 474, and 475 it is seen that isotherms are more nearly straight where there is least land, and more crooked where there is much land. This suggests that *land and water* have something to do with their positions. Following this idea, it is to be noted that, on the January chart, there is an area in South Africa, and another in north Australia, surrounded by the isotherm of 90°. Both of these areas are on land, and there is no corresponding area over the sea. It is to be noted also that the areas where the temperature is above 80° are wider on land, and in the vicinity of land, than on the open sea; and furthermore, that in the widest ocean there is no area where the January temperature reaches an average of 80°. All these facts tend to confirm the conclusion that the sea and the land influence the position of the isotherms.

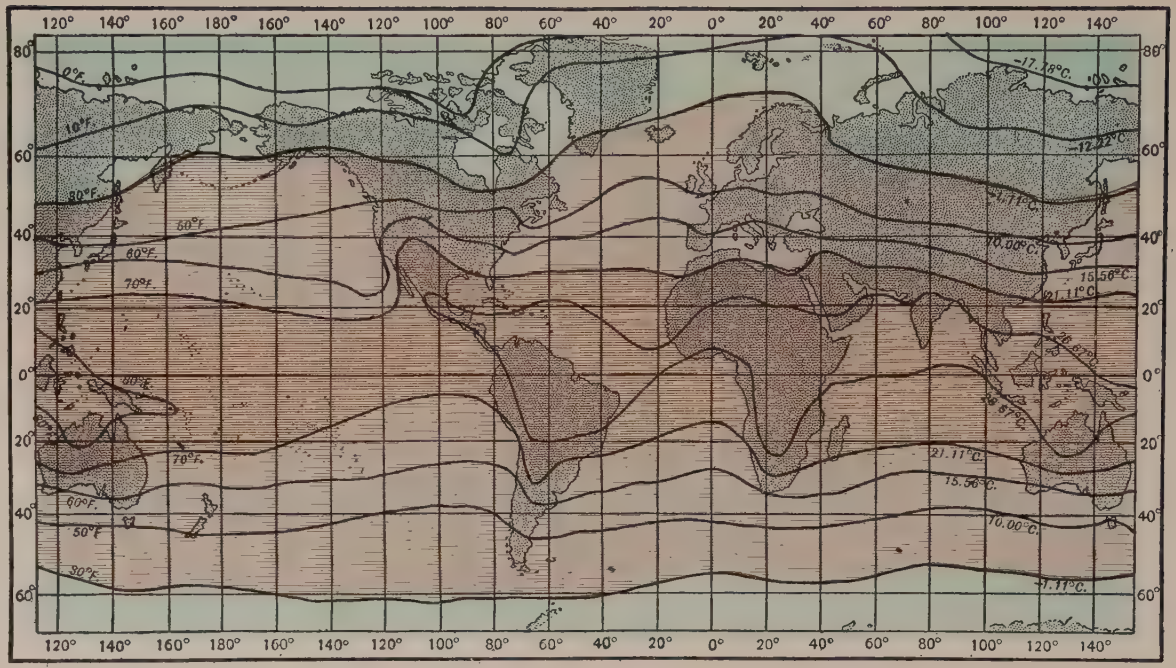


FIG. 473.—Average annual temperature. (After Buchan.)

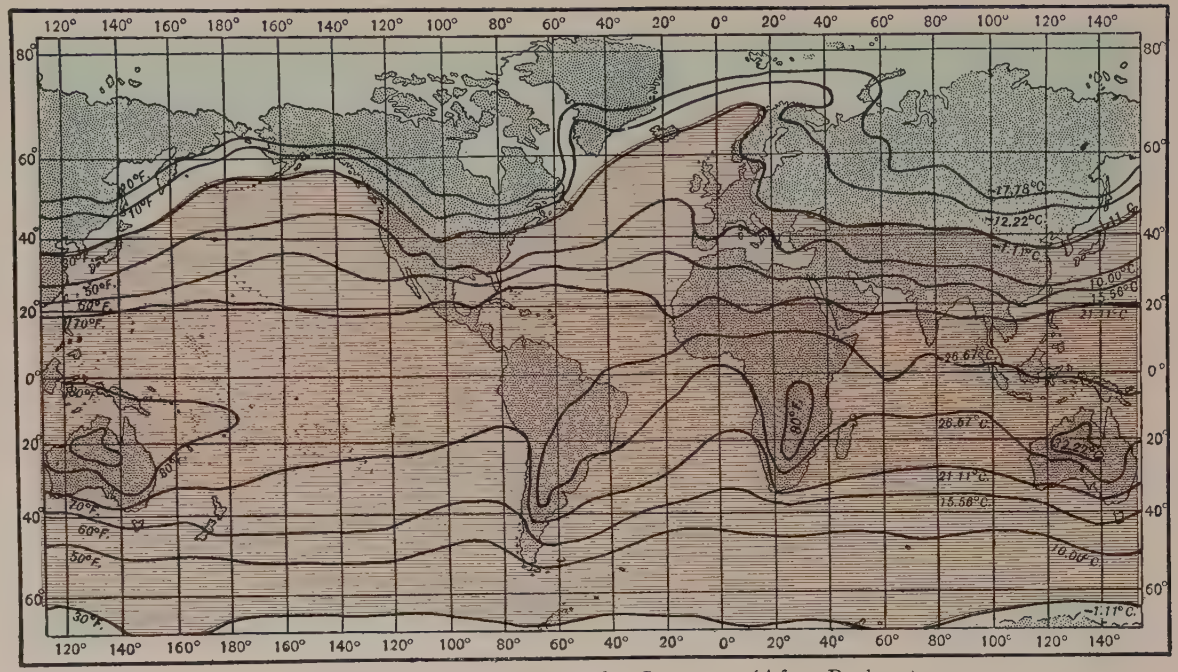


FIG. 474.—Isothermal chart for January. (After Buchan.)

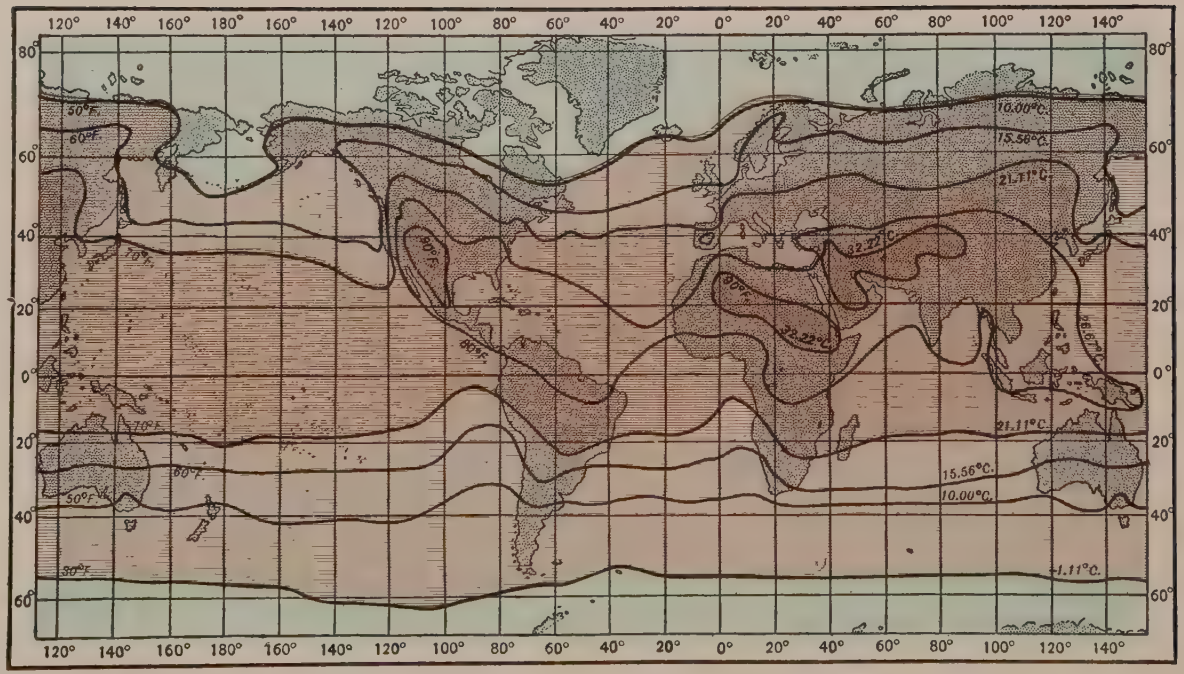


FIG. 475.—Isothermal chart for July. (After Buchan.)

Following this idea still further, it is seen that some of the isotherms of this map (Fig. 474) bend somewhat abruptly in passing from water to land, or *vice versa*. Thus the isotherm of 40° in the northern hemisphere turns abruptly to the south at the western border of North America, and on the coast of Europe. In the

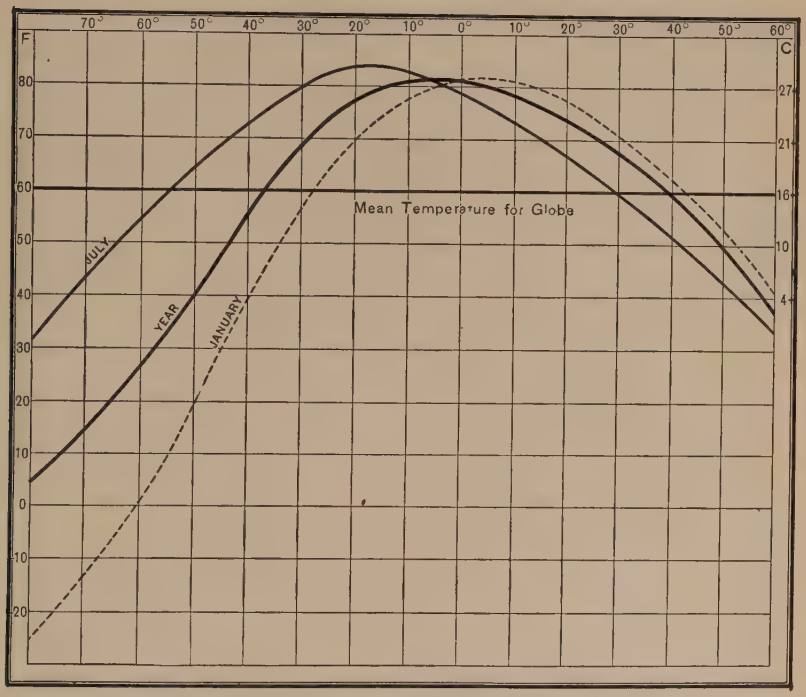


FIG. 476.—Figure showing distribution of atmospheric temperature in latitude for the year, for January, and for July; also the mean temperature of the year for the globe. The figures at the left are Fahrenheit, those at the right Centigrade. The numbers at the top represent degrees of latitude.

southern hemisphere, the isotherms of 80° and 70° make abrupt turns at the west coast of Africa, and on or near the west coast of South America. This tends to confirm the conclusion that the relation of land and water has something to do with the position of isotherms. It will be seen later that ocean currents help to determine the peculiar courses of the isotherms here referred to.

So far as this chart (Fig. 474) is concerned, it will be seen that isotherms south of the equator bend poleward on land in passing

from west to east, while those north of the equator bend equatorward.

Land and sea are affected very unequally by the sun's rays. Land is heated more readily than water in the summer, and therefore becomes warmer. Land also gives up its heat much more readily than the sea, and becomes cooler in winter. The fact that an isotherm, for example the January isotherm of 40° in the northern hemisphere, bends equatorward in crossing the northern continents, shows that the land is cooler than the water in the same latitude, for the isotherm, in crossing the continent, bends toward the equator to find the same temperature which it had on the water. In the southern hemisphere, on the other hand, where it is summer, the corresponding isotherm, on reaching the land, bends toward the pole to find a temperature like that of the sea.

All these phenomena clearly indicate that the position of the land and the sea has something to do with causing the isotherms to depart from parallels.

If the preceding inferences are correct, July isotherms should be in contrast with the January isotherms. The former should bend poleward on the continents in the northern hemisphere, and equatorward in the southern. In Fig. 475, which shows the July isotherms, it is seen that every isotherm crossing North America bends poleward on the land, while those crossing the southern continents bend equatorward. The reason is that this is the season when the lands of the northern hemisphere are warmer than the seas of the same latitude, and when the lands of the southern hemisphere are cooler than the seas about them.

It will be noted that the irregularities of isotherms of the northern hemisphere in July are much greater than those of the southern hemisphere in January. This is probably because there is much more land in the northern hemisphere than in the southern, and the larger land areas have a greater effect than the smaller ones on the isotherms.

These facts seem to confirm the inference that land and water influence the position of isotherms; but does the distribution of land and water account for all the irregularities of the isotherms?

If the unequal heating of land and sea were the only factor concerned in deflecting isotherms from parallels, the bends of

isotherms should be as pronounced on the east sides of the continents as on the west. This is not the case, as shown by Figs. 473 and 474. Again, the January isotherm of 50° near the west coast of North America bends chiefly *on the land*, not *at the coast.* On the eastern side of the continent the bend of the isotherm of 30° is chiefly on the sea, not at the coast. Other isotherms have similar courses. We infer, therefore, that though land and water have much to do with the irregularity of the isotherms, other factors also are involved.

3. The peculiarities just cited may be explained in part by the *winds.* The prevailing winds in the middle latitudes of North America are from the west, and the westerly winds tend to carry the temperature of the sea (warmer in winter) over onto the land on the western side of the continent, and the temperature of the land (cooler in winter) over onto the sea on its eastern side. This appears to afford a partial explanation of the bends of the isotherms of 30° and 50° in the northern hemisphere in January; but it does not afford an explanation of the remarkable northward loop of the isotherm of 30° over the eastern side of the North Atlantic, nor of the lesser one over the corresponding part of the Pacific.

Other illustrations of the effects of winds are furnished by the west coast of the United States. Thus in July (Fig. 475) the land of the northern hemisphere is warmer than the sea, and the cooler temperature of the latter is carried over to the former. The winds therefore make it clear why the bends in the isotherms here are on the land, rather than at the coast or on the sea.

On the whole, the influence of the winds on the position of the isotherms is less clear from these charts than the influence of land and sea. This is partly because the winds are inconstant, and their effects at one time tend to counteract their effects at another, and the maps show only averages.

4. The great bend in the isotherm of 40° over the North Atlantic in January is not explained by the relations of land and sea, or by winds. It is due to a warm current of ocean water flowing northeastward, in the direction of the pronounced loop of the isotherm. The same isotherm is held off the eastern coast of North America by a cold current which flows southward along the east side of the continent. *Ocean currents* are, therefore, a fourth cause of the irregularities of isotherms.

The amount of heat carried northward by the ocean currents of the Atlantic and Pacific is very great. Croll[1] has estimated that conveyed from the tropics by the Gulf Stream to be equal to two-fifths of that received by the Arctic regions from the sun. It has been estimated that the temperature of England is raised 10° F., that of Norway 16°, and that of Spitzbergen 19° by the warm poleward movement of waters in the North Atlantic. These figures have been called into question and are very likely too high; but there can hardly be a reasonable doubt that the northward movement of relatively warm water helps to ameliorate the temperature of northwestern Europe, especially in winter. The tempering influence of the poleward drift[2] of warm water is indirect. The air over the water is warmed and made moist, and it is this warmed and moistened air, carried over to the land, which raises the temperature of northwestern Europe.

It should be noted that the milder climate of northwestern Europe, as compared with northeastern North America, is not due wholly to the poleward drift of warm waters. Even if there were no Gulf Stream, the climate of northwestern Europe would be much more temperate than that of the corresponding latitude of the east coast of North America, because the ocean, whence the winds of winter blow to that part of Europe, is warmer than the land whence the winter winds blow to the corresponding latitudes on the west side of the Atlantic. Similarly the heat of summer is less extreme in northwestern Europe than in northeastern North America.

5. Other minor causes of irregularities in isotherms are found in *topographic relations*, in the *character of the surface*, the *amount of moisture*, etc. A basin region shut in by mountains gets hotter in summer than a region not so surrounded, partly because the air is warmed by heat reflected and radiated in from all sides, as well as by heat reflected and radiated from the bottom, and partly because the enclosing mountains prevent free circulation of the air. There is less evaporation from a dry surface than from a moist one, and since evaporation cools a surface notably, a dry surface will be warmer than a moist one, if other conditions are

[1] Climate and Time, p. 27.

[2] The term "Gulf Stream" is of doubtful propriety as applied to the poleward movement of water in the high latitudes of the North Atlantic. The "current" is very indefinite north of the latitude of Newfoundland.

the same. The color of the soil, the presence or absence of vegetation, etc., also affect the absorption and radiation of heat.

Topographic relations have much to do with the high temperature (90° and above) in the southwestern part of the United States in July. The dryness of the soil and of the air above it also tends to raise the temperature. Aridity helps to make the temperature high in the high-temperature area (90° and above) in northern Africa (July) and Australia (January).

Altitude has a pronounced effect on temperature, as already pointed out; but a study of Figs. 473 to 475 seems to show no relation between isothermal lines and surface relief. The reason is that on isothermal charts all isothermal lines are represented as at sea-level. This is done by making allowance for altitude at the average rate of 1° F. for about 330 feet. Thus, if the temperature of a place at an altitude of 3300 feet is 60°, it is put down on the chart as 70° (60°+10°). If the place were 6600 feet above sea-level, 20° F. would be added to the temperature recorded by the thermometer, when the figure is put upon the map. Isothermal charts, therefore, are intended to show the temperature as it would be if the land were at sea-level.

Thermal charts may be made to show many other features. A chart may be made to show the departure of the temperature of each place, from the temperature normal to its latitude. Such departure is *abnormal temperature*. Lines connecting places having the same abnormal temperature are *is-abnormal* or *is-anomalous lines*. They may be made for the year, for any season, or for any month (Figs. 477 and 478). Charts may be made showing the lines of equal annual range of temperature (Fig. 479), and showing *average maximum* temperatures (Fig. 480) and *average minimum* temperatures (Fig. 481). The former are obtained by averaging the highest temperatures of successive years, and the latter by averaging the lowest temperatures of successive years. The *absolute maximum* and *minimum* for any place would be the highest and lowest temperatures, respectively, ever recorded for that place. Fig. 482 shows the absolute maximum temperature to be more than 120° in the Sahara, and but little less in New South Wales and the southwestern part of the United States. The lowest temperature recorded is in northeastern Asia.

Isothermal surfaces. A surface might be drawn connecting all points having the same temperature. The annual isothermal surface of 30°, for example, would be at sea-level, where the isotherms of 30° appear in Fig. 473. One of these isotherms is north of the equator and one south of it. Equatorward from these lines,

Fig. 477.—Chart showing the is-abnormal temperatures for January. The minus signs indicate temperatures below the average. The ranges are much below normal on land in the northern hemisphere, and much above it on land in the southern. The reverse is the case with the oceans. The greater range on the lands as compared with the oceans, is to be noted. (After Batchelder.)

Fig. 478—Chart showing the is-abnormal temperatures for July. The minus signs indicate temperatures below the average. The chart shows ranges much above normal on land in the northern hemisphere, and much below normal on sea. The changes are less striking in the southern hemisphere. Why? (After Batchelder.)

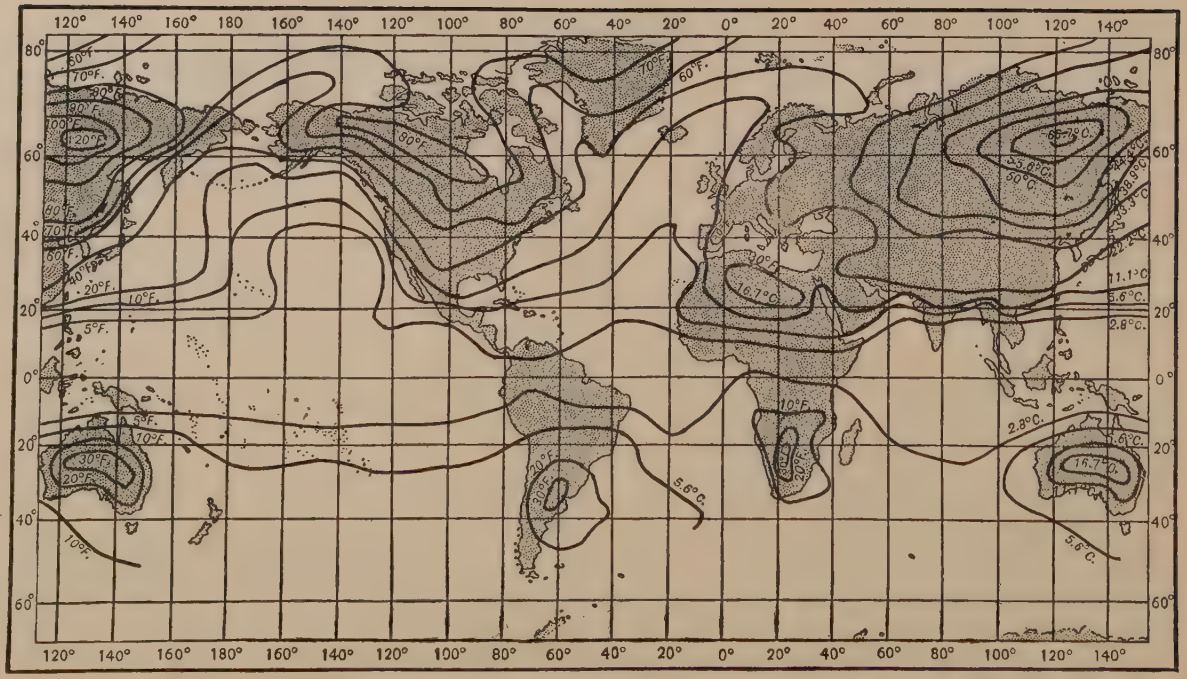


Fig. 479—Chart showing annual mean range of temperature. The range is much greater on land than on sea. (After Connolly.)

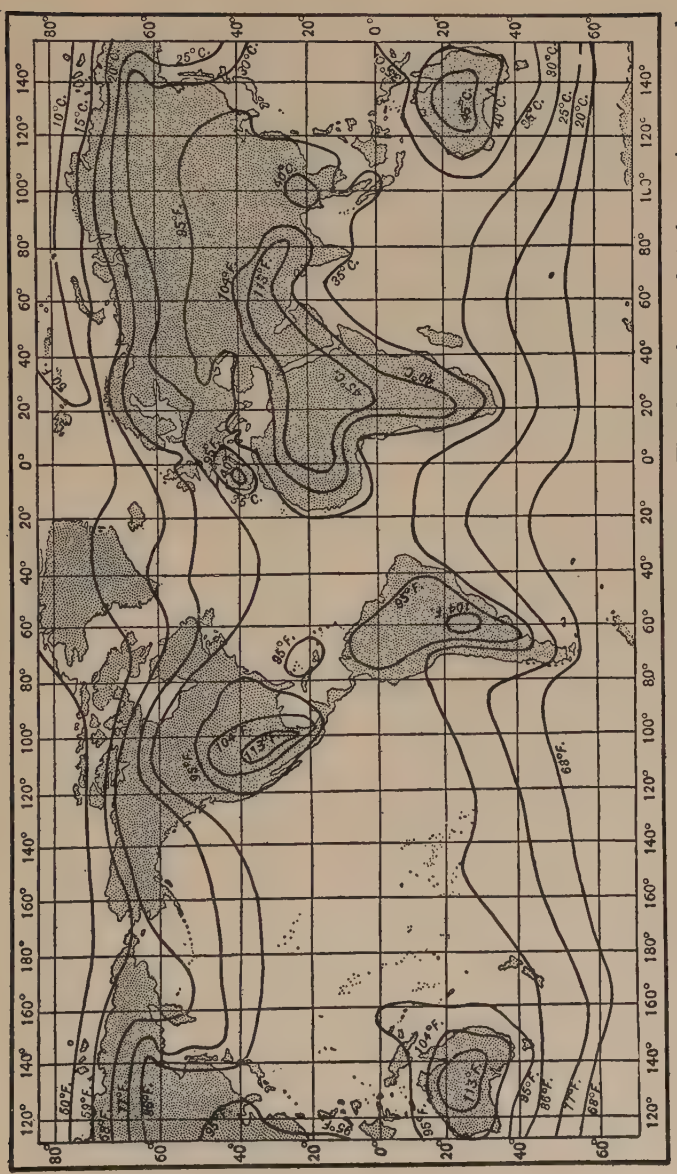


Fig. 480.—Chart showing average annual maximum temperatures. The chart shows that the maxima are much greater on land than on sea. (After van Bebber.)

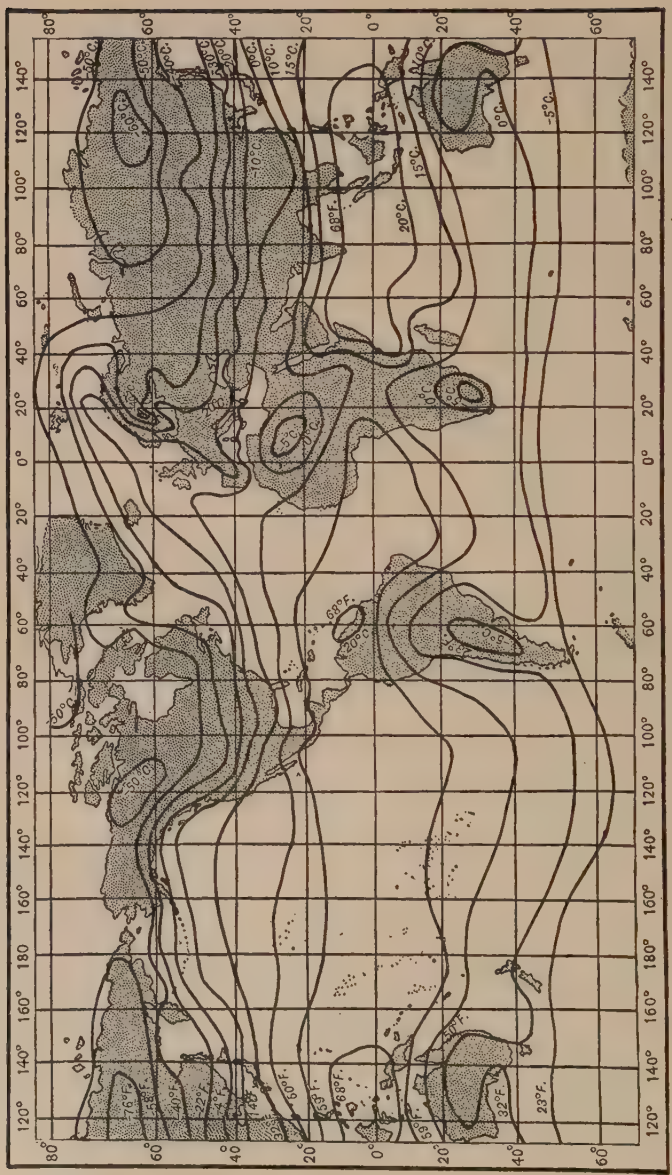


Fig. 481.—Chart showing average annual minimum temperatures. The minima are shown to be much lower on the continents than on the oceans. Why? (After van Bebber)

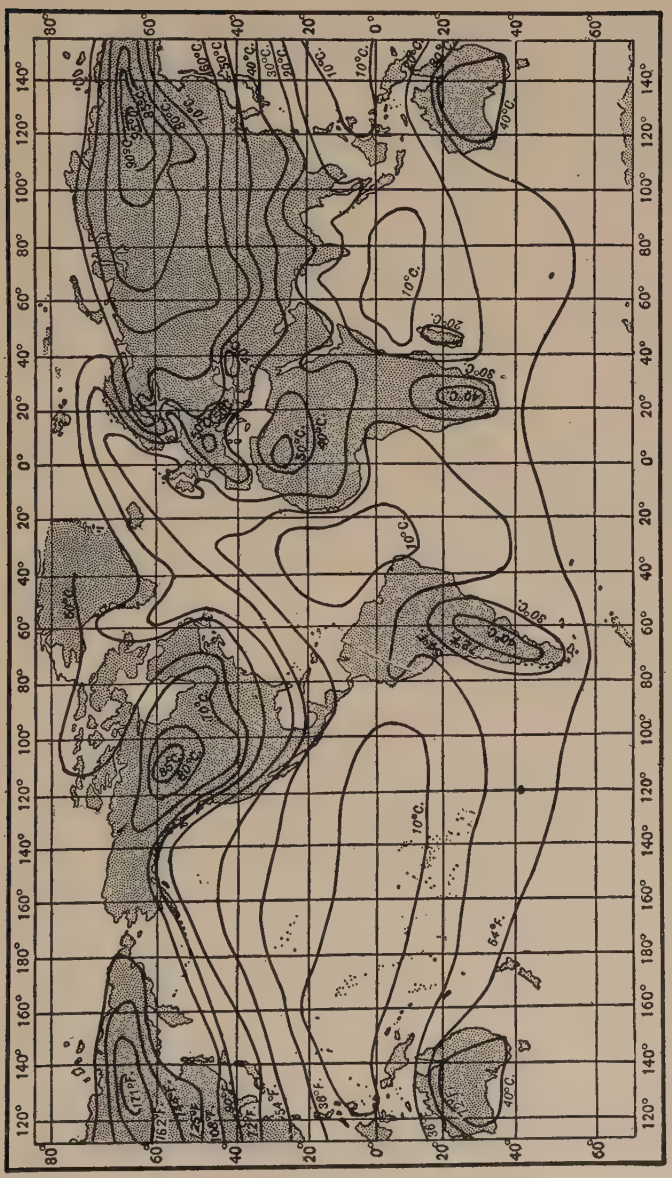


Fig. 482.—Extreme annual range of temperature. The extremes are far greater on the continents than on the oceans. Why? (After van Bebber.)

in either hemisphere, the isothermal surface of 30° would rise above sea-level. The temperature at sea-level in the northern part of South America is about 80°. Its temperature is therefore about 50° above that of the isothermal surface of 30°. That surface is here about 50 times 330 feet, or 16,500 feet, above sea-level. Where the isotherm of 50° (Fig. 473) crosses North America, the temperature at sea-level is 20° above that of the isothermal surface of 30°. To find the temperature of 30° in this latitude

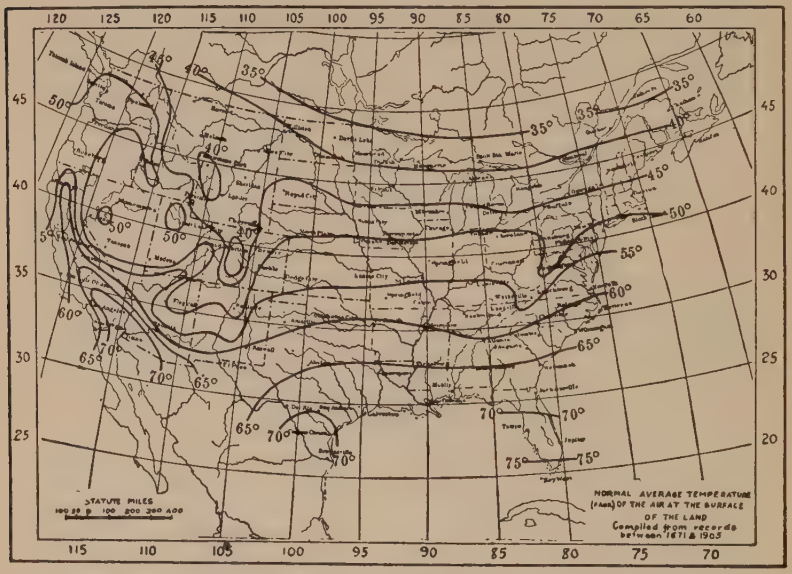

120 125 120 115 110 105 100 95 90 85 80 75 70 65 60
45 40 35 30 25
115 110 105 100 95 90 85 80 75 70
STATUTE MILES
NORMAL AVERAGE TEMPERATURE (FAHR.) OF THE AIR AT THE SURFACE OF THE LAND
Compiled from records between 1871 & 1905

Fig. 483.—Isothermal chart of the United States for the year. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

we must rise high enough into the air to get a reduction of 20°; that is, 20 times 330 feet, or 6,600 feet.

North of the isotherm of 30° in the northern hemisphere (Fig. 473) the temperature at sea-level is less than 30°. To find a temperature of 30° in these latitudes, therefore, we must go beneath sea-level.

The rate of increase of temperature below sea-level is not the same as the rate of decrease above it, and it is not the same for land as for sea. Beneath land, the rate of increase is about 1° F. for 80 to 90 feet. (The observed rates of increase beneath the surface vary from about 1° F. for 17 feet, to 1° for more than 150

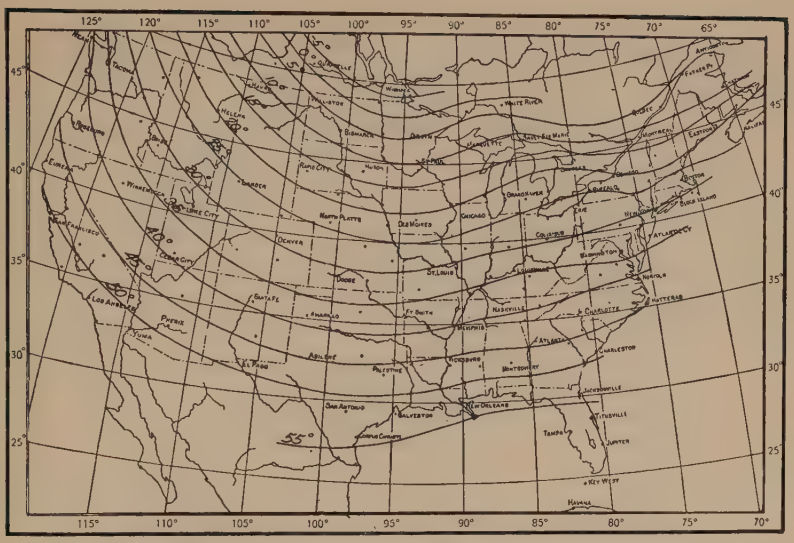


FIG. 484.—Isothermal chart of the United States for January. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

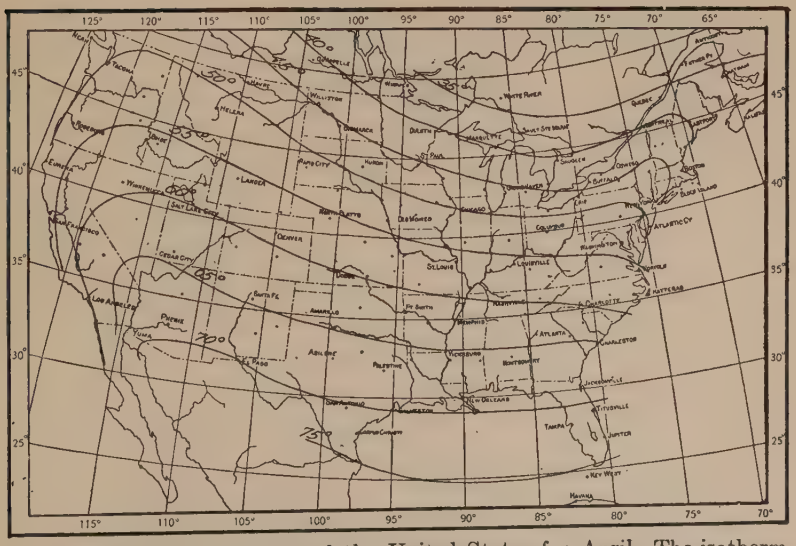


Fig. 485.—Isothermal chart of the United States for April. The isotherm of 50° for January is not far from the isotherm of 70° for April. The isotherm of 50° is about 13° farther north in April than it was in January, in the central part of the Mississippi basin. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

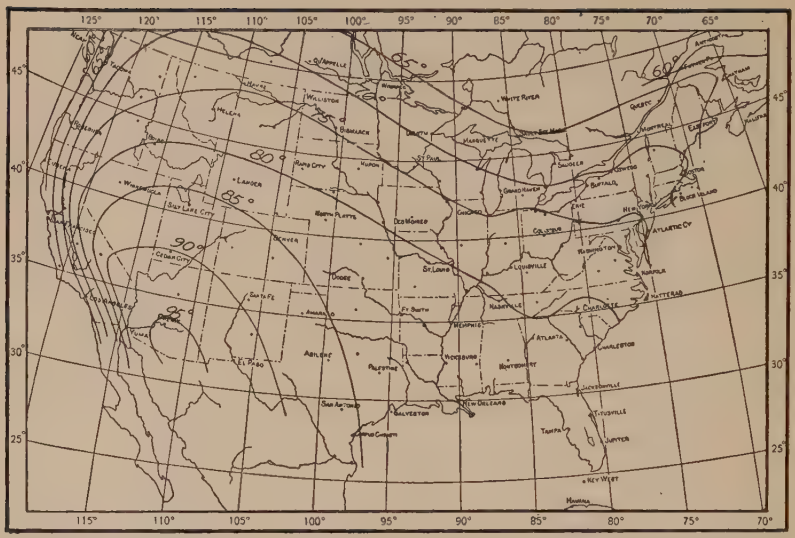


Fig. 486. — Isothermal chart of the United States for July. The isotherm of 65° is about 14° farther north than it was in April, in the central Mississippi basin. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

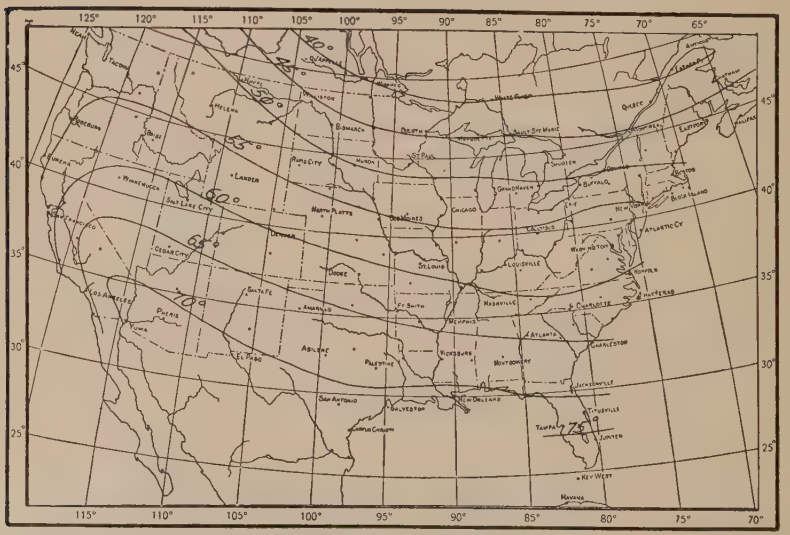


Fig. 487. — Isothermal chart of the United States for October. The isotherm of 70° is about 14° farther south than it was in July, in longitude 90°. (U.S. Weather Bureau.)

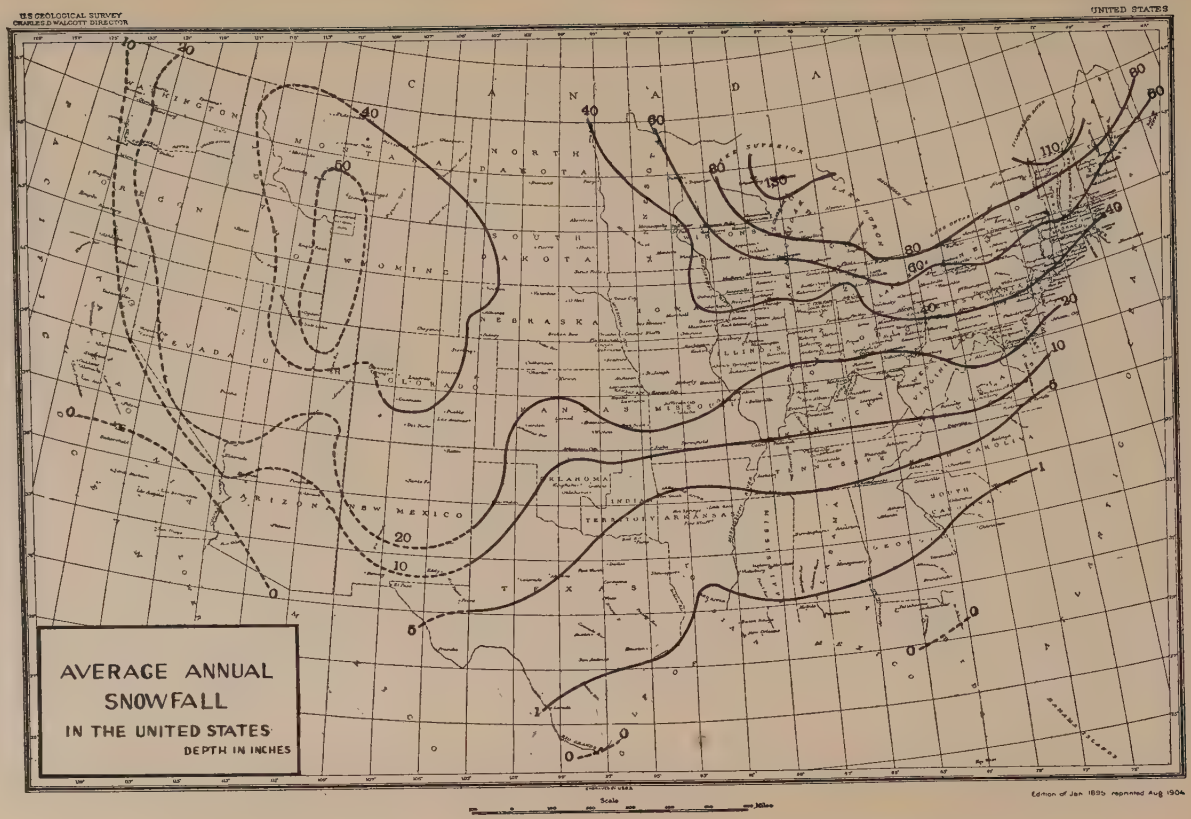


FIG. 488.—Average annual snowfall in the United States. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

feet). To find the isothermal surface of 30° F. where the isotherm of 20° F. crosses the continent, we should have to go down far enough to gain 10° F. This would be 800 feet if the rate of increase is 1° for 80 feet, or 1000 feet if the rate is 1° for 100 feet.

The proper conception of isothermal surfaces will be of importance when we come to consider the circulation of the atmosphere. Fig. 489 shows sections of the isothermal surfaces, along the

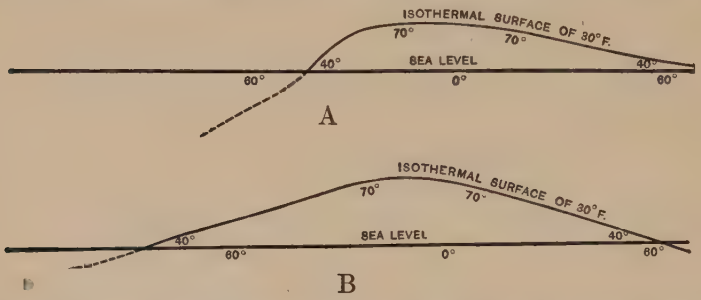


Fig. 489.—Curves of the isothermal surface of 30°F. A. Along the meridian of 100° W., corresponding to Fig. 474. B. Same, corresponding to Fig. 475. The numbers below the horizontal line indicate latitude.

meridian of 100° in January and July. These sections are based on the data of Figs. 474 and 475.

It will be seen from the above that isothermal lines are the lines where the corresponding isothermal surfaces touch the level corresponding to sea-level, on earth.

Daily Range of Temperature

The average daily temperature of a place is found by adding maximum and minimum temperatures, and dividing by 2.[1] It is found that the daily range is less above the bottom of the atmosphere than at the bottom, since the lower air is heated much by contact with the land during sunny days, and also because the denser air below is heated more than the rarer air above by direct insolation. It is also found that the daily range is greater when the air is dry than when it is moist, for in the former case less of the heat radiated from the land is absorbed by the air. The daily range is greater far from the sea than in proximity to it, for the sea gets neither so warm nor

[1] 7 A.M., 2 P.M., 9 P.M., 9 A.M., are perhaps even better for most places near sea-level in mean latitudes.

so cold as the land. Other things being equal, the daily range is greatest when days and nights are nearly equal.

The daily range of temperature often is as much as 40° or 50° F. in dry, interior regions, and in the Sahara it is sometimes 70°.

The temperature of the day is highest a little after noon, for somewhat the same reason that the greatest heat of summer follows the time of greatest heating. To understand this point it

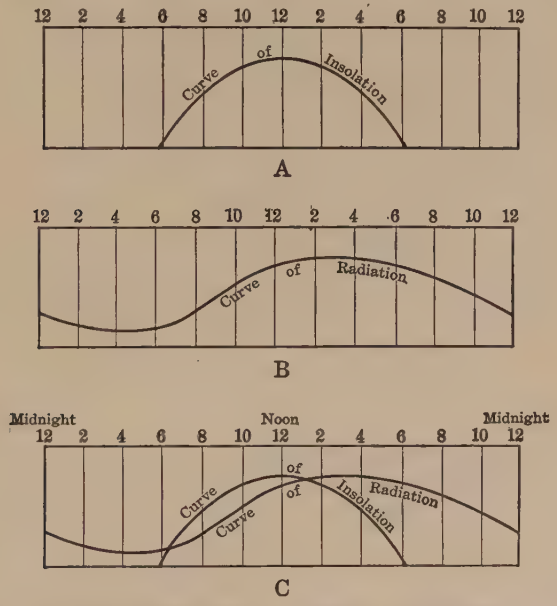

12 2 4 6 8 10 12 2 4 6 8 10 12
Curve of Insolation
A
12 2 4 6 8 10 12 2 4 6 8 10 12
Curve of Radiation
B
Midnight Noon Midnight
12 2 4 6 8 10 12 2 4 6 8 10 12
Curve of Insolation
Curve of Radiation
C

Fig. 490.—A. Curve of insolation. B. Curve of radiation. C. Curves of insolation and radiation combined. The maximum temperature of the day occurs at the time of the higher crossing, the minimum temperature of the day at the time of the lower crossing of these two lines.

should be understood that the land surface and the air just above it are losing heat by radiation all the time, and receiving heat by insolation only when the sun shines. Let us suppose the day to be twelve hours long. When the sun rises, the daily heating begins, and the rate of heating increases as the sun climbs above the horizon. The land and the air receive most heat when the sun is highest, that is at noon. After noon the heating becomes less and ends at sunset. Fig. 490 A, shows the curve of insolation.

When cooling by radiation exceeds heating, the temperature falls. This is the case, as a rule, at night, for radiation goes on

after insolation ceases. The temperature becomes lowest about sunrise, when radiation without insolation has been going on longest. The land and the lower air continue to radiate heat after sunrise, but both are then being heated, and heated as a rule faster than they are cooled by radiation, for the temperature rises. As the temperature rises, radiation increases (Fig. 490 B); but it does not at first keep pace with insolation, for the temperature

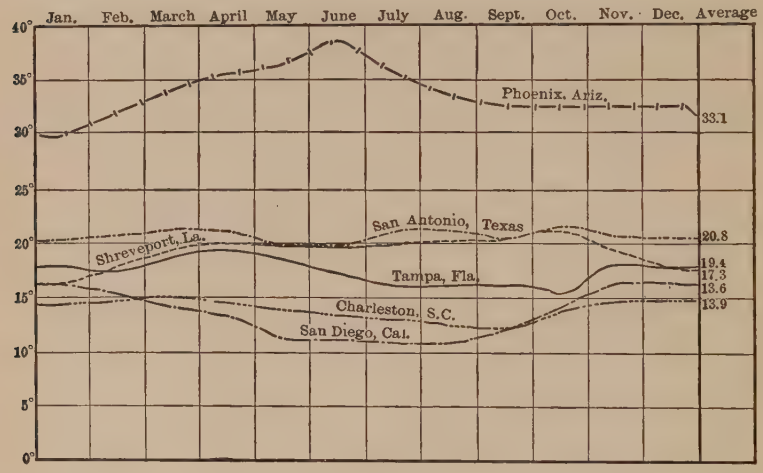


FIG. 491.—Curves showing the average daily range of temperature for certain type stations, for each month. The figures at the right show the average daily range for each station. The great range at Phœnix is the result of high altitude and aridity. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

continues to rise till some time after noon. The fact that the temperature then begins to fall shows that radiation then exceeds insolation. Fig. 490 C shows the curve of insolation in its relation to the curve of radiation.

The average daily range of temperature by months for six places is shown in Fig. 491. San Diego, Phœnix, Shreveport, and Charleston are in about the same latitude (near 33°). All are in the zone of westerly winds. San Diego, on the Pacific coast, has an average daily range of about 14° F. Phœnix, which is inland, much higher, and in a dry region, has an average daily range of about 33°. Shreveport, which is inland, but low, and in a region of abundant moisture, has an average daily range of about 17°. Charleston, on the eastern coast, has a daily range of about 14°.

Tampa and San Antonio are farther south, and both are affected somewhat by the trade winds. Tampa is on the coast, while San Antonio is inland. The former has an average daily range of about 19°, while the latter has a range of about 21°.

The Seasonal Range of Temperature

The seasonal range of temperature is affected by various conditions, such as (1) latitude, (2) position with reference to land and sea, (3) prevailing winds, (4) presence of snow and ice during the warmer season, and (5) humidity.

1. In general the seasonal range of temperature increases with latitude (compare Figs. 474 and 475), because the range of in-

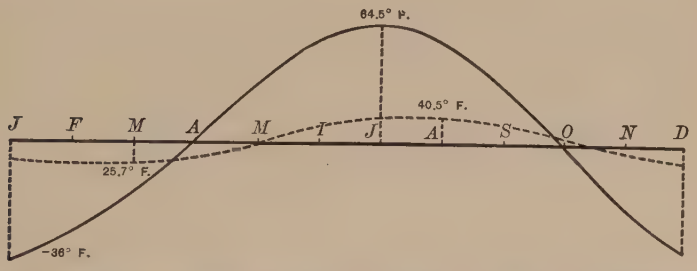


Fig. 492.—Diagram illustrating the difference between continental and oceanic temperatures, the former indicated by the full line and the latter by the dotted line. The letters stand for the months. The numbers are the degrees above and below the average annual temperature of the place. (After Hann.)

solation increases with latitude. This range is greatest at the poles, where there are six months of insolation and six months free from it. The great range of seasonal temperature to which the poles would be entitled by their latitude is greatly modified by (2) and (4) of the preceding paragraph.

2. Islands have a lesser range of temperature than continental lands in the same latitude, and coasts have a lesser range than interiors, because the range of sea temperature is less than the range of land temperature (Fig. 492). A striking and rather extreme illustration of the difference between the range of temperature on an island and inland is afforded by Thorshavn (Faroe Islands, Lat. 62° N.), where the annual range is 7.9° C., and Yakutski, Siberia, in the same latitude, where the range is 61.6° C.

3. A coast to which the prevailing winds blow from the ocean has a less range of temperature than a coast to which the prevailing winds blow from the land. Thus the range of temperature is less on the Pacific coast of the United States than on theAtlantic coast in the same latitude, the winds being from the west in both cases. Hann has shown that in Europe, between the latitudes of 47° and 52°, temperature changes from west to east are as follows: With every 10° of longitude there is a decrease of 3.1° C. in winter, an increase of 0.7° C. in summer, and a decrease of 1.3 °C. in the mean annual temperature.

4. The presence of snow during the warm season, as in high latitudes and high mountains, prevents a high temperature in summer, even though insolation is strong.

The annual range of temperature is of much importance on various human affairs. It affects vegetation, and all industries connected with the soil. The range of temperature, or more exactly the temperature of winter affects transportation by means of water. Navigation ceases in winter, for example, on the Great Lakes, because ice forms about their borders. The lower limit of temperature also affects some phases of mining. Placer mining, for example, generally is suspended in winter in high latitudes and high altitudes, not only because the gravel and sand are frozen, but also because the water needed in mining is frozen. Other effects of great seasonal range will be suggested readily.

Effect of Atmospheric Temperature on Atmospheric Movement

When air is heated it expands and becomes lighter, volume for volume. If we think of the air over a given area as shut in from its surroundings on all sides, but not shut in above, it would expand upward when heated. The result would be that its surface would rise above that of its surroundings. If its surface became higher than that of its surroundings, the upper part of the air would spread (run over) sideways, much as water would under the same circumstances. If some of the air at the top of a heated column runs over, the pressure of the air at the bottom of the column is less than that at the bottom of the surrounding air, and, if the air of the surrounding area were not shut off, it would move in from the area of greater pressure (where the air is denser) to the area of less pressure (where the air is lighter). The result would be a horizontal movement at the bottom of the atmosphere

(Fig. 469), that is, a *wind*. *Unequal heating of the air is, therefore, a cause of air movements*, and since the air is being unequally heated constantly, it follows that *unequal heating is a constant cause of atmospheric movement*. Some of the movements are horizontal and some vertical; some are in the lower part of the air and some in the upper.

The unequal heating of the air is the immediate cause of certain familiar winds and breezes.

1. *Land- and sea-breezes.* During a sunny summer day, the land near a lake or sea becomes warmer than the water. The result is that the air over the land becomes sensibly warmer than that over the water on a hot day. The expanded lower air over the land crowds the air above it, and so increases the pressure *above the bottom of the air*. The result is that the pressure above the bottom of the air over the land is greater than that *at the same level* over the sea. There is, as a result, (1) a movement of air from the land to the water somewhat above the bottom of the air. This movement diminishes the pressure at the bottom of the air *on land*, and increases the pressure at the bottom of the air *over the sea*. This gives rise to (2) a breeze from sea to land at the bottom of the atmosphere. This is the *sea (or lake) breeze*. At night, the air over the land cools and contracts below, and pressure above becomes less than at the same level over the water. Above the bottom of the atmosphere, therefore, air flows in (3) from sea to land. This increases the pressure at the bottom of the atmosphere on land, and decreases that at the bottom over the sea. A breeze therefore sets seaward (4) from the land to the sea at the bottom of the atmosphere. This is the *land-breeze*.

The sea-breeze is best developed in middle and low latitudes during the hot part of the day in summer. When it has the same direction as the prevailing wind, it occasionally develops such strength that business is interrupted and people forced to seek shelter. This is said sometimes to be the case at Valparaiso, Chile. Along certain coasts fishermen put to sea in the early morning with the land-breeze, and return at night with the sea-breeze. Land- and sea-breezes will be referred to again in connection with atmospheric circulation. They are mentioned here because of their intimate connection with temperature.

2. *Monsoon winds.* Some lands near the sea become so much heated in summer that the sea (from-sea) wind continues during

the hot season, not merely through the hot part of the day, while the land (from-land) wind holds sway during the winter. This is the case, for example, in India. These winds, which change their directions with the seasons, are *monsoon winds*. This name is not in common use for similar winds in other lands. They are sometimes called continental and oceanic winds.

The monsoon winds of the Indian Ocean exerted a great influence on the early trade of India. European sailing-vessels formerly timed their outward voyages so as to take advantage of the southwest monsoon, and their return voyages so as to take advantage of the northeast monsoon.

3. *Mountain and valley breezes.* At night the air of mountain tops becomes cold, because of its prompt radiation of heat. It thus becomes denser than the air below, and descends, giving the *mountain* (*from-mountain*) *breeze*. The downward flow (or blow) of the air is, however, not confined to mountain valleys, but affects the slopes of the mountains generally. In the morning, especially on sunny days, the air next the land becomes heated, and heated most at the bottom. It therefore expands upward, and expands more over the lowland than over the mountains. The result is that air moves toward the mountains at this time of day, and strikes them at such an angle as to be deflected upward. This is the *valley* (*toward-mountain*) *breeze*. There is also an upward movement of the air from the mountain slope. This air tends to go straight up, but is crowded over against the mountain by the mountain-ward movement, and strengthens it. At the top of the mountain, horizontal winds take away the air which tends to accumulate there as a result of the valley breeze.

Mountain and valley, and land and sea breezes, and monsoon winds, afford simple illustrations of air movements due to inequalities of temperature.

Vertical movements and temperature. It has been stated already that when air rises it expands, and that as it expands it becomes cooler; and, conversely, that when air descends it becomes denser and warmer. These changes of temperature have an important bearing on the condensation and precipitation of atmospheric moisture, and will be considered in connection with that topic.

CHAPTER XV

THE MOISTURE OF THE AIR

The atmosphere always contains some water vapor, even over the driest deserts. We can neither see nor smell water vapor, nor can we recognize it as such by feeling, though air with much water vapor has a different feeling from air with little.

The presence of moisture in the air, under ordinary conditions, is proved by various familiar phenomena. If a pitcher of ice water is allowed to stand in a warm room, drops of water often appear on the outside of it. This water could have come only from the air. Again, if a vessel of warm air be closed and its temperature lowered sufficiently, the inside of the vessel will become coated with droplets of water. The amount of reduction of temperature necessary to bring about this result is great or slight, according as the amount of water vapor in the air is small or large. Water vapor sometimes condenses into water in the air, and then becomes visible as cloud or fog.

The water vapor in the air may be looked on as an atmosphere by itself, for it is distributed very much as it would be if there were no other atmosphere. Water vapor is five-eighths as heavy as dry air; that is, a cubic foot of water vapor would weigh five-eighths as much as a cubic foot of dry air under the same conditions of temperature and pressure. The water vapor of the air displaces some of the oxygen, nitrogen, etc., and so makes the air lighter.

Function of atmospheric moisture. The function of the moisture in the atmosphere is a very important one. Without it no life could exist. In addition to furnishing the rain, the snow, and all the water upon which land life depends, it serves an important function in connection with temperature, as already indicated (p. 443). It appears to be the most important constituent of the air in the absorption both of the heat radiated from the sun and of that radiated from the earth. It increases the average temperature at the bottom of the atmosphere and it reduces the extremes of heat and cold which would exist if the air were altogether dry.

Sources of water vapor: evaporation. It is a familiar fact that a moist surface exposed to the air soon becomes dry, and that water left standing in an open dish will presently disappear. Any fluid, such as ink, which contains much water, also dries up if left uncovered. These familiar experiences illustrate what is taking place all the time wherever moist surfaces are exposed to the air. They are constantly losing water to the atmosphere. We conclude therefore that *the water vapor of the air is being derived constantly from all exposed moist surfaces.* The conversion of water into water vapor is *evaporation.* It consists of the passage of molecules from the surface of water or ice into the vaporous condition. The molecules of a liquid are in active movement. If they move with sufficient velocity when at the surface of the liquid, they may pass out of the range of the attraction of the other molecules of the liquid, in which case they become vapor.

Evaporation also takes place from land surfaces which *seem* dry, for even here the rock, subsoil, etc., beneath the surface is more or less moist, and moisture is continually passing from beneath up into the atmosphere. That evaporation takes place from snow and ice, even though the temperature is far below that of melting, is shown by the fact that snow and ice slowly disappear in a temperature below 32° F. A wet cloth, put into a very low temperature, say 0° F., freezes stiff: but if it remains in the same temperature, it presently dries. The ice in it has evaporated.

All animal respiration furnishes water to the atmosphere. This is readily shown in winter, when the water vapor of the breath condenses, and so becomes visible, in the cold atmosphere. The water breathed out is not seen in summer, or in a warm room, because it condenses only at low temperatures. Plants also breathe out moisture, and the amount given off from thrifty growing vegetation is very great. Water vapor is also given off by active volcanoes (p. 319).

On the whole, water surfaces (oceans, lakes, rivers, etc.) yield more water vapor than equal areas of land surface. The oceans must be looked upon as the ultimate source of most of the water vapor. But for this great reservoir, the waters of the land would be exhausted presently. On the whole, the ocean receives water from rivers, springs, and rains about as fast as it loses it by evapora-

tion, so that the amount of water in the ocean remains nearly constant from year to year.

On the average, 30 to 40 inches of rain-water are estimated to fall from the air each year on land: that is, enough to make a layer 30 to 40 inches deep if spread over all the land. The amount of water evaporated each year must be about the same as the amount which is precipitated. If the precipitation on the oceans is equal to that on the lands, square mile for square mile, and if all were taken from the oceans *and not returned,* the oceans would be dried up in less than 4000 years, or, according to the larger figure (40 inches), in less than 3000 years. If this amount of water which falls as rain were all evaporated from the lakes, it probably would exhaust them in less than one year.

The energy necessary to evaporate this amount of water is very great. Assuming that the average amount of rainfall is 60 inches instead of 30, Strachey has estimated that the energy necessary to evaporate this amount of water and lift it 3000 feet (the assumed average height from which rain falls) would be equal to 300,000 million horse-power constantly in operation.

Rate of evaporation. Fig. 493 shows the amount of evaporation in inches of water which there would be from free water surfaces in various parts of the United States. The evaporation is seen to be highest in the warmer and drier parts of the country.

Several conditions affect the rate of evaporation. The principal ones are (1) the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere, (2) the temperature of the atmosphere, and (3) the strength of the wind.

(1) The greater the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere, the less rapidly does new vapor form and rise into it. The pressure of the water vapor above the surface from which evaporation is taking place seems to be the controlling factor. If it is sufficiently great, there will be no evaporation, at least in the sense that there will be no increase of water vapor in the air. Such evaporation as takes place will be balanced by condensation on the evaporating surface.

(2) Other things being equal, the warmer the water surface the faster the evaporation. This is illustrated by familiar experiences. Water on a hot stove evaporates more quickly than water in a cool place, and water in the sun more rapidly than in the shade.

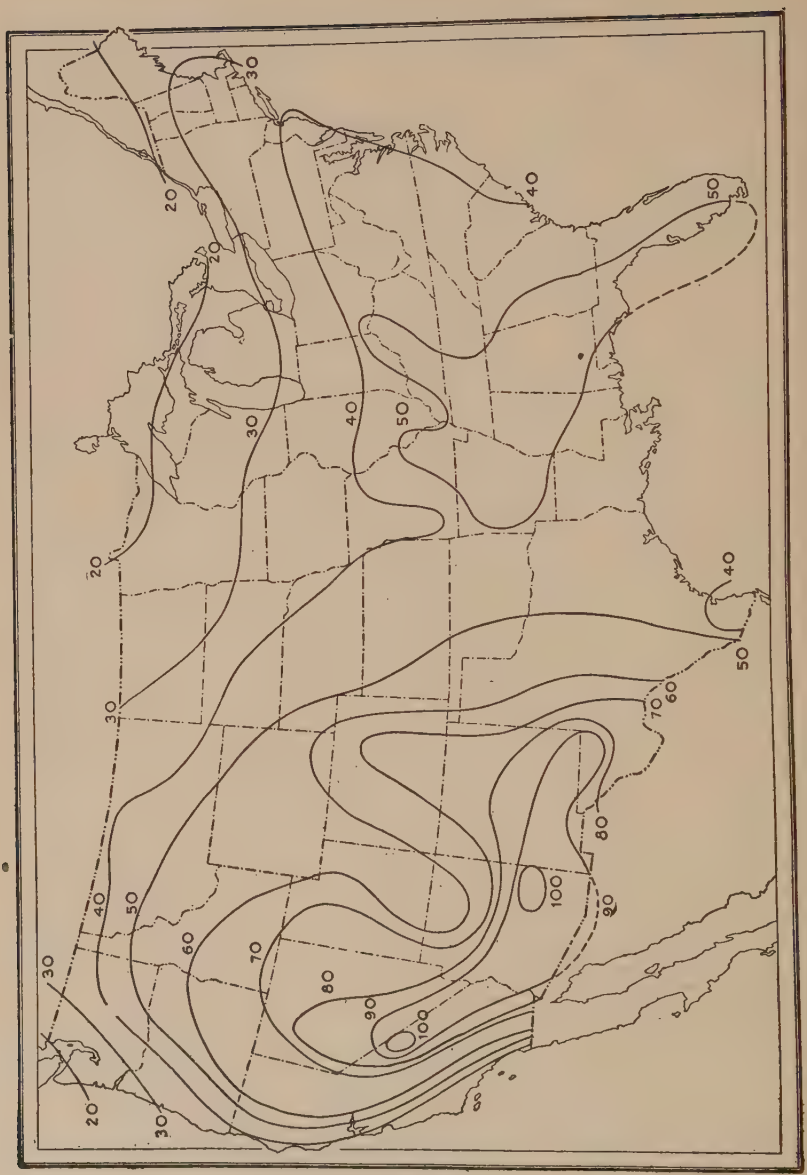


FIG. 493.—Evaporation map. The numbers on the lines show, in inches, the amount of water which would be evaporated each year if water were freely exposed.

(3) The stronger the wind the more rapid the evaporation. The reason appears to be as follows: When air is still, the space just above a body of water or a moist surface becomes charged with water vapor, and this retards evaporation; but when air is in movement, the water vapor is carried away about as fast as it is formed, so that new and often drier air continually comes in over the surface from which evaporation is taking place. If the water vapor formed were moved away as rapidly by some other means, evaporation would go on just as readily as when the wind blows.

(4) Evaporation is also influenced by pressure of the air, being diminished slightly by increase of pressure.

Function of the atmosphere in evaporation. In addition to the ways just noted, air influences evaporation by its effect on the temperature above the land and water (p. 454); but evaporation is not dependent on the air. It would go on in a vacuum at a given temperature a little more rapidly than in air at the same temperature.

Evaporation takes up heat. Evaporation cools the surface from which it takes place. If the hand be moistened, it feels cool as it dries, and the faster the evaporation, as when wind blows, the more distinct the cooling. This is why moist clothing seems cooler in wind than in still air, even when temperature is the same. Evaporation from forested regions in moist tropical lands is so great that the temperature there often is much lower than would be expected from the insolation.

Amount of water vapor in the air. The amount of water vapor in the air varies greatly from place to place, and even in the same place from time to time. Various attempts have been made to estimate the amount in the air at one time, but the results are far apart. Its amount has been estimated as high as 1 per cent of the weight of the atmosphere, which would be equivalent to about 4 inches of water if it were precipitated. This estimate probably is too high.

The following table presents an estimate of the amount of water vapor which the lower part of the atmosphere is capable of holding under different conditions of temperature. Since only about one twenty-fifth of the water vapor is above 30,000 feet, this table shows about twenty-four twenty-fifths of all the atmosphere may hold at these temperatures.

Height of column of air above the ground.	Depth of water which would be in saturated air below the levels indicated, for the following dew-points at sea-level.			
	80° F.	70° F.	60° F.	50° F.
Feet.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.
6,000	1.3	1.0	0.7	0.5
12,000	2.1	1.5	1.1	0.8
18,000	2.5	1.8	1.3	0.9
24,000	2.7	2.0	1.4	1.0
30,000	2.8	2.1	1.5	1.1

Some idea of the amount of water vapor in the air is gained in another way. One cubic foot of air at 0° F. is capable of containing one half grain of water vapor, at 60° F., 5 grains, and at 80° F., 11 grains. The weight of air in a room 40×40×15 feet, at a temperature of 60° F. and under ordinary pressure, is about 1800 pounds. The weight of water vapor it is capable of containing is nearly 20 pounds, or about 10 quarts.

Distribution of water vapor. So soon as the water vapor passes into the air, it is distributed, partly by winds and partly by diffusion. Evaporation at one point, therefore, tends to moisten the air everywhere, though first and most in the region where the evaporation takes place.

The amount of water vapor in the air diminishes rapidly upward, largely because of the low temperature, as shown in the following table:

Altitude.	Water vapor.	Air density.
Feet.		
0	1.00	1.00
13,000+	0.24	0.61
30,000−	0.04	0.32

Atmospheric moisture and atmospheric movements. Since water vapor makes the air lighter, and since movements result when the air of one place becomes lighter than that of another, inequality in the amount of moisture in the air in different places is a cause of atmospheric movement.

Saturation. The amount of water vapor in the air at any place at any time depends on the temperature and on the available sup-

ply of water. The warmer the air the more the moisture which it can hold.

When there is all the water vapor in the air which is possible at a given temperature, the air is said to be *saturated*. It is customary to speak of the *air* as being saturated; yet it is in reality not the air which is saturated, but the *space* which the air occupies. The amount of water vapor necessary to saturate a given space depends on the temperature of the space, and is nearly the same whether air is present or not. It is also sometimes said that the *water vapor* is saturated. In spite of its inaccuracy, the expression *saturation of air* is in such common use that it is likely to be retained.

Humidity and dew-point. The amount of moisture which the air contains is its *absolute humidity*. The percentage of moisture which air contains at any temperature, in comparison with what it might contain at that temperature, is known as its *relative humidity* (Fig. 494). When air contains half the moisture which it might contain it has a relative humidity of 50. When it is saturated, its humidity is 100. Air commonly is said to be "dry" when its relative humidity is low, and "moist" when its relative humidity is high. The average relative humidity of air over the land is probably about 60, and that over the ocean about 85, so that the atmosphere as a whole is far from saturated. The part of our country which is productive, agriculturally, without irrigation, is chiefly where the relative humidity is more than 65.

The relative humidity of the air in dry regions is much greater than is popularly supposed. It is rarely so low as half that of regions moist enough to be productive. Thus at Yuma, Ariz., the average relative humidity for the year is 42.9 per cent, with a mean monthly minimum of 34.7 per cent. The corresponding figures for Santa Fe are 44.8 and 28.7; for Pueblo, 46.2 and 37.6. In Death Valley, Cal., the average relative humidity for five months was 23. All these places are in very dry regions.

Any reduction of temperature of saturated air causes some of its moisture to be condensed. The temperature at which air begins to allow its water vapor to condense is the *dew-point*. Air which is saturated is therefore at the dew-point. It will be seen that this point is not a fixed temperature, but is influenced by the amount of water vapor in the air. When this amount is large, the temperature of the dew-point is relatively high; when the

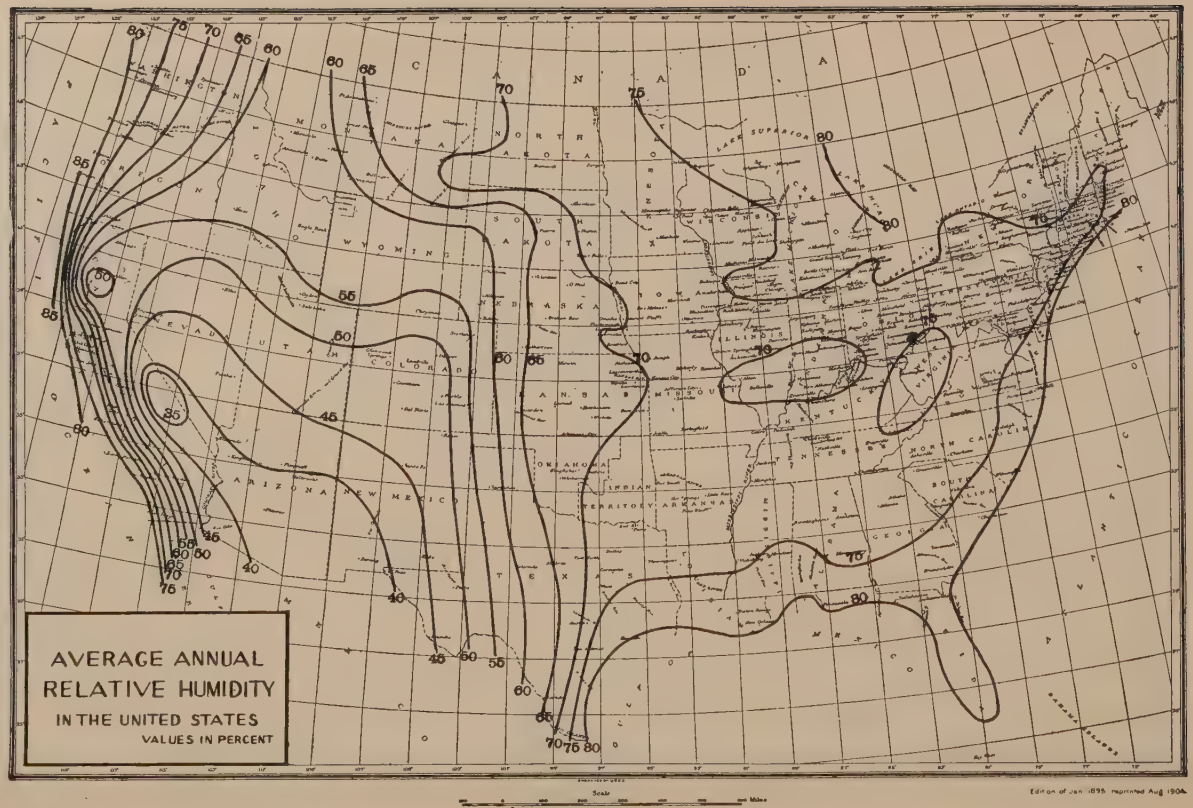


Fig. 494.—Chart showing the average annual humidity of the atmosphere in the United States.
(Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

amount is small, the temperature of the dew-point is relatively low.

Air may be brought to the dew-point in various ways; (1) It may be carried (by wind) where the temperature is lower, as to a higher latitude or altitude; (2) it may be cooled by having cooler air brought to it, as by a cold wind; (3) it may be cooled by radiation, or (4) by expansion.

Condensation. When the temperature of condensation is above 32°, the vapor condenses into water, which usually takes the form of little droplets, forming fog or cloud. If the temperature of condensation is less than 32°, the water crystallizes as it condenses, and takes the form of ice particles.

Condensation and temperature. When the water vapor of the air is condensed, an amount of heat equal to that absorbed in its evaporation is set free. This is why rising moist air is not cooled so rapidly as rising dry air (p. 463). Dry air is cooled about 1° F. for every 183 feet of rise, but saturated air at 68° F. must rise nearly twice as much to be cooled 1° F. This slower rate of cooling is because of the heat set free by the condensation of moisture.

Dew and frost. It sometimes happens that the temperature of the surface of the land or of objects on it becomes lower than the temperature of the surrounding air. This is especially likely to be the case in the clear nights of late summer and autumn. If the temperature of grass blades, for example, becomes lower than the dew-point of the surrounding air at night, moisture from the surrounding air will be condensed on them. Such moisture is *dew*. Dew does not fall, but condenses on the surface of solid objects. A good illustration of dew often is furnished by the moisture which sometimes gathers on the outside of a pitcher of ice-water on a summer day. The temperature of the pitcher is below the dew-point of its surroundings, and moisture from the air therefore condenses on it. Dew forms on clear nights rather than cloudy ones, because the heat of day is radiated more readily from the land when there are no clouds. Dew is formed on still nights more than on windy ones, because the wind tends to move away the air which is approaching its dew-point, supplying other and drier air in its place.

When the temperature of the dew-point is below 32° F., the moisture which condenses on solid objects condenses as frost. Frost is not frozen dew, any more than snow is frozen rain; it

stands in the same relation to dew that snow does to rain. In the autumn, frost is more likely to occur in valleys and on low flats than on adjacent hills, because the colder air settles to the lower levels.

Dew, and sometimes frost, may form on the under sides of objects. If a pan is placed bottom up on the ground, there will be dew on the inside of it in the morning as often as on the outside. There often is dew on the under side of a flat stone when there is none on its top. Even in a desert, a rubber blanket spread on the ground at night often will be wet on the under side in the morning. The air in the ground has some moisture, and during the day, when the sun shines, this air is warmed. At night, the air above the ground cools much more quickly than that in the ground. The cooler heavier air above then sinks into the ground, displacing and crowding up the warmer air below, with its water vapor. On reaching the cool pan or the cool rubber blanket, some of the moisture is condensed. If the air in the ground had more moisture than that above ground, water vapor would pass up from below, even if the air with which it is associated did not. In the daytime the rising moisture would not condense on the pan or blanket, because they would be warmer than the water vapor from below, if the sun were shining; but at night their temperature may be low enough to cause condensation.

Clouds and fog. The water droplets and the ice particles condensed from the water vapor of the air take the form of *clouds* if the condensation takes place without precipitation above the bottom of the atmosphere, and the form of *fog* (above 32° F.) or frost (below 32° F.) if at the bottom of the atmosphere. Fogs and air-frost are the same as clouds, except that clouds are higher. Fog is, indeed, but a cloud resting on the surface of the land. If moisture condenses and the particles remain suspended in the air about the top of a mountain, there is, to the observer on the plain or in the valley below, a cloud about the mountain; but if the observer were to climb up into the cloud, it would then appear to be fog. Fogs often are formed when the warmer air over a lake in autumn blows over the colder land, or when the air over warmer water from one part of the ocean (e.g., a warm ocean current) blows over colder water. They also often form in valleys at night, especially in autumn, when night temperatures are much lower than those of the day. The cooler air settles in the valleys, which therefore are more likely to have fogs than the uplands.

Fogs occasionally lead to shipwreck on sea, and interrupt business operations on land. A persistent and dense fog in London, December 10 to 17, 1905, was estimated to have cost the city

Fig. 495.—Morning fog over valleys. Mount Tamalpais, Cal. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

$1,750,000 per day in one way and another, largely through suspension of business. Such estimates are, however, to be taken with reserve, since much of the suspended business, with its profits, is

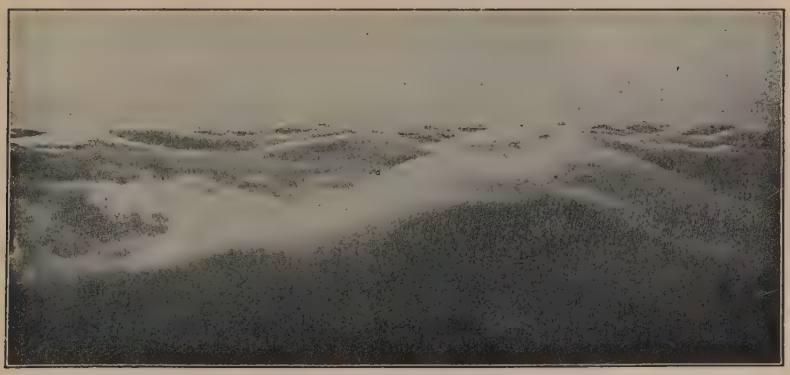


Fig. 496.—Fog waves. Coast of California. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

transacted later. A heavy fog facilitated Washington's retreat to New York after the battle of Long Island.

The droplets of water in clouds and fogs must be very small to remain suspended in the air. It has been estimated that they are,

in many cases about 1–3000 of an inch in diameter, but there is doubtless great variation.

Clouds also affect temperature by hindering radiation. In general, cloudiness lowers the summer temperatures of intermediate latitudes, raises their winter temperatures, and gives them a higher average temperature.

Forms of clouds. Clouds assume many forms. Among the more common are the *cumulus*, the *stratus*, the *nimbus*, and the

Fig. 497.—Fog rising and turning to cloud. Mount Tamalpais, Cal. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

cirrus clouds. Between these more distinct forms there are various gradations, giving rise to the names *cirro-cumulus*, *cirro-stratus*, *cumulo-stratus*, etc.

Cumulus clouds are thick clouds, the upper surfaces of which are more or less dome-shaped, with irregular and fleecy protuberances. Their bases are nearly horizontal. They appear to be formed by ascending convection currents, and their plane bases seem to mark the level at which condensation takes place as the air rises. They appear especially in clear, hot weather, and most commonly begin to form in mid or late forenoon, after insolation has established convection currents. They grow as the heat of the day increases, and normally attain their greatest size at or soon after the hour of maximum heat. As evening approaches, they

commonly grow smaller. They frequently are dissipated before sundown, but sometimes pass into other forms of cloud.

Stratus clouds are horizontal sheets of lifted fog. When the sheet is broken by wind or mountains, it is sometimes called fracto-stratus.

Nimbus or rain-clouds consist of thick layers of dark clouds without definite shape, and with ragged edges, from which continued rain or snow generally falls (Fig. 504).

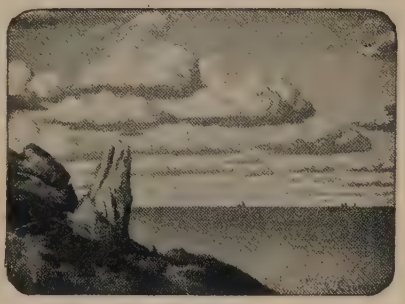


Fig. 498.

Fig. 498.—Cumulus (wool-pack) clouds. (Photo. from Cloud Chart, Hydrographic Office, Dept. of the Navy.)

Cirrus clouds are detached, delicate, and fibrous. They often are described as having the form of feathers. They are generally white, and sometimes arranged in belts. They are

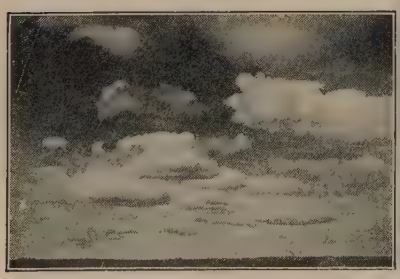


Fig. 499.

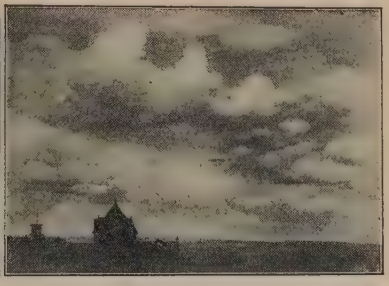


Fig. 500.

Fig. 499.—Cumulus clouds of the fair-weather type. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)
Fig. 500.—Spring cumulus clouds of the rain type. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

usually high and thin, and often of particles of snow or ice (Figs. 504–507).

Precipitation. The condensation of the water vapor of the air leads to rain, snow, or hail, if the products of condensation fall. Whether precipitation really takes place after the formation of clouds depends on many conditions. To give rain or snow, the particles of water or snow in the cloud must be heavy enough to

fall; and if they are to reach the bottom of the atmosphere, they must not pass through air which is dry enough and warm enough

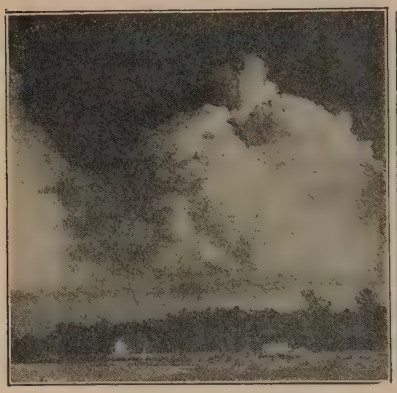


Fig. 501.

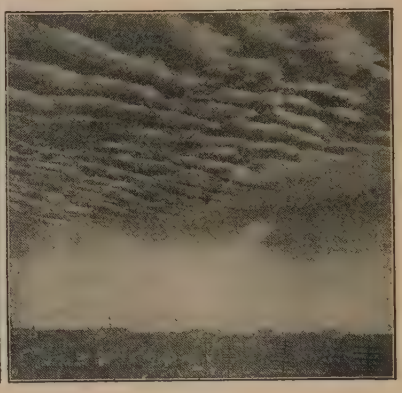


Fig. 502.

Fig. 501.—Cumulus clouds; thunder-heads in process of active growth. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

Fig. 502.—Alto-cumulus clouds, wave form. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

to evaporate them before they reach the bottom of the atmosphere. Whether precipitation takes the form of rain or snow depends not only on the temperature of condensation, but also on the temperature of the air over the place where the precipitation takes place. Precipitation which starts as snow may become water before it reaches the bottom of the air. It often *snows* on a mountain when it *rains* in the valley below. Precipitation which starts as water rarely freezes as it descends.

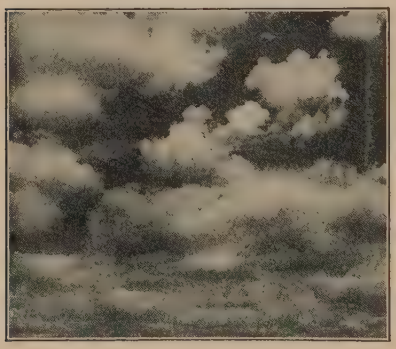


Fig. 503.

Fig. 503.—Cumulus clouds, broken and wind-torn. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

Since condensation follows cooling, and since precipitation follows condensation, sufficient cooling (below dew-point) of the air may cause precipitation. It follows that there may be rain (or snow) (1) when air is blown up a cold mountain-side, (2) when it is blown poleward (or, in general, from a warmer to a cooler place)

without rising, (3) when it rises by convection, both because (*a*) it is cooled by being brought to cooler air, and (*b*) because it expands;

FIG. 504.

FIG. 505.

FIG. 504.—Cumulo-nimbus clouds. (From Cloud Chart, Hydrographic Office, Dept. of the Navy.)
FIG. 505.—Cirrus clouds. (From Cloud Chart, Hydrographic Office, Dept. of the Navy.)

(4) when cooler air is brought to warmer air. Rains due to (1) are not rare in mountain regions, and rains due to (3) are common

FIG. 506.

FIG. 507.

FIG. 506.—Cirro-stratus clouds. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)
FIG. 507.—Cirro-cumulus clouds; mackerel sky. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

where convection currents are strong, as in the region of tropical calms, where precipitation occurs almost daily during the hottest part of the day.

The *distribution* of rainfall is dependent, in large measure, on the winds, and will be considered later.

Rain-making. Various attempts have been made to produce rain by means which may be called artificial. The methods employed have been various, but the results have been unsuccessful.

Summary. The air constantly is taking up moisture from all moist surfaces. This moisture, in the form of invisible vapor, is diffused and blown everywhere. When it reaches a temperature which is low enough (the dew-point), the moisture is condensed. If it condenses in the upper air, it may fall as rain or snow, or it may remain suspended in the air in the form of cloud and be evaporated again. If it condenses on the surface of solid objects at the bottom of the atmosphere, it forms dew or frost. Water vapor is thus in constant circulation, and all land life depends upon it. Some of the water which is precipitated out of the atmosphere falls on the surface from which it was evaporated, but much of it falls in places far from those whence it was evaporated.

CHAPTER XVI

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE

THAT the air is substantial and has weight is shown by the phenomena cited on page 432. Its downward pressure or weight already has been stated to be, on the average, nearly 15 pounds to the square inch at sea-level. Differences in atmospheric pressure are the primary cause of atmospheric movements, or winds. The pressure of the atmosphere is measured by the *barometer*.

The barometer. The principle of the ordinary barometer is as follows: A tube more than 30 inches long, closed at one end, is filled with mercury, and the tube is then placed, open end down, in a dish of mercury (Fig. 508). The mercury in the tube will sink until its upper surface reaches a level about 30 inches above the level of the mercury in the dish, if the place of the experiment is near sea-level. The mercury remains at this level in the tube because the pressure of the air on the mercury in the dish is sufficient to balance the downward pressure (weight) of the mercury in the tube. Since the pressure of the air at sea-level holds the mercury in the tube up about 30 inches (760 millimetres), the pressure of the air at sea-level is said to be 30 inches (760 millimetres). If the atmospheric pressure becomes less, the mercury in the tube falls; if it becomes greater, the mercury rises.

FIG. 508. — Diagram to illustrate the principle of the barometer. The pressure of the air at *A* maintains the mercury at *B* in the tube when there is no air in the tube above *B*.

At elevations above sea-level the pressure is less, and the higher the ascent, the less the pressure. Altitude above sea-level may be measured by means of barometric pressure; but since mercurial barometers are not conve-

niently carried and are easily broken, another form of barometer, the *aneroid* barometer, has been devised for this purpose.

Air pressures unequal. The general facts set forth in previous chapters make it clear that the pressure of the atmosphere must vary from point to point, and from time to time at the same point. Some of the reasons are as follows;

1. The temperature of the surface on which the air rests is unequal, and increase of temperature makes the air lighter. Not only this, but the temperature in a given place varies from time to time. It follows that the pressure of the air at a given place varies from time to time.

2. A cubic foot of dry air at a temperature of 68° and under a pressure of 30 inches, weighs 523.72 grains. A cubic foot of saturated air under the same conditions weighs 4.26 grains less. On the whole, the amount of moisture in the air is greater in warm regions than in cold ones, and greater over the sea and moist lands than over dry regions. Since the amount of moisture in the air at a given place varies from time to time, the pressure constantly is being disturbed.

If temperature and moisture were the only factors controlling air pressure, it should be least in low latitudes, where it is warmest and where there is abundant moisture. In other words, it should be least where the isotherms are highest, especially over moist regions, and greatest in cold regions, where the air is relatively dry. Since the distribution of atmospheric pressure does not correspond with these general rules, and since changes of pressure in a given region take place independently of changes in temperature and moisture, it follows that factors other than temperature and moisture influence atmospheric pressure.

Representation of Pressure on Maps and Charts

Isobars. Lines may be drawn on the surface of the earth connecting points where atmospheric pressures are equal. Such lines are *isobars*. A map showing lines of equal pressure is known as an *isobaric map* or *chart*. An isobaric chart for the year, that is, an annual isobaric chart, shows isobars connecting points having the same *average pressure* throughout the year. There may be isobaric charts for each of the several seasons, for each of the several months, and for any shorter period. The daily weather maps are daily isobaric charts.

FIG. 509.—Chart of annual isobars. (After Buchan.)

Fig. 509 represents an isobaric chart for the year. The figures on the lines indicate the average pressure for the year in inches. The isobars of 30 inches or more are full lines; those of less than 30 inches are dotted lines. A few suggestions will help in the interpretation of the map. In the southern hemisphere, the isobar of 30 inches encloses a belt extending almost around the world. It is interrupted only in the vicinity of Australia. Every point within the area enclosed by this isobar has an average atmospheric pressure of more than 30 inches. Every point within the isobar of 30.10 inches has an average annual pressure of more than 30.10 inches, while every point between the isobars of 30.00 and 30.10 has an average annual pressure of between 30.00 and 30.10 inches. Between the two adjacent isobars of 29.90 in the equatorial part of the Atlantic, the pressure is less than 29.90, but not so low as 29.80. If the pressure sank to the latter figure, there would have been isobars of 29.80 inches.

It will be noted that the pressure within the areas enclosed by the isobars of 30.10 in the South Atlantic is *more than* 30.10, while the pressure between the adjacent 29.90 isobars of the mid-Atlantic is *less than* 29.90. In explanation of the difference, it is to be noted that as the 30.10 isobar is approached from without, the pressure is *increasing;* and that as the 29.90 isobars are approached from poleward, the pressure is *decreasing.* By the application of this principle the interpretation will be seen.

In the interpretation of isobaric charts another point should be understood. The pressure of the atmosphere diminishes with increasing elevation, as indicated in a general way by the facts stated in Chapter XII. It is shown in greater detail in the following table, which shows the height of a column of air, at different temperatures, corresponding to 0.1 of an inch of pressure:

HEIGHT OF AN AIR COLUMN CORRESPONDING TO 0.1 OF AN INCH BAROMETRIC PRESSURE, AT VARIOUS TEMPERATURES.

Air Pressure in Inches.	Average Temperature in Degrees Fahrenheit.						
	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°
	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.
22	116	119	122	124	127	130	132
23	111	114	116	119	124	124	126
24	106	109	111	114	116	121	121
25	102	105	107	109	112	114	116
26	98	101	103	105	107	110	112
27	94	97	99	101	103	106	108
28	91	93	95	98	100	102	104
29	88	90	92	94	96	98	100
30	85	87	89	91	93	95	97

If, for example, one ascends 95 feet from sea-level, where the temperature is 70° F. and the pressure 30 inches, the pressure of the atmosphere is reduced by 0.1 of an inch. At a level where the pressure is but 28 inches (1800 feet above sea-level, see p. 508), 102 feet of ascent would be necessary to reduce the pressure 0.1 of an inch.

It will be recalled that the temperatures shown on an isothermal chart are not those actually observed, but that allowance is made for altitude above sea-level. Similarly, the pressures shown on an isobaric chart are not those actually observed on the land. They are the pressures which would exist if there were no elevations above sea-level. Before being recorded on an isobaric chart, the observed atmospheric pressure of a place 95 feet above sea-level, when the temperature is 70° F., has 0.1 of an inch added to it if the observed pressure was 30 inches. If the temperature were lower, 0.1 of an inch would be added for a lesser height, since colder air is heavier. Thus at a temperature of 40° F., 89 feet of rise makes a difference of 0.1 of an inch in the pressure of the atmosphere.

Isobaric surfaces. An *isobaric surface* connects places having the same pressure, that is, the same amount of air above. If, for example, one place at sea-level has a pressure of 30 inches, and another a pressure of 29.80 inches, the isobaric surface of 30 inches would lie beneath sea-level where the pressure is but 29.80 at sea-level. If the temperature of the place is 70°, it would be necessary to descend about 190 feet below sea-level, at the place where the pressure is 29.80 inches at the surface, to find the level where the pressure is 30 inches. If the observed pressure at another place at sea-level is 30.10 inches, the isobaric surface of 30 inches would rise above sea-level there. These relations are shown in Figs. 510 and 511. The former is a

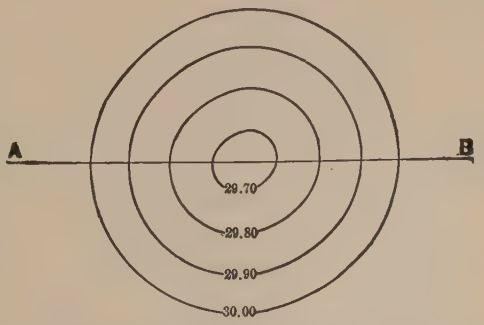


Fig. 510.—A series of isobaric lines showing diminishing pressure toward the center.

series of isobaric lines, with pressures varying from 30.00 to 29.70 inches; the latter is a vertical section through such an area, to show the isobaric surfaces. From these figures it is seen that *the isobaric lines* (Fig. 510) *are the lines where isobaric surfaces cut the plane of sea-level.*

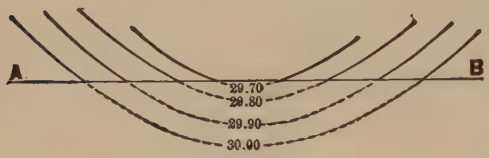


Fig. 511.—Section through the area represented in Fig. 510, showing the position of isobaric surfaces. As the pressure toward the center of the area shown in Fig. 510 diminishes, the isobaric surface bends downward. It will be seen that isobaric lines are the lines where isobaric surfaces cut sea-level.

If a surface of water had the form shown in Fig. 511, the water from the higher parts would flow to the lower parts until the surface became level. The air, which is more fluid than water, behaves in a similar way, and moves down every isobaric surface which has slope. Such movements are winds. When the isobaric slope is great, or, in other words, when the *isobaric gradient* is high, the wind is strong; when the isobaric gradient is low, the wind is gentle; and when there is no isobaric gradient, that is, when the isobaric surface is level, there is no wind. The strong wind is strong for much the same reason that a swift river is swift, and the gentle wind is gentle for much the same reason that a slow river is sluggish.

Isobaric charts have their highest value in showing the direction and the strength of winds, and winds are determined by isobaric surfaces. In order to know about the winds of a given place, we must compare the pressures of adjacent areas *at the same level.* For example, it is not the difference in pressure between the top of Pike's Peak and Denver, as measured at the two places by a barometer, which is of consequence in determining winds between these places, but it is the pressure at the top of Pike's Peak, as compared with the pressure at the same elevation over Denver, which is significant. In Fig. 512, it is the relation of the pressures at A and B, not that between A and D, which is significant. If the isobaric surface at A extends as a

Fig. 512.—It is the atmospheric pressure *at the same level in adjacent areas* which determines movements of air.

plane to *B*, there will be no wind between the two places, because the isobaric surface has no gradient. To determine what the winds are to be, therefore, we must compare pressures at the same level. This is why all isobars are reduced to sea-level, on isobaric charts.

The courses of isobars. Returning now to Fig. 509, several points are seen readily. (1) The isobars in general have an east-west course, though many of them are irregular; (2) they are, in general, higher in low latitudes than in high latitudes; (3) they are highest in the latitudes just outside the tropics; (4) they are more regular in the southern hemisphere than in the northern; and (5) they are, on the whole, more irregular on the land than on the sea.

Isobars and parallels. Though many of the isobars are very irregular, their general courses are east-west, and none of them has a north-south course for any considerable distance. In this respect they correspond in a general way with isotherms (Fig. 473).

We have now to inquire why the isobars follow, in a general way, the parallels.

It already has been seen that isotherms tend to follow parallels. Is it the latitude, or the distribution of temperature, largely determined by latitude, which influences the pressure, and therefore determines the position of the isobars? Or is there some other cause which controls or influences their position?

Low latitudes have higher temperatures than high latitudes; and increase of temperature expands the air, and so makes it lighter. If, therefore, temperature controls the position of isobars, they should be lowest at the equator and highest at the poles. Fig. 509 shows not only that this is not the case, but that pressures are distributed in apparent defiance of temperature. The isobars are highest neither where it is coldest nor where it is warmest; they are highest neither in the lowest nor in the highest latitudes. It is clear, therefore, that *neither latitude nor temperature, nor both together, control the position of isobars.*

It does not follow, however, that these factors have no effect on atmospheric pressure; and if the principles thus far developed are correct, *atmospheric temperature must affect atmospheric pressure.* The only inference, therefore, which we are warranted in making at this stage is that *latitude and temperature are not the chief factors which determine the distribution of atmospheric pressure,* and therefore of isobars. It will be seen in the sequel, however, that tempera-

ture is really a very fundamental factor, though its effect is, in part, indirect.

Relation of isobars to land and water. Let us see if further study of the isobaric charts will throw additional light on the distribution of atmospheric pressure.

The isobars are much more regular in the southern hemisphere, where there is much water, than in the northern hemisphere, where there is less water and more land. In this respect they have some relation to isotherms. (Compare Fig. 473.)

The map (Fig. 509) also shows that the high-pressure belt in either hemisphere centering about latitudes a little above 30° is somewhat regular in the southern hemisphere, where water is abundant, but very irregular in the northern hemisphere, where there is more land. It is suggested therefore that the distribution of land and water may influence the position of isobars. It will be remembered that this was one of the factors influencing the position of isotherms, because the land is warmer than the sea in the same latitude in summer, and cooler in winter, and anything which influences temperature should influence pressure also.

If temperature influences the position of the isobars, this influence should appear on seasonal or monthly isobaric charts.

Isobars and temperature. The isobaric map for January (Fig. 513) shows that the high-pressure belt is much expanded in the northern hemisphere (winter), especially on the land (compare Fig. 509), and much contracted in the southern hemisphere (summer). Since the pressure is high (above 30 inches) over a greater area in the hemisphere which has winter, the map suggests that the low temperature of this hemisphere at this season may be a cause of the widened area of high pressure.

This inference may be tested further from this chart. The belt of high pressure in the northern hemisphere (Fig. 513) is much wider on land than on the sea. Since the land is cooler than the sea during January, the inference that high pressure goes with low temperature seems to be supported. In the southern hemisphere, January is a summer month, and the land is warmer than the sea. If increasing temperature causes low pressure, the pressure should there be lower on the land than on the sea. The map shows this to be the case. This chart therefore seems to show that high temperature tends to reduce the pressure, for (1) the width of the high-pressure belt is greater in the hemisphere which has winter; (2) the

width of the high-pressure belt is greater on the cooler land than on the less cool sea in the hemisphere which has winter; and (3) the pressure over the land is less than that over the sea in the hemisphere where the land is warmer than the sea.

This inference may also be tested by the isobaric chart for July (Fig. 514). At that time of year, the high-pressure belt in the southern hemisphere (winter) should be expanded, especially on land, while that in the northern hemisphere should be contracted, especially on the land. Fig. 514 shows this to be the case. We therefore return with increased confidence to the conclusion that high temperature reduces the pressure, while low temperature increases it. The charts furnish much more evidence in support of the same conclusions. Some of them are the following:

1. Figs. 513 and 514 show that the atmospheric pressure changes from season to season in the same place. Thus in January the pressure over the larger part of the United States exceeds 30 inches, while in July it falls short of 30 inches. Similarly the pressure in southern Africa exceeds 30 inches in July (winter), and falls short of it in January (summer). The pressure over much of Asia exceeds 30 inches in January, and falls short of it in July. Other illustrations of the same sort may be found on the maps. *In many cases, therefore, increased temperature goes with decreased pressure.*

2. It will be seen from Figs. 513 and 514 that the difference between the pressure in January and July is greater in Asia than elsewhere, being, at the maximum, nearly an inch. In North America and southern Africa it is about 0.40 of an inch, while in Europe and South America it is still less. *The seasonal range of pressure is greater on large land areas than on small ones.* This is in keeping, it will be noticed, with seasonal changes of temperature (compare Figs. 474 and 475), and is another confirmation of the close relationship between isobars and isotherms.

3. Again, it is to be noted that the center of the high-pressure belt in the northern hemisphere in January is in latitude 30° or a little above, with great expansions of the belt to the northward on land. The centre of the high-pressure belt in the southern hemisphere at the same time is in latitude about 35°. In July, on the other hand, the centre of the high-pressure belt in the northern hemisphere is in latitude about 35°, and in the southern, in latitude about 30°. That is, *the centres of the high-pressure belts shift in harmony with the apparent motion of the sun.*

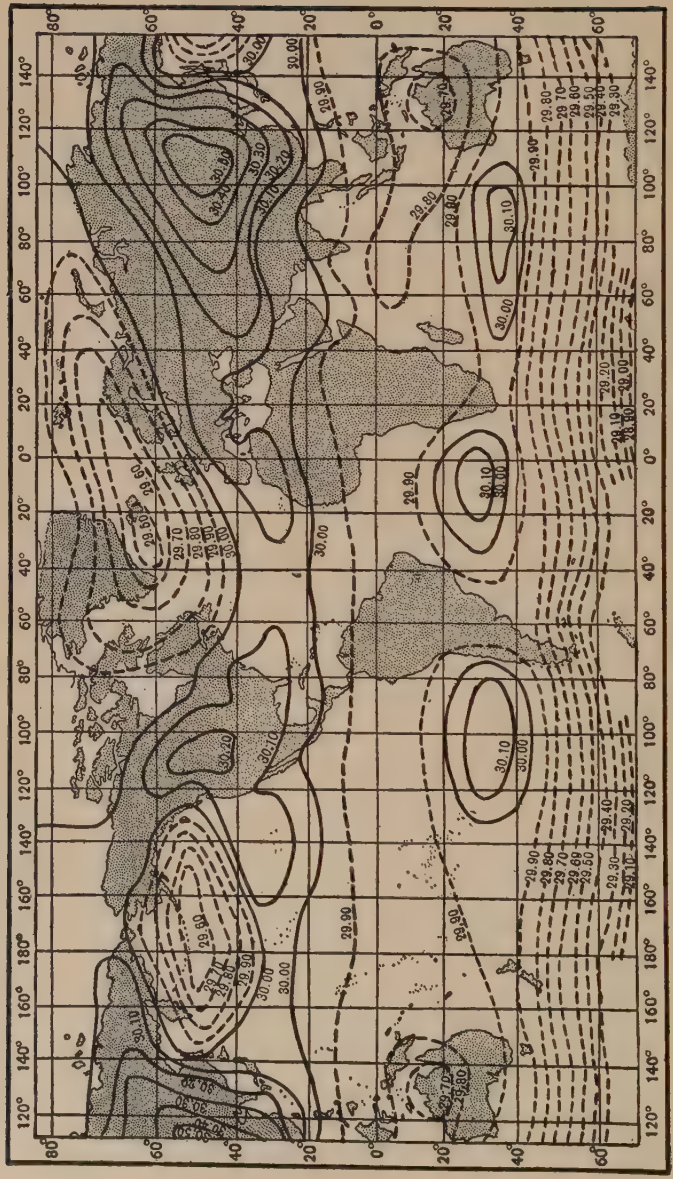


FIG. 513.—Chart of isobaric lines for January. (After Buchan.)

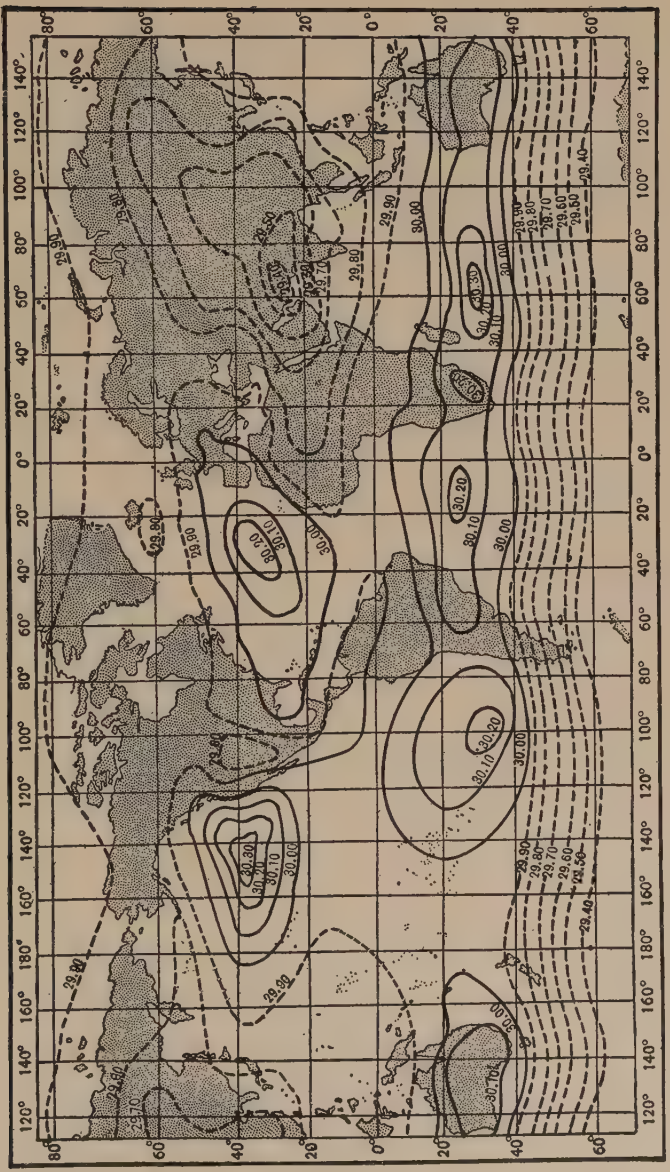


FIG. 514.—Chart of isobaric lines for July. (After Buchan.)

4. It is to be noted, also, that the seasonal variation of pressure on the sea is not, in general, so great as that on land. The seasonal change of temperature also is less on the sea (compare Figs. 474 and 475).

5. The high-pressure (more than 30 inches) belt in each hemisphere is not only greatly contracted in the summer (July in the northern hemisphere and January in the southern, (Figs. 513 and 514), but it is interrupted in each hemisphere on land. This suggests that the relations of sea and land influence pressure. Since sea and land influence temperature, their influence on pressure may be only a result of their influence on temperature.

A relationship between temperature and isobars is clear, but it is also clear that temperature does not afford a full explanation of the distribution of pressures as shown by isobars. The explanation of the high pressures outside the tropics, and the low pressures in high latitudes, a feature which appears on all the charts, *is not found in temperature.*

Isobars and humidity. We have seen that water vapor makes the air lighter. Are the isobars lowest over the oceans in warm latitudes, where the air contains on the average most moisture? Figs. 512, 513, and 514 show that this is not the case. It is reasonable to conclude, therefore, that the amount of *moisture in the air is not the chief factor controlling the isobars,* though atmospheric moisture must influence atmospheric pressure.

Inequalities of temperature and moisture in the air are the only factors thus far studied which might affect the isobars; and since they do not explain the most striking feature in the distribution of atmospheric pressure, namely, the high pressures in low latitudes, we conclude that something besides temperature and moisture must be involved in their explanation.

The high-pressure belts. The explanation of the high pressure in low latitudes rather than in high, and the explanation of the highest pressures just outside the tropics, is not found on the isobaric charts. These larger features of pressure-distribution are probably to be explained by the general circulation of the atmosphere under the influence of rotation. Certain factors bearing on this point are mentioned below.

In the equatorial zone, the air is heated and expanded. As it rises by expansion, it must flow to north and south. If the expansion affected the atmosphere all the way from bottom to

top, there would be outflow from the top of the atmosphere in the equatorial zone in either direction (Fig. 515) for the same reason that outflow would take place from the top of a mound or ridge of water if such existed. But the expansion of the air by heating is chiefly in the lower part of the air. As the lower air expands, it pushes up the air above it. The pressure of the air at the bottom, before outflow takes place above, is not diminished, but the pressure at a point above, say at the upper limit of the effective heating, is increased, because a larger part of the air is now crowded up above that level. This is illustrated by Figs. 515 and 516. The former shows the crowding of the air above the zone of heating, and the latter the resulting isobaric slopes. Except at the bottom of the atmosphere, the isobaric surfaces slope downward on either hand from the equatorial zone, and air always flows down an isobaric surface. Over the heated equatorial zone, therefore, the expanded air rises, and at some level above the bottom of the atmosphere it flows poleward down the isobaric surface (Fig. 517). This is the case in spite of the low pressure at the bottom of the atmosphere in equatorial latitudes. When some of the air flows poleward from the equatorial belt, the pressure at the bottom of the equatorial belt is diminished, because the amount of air above is diminished. At the same time *the pressure on both sides of the equatorial belt is increased, because the amount of air is there increased.*

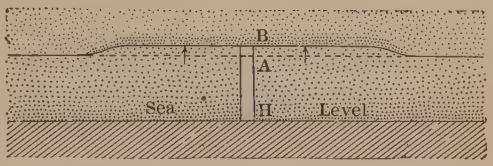


Fig. 515.—Expansion of the lower air as a result of heating, crowds the air above, and so increases its density and pressure, as compared with the density and pressure of air *at the same level* outside the heated area.

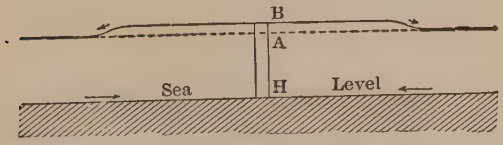


Fig. 516.—The condition of things represented in Fig. 515 gives rise to movements of air.

2. When the air of the equatorial belt expands, it pushes laterally as well as upward, and so tends to compress the air outside the belt where the expansion takes place.

Both the outward flow and the outward crowding of the air in the equatorial belt tend to increase the pressure of the air outside the zone of principal heating, but they do not make it apparent why the zones of greatest pressure should be in latitude 30° or a little above.

The circulation at the bottom air which results from the high-pressure belts in extra-tropical latitudes, tends to maintain them. The air moving poleward from them turns to the right in the north-

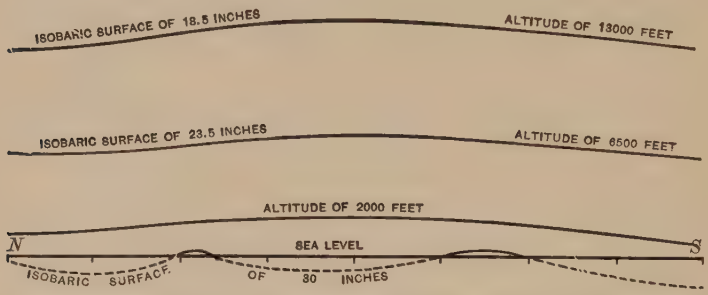


Fig. 517.—Slope of isobaric surfaces along meridians at various altitudes. (After Waldo.)

ern hemisphere, and to the left in the southern, becoming westerly winds in both hemispheres. In both, this turning causes these winds to crowd on the equatorward side of their lines of movement. This tends to maintain and increase the pressure in the high-pressure belts, by crowding on their poleward sides.

Given the extra-tropical belts of high pressure, the numerous irregularities and changes of pressure from season to season, as shown by the isobaric charts, may be explained chiefly by variations in temperature.

Permanent areas of low pressure. Fig. 509 shows areas of low pressure in the North Pacific and North Atlantic oceans. These areas of low pressure are still more pronounced on the January chart (Fig. 513), and but feebly marked on the July chart (Fig. 514). No corresponding areas of low pressure are known in the southern hemispheres. No satisfactory explanation of their existence has been given.

Temporary and local variations of pressure. There are many variations of pressure not shown on seasonal or even on monthly isobaric charts, though they appear on daily weather maps. These

will be studied in the next chapter. There are even variations of pressure which do not appear on the daily maps. Chief of them are the daily variations, presumably caused by the daily variations of temperature. Thus there are daily maxima at about 10 A.M. and 10 P.M., and daily minima at about 4 P.M. and 4 A.M. These daily changes range from 0.01 to 0.15 of an inch, the range being greatest in low latitudes.

CHAPTER XVII

GENERAL CIRCULATION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Prevailing and Periodic Winds

Inequalities of atmospheric pressure involve atmospheric movements. Since atmospheric pressures are unequal, and since processes are constantly in operation which renew the inequalities, movements are continuous. Unequal insolation is the most important factor in disturbing the equilibrium of the air, and so in generating air movements, and in determining their initial direction; but the rotation of the earth has much influence in directing them, once they are started. Since the greater insolation is always in the same general zone, and since the rotation of the earth is always in the same direction, the air movements generated and directed by insolation and rotation are systematic, and result in a general circulation of the atmosphere.

It is to be borne in mind that the movement of air is always from a region of greater pressure to one of less pressure *at the same level;* in other words, always *down a barometric or isobaric slope.* The familiar saying that "the wind bloweth where it listeth" is true only in the sense that the air always listeth to blow down the steepest accessible isobaric gradient, and that where there is no gradient, it listeth not to blow.

The General Effect of Unequal Insolation

If the air were in equilibrium over the whole earth at a uniform, low temperature, and if it could then be heated by the sun for a time without involving horizontal movement, the effect would be to raise its surface over all areas where its temperature was increased, and to raise it most where it was heated most, that is, in the low latitudes (Fig. 517). As indicated in the last chapter the result would be the establishment of a barometric gradient from the equatorial region toward the poles, and this is the condition necessary for poleward movements of air.

Since the air in low latitudes is always being heated more effectively than that in higher latitudes[1], movement should be essentially constant, above the bottom of the air, from the equatorial zone to the polar zones in both hemispheres. These poleward movements of air lessen the pressure at the bottom of the atmosphere in low latitudes, because air has moved away from that zone. As the pressure is thus lessened in the equatorial region, a barometric gradient is established *toward the equator at the bottom of the atmosphere* (Fig. 518), and air must then come in from higher latitudes. Here, then, we have two elements of a general circulation: a poleward movement in the upper air, and an equatorward movement in the lower air, and the causes which generate these movements are constantly in operation.

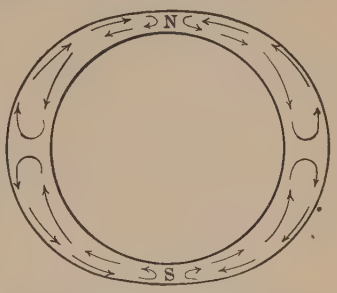


FIG. 518.—Diagram showing the general system of circulation which would be established by unequal heating, as a result of differences in latitude.

It should perhaps be noted that quite apart from circulatory movements, there would be lateral crowding by the expanding air of low latitudes (Fig. 513). In so far as this is effective, it would reduce the mass of air above any point of the surface where the air was expanding. It would also tend to increase the amount of air over areas poleward from the zone of heating, and so would tend to establish equatorward gradients in the lower part of the air. The result would be to increase the equatorward isobaric slope at the bottom of the atmosphere.

From unequal heating alone, therefore, there is a constant tendency to the movement of air (1) from low latitudes toward the poles above the bottom of the atmosphere, and (2) a compensatory movement from the higher latitudes toward the equator. *These are fundamental facts in the general circulation of the atmosphere.* They involve vertical as well as horizontal movements of air. The vertical movements are (1) upward in low latitudes,

[1] High latitudes sometimes receive more heat per day than low latitudes (see p.449), but the air of high latitudes is never so effectively heated, because of the abundance of ice, snow, ice-cold water, and frozen ground.

where the air (*a*) expands upward, and (*b*) is crowded upward by the cooler and heavier air which flows in below, and (2) downward in higher latitudes. The system of circulation which would be established by the greater heating of the low latitudes, *taken by itself*, is suggested by Fig. 518.

The general poleward movement of air from low latitudes seems to be clearly established by observation, but its return to low latitudes is much less clearly indicated in observed winds. Of its return there can be no question, but how and where it is effected is not well understood, for outside the low altitudes of the low latitudes (the trade-wind zones) no persistent equatorward movements of air are recorded. Some air moves equatorward in the aperiodic atmospheric disturbances, and perhaps the return is chiefly effected through them. These aperiodic movements will be studied in the next chapter.

It is to be noted that the isobaric gradients at the bottom of the atmosphere in low latitudes do not correspond with those in the upper air (Fig. 517); yet these apparently inharmonious gradients co-exist. The reasons for each have been given; their co-existence means that the tendency to the poleward slope is so strong that, *except in the lower part of the atmosphere*, it is not overcome by the causes which develop the equatorward gradient at the bottom of the atmosphere.

But for the influence of rotation and the unequal heating of land and water areas in the same latitude, the atmospheric movements just outlined would tend to follow meridians. Rotation affects the course of the atmospheric movements in more ways than one. It deflects all currents to the right in the northern hemisphere, and to the left in the southern; and it perhaps is responsible, in part at least, for the concentration of the high pressures of extra-tropical latitudes into belts near the tropics and these belts of high pressure have an important influence on the course of circulation at the bottom of the atmosphere, and interfere with the simplicity of circulation outlined above.

Effect of the Extra-tropical Belts of High Pressure

In each high-pressure belt (Fig. 509) the isobaric surfaces are bowed up in the lower part of the atmosphere(Fig. 517). and from each there is a barometric gradient both to north and south. From each of these belts, therefore, there should be a flow of air both

south and north at the bottom of the atmosphere. *If no other factors were involved,* the *movements of the lower air* should be those shown in Fig. 519; and if forces were in operation to constantly renew the high-pressure belt, these movements of air would be constant. At the center of the high-pressure belt, there would be little horizontal movement of the air. The narrow zone in this position is the *zone of tropical calms.*

After the poleward gradients in the larger part of the atmosphere (Fig. 517), the barometric slopes in the lower air from the high-pressure belts are perhaps the most important fact in the general circulation of the atmosphere.

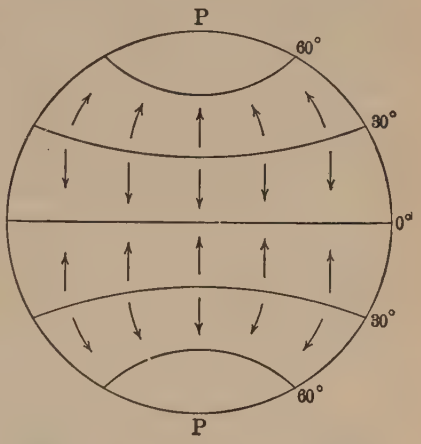


FIG. 519.—Diagram representing the general movements which would take place in the lower air if there were no rotation.

The High-latitude Areas of Low Pressure

The permanent areas of low pressure over the northern oceans (Figs. 509, 513, and 514) constitute another permanent factor in the atmospheric circulation. Their influence is less commonly recognized than that of the high-pressure belts, but it is perhaps of more than minor importance. To these areas there must be a constant inflow of air, and from them it rises and flows out above, thus modifying the general course of the circulation, and helping to destroy its simplicity. It is perhaps significant that the great centers of glaciation in the glacial period lay on the continents to the east of these areas of permanent low pressure.

According to the outline given above, the atmospheric circulation in one hemisphere appears to be measurably independent of that in the other. This, however, is less true than would appear from the statements already made. The average pressure for the northern hemisphere for January has been estimated at 29.99 inches, and that for the southern hemisphere at the same time 29.79 inches. The average pressures for July are estimated at 29.87 inches in the northern hemisphere and 29.91 inches for the south-

ern. It has been calculated that, to bring about the condition which exists in January, some 32,000,000 tons of air must have been shifted from the southern hemisphere into the northern since the preceding summer. This transfer is probably effected because the low temperature of the extensive land areas in the northern hemisphere so reduces the temperature and increases the density of the air over great areas in that hemisphere, that the north-poleward gradient in the upper air is increased, and the crest of the barometric surface (Fig. 517) shifted south of the equator. In other words, the *wind equator* and the thermal equator are then south of the geographic equator. The shifting of the thermal equator, and therefore of the wind equator, is shown in Figs. 474 and 475, respectively. The corresponding shifting of the wind zones is illustrated by Fig. 520.

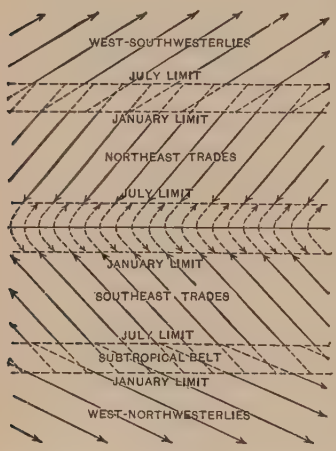


FIG. 520.— Diagram illustrating the shifting of wind zones. (After Davis.)

These three factors, namely, (1) the poleward gradients in the upper air of low latitudes, (2) the gradients in the lower air from the high-pressure belts in extra-tropical latitudes, and (3) the gradients in the lower air toward the areas of low pressure in high latitudes, are the principal ones, in the general circulation of the atmosphere. Their effects are modified greatly, as we shall see, by the unequal heating of land and sea.

Direction of Winds

Once wind is started, its direction may be influenced by various factors. Chief among them is the rotation of the earth, which affects the course of all winds except such as blow in the plane of the equator. The farther they go, the more are their directions changed.

A generalized diagram of the observed winds of the lower air is shown in Fig. 521. This figure represents the winds blowing out from the extra-tropical belts of high pressure, and following more

or less systematic courses. The poleward winds from the high-pressure belts are turned toward the east in both hemispheres, and so become *westerly winds* (southwesterly in the northern hemisphere and northwesterly in the southern). The winds blowing toward the equator in the lower air from the belts of high pressure become easterly (northeasterly in the northern hemisphere and southeasterly in the southern) and are known as *trade-winds*. The zone along the thermal equator where the northeasterly and southeasterly trades meet, and where ascending currents of air are more pronounced than horizontal movements, is known as the *zone of equatorial calms*. The position of the zone of calms shifts a little with the sun, its center remaining near the thermal equator. (Compare Figs. 474 and 475). Trade-winds are remarkably persistent, and have long been known and utilized by navigators.

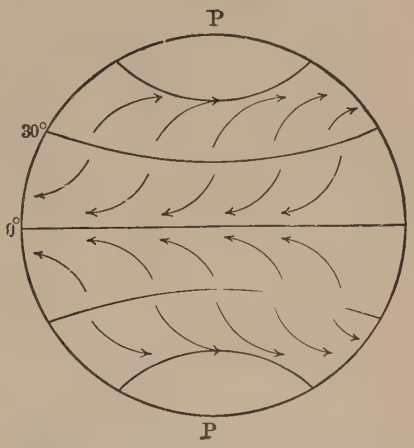


Fig. 521.—Generalized diagram of wind directions at the bottom of the atmosphere.

The westerly winds of middle latitudes and the trades of low latitudes are the *prevailing* winds at the bottom of the atmosphere, and sometimes are called the *planetary winds*.

By referring to Fig. 517, it will be seen that the trade-winds cannot have great depth. While they are pronounced at the surface, they must cease at some relatively slight elevation above, for the configuration of the isobaric surfaces changes. As a matter of observation, the trade-winds have been observed to cease at an elevation of about 10,000 feet on Teneriffe (Canary Islands, Lat. 28°). Their upper limit has also been noted on various mountains in South America and on the Hawaiian Islands, and is not far from the above figure.

The westerly winds, on the other hand, have much greater depth. Figs. 522 and 523 show the directions of winds in the United States (1) at the bottom of the atmosphere, and (2) at the

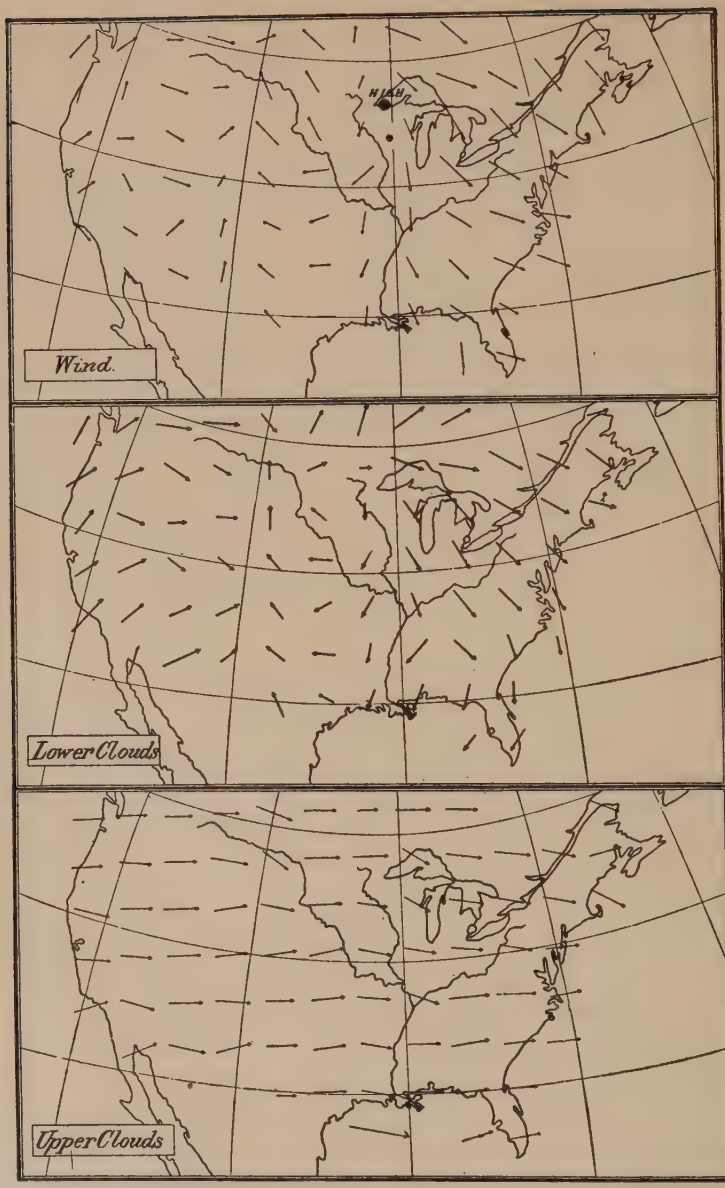


FIG. 522.—Chart showing the direction of air movements at the bottom of the atmosphere (upper figure), at the horizon of the lower clouds (middle figure), and at the level of the upper clouds (lower figure), at a time when the pressure is high about Lake Superior. The winds are westerly in the upper air, without reference to inequalities of pressure in the lower air. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

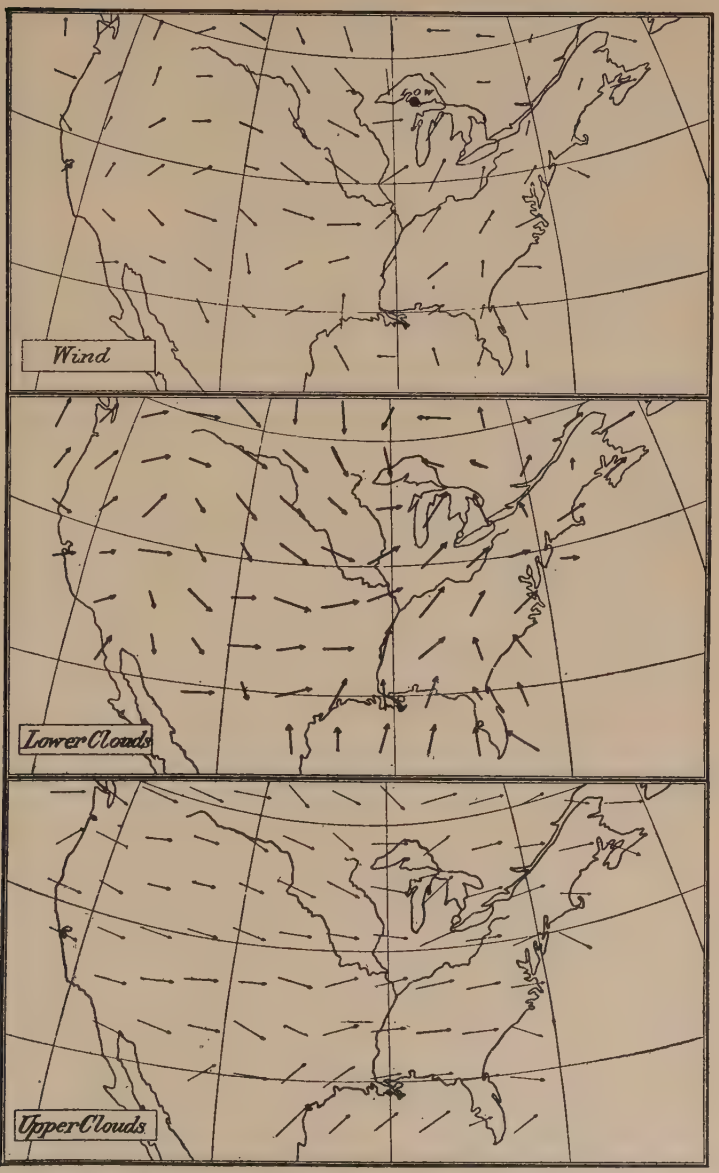


FIG. 523.—Figure showing the movements of the air when atmospheric pressure is low about Lake Superior. It will be noted that the movements in the upper air (lowest figure) are from the west as in the preceding case.

level of the upper clouds. The movements at the bottom of the air are very different in the two cases, but the movements indicated by the upper clouds are to the eastward in both. It is to be noted that all the winds represented in the figures are below the isothermal layer, and all are in the "lower atmosphere," mentioned on page 456.

Land and Water Circulation

While the winds at the bottom of the atmosphere tend to fall into the general system shown in Fig. 521, the simplicity of the system is interfered with by various disturbing influences which modify the system of planetary winds. Chief of these disturbing factors is the unequal heating of the atmosphere over land and water. This not only interferes with the direction of planetary winds, but is itself a cause of winds.

Monsoons and land- and sea-breezes already have been cited as illustrations of the effects of the unequal heating of land and water. The monsoon influence is probably much stronger than is commonly recognized, for it overcomes the prevailing winds on a

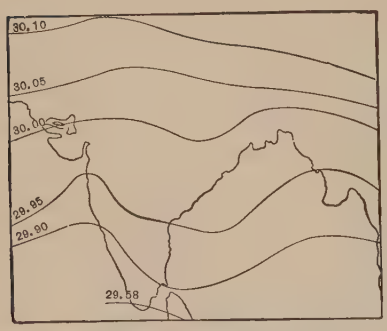


FIG. 524.—The isobars of India for January. (After Bartholomew.)

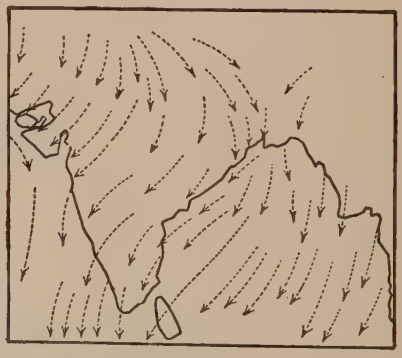


FIG. 525.—Figure showing the direction of winds in India in winter. (After Köppen.)

large scale. Thus in winter, Eurasia is, on the average, a centre of air dispersion in the lower air (Fig. 513), while in summer, air flows in toward it, though most of its area is in the zone of the westerlies. The same influence probably is of great importance over and about every large land area, but it is only where it opposes and overcomes the prevailing wind that it is popularly recognized.

India affords a good illustration of the monsoon influence. This country is in the latitude of the northern trades, where easterly (northeasterly) winds should prevail, according to the general scheme of planetary winds (Fig. 521). In Fig. 524, the

Fig. 526.—The isobars of India for August. (After Bartholomew.)

Fig. 527.—The winds of India in midsummer. (After Köppen.)

gradient is from northeast to southwest, and the direction of the wind (Fig. 525) is in general harmony with the planetary system; but in Fig. 526 the isobaric gradient is to the northward, because

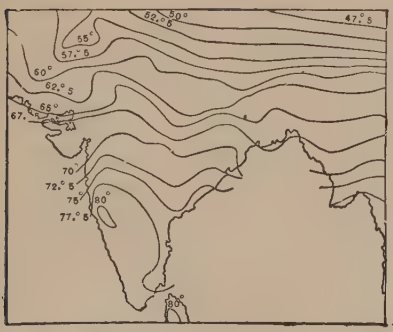


Fig. 528.—Isotherms of India for January. (After Buchan.)

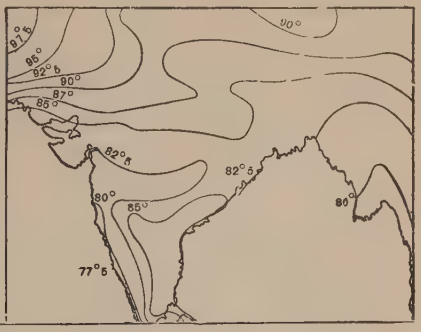


Fig. 529.—Isotherms of India for August. (After Buchan.)

the land is warmer than the sea, and the winds blow in that direction (Fig. 527). That is, the planetary (northeast) wind is overcome during the hot season by the winds which result from the seasonal change of temperature which establishes a seasonal gradient. At

this season, the low pressure north of India developed by the heat of summer, counteracts the high pressure normal to this latitude, and the prevailing wind is displaced by seasonal winds blowing toward the area of low pressure. Figs. 528 and 529 show the isotherms for the same region at the corresponding seasons, and make clear the relation between pressure and temperature.

When the monsoon blows *with* the prevailing wind, as in western India in winter, the prevailing wind is strengthened; if the two tend to blow in opposite directions, as in western India in summer, the stronger prevails. Spain, in the zone of westerly winds, affords

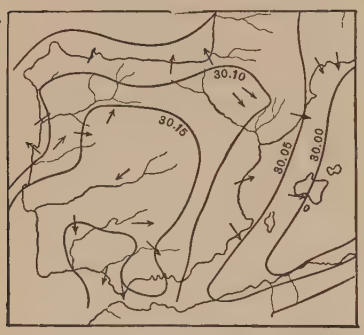


FIG. 530. — Isobars and winds in Spain and Portugal, month of January. (After Hann.)

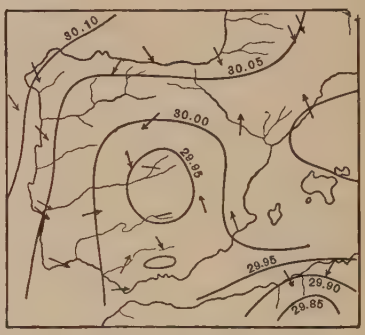


FIG. 531.—Isobars and winds in Spain and Portugal, month of July. (After Hann.)

an excellent example of the same thing. Figs. 530 and 531 show the conditions in winter and summer. In winter the isotherms over the plateau are low, and the isobars high, and the winds blow out from its center instead. In summer the case is reversed. On the west coast of South America, within the tropics, the sea is much cooler than the land. Wind from the sea then overcomes the trade winds, and westerly winds prevail for considerable periods.

The general principle of the monsoon makes itself felt about the Great Lakes. At Chicago, which is in the zone of southwesterly winds, northeast winds predominate in spring, because the lake is then much cooler than the land, and the winds set toward the land and overcome the prevailing winds (Fig. 532). Similar diagrams for a station fifty miles from the lake would show less wind from the northeast in April.

The principle involved in the daily land- and sea-breezes along coasts (p. 487) is the same as that of the monsoon, but the resulting winds are more local. They usually are not felt very far from shore, and do not extend to great heights. At Coney Island, the sea-breeze has been found to be limited to a height of about 500 feet at times when it has been determined. At slightly higher levels the

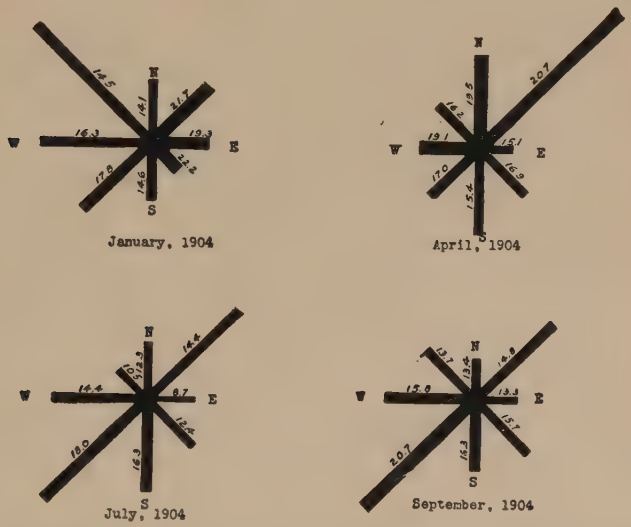


FIG. 532.—Diagram showing the direction and velocity of winds in Chicago during January, April, July, and September, 1904. The proportionate length of time during which the wind blew from any given direction is shown by the length of the lines. The relative average velocity is shown by the width of the lines. The monsoon influence of the lake is seen in the preponderance of northeast winds in April. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

air-currents were those of the prevailing winds. At some other places sea-breezes have been known to extend up 1,300 feet.

On the coast of Massachusetts the sea-breeze of hot summer days sometimes starts as early as eight o'clock in the morning, though more commonly not till later. At first it advances inland at the rate of 3 to 8 miles per hour, and later more slowly. It penetrates inland 10 to 20 miles, and sometimes gives rise to thunder-storms. On the coast of southern California, the land- and sea-breezes persist throughout the year, being much stronger in summer than in winter. Land-breezes are generally less well developed than sea-

breezes. Breezes corresponding to land- and sea-breezes often are felt about large lakes.

The sea-breeze is of consequence, not only by lowering the land temperature in hot weather, but by bringing pure air to the land. This is of much importance along densely populated coasts. The explanation of the sea-breezes already has been suggested (p. 487).

The unequal heating of high and low lands in the same latitude also causes slight and temporary departures from the normal planetary circulation.

Besides the planetary winds, the seasonal winds, and minor periodic winds, whose times of coming and going are more or less regular, there are numerous winds which blow at irregular times, and whose coming cannot be foretold long in advance. These irregular winds are the chief cause of the uncertain elements of the weather. Some of them are due to unequal temperatures, some to unequal amounts of atmospheric moisture, and some to other causes.

Illustrations of aperiodic winds due to unequal temperature are whirlwinds and tornadoes, due to strong convection currents generated by excessive local heating, and some larger whirls of air, especially *tropical cyclones*. These will be referred to in the next chapter.

Again, just as waves of water generated by the wind are felt far beyond the place where they were generated, and long after the wind ceases to blow, so local disturbances, leading to the flow of air from one place to another, make themselves felt far beyond the place of disturbance. Movements therefore generate movements.

Summary. The chief points thus far studied in connection with atmospheric circulation are as follows:

(1) Above the lower part of the atmosphere there is a poleward movement of air from low latitudes.

(2) There must be a compensatory movement of air from high latitudes to low; but outside the extra-tropical belts of high pressure, this movement is not well defined.

(3) The extra-tropical high-pressure belts are the zones from which the dominant "planetary" winds at the bottom of the atmosphere start.

(*a*) These "planetary" winds tend to blow poleward and equatorward in each hemisphere, from the belts of high pressure.

(*b*) They are deflected to the right in the northern hemisphere, and to the left in the southern hemisphere, by the rotation of the earth, thus establishing the double trade-wind zone, with the equatorial calms in the centre, and two zones of westerly winds, with tropical calms on the equatorward margin of each.

(4) The simplicity of the system of "planetary" winds is interfered with seriously by the great inequalities of temperature between land and sea. The isobaric gradients established by unequal heating may be higher than those which direct the planetary winds. In such cases the planetary winds are overcome by seasonal winds, such as monsoons, or by daily breezes, such as land- and sea-breezes, and mountain- and valley-breezes. In many places and at many times, the temperature influence is so strong as to be the dominant factor in the circulation.

Gradient, velocity, and directions of wind.. The slope of an isobaric surface is its *gradient.* Gradient is differently expressed in different countries. In England the barometric gradient is said to be 1 when the difference of pressure is 0.01 of an inch in 17 miles. In the United States, barometric gradient is commonly defined as the difference in pressure at the same level between two points which are distant from each other the length of 1° of latitude. Thus if two places 5° apart in latitude have a difference of pressure of 0.5 inch, the gradient is 0.10 of an inch. Stated mathematically, $30-29.50=.50\div 5=0.10$.

The greater the gradient, the greater the velocity of the wind. On the isobaric chart, high gradient is expressed by the crowding of isobaric lines. A gradient of 0.10 inch means a wind of about 30 miles an hour, and a gradient of 0.20 means a wind of about 55 miles an hour. These figures presume a plane surface. The actual velocity *at the bottom* of the atmosphere is much modified by the shape of the surface. The rougher the surface, the less the velocity on account of friction of the air with the uneven surface, with vegetation, buildings, etc.[1] Observations in some places have shown that the velocity of the wind at the height of low buildings (say 40 feet) over land is only about one-fourth as great as that at an elevation of 40 feet over the sea; while at a height of 100 to 150 feet, the velocity is half that over the sea at an elevation of 40 feet.

[1] Helmholtz has calculated that if the whole body of air were set in motion at the uniform rate of 20 miles per hour, it would take nearly 43,000 years to slow it down to 10 miles as a result of friction.

In general, the average velocity of winds is greatest in latitude 50° or thereabouts. The average velocity for the United States has been estimated at about 9.5 miles per hour, and for Europe, 10.3, the measurements being at the bottom of the atmosphere. The velocity is greater in the upper air than in the lower, for the same reason that it is greater over the sea than over the land. The following table gives the velocity of the wind at various levels above the bottom. It is based on observations on the movement of clouds at Blue Hill Observatory, near Boston.

COMPUTED EASTERLY OR WESTERLY WIND VELOCITIES ALONG A MERIDIAN

Latitude.	E = Easterly winds; W = Westerly winds. Velocity of wind in miles per hour at various altitudes.			Increase in velocities with each (about) 3,300 feet in altitude.
	Sea-level.	About 3,300 feet.	About 13,200 feet.	Miles per hour.
N. Lat. 75°	E. 2.7	W. 0.2	W. 9.2	W. +3.0
70°	E. 2.0	W. 2.0	W. 14.3	W. 4.1
65°	W. 0.1	W. 4.9	W. 19.3	W. 4.8
60°	W. 2.4	W. 7.6	W. 23.1	W. 5.2
55°	W. 3.4	W. 8.7	W. 24.5	W. 5.3
50°	W. 3.3	W. 8.7	W. 24.9	W. 5.4
45°	W. 3.0	W. 8.5	W. 25.0	W. 5.5
40°	W. 1.6	W. 7.2	W. 24.0	W. 5.6
35°	E. 0.7	W. 5.0	W. 22.4	W. 5.8
30°	E. 5.3	W. 0.6	W. 18.2	W. 5.9
25°	E. 8.9	E. 3.1	W. 14.4	W. 5.8
20°	E. 9.4	E. 3.8	W. 13.0	W. 5.6
N. Lat. 15°	E. 7.8	E. 4.3	W. 6.1	W. 3.5
Equator 0°				
S. Lat. 15°	E. 15.6	E. 10.5	W. 4.8	W. 5.1
20°	E. 13.0	E. 8.2	W. 6.4	W. 4.8
25°	E. 6.4	E. 1.7	W. 12.5	W. 4.7
30°	W. 2.4	W. 7.0	W. 21.0	W. 4.7
35°	W. 7.7	W. 12.3	W. 26.1	W. 4.6
40°	W. 11.6	W. 16.2	W. 30.0	W. 4.6
45°	W. 14.9	W. 19.5	W. 33.3	W. 4.6
50°	W. 17.1	W. 21.7	W. 35.7	W. 4.6
55°	W. 17.0	W. 21.6	W. 35.6	W. 4.7
S. Lat. 60°	W. 13.6	W. 18.2	W. 32.2	W. +4.7

This table shows that there is an increase of velocity with increase of altitude. According to the table, the trade-winds do not reach up to altitudes of 13,200 feet, for at this altitude all winds are represented as blowing to the east. The table also represents them as extending farther from the equator, especially in the northern hemisphere, in low than in higher altitudes.

In general, all winds are disagreeable in cold weather, and gentle winds are agreeable in warm weather. Irrespective of momentary comfort, winds serve a good purpose, both in cold and hot weather. Some idea of their importance may be gathered by contemplation of the conditions of the atmosphere which would exist over a large city, if the smoke, the fumes, the gases, and the products of expiration and combustion were not carried away by wind.

General Circulation and Precipitation

Rainfall is of the utmost importance to most land life, both plant and animal. This is shown, in a general way, by the absence of forests and the meagreness of herbaceous vegetation in arid regions; and where there is little plant life, there are few animals. Human industries, too, are much affected by the amount and distribution of rainfall, as shown by the fact that no arid region supports a dense population. Nevada, most of which receives less than 10 inches of rain per year, had, in 1910, only one inhabitant for each one and a third square miles. Less than 4 per cent of the population of the United States lives in the third of the country where the fainfall is less than 20 inches a year. The best of soil is unproductive unless adequately watered. Twenty inches of rain per year generally is considered to be the minimum for general agricultural purposes, but much depends on the latitude, and on the seasonal distribution of the rain. The warmer the climate, the more the rainfall needed, and the aggregate amount necessary is less if it falls when the growing crops need it most. If rainfall could be distributed ideally, the half of 20 inches probably would be adequate in the middle latitudes of the United States. Rain or snow falling at times when plants are not growing is, however, not worthless, for some of the water remains underground, and is available for plants at a later time. One of the chief points in the success of "dry farming," consists in so treating the soil that the water which falls during all parts of the year is retained in the soil and subsoil till the growing season.

Land so situated that it may be irrigated is not dependent on local rain and snow: but the water used in irrigation is derived from rainfall, though the precipitation may be far from the place where the water is used. Great as the results of irrigation are likely

to be in our own country, it will never make more than a fraction of the arid land valuable for agricultural purposes, because the amount of water available is limited.

The distribution of rainfall is largely influenced by the winds, which bear moisture from the places where it is evaporated, to the places where the temperature favors its condensation and precipitation. Prevailing winds, periodic winds, and aperiodic winds all play their part in determining where rain falls, how much falls, and at what times of the year. The vertical movements of the air, too, have something to do with rainfall, and in some places are more important than the horizontal movements to which the name winds usually is restricted.

To know the rainfall (or snowfall) of any given region, it is needful to know (1) what winds affect it, (2) the topography of the surface over which the winds have blown before reaching it, and (3) the topographic situation and relations of the place itself.

Rainfall in the zones of trades. In the trade-wind zones the winds are blowing from higher to lower latitudes, and therefore, on the whole, from cooler to warmer latitudes. As the air is warmed, it is capable of taking more moisture. So long as the trades blow on the sea, therefore, they would not ordinarily give rain. Where they blow over low lands, which in this latitude are warmer than the sea, they take moisture rather than give up what they have. On the sea and on low lands, therefore, the trade-winds are "dry" winds. Sahara and considerable parts of Australia are essentially desert, in the zone of trades.

If, however, the air of the trades is forced up over mountains, it is cooled, and some of its moisture may be condensed and fall as rain or snow. *The windward sides of high mountains in the trade-wind zone should therefore have heavy rainfall.* An illustration is afforded by the east side of the Andes Mountains in tropical latitudes, where the rainfall is heavy (Fig. 533). Another illustration is afforded by the high Hawaiian Islands. The trade-winds yield little rain to their lower slopes, but forced up over the mountains, they yield abundant moisture in the cooler altitudes. The level of the rainfall is readily marked by the change in the character of the vegetation.

After the air of the trades passes over a mountain range, it descends, and is warmed both by contact with the warmer surface below, and by compression. It therefore takes up moisture. The

leeward sides of mountains in the trade-wind zones should therefore be regions of little precipitation. The west slope of the Andes is a case in point (Fig. 533). A high mountain range on the east side of a continent in the zone of the trades would tend to make the area to the west of it dry.

In the zone of *equatorial calms*, or *doldrums*, the temperature is high, and the air, warmed by the sun daily, expands and is crowded upward by the cooler air which comes in from the zones

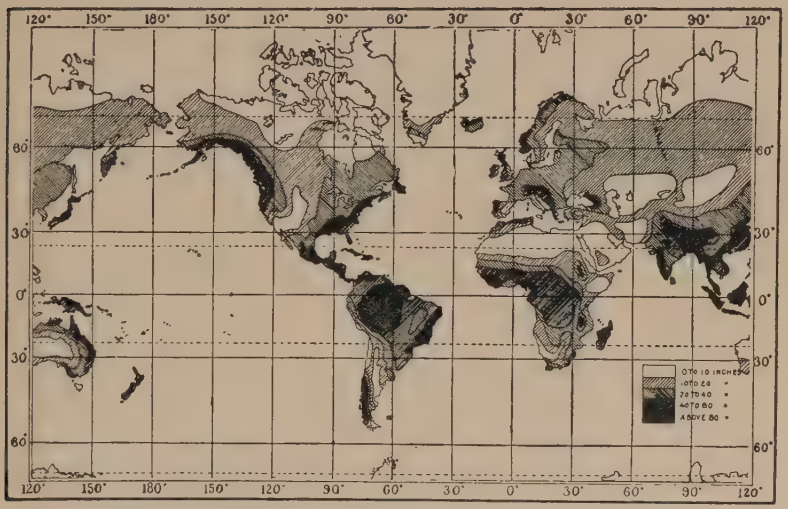


FIG. 533.—Map showing the precipitation for the world.

of the trades. As it rises, the air expands and cools, and may give up some of its moisture. In this zone, therefore, there are likely to be daily rains from cumulus clouds at the time of day when the upward currents are strongest, that is, in the afternoon. Since the doldrums shift north and south a few degrees yearly with the shifting of the thermal equator, a place near the equator which receives daily rains during one season, may be without them at another time of year.

In the zone of tropical calms (p. 523), air is descending rather than rising, and yields little or no rain. Like the equatorial calms, the extra-tropical calms shift north and south a little with the sun. They are, on the whole, the driest latitudes of the globe, crossing Sahara, Arabia, Australia, and the southern part of South America.

Rainfall in the zones of prevailing westerlies. The principles which apply to the trade-wind zones apply also in the zones of the westerly winds. These winds are, on the whole, blowing from lower to higher latitudes, and so are being gradually cooled. They might therefore yield some moisture, even at sea-level or on low land, and especially on land in the winter season. The heat of the land in summer tends to prevent condensation and precipitation until the air has moved far to poleward. When such winds cross mountains, they yield moisture to their windward slopes and summits, and become dry on leeward slopes.

Planetary winds alone considered, a high mountain range on the west side of a continent in the zones of westerly winds would make all the low land to the east of it dry. An application of these principles will help us to understand the rainfall of the United States, so far as it is dependent on planetary winds.

Our prevailing winds for almost all the country are from the southwest. Coming to the land from the Pacific in the winter, these winds reach the cooler land, and yield moisture, even at low levels. This gives the low lands of California their wet season. As the winds blow over the high mountains back from the coast, they yield more moisture, so that all the area west of the crest of the first high range is well supplied with rain and snow in winter. As the winds blow beyond the Sierras and Cascade Mountains, the air descends and becomes warmer, and therefore dry. East of these mountains lie the semi-arid lands of eastern Oregon and Washington, and the Great Basin with its Great Salt Lake.

When these winds reach the higher parts of the Rocky Mountains, which are higher than the mountains farther west, they again yield some moisture. But farther east, all the way to the Atlantic, these winds, taken by themselves, would remain dry, for they cross no more high mountains, and they do not, as a rule, go far enough north to reach a temperature as low as that of the mountains they have passed. For some distance east of the mountains the rainfall is deficient; but east of central Kansas and Nebraska the lands are well supplied with moisture. Southeast of a line running from about Galveston to Cleveland, the land might be supplied with some moisture by southwesterly winds from the Gulf, but there is abundant rainfall far to the west of this line. It therefore is clear that some factor other than westerly winds is involved in the precipitation. This factor is the aperiodic *cyclonic*

winds, to be studied in the next chapter. Passing over the country from west to east, the cyclones cause moist air to flow northward from the Gulf to higher and cooler latitudes. This change in latitude, together with the cooling of the air as it rises in the cyclone, is the cause of the precipitation which redeems the central and eastern parts of the United States from the aridity which affects the belt next east of the Rocky Mountains.

The winds which blow from the Pacific to the continent in summer have a different effect on rainfall, though the principles involved are the same. At this time of year, the winds which blow from the ocean to the low lands of central and southern California find a temperature on the land higher than their own. These winds therefore are dry, and give to much of California its dry summer season. Blowing inland, these winds reach mountains so high that the temperature is low enough to cause condensation and precipitation.

Farther north the case is somewhat different. In Washington, for example, the Olympic mountains near the coast are high enough to cause precipitation even in summer. In Alaska, where some of the mountains always are covered with snow, precipitation is heavy in summer, and at high altitudes it often falls as snow instead of rain.

Monsoon rains. Monsoon winds likewise yield moisture when they blow from warmer to cooler regions. In general they blow toward warmer regions, and so should be dry winds; but once started they are sometimes forced up over high mountains, and precipitation follows. The heaviest recorded rainfall on the south slope of the Himalayas, is due to monsoon winds. Numerous famines in India have followed the failure of monsoon rains. The famine of 1876–78 affected 58,000,000 people directly, and is estimated to have cost 5,000,000 lives. Serious deficiency in the amount of the rain, and even delay in the time of its coming, bring want and suffering, if not famine. As in the case of the planetary winds, it is the windward sides of the mountains which receive the heavy precipitation from the monsoons.

Land and sea (or lake) breezes (daily) rarely yield much rain, though some of them give rise to fogs when they blow from the warmer water to the cooler land. Such fogs occasionally may be seen, as at Chicago in the late autumn or early winter, sometimes advancing over the land with a wall-like front, varying from a few feet to many scores of feet in height.

Valley breezes sometimes give rise to heavy showers, as already noted.

CHAPTER XVIII

WEATHER MAPS; STORMS

Aperiodic Changes of Pressure

FIG. 534 is a weather map of the United States showing (1) the distribution of atmospheric pressure, (2) the direction of the winds in various parts of the country, (3) the condition of the air with reference to cloudiness, rainfall, snowfall, etc., at all points, and (4) the temperature.

1. *Isobars.* The full lines of the map are isobars. The map shows a range of pressure from 30.6+ inches in the area centering about the Hudson River Valley, to 29.5− in the area centering in North Dakota. The pressure is high (more than 30 inches) in the eastern half of the country, and low (less than 30 inches) in the western interior, and high, but not very high, in an area near the Pacific.

The isobar of 30.6, in the eastern part of the United States, is a closed line. On either side of it is the isobar of 30.5. Since the pressure rises as the isobar of 30.6 is approached from either side, it is inferred to continue to rise after this isobar is passed. The area inside it is therefore inferred to have a pressure of more than 30.6 inches, but not so much as 30.7 inches, else another isobar would have been represented.

Similarly, all points between the isobars of 30.6 and 30.5 have pressures intermediate between those indicated by these figures. The pressure is higher near the former isobar, and less near the latter.

The center of this high-pressure area is marked "high." "High" on the weather map means an area where the pressure is distinctly higher than that of its surroundings, and generally more than 30 inches, and the word is placed in the center of such an area. The movements of air about a high are an *anticyclone.*

To the west of this "high" the pressure decreases steadily to North Dakota, where there is a center of low pressure, marked "low." "Low" means an area in which the pressure is less than in

its surroundings, and commonly less than 30 inches. On the map the word is placed where the pressure is lowest. The movements of air about a "low" constitute a *cyclone*. In middle latitudes, a cyclone is the most important type of *storm*.

The isobar of 29.5 about the low in North Dakota is a closed line. Since the pressure is becoming less as this line is approached, it is inferred that the pressure at all points within this isobar is less

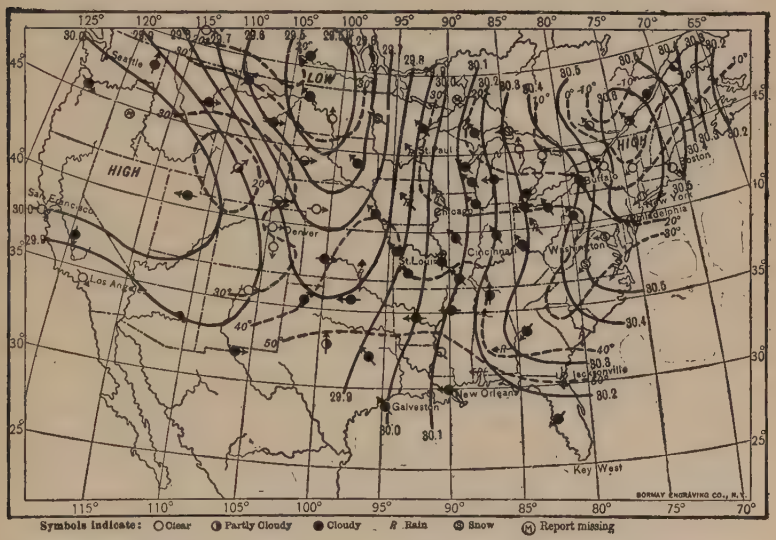


FIG. 534.—Weather map of the United States for January 12, 1899. The full lines are isobars, the dotted lines isotherms. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

than 29.5, though nowhere so low as 29.4. At all points between the isobars of 29.5 and 29.6, the pressure is between these figures. West of the "low" the pressure increases. The pressure in the "high" near the Pacific coast is not so great as over the Hudson Valley.

Most weather maps show both lows and highs, or at least one of each. This means that there is generally at least one area of high pressure (anticyclone) and one of low (cyclone) at the same time, within the United States. Atmospheric pressures therefore are generally unequal in different parts of the country.

Weather maps are made by the Weather Bureau, a branch of the national Department of Agriculture. They are prepared in various central offices of the country. To these offices, facts con-

cerning the pressure and temperature of the air, the direction and velocity of the wind, the cloudiness, and the precipitation, are telegraphed daily from numerous points or "stations" established and maintained by the Government.

2. *Wind.* Wherever barometric pressures are unequal, isobaric surfaces are uneven. They are depressed in cyclones, and elevated in anticyclones. As a result, there must be winds from anticyclones to cyclones. On the date of the map (Fig. 534), winds must have been blowing out from the highs in the east and west respectively, and toward the low in the northwest, on the day when the pressures were as indicated on the map. The arrows on the map show the direction of the winds, which blew as the arrows fly, as reported from the various stations.

It will be seen that winds do not blow straight out from the anticyclonic centres, nor straight in toward the cyclonic centers. They doubtless *start* straight out from each high, but they are deflected toward the right, as most of the arrows about the anticyclones show. Similarly, the winds which blow toward the cyclonic centers do not blow straight toward them, but are deflected a little to the right, as most of the arrows about the "lows" show. In the southern hemisphere the deflection is to the left. Fig. 535 shows the theoretic circulation about highs and lows, A in the northern hemisphere, and B in the southern hemisphere.

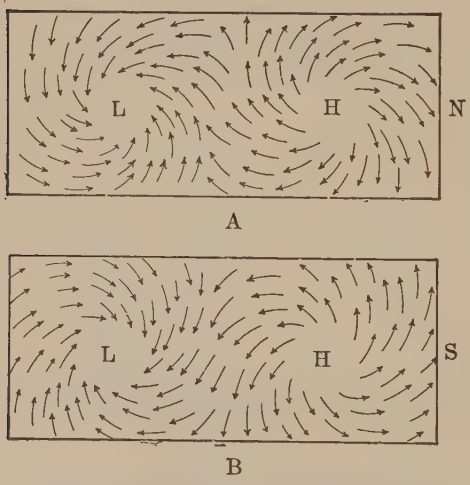


Fig. 535.— Diagram showing the direction of circulation about lows and highs: A, northern hemisphere; B, southern hemisphere.

It will be noted that two arrows in the western high (Fig. 534) are directed toward the center of the high-pressure area. They probably mean that there were subordinate centres of lesser pressure within the general area of the anticyclone, and the winds blew toward them. If this is the case, the sub-

ordinate lows were too weak to be shown by isobars which represent differences of 0.1 inch.

Something as to the strength of the winds at various points may be inferred from the map. The distance from the center of the high in the east, Fig. 534, to Lake Michigan, is about 800 miles. The difference in pressure is about 0.5 inch. The gradient is therefore about 1, English system (.1 of an inch in 160 miles, p. 533). This means a wind-velocity of about 12 miles an hour — a fresh breeze — between these points. The velocity of the wind blowing from Michigan to North Dakota is about the same. The velocity of the wind from Texas to North Dakota is much less. In general, where isobars are crowded, the gradient is high and winds strong. Where they are widely separated, the gradient is low and air-flow gentle. The winds in some cyclonic storms attain a velocity of 40 to 60 miles an hour; but the average is much less, and the cyclonic (not tornadic, p. 579) wind which is violent enough to be destructive, is rare.

The circulation of air about a cyclone is vertical as well as horizontal: the air currents move in toward the center of the storm, and spirally up at the same time. This upward movement is of great consequence in its effect on precipitation. The upward and outward course of the air movement in the cyclone is shown in Fig. 536, which represents a vertical section of a cyclone, and shows that the outflow above is chiefly to the eastward, the direction in which prevailing winds blow.

3. *Cloudiness, precipitation, etc.* On the weather maps the open circle on the shaft of an arrow indicates clear skies; the half-blackened circle shows that the sky is partly cloudy; while the black circle (Texas, Wyoming, etc.) indicates general cloudiness. Where *R* appears on the arrow, it means that rain is falling, as, for example, in Iowa and Alabama. Where *S* appears in the same position, it shows that snow is falling, as in north-western Minnesota, Virginia, and Maryland.

This weather map shows that more or less precipitation accompanies this cyclone, and the examination of a series of weather maps will show that many cyclones are attended by rain or snow. Whether the precipitation takes the form of rain or snow depends on the temperature.

4. *Temperature.* The broken lines of the weather map are isotherms. The isotherm of 50° F. (Fig. 534) crosses the Gulf States.

South of it the temperature is above 50°, but not so high as 60°, within the area of this map. The isotherm of 40° is more irregular. It extends from Georgia to New Mexico, but between these points it turns north into Nebraska. All points between this isotherm and that of 50° have a temperature of between 40° and 50°.

The isotherm of 30° is still more irregular. Dubuque, Ia., Chicago, Cleveland, Charlotte, N. C., and Norfolk, Va., have about the same temperature. An isotherm of 30° also extends from Idaho to New Mexico by a crooked course, while a third isotherm of 30° appears about the low. Two isotherms of 30 ° are therefore next each other on the map, one in the area to the east, and the other in the area to the southwest of the low.

The temperature between these isotherms is to be interpreted as follows: As the low is approached from the east, say from New York, the temperature rises. In the middle of Lake Superior the temperature is 20°, and at Duluth 30°. The next isotherm to the west, instead of being 40°, is 30°, and the one still farther west is 20°. This arrangement of isotherms means that the temperature west of the isotherm of 30° passing through Duluth, is warmer than 30°, but not so warm as 40°; while farther west the temperature again becomes cooler, reaching 30° in the eastern part of North Dakota.

On the whole, the isotherms show two pronounced features: (1) they have little relation to parallels, for places in the same latitude have very different temperatures, and places far apart in latitude have the same temperature; and (2) the isotherms show a pronounced disposition to bend poleward where the isobars indicate low pressure, and equatorward where the pressure is high. Most of the weather maps which follow show a similar relationship between isobars and isotherms.

The temperature, the pressure, the winds, the cloudiness, the rain, etc., are the elements of weather. All these things being shown on the above map, it appropriately is called a *weather map.*

The lows and highs sometimes are much more pronounced than those shown in Fig. 534. In Fig. 537 the low is more pronounced, the pressure ranging from 29.0 at the center, to 30.1 in the east and to 30.5 in the west. So great a range of pressure as shown by this map is not of common occurrence. The isobars are closer together in this figure than in the preceding, and therefore indicate stronger winds. The approximate velocity of the wind at various

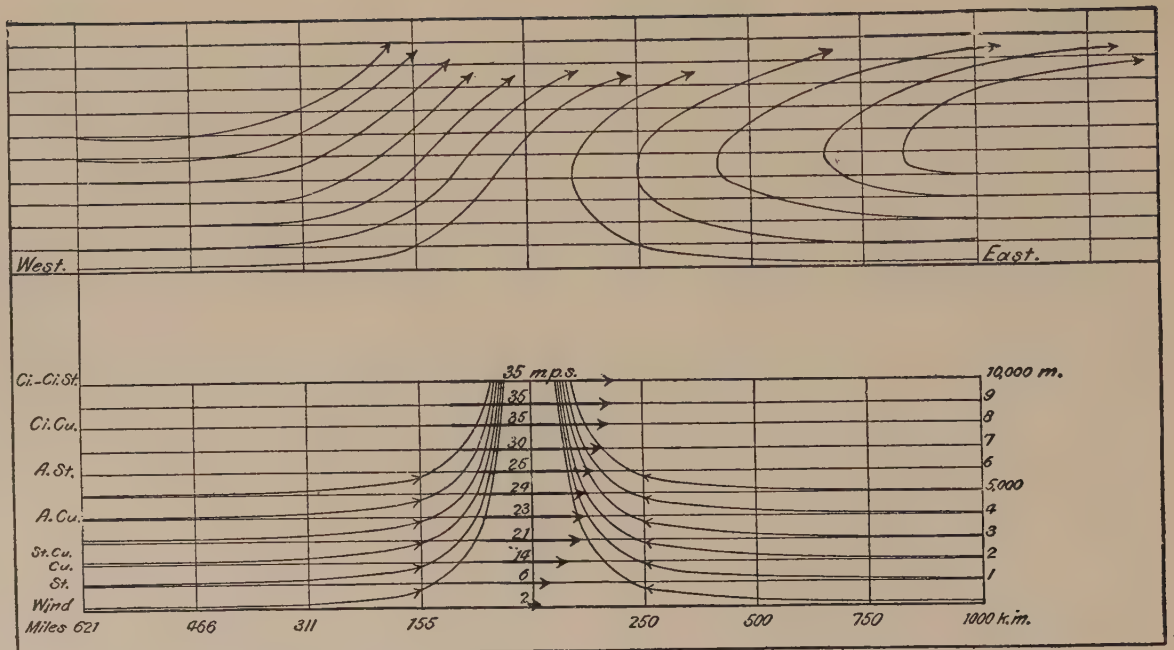


FIG. 536.—Diagram illustrating the general structure of a cyclone, and the general fact that the upper-air movements are in the direction of the prevailing winds. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

points may be calculated from the map. The direction of the winds about the low is the same as in Fig. 534. Cloudy skies

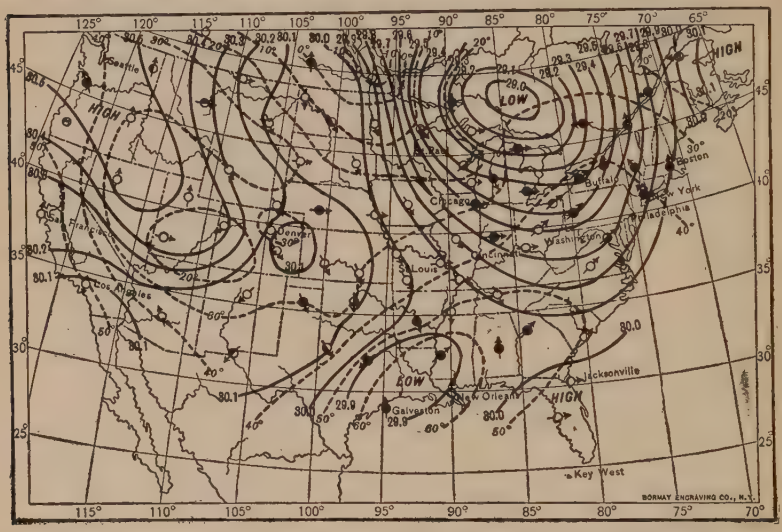


FIG. 537.—Weather map for January 16, 1901. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

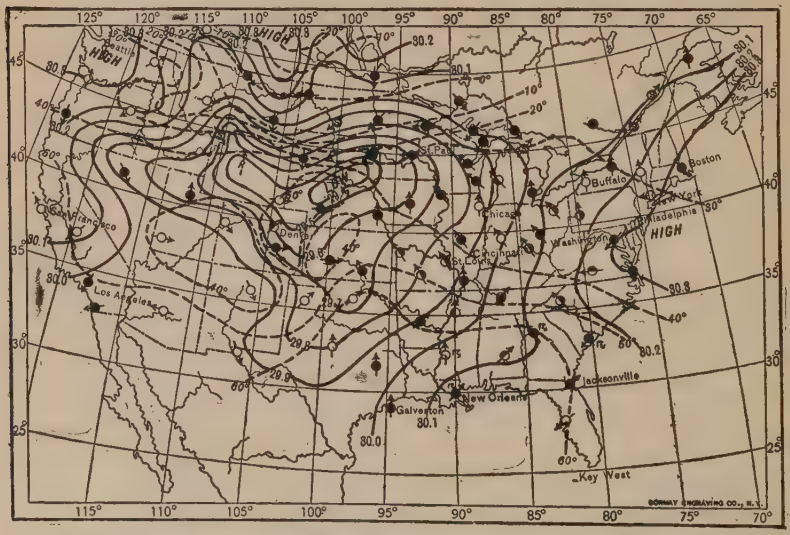


FIG. 538.—Weather map showing a large asymmetrical low, March 2, 1904. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

prevail in the southeastern part of the low, and snow is falling at some points (Montreal, Duluth). The map also shows great ranges

of temperature in areas not far apart. Thus there is a temperature of 30° F. at Sault Ste. Marie, and a temperature of −10° at Winnipeg, but little farther north, while Montreal has a temperature above that of Santa Fe. As in the preceding illustration, the low temperature goes with high pressure, and the higher temperature with low pressure.

Fig. 538 shows a large and less symmetrical low. The winds blow toward it, but are deflected to the right of its centre. Cloudi-

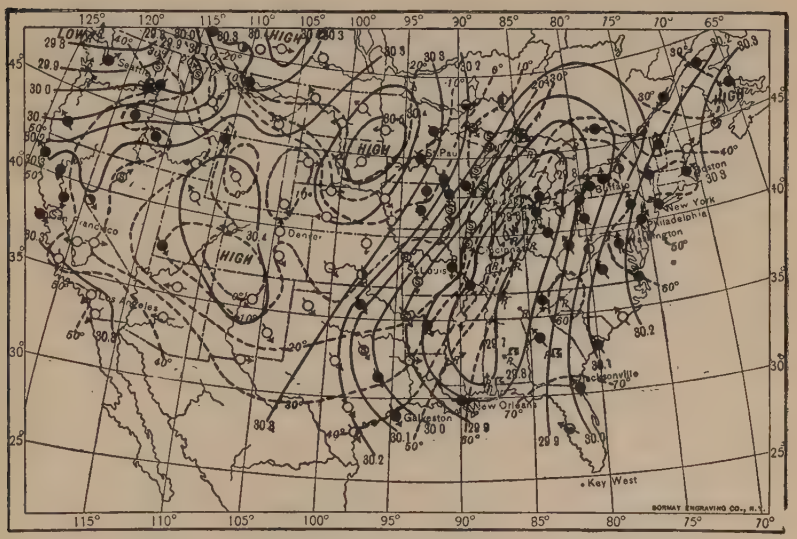


Fig. 539.—Weather map showing a large elliptical cyclone, January 22, 1906. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

ness prevails over a great area about the cyclone, and snow and rain are falling at some points.

The low of this map dominates almost the whole country. Measuring from the 30-inch isobar on the east to the 30-inch isobar on the west, the cyclone is about 1800 miles across. The isotherms bend northward on the south side of this low, while they curve southward about the high north of Montana. Fig. 539 shows an elongate cyclone, one diameter of which is very long; and Fig. 540 shows its transformation the succeeding day. The isotherms of Fig. 539 show few peculiarities, save in the northwest (Nebraska, Wyoming, Montana), where the temperature drops from 20° near Rapid

City, South Dakota, to −30° at Q'Appelle, in Alberta, a difference far greater than can be accounted for by the difference in latitude. Q'Appelle, it will be seen, is southeast of a high where the fall of temperature is pronounced, as shown by the crowding of the isotherms in South Dakota. The abrupt change of temperature is in a region where the wind is strong, and from the northwest.

Around all the preceding cyclones some precipitation is indicated, while round most of the anticyclones there is an absence

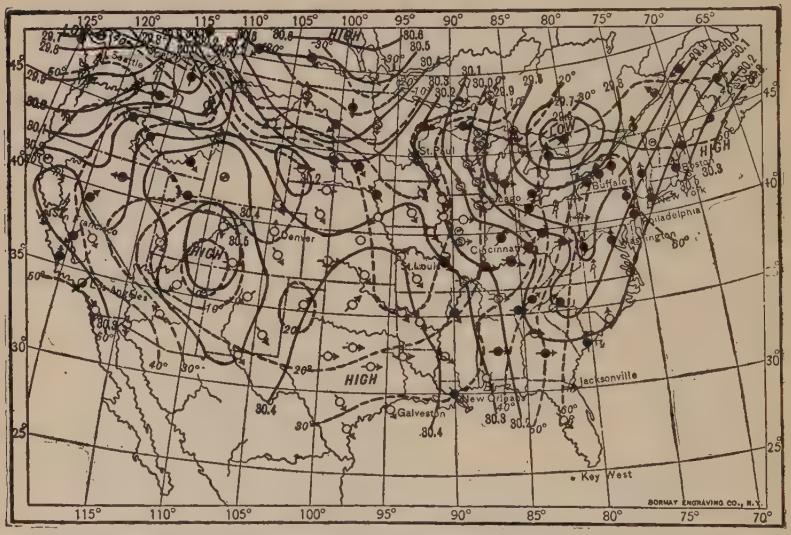


Fig. 540.—Weather map for January 23, 1906, showing great changes in the cyclone of the preceding day. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

of precipitation. The chief reason for rainfall or snowfall about a low is as follows: The inflowing air produces an upward spiral current, and the rising air expands and is cooled (p. 463), and so gives up some of its moisture. In the southeast quadrant of the cyclone, additional precipitation results from the fact that the air entering the cyclone is passing from warmer to cooler latitudes. This is perhaps one reason why the precipitation about a cyclone is greatest in this quadrant. The right-handed movement of the air in the northern hemisphere tends to shift the center of principal precipitation somewhat east of south of the center of the cyclone.

In the anticyclone there is a descending spiral movement of air. The descending air comes from an altitude which is colder

than that at the bottom of the atmosphere, and hence brings a low temperature. Since the air is compressed and warmed as it descends, the winds from most anticyclones bring clear weather. The downward- and outward-moving air may, however, so mingle with warm air about it as to cause some of the moisture of the latter to condense, giving rise to clouds, or even to precipitation.

Highs of great area, as well as lows of great area, sometimes occur. Fig. 541 shows a high or anticyclone some 2200 miles

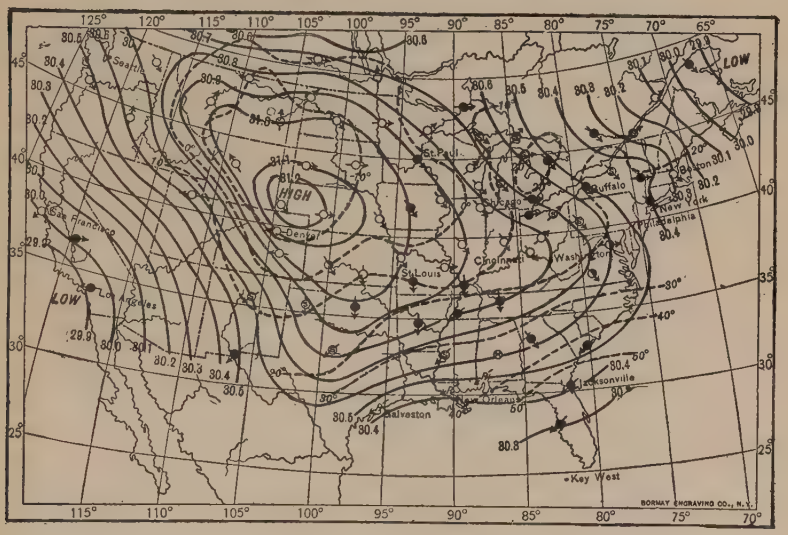


FIG. 541.—Weather map for December 9, 1898, showing a high of great area. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

across, with a great range of pressure. The isotherms of this chart stand in very definite relations to the isobars, low temperatures going with high pressures. Denver, in the high, is about 30° colder than the southern part of Maine, 3° farther north, in a low.

Movements of cyclones and anticyclones. The highs and lows do not remain in the same place from day to day. This is shown by Figs. 542–545, as well as by the other weather maps which follow, showing the weather of successive days.

In Fig. 542 there is (1) a low over the Gulf of St. Lawrence; (2) a high central over Iowa; (3) a low over British Columbia; (4) a high in Oregon. The map of the succeeding day (Fig. 543)

shows (1) that the low of the St. Lawrence Gulf has moved to the east; (2) that the high of the interior has moved to West Virginia; (3) that the low which was over British Columbia has moved to Dakota; while (4) the high of the Oregon coast remains about where it was. The map of the succeeding day (Fig. 544) shows (1) that the high of the Virginias has moved on, but not so far as on the preceding day; (2) that the low which was over North Dakota is now north of Lake Superior; (3) that the high of Oregon has

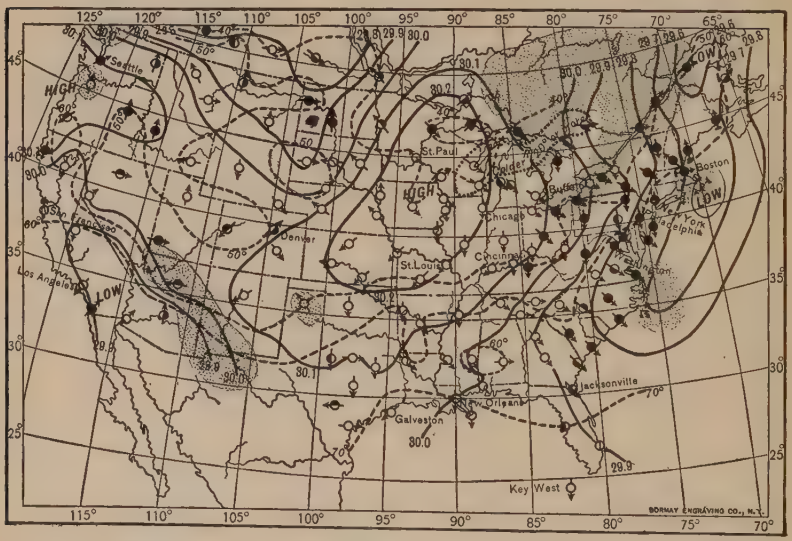


Fig. 542.—Weather map for September 24, 1903. The shading in this and succeeding maps represents precipitation. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

moved east to Idaho and Montana; and (4) that a weak low has developed in Oklahoma.

The map of the 27th (Fig. 545) shows (1) that the high which was over the Virginias has disappeared, presumably to the east; (2) that the low which was north of Lake Superior is now north of Lake Ontario; (3) that the high of Montana has moved southeast to Kansas; (4) that the weak low in Oklahoma has disappeared; and (5) that another low has appeared in southern California.

While the highs and lows of these maps have all moved in a general easterly direction, the highs moved rather more to the south of east than the lows. The direction of the progress of the highs and lows shown by these maps is the normal one, though

individual cyclones and anticyclones depart notably from the normal. The average direction of the cyclone in our middle latitudes

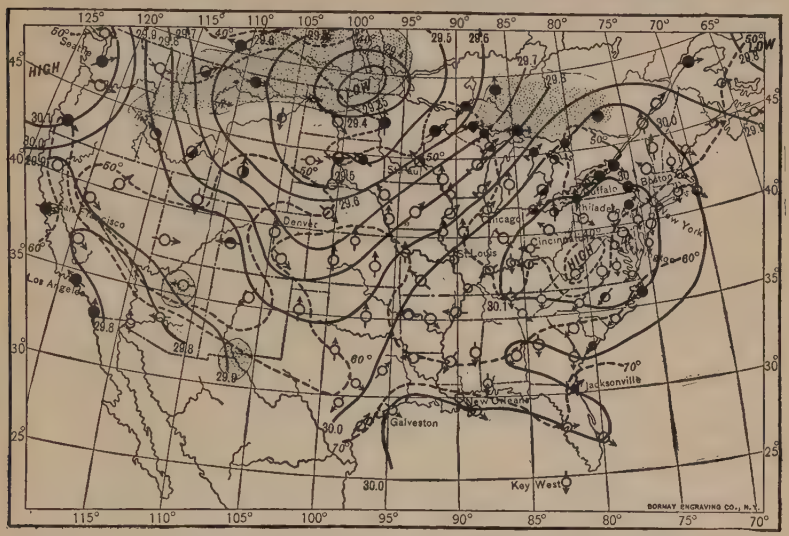


FIG. 543.—Weather map for September 25, 1903. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

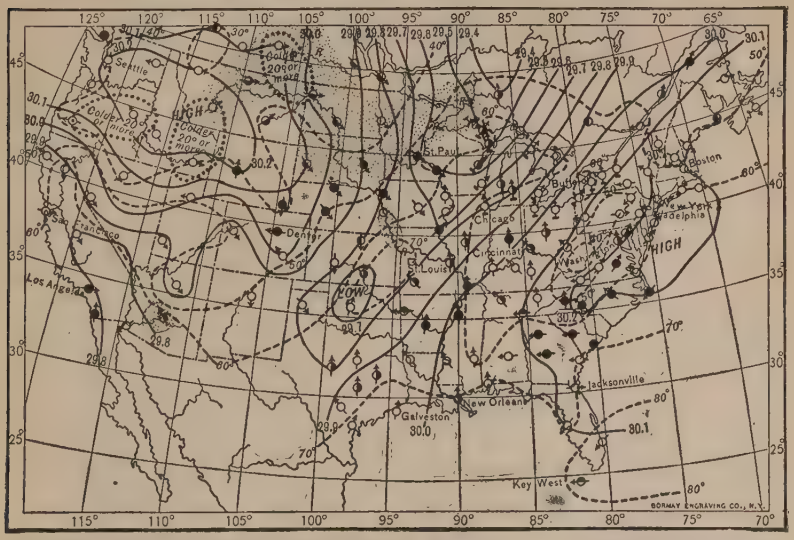


FIG. 544.—Weather map for September 26, 1903. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

is about N. 80° E., or 10° north of east. The anticyclones have a somewhat more southerly course.

From the study of these maps not only the fact of movement, but the rate of movement of the highs and lows, may be calculated. Thus, from the 25th to the 26th (Figs. 543 and 544), the low of British Columbia moved about 1200 miles. From the 26th to the 27th, the same storm moved between 600 and 700 miles. The average velocity of cyclones in the United States is a

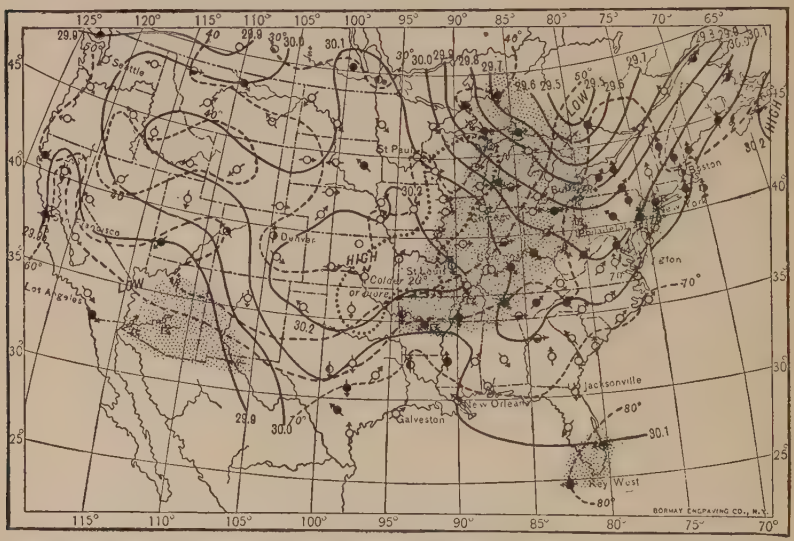


Fig. 545.—Weather map for September 27, 1903. The symbol which appears in central Arkansas and western Tennessee indicates a thunder-storm at or near the point where the symbol occurs, during the twelve hours preceding the issue of the weather map. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

little less than 29 miles per hour (about 700 miles per day); that of anticyclones somewhat less.

It is not to be understood that the rate of progress of the storm is the same as the velocity of the wind. The velocity of a wind depends on the isobaric gradient. A weak cyclone, that is, a cyclone in which differences of pressure are not great, gives rise to weak winds, even though the center of the storm moves rapidly. A strong cyclone, that is, one in which the differences of pressures are great (Fig. 537), gives origin to strong winds, even though the cyclone itself moves forward slowly.

Figs. 546 and 547 show the progress of lows and highs, or cyclones and anticyclones, from December 24 to December 25, 1904. The course of the low central over Oregon on the 24th, is

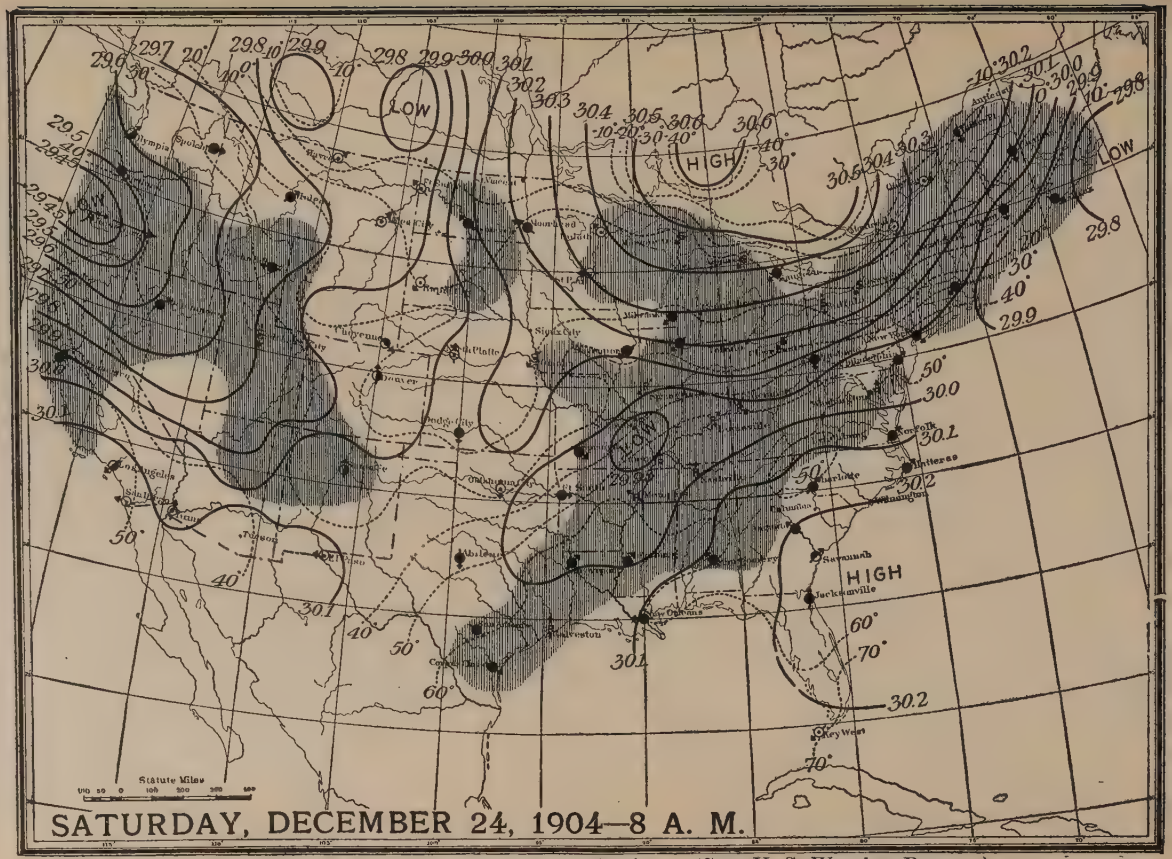


FIG. 546.—The shading represents precipitation. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

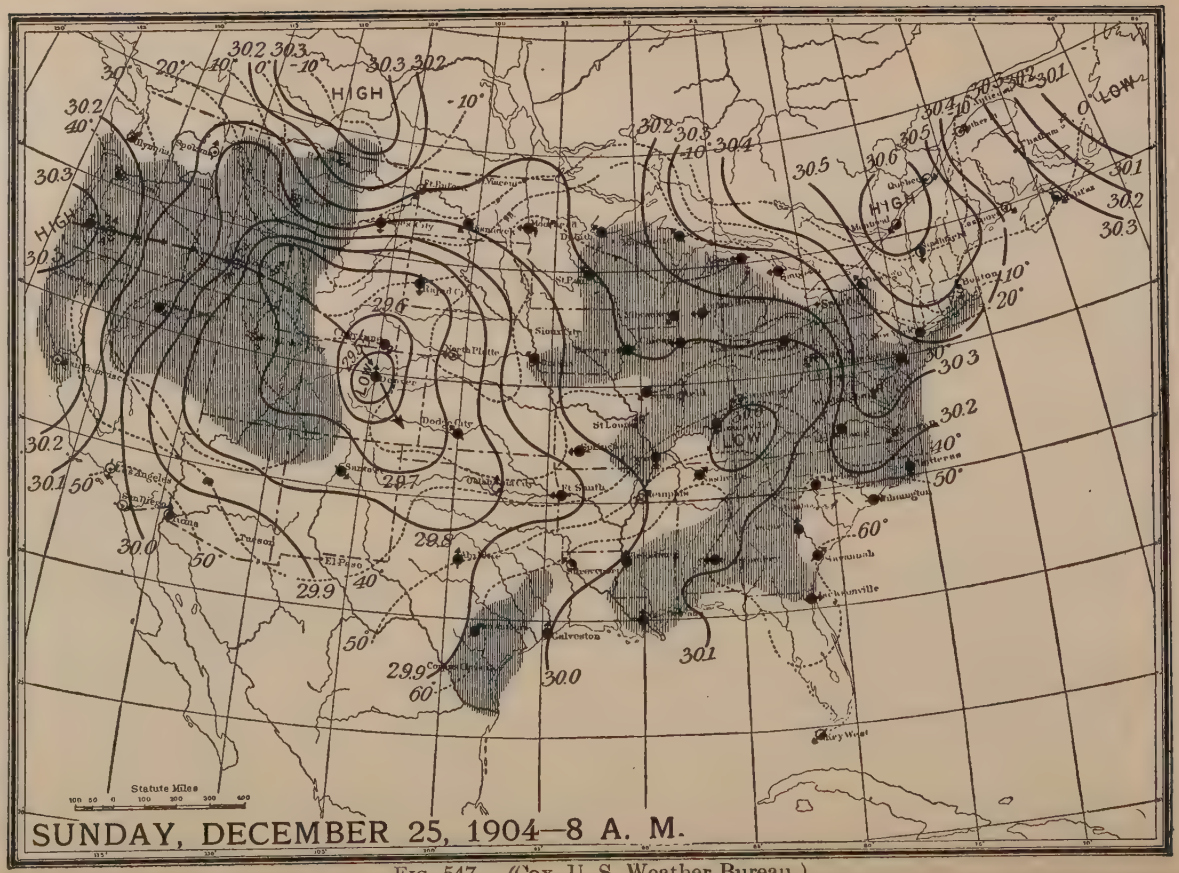


FIG. 547. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

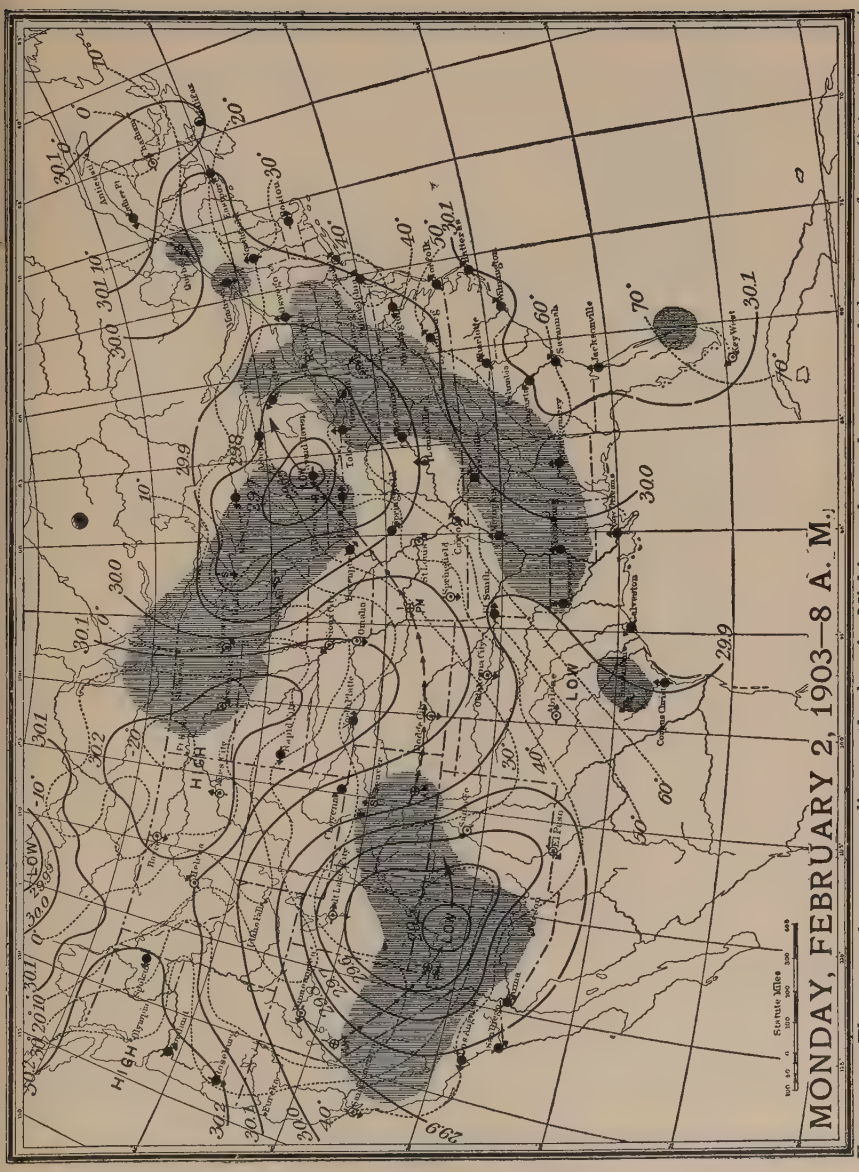


FIG. 548.—The row of arrows ending at the low in Michigan shows the course of the storm from Colorado, and the arrows northwest of the cyclone in Arizona show the course of this storm thus far. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

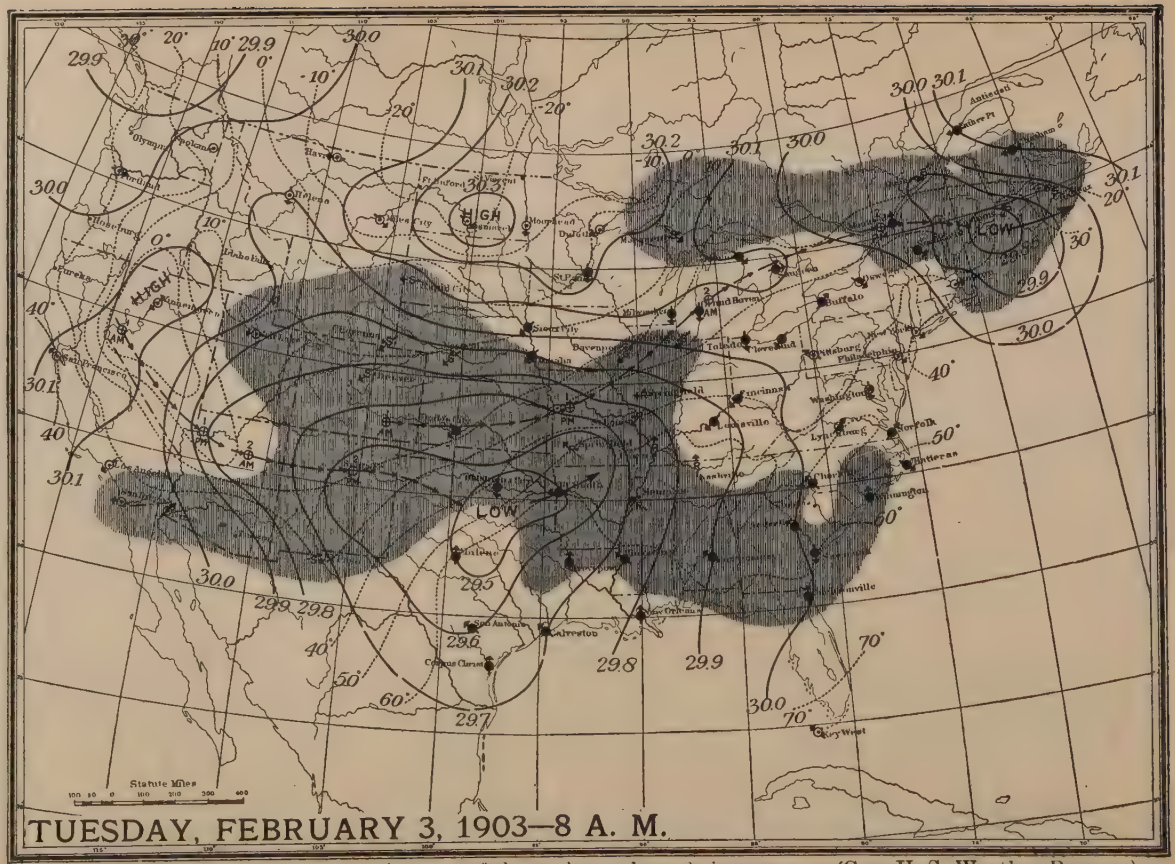


FIG. 549.—The rows of arrows to the west of the cyclones show their courses. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

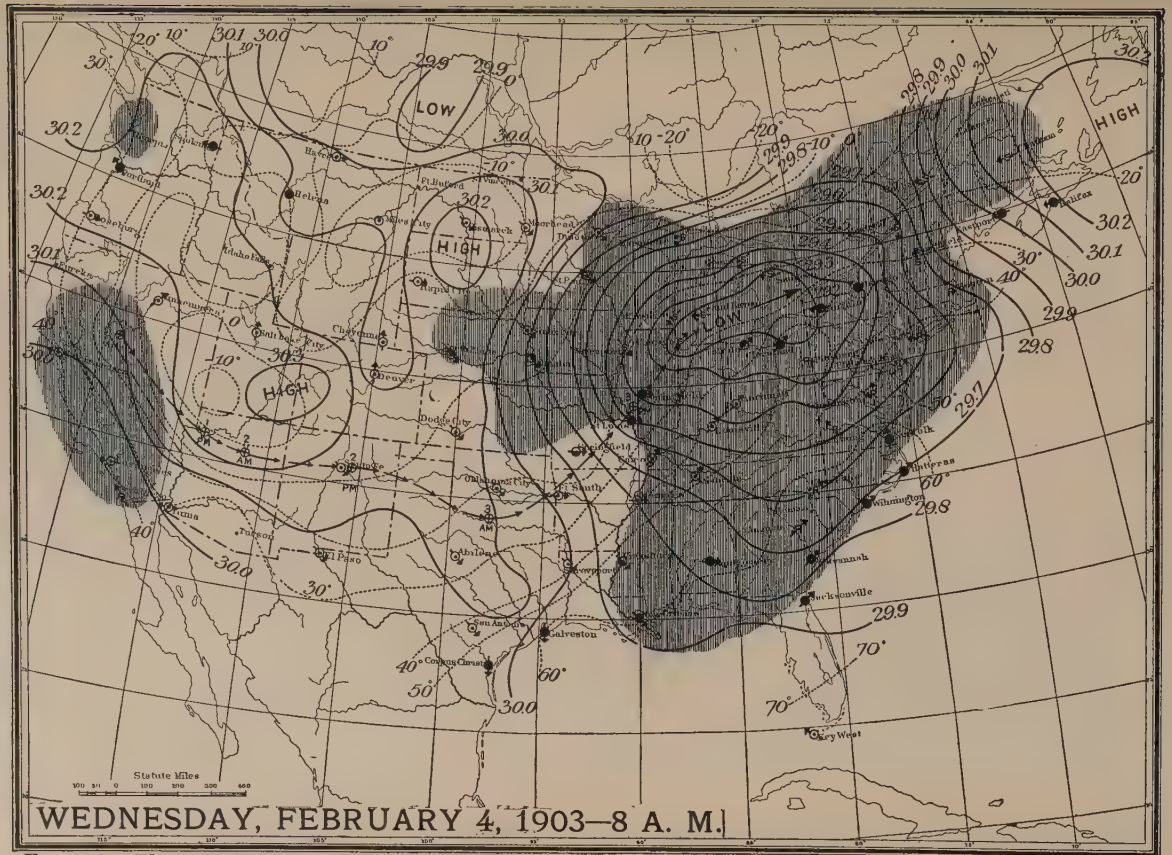


FIG. 550.—The rows of arrows have the same significance as in Figs. 548 and 549. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

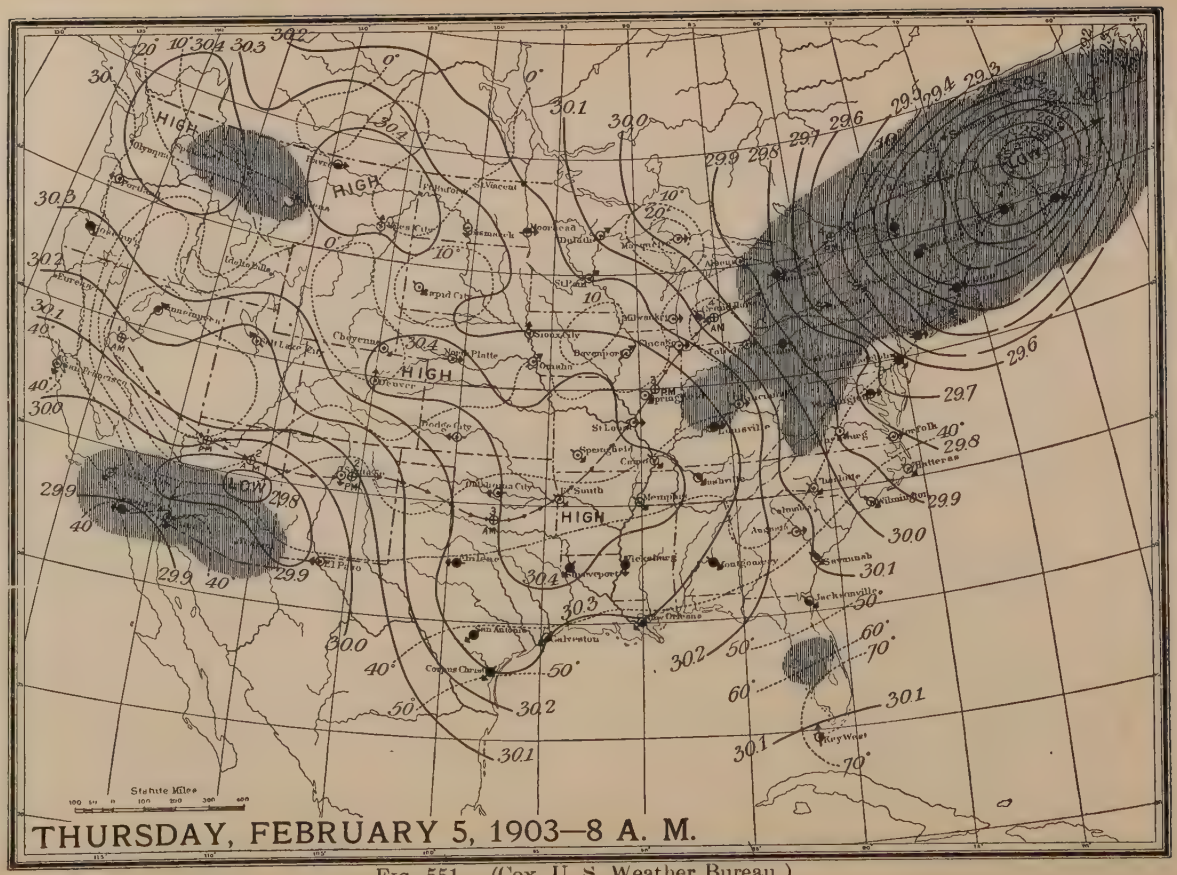


FIG. 551. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

indicated by the arrows on the map of the 25th. Figs. 548–551 show the movement of cyclones and anticyclones for four consecutive days in February, 1903, and especially the course of a low from Arizona (Fig. 548) to Maine (Fig. 551). The progress of highs and lows shown on these maps represents the general course of movement of most similar atmospheric disturbances.

The mean tracks of cyclones and anticyclones for the United States are shown in Fig. 552. The heavier lines show the average

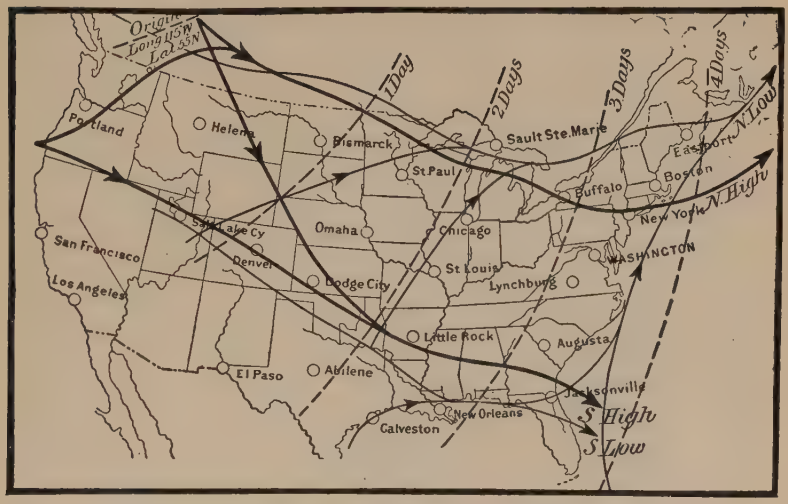


FIG. 552.—The heavier lines show the tracks of anticyclones, and the lighter lines the paths of cyclones. Off the South Atlantic coast anticyclones are likely to turn northward. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

paths of anticyclones, and the lighter, the tracks of cyclones. Some anticyclones enter the United States from the Pacific, while others originate on the land north and northwest of Montana. The anticyclones take either a northerly or a southerly route across the continent. The former extends through the Great Lakes region to southern New England, while the latter reaches the Atlantic or the South Atlantic coast. Anticyclones entering from the Pacific may take either of these courses, and those originating in the northwest may do the same, as shown by the figure.

The cyclones originate, or first appear, in various places. More of them originate near the places where anticyclones are generated than in any other place; but not a few originate in Colorado, the

Great Basin, in Texas, and elsewhere. Most of those originating in the northwest pass through the Great Lakes region to northern New England. Those originating farther south may follow a southerly course to the Atlantic, or may pass to the northward. Some of the tropical cyclones, to be mentioned later, reach the Gulf of Mexico from lower latitudes, and follow the coast thence to the northeast.

Still another set of lines in Fig. 552, marked 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, and 4 days, show the average rate of daily progress of the storms which come in from the northwest on successive days.

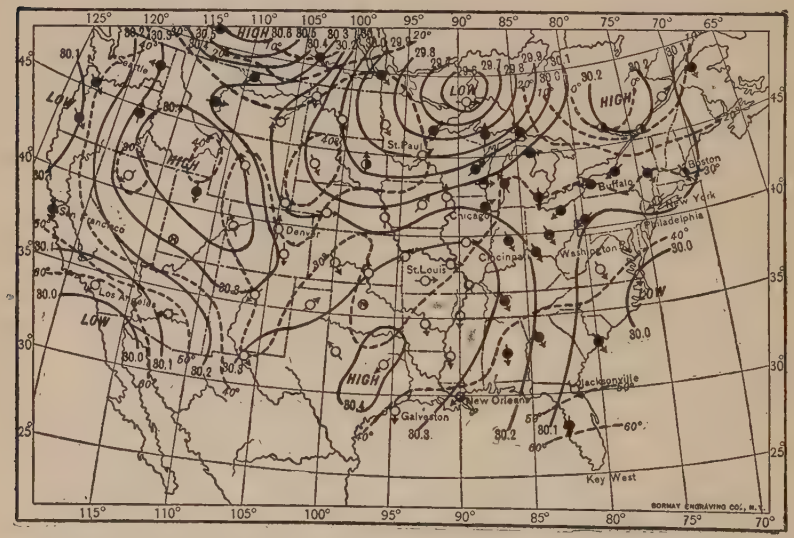


Fig. 553.—Weather map for December 8, 1900. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

Some weather maps are more complicated than those shown in the preceding figures. Fig. 553 is a weather map on which four highs and four lows, some of them feeble, appear. The map gives some idea of the way lows and highs follow each other. The relations of isotherms and isobars are also instructive.

It will readily be seen that the passage of a cyclone involves a change in the direction of the wind. Thus in Fig. 548 the wind at Buffalo is easterly, though in the zone of westerly winds. The next day, after the storm centre has moved forward beyond Buffalo (Fig. 549), the wind is westerly. The easterly wind of an

approaching cyclone is generally taken as a sign of rain throughout much of the eastern part of the United States.

Cyclones do not affect the air to great heights. Even when the great whirl or eddy is 2000 miles across, as is sometimes the case, its height (depth) rarely is more than 4 or 5 miles.

Weather conditions of cyclones and anticyclones. During the passage of a cyclone some air is drawn from lower to higher, and therefore from warmer to cooler latitudes. In midsummer this often gives rise to the "hot wave" (Fig. 554), though "hot waves" are not always closely associated with cyclones. Similar winds

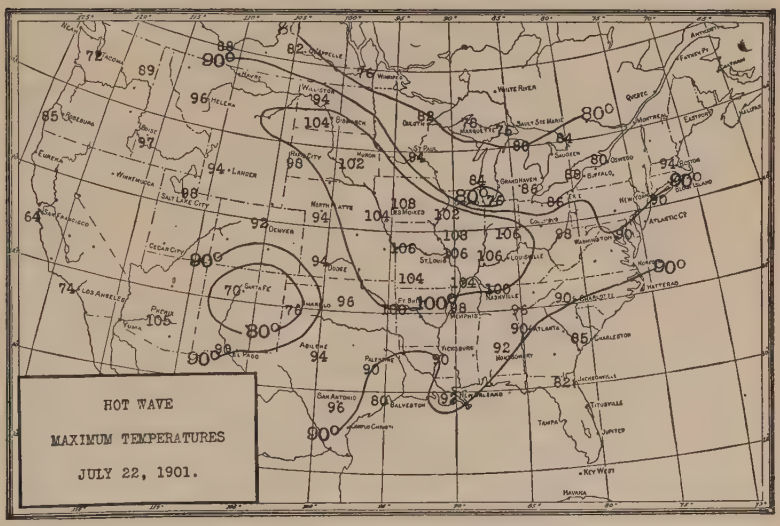


Fig. 554. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

are known as the sirocco in the western Mediterranean region, and they go by other names elsewhere.

"Cold waves" attend many anticyclones. These winds are known as *northers* in the southern part of the United States and sometimes as *blizzards* in the northern part, though this name usually implies heavy snowfall and high wind, as well as low temperature. Fig. 555 shows a map for January 3, 1896, and Fig. 556 a map for the following day. The high of Montana has advanced to Arkansas and Mississippi, and a freezing temperature has been carried down to the orange groves of Florida.

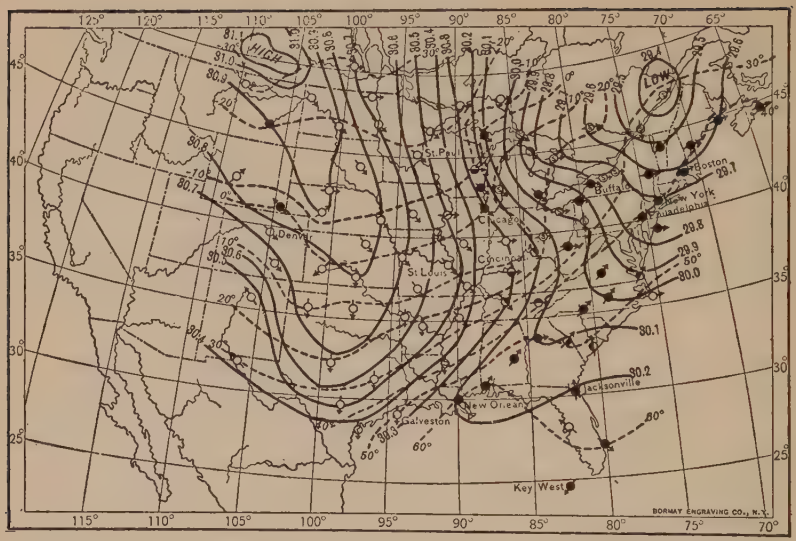


FIG. 555.—Map showing the minimum temperatures for January 3, 1896. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

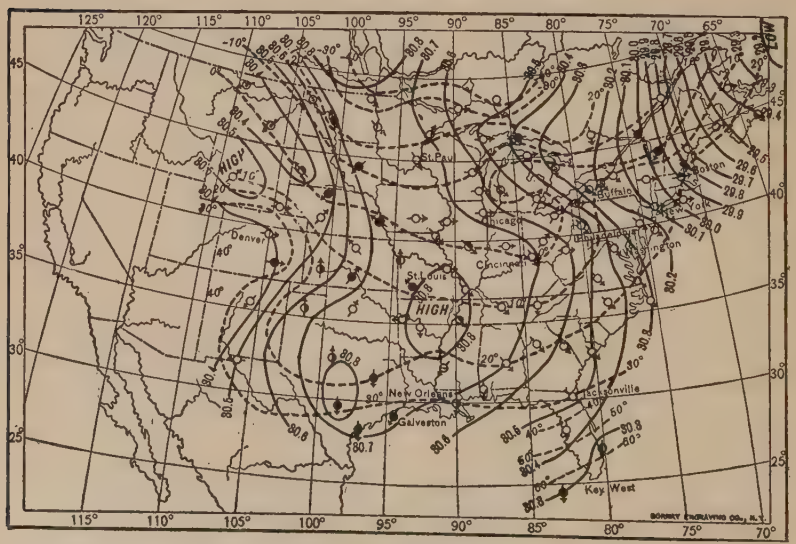


FIG. 556.—Map showing the minimum temperatures for January 4, 1896. This figure shows the progress of the cold wave from the preceding day. At this time a freezing temperature has reached the orange groves of Florida. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

The *mistral* of southern Europe belongs to the same class as the northers of our country.

Origin of the cyclones and anticyclones of intermediate latitudes. No satisfactory explanation of cyclones and anticyclones, susceptible of simple statement, has been proposed. Centres of low pressure might be brought about by the excessive heating of certain areas; but this can hardly be the origin of most cyclones of temperate latitudes, for they are more common, stronger, and move faster in winter than in summer. In the winter season they often originate in areas covered with snow, where excessive heating is impossible. Oceanic cyclones are, on the average, stronger than land cyclones, and excessive local heating affords no adequate explanation of their strength. Similarly, anticyclones might be conceived to result from the unusual cooling of certain areas; but that this is not their cause seems clear from the fact that they sometimes originate in warm regions, and from the further fact that they are not notably more abundant in cold weather than in warm weather. The origin of both sorts of disturbances is probably to be referred to atmospheric movements connected with general circulation, rather than to atmospheric movements due to local inequalities of temperature.

Tropical cyclones. Cyclones sometimes originate in tropical regions, and follow courses very different from those of cyclones in temperate latitudes. Most cyclones of this class affecting North America originate in the West Indies, and are most common in late summer and early autumn. They follow a northwesterly course until the latitude of Florida is reached. Here most of them turn northward, and later northeastward, showing a tendency to follow the Atlantic coast. Figs 557–560 show the course of one of these storms in August (27–30), 1893, and Fig. 561 shows the average path of the tropical cyclones for the months of August, September, and October, for the years 1878 to 1900. Storms of this sort sometimes are called *hurricanes*.

The tropical cyclones are as a rule more pronounced than those of temperate latitudes; that is, the gradient is higher and the winds therefore stronger. Some of them do great damage along the coast, both to shipping and to low coastal lands. The storm which worked such devastation to Galveston in September, 1900, is shown in Fig. 562, which also shows the course of the storm both before and after September 8. The strength of the storm was ex-

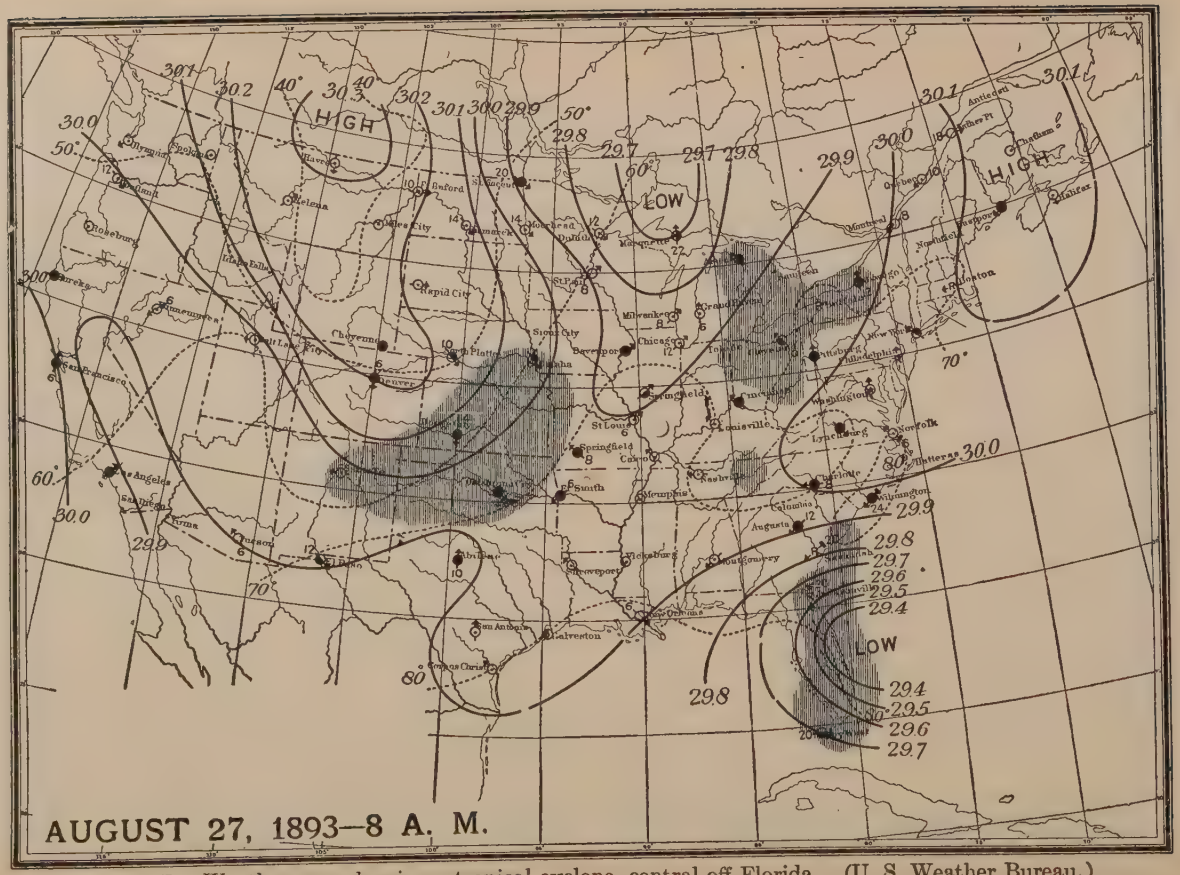


FIG. 557.—Weather map showing a tropical cyclone, central off Florida. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

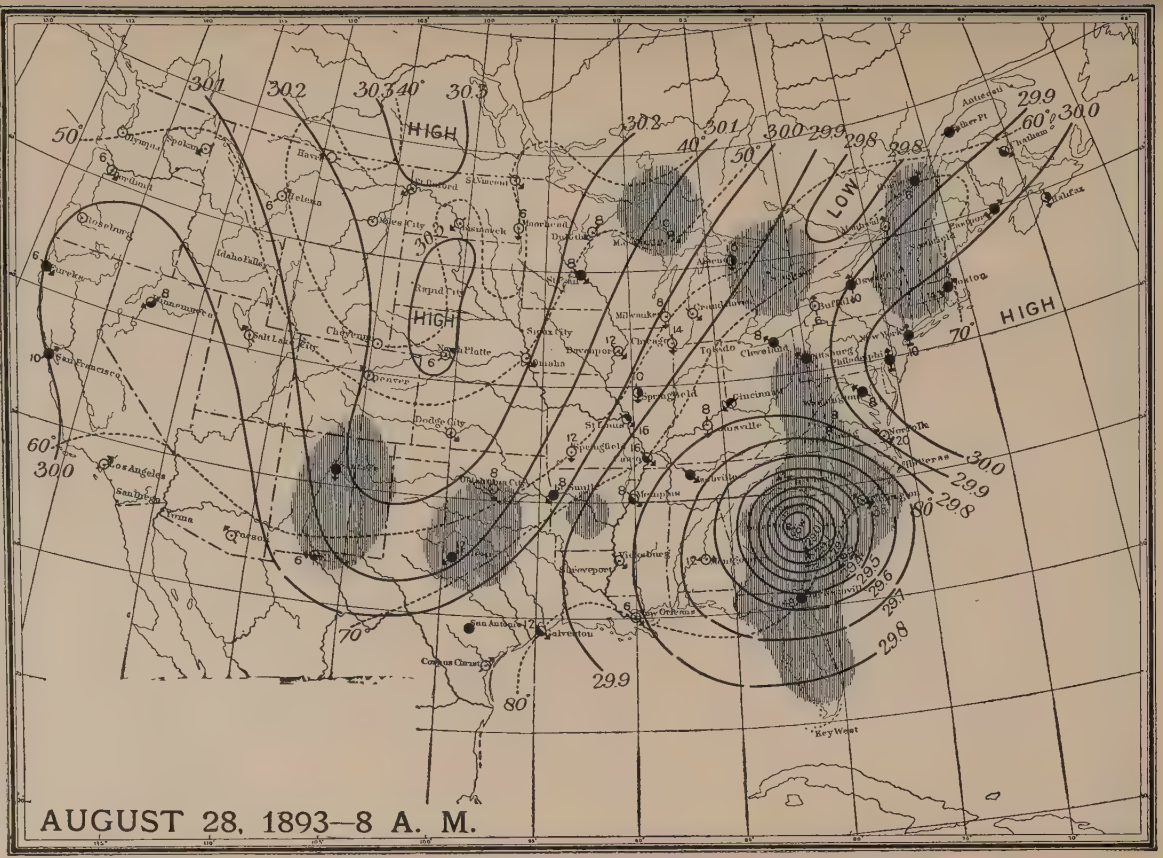


FIG. 558.—Weather map showing the progress of the storm shown in Fig. 557. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

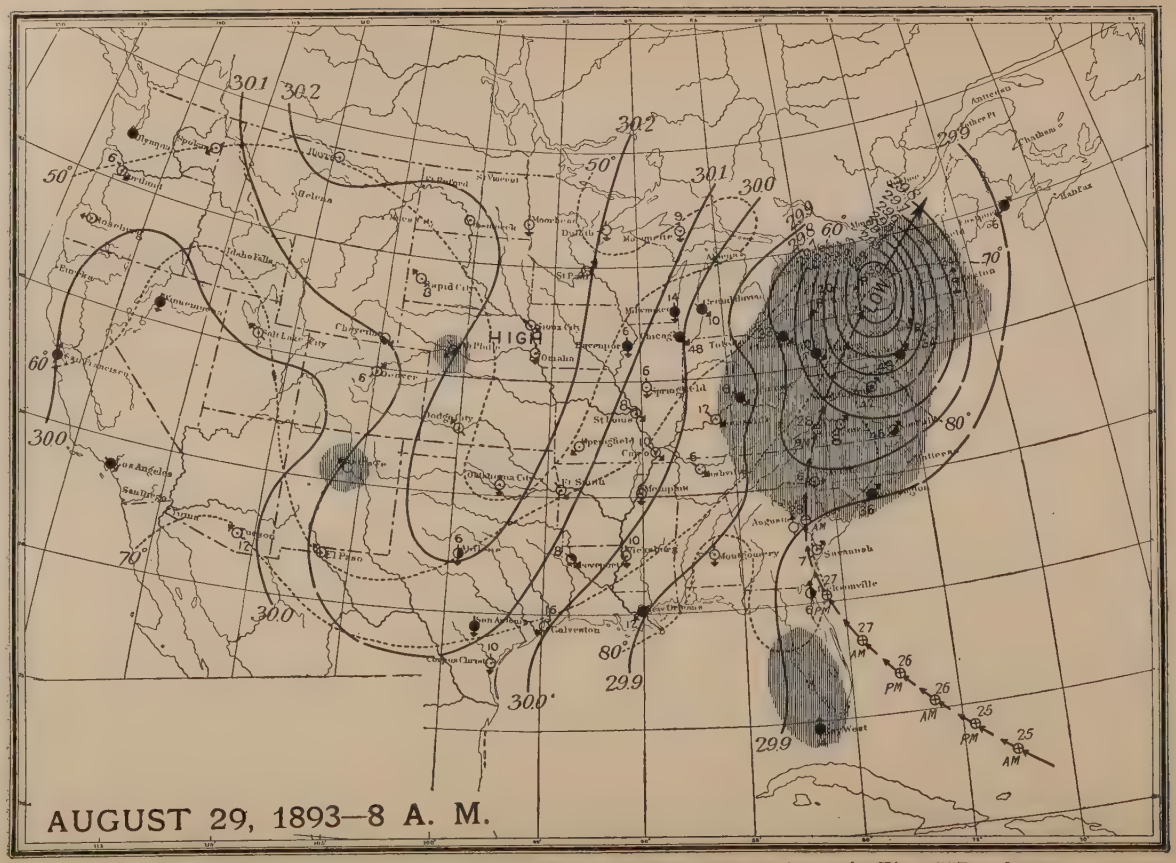


FIG. 559.—Weather map showing further progress of the storm shown in Figs. 557 and 558. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

FIG. 560.—Weather map showing the last of the storm shown in the preceding figures. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

ceptional, and its course unusual, as will be seen by comparing Fig. 562 with Fig. 561. Fig. 562 shows that the rate of progress of the storm was very variable. Thus northwest of Cuba its progress was much slower than it had been to the southeast. Just south of Florida it traveled only one-fourth as far in twelve hours as it traveled in one hour southeast of Cuba.

Tropical cyclones do not occur in the South Atlantic. Their point of origin is several degrees north of the equator, mostly

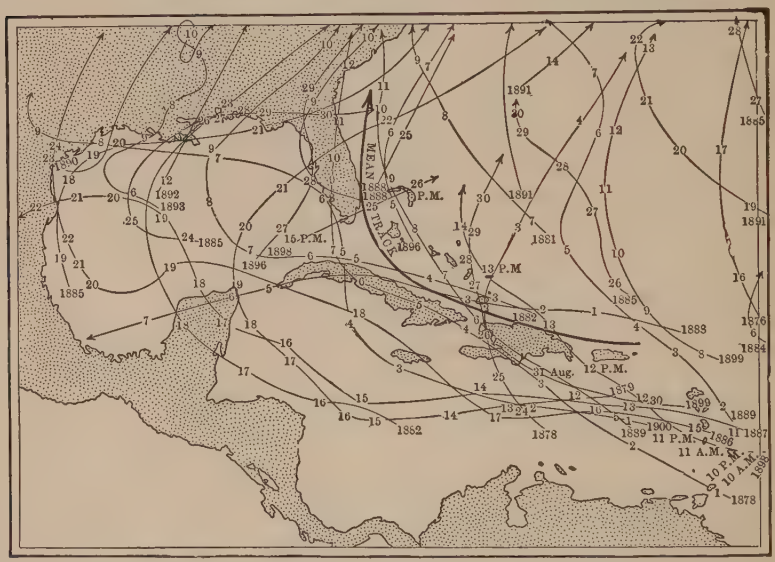


Fig. 561.—Course of West Indian storms for August, September, and October, 1878–1900. The lighter lines show the tracks of individual storms, the heavy line the mean course. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

between 10° and 20°, in the North Atlantic. In the Pacific they occur on both sides of the equator. They come in the later part of the hot seasons, and are thought to be caused by strong convection currents. Their apparently anomalous courses are probably to be explained by the courses of the prevailing winds. The lower part of the cyclone is in the horizon of the trades, but the upper part of the great eddy is probably above the trade-wind horizon and under the influence of higher currents. The effect of these two controls appears to be to carry the storm somewhat to the north of west (in the northern hemisphere) until it escapes the control of the trades altogether, after which it is influenced primarily by

HIGH
HIGH
HIGH
LOW
LOW
LOW

the southwest winds. The course of the storm after it escapes the trades, following a more northerly course than the prevailing winds, probably is influenced by the temperature of land and sea, and the air movements resulting therefrom.

Similar to the West Indian hurricanes are the *typhoons* of the North Pacific, originating in the vicinity of the Philippines, and sweeping the coast of China. Their courses are shown in Fig. 563.

Fig. 563.—Typhoon tracks. (After Herbertson.)

The Society Islands and the low coral islands of the neighboring Low Archipelago were swept by a destructive storm of this sort on February 7 and 8, 1906. The Hongkong typhoon of Sept. 18, 1906, was estimated to have destroyed 5000 lives, and property to the value of $20,000,000.

Weather predictions. Weather predictions are based on the phenomena illustrated by the weather maps, of which the map for the 25th of September, 1903 (Fig. 543), may be taken as an example. Rain accompanies the cyclone central over Dakota. Since this storm has, for the last twenty-four hours, been moving a little

south of east at the rate of about 40 miles an hour, it is fair to presume that it will move in this same general direction at a similar rate for the next twenty-four hours. If, in this time, it advances to the Lake Superior region, it probably will bring with it weather similar to that which it is giving to the region where it now is. Hence on the 25th, the day when the weather conditions shown in Fig. 543, obtained, the prediction might be made that rainfall is to be expected in about twenty-four hours in the region around the head of Lake Superior.

The map of the 26th (Fig. 544) shows that the course of the storm has changed a little, being slightly to the north of east, the common path of cyclones. That is, after descending a little to the south of east from British Columbia, cyclones are likely to turn to the east, or even a little to the north of east, in the middle longitudes of the United States (Fig. 552). On the 26th the prediction might be made that the low which is central north of Lake Superior (Fig. 544) will move on to the Gulf of St. Lawrence by the succeeding day, and that rain will accompany it. Rain for the region about Lake Huron and the area east of it may, therefore, be predicted. The map for the 27th (Fig. 545) shows that the area of precipitation extends far to the south. The preceding map had shown some cloudiness in this region, but had afforded no warrant for the prediction of such an area of cloudiness. Thunder-storms are shown in the southern part of the area of cloudiness.

Temperature changes as well as changes in precipitation may be predicted. Thus in Fig. 542 the isotherm of 40° bends southward notably in the high central over Iowa. As the high moves east, it probably will carry the low temperature with it. Hence it is safe to predict that the temperature will fall in the area into which the anticyclone is to move. The map of the succeeding day (Fig. 543) shows that the temperature of western Virginia has fallen from about 60° to about 40° along the path of the high, while areas much farther north are warmer.

The same map (Fig. 543) shows that North Dakota and Alberta have a temperature of 50°, that is, a temperature 10° warmer than that of western Virginia. It will be noted, too, that the relatively high temperature of Dakota, Montana, and Alberta goes with a low. As the low moves eastward, the presumption is that the temperature along its path will become somewhat higher. This is shown by the succeeding map (Fig. 544), which shows a tempera-

ture of about 50° north of Lake Superior. The same map shows how the isotherm of 40° bends to the southward in front of the high which is central over western Montana. On this day Winnipeg has about the same temperature as Cheyenne, several hundred miles farther south. As the high of Montana moves eastward, it will be likely to carry cold temperature with it. From this map, therefore, it may be predicted that the temperature in Nebraska, Kansas, Iowa, and Missouri will fall. The next map (Fig. 545) shows that the temperature at Omaha has fallen from 50° to 40°, while that of eastern Kansas has fallen from 70° to 40°.

The time at which the precipitation which a given storm may bring to any given place will fall, is calculated from the rate at which the storm is progressing. Similarly, the time of arrival of a cold wave which an anticyclone is likely to bring, is predicted on the basis of the rate of progress which the anticyclone is making. These rates are known in advance by telegraphic reports. Predictions concerning the weather may be made more readily for the central and eastern parts of the United States than for the western part, for the storms have been under observation longer before they reach the central and eastern parts.

Predictions also may be made as to the strength and direction of wind. The principles involved will be readily understood, and the data on which the predictions are based are received by forecasters the same as data concerning temperature and rainfall.

Failure of predictions. Many weather predictions fail. The reasons are many. Among them the following may be mentioned:

1. Some cyclones and anticyclones depart widely from the courses they are expected to take. Thus a storm may be in line for St. Paul, to which it is expected to bring rain and a rising temperature; but instead of keeping its normal course, it may turn off to the northward, and the rain which was predicted for St. Paul falls farther north.

2. Some storms change their rate of advance, so that they arrive earlier or later than predicted. Thus, if a storm which has been advancing at the rate of 600 miles in a day suddenly stops or advances but little, it does not bring the changes predicted to the areas into which it was expected to advance.

3. A third cause of the failure of predictions is found in the fact that storms appear and disappear without warning. Fig. 544

shows a low of which there had been no indication on the 25th, central over Oklahoma; Fig. 545 shows that this low has disappeared. Much more pronounced storms, promising great changes of weather, also disappear. In such cases the predicted weather does not arrive, and its failure is charged to the forecaster.

4. Predictions sometimes are based on insufficient data. It will be noticed that on some weather maps the letter *M* appears in various circles. This means that reports from the station where the *M* appears are missing. If many reports are missing, the map is correspondingly imperfect, but the forecaster must use such data as he has, as well as he may, and issue a map.

5. Storms may change their characters. Thus from the map of January 20, 1895 (Fig. 564), it could not be foreseen that the cyclone central in Colorado would develop the pronounced characteristics which appear on the map of the following day (Fig. 565).

6. In some situations storms are subject to many freaks. This is the case, for example, at Chicago. The frequently erratic behavior of storms here probably is due to the influence of the lake, which modifies temperature and air currents. No other of our Great Lakes has so great extension in a north-south direction, and no other therefore presents so broad a front to the prevailing winds.

Forecasters, like other men, are fallible, but when they have to work with so many indeterminate elements, it is not strange that they sometimes make mistakes, and one mistake is likely to be remembered longer than many correct prognostications.

Property saved by predictions of storms, frosts, floods, etc. In spite of all shortcomings, the warnings of storms, floods, cold waves, etc., sent out by the Weather Bureau, have resulted in great benefit to various interests. The value of this service of the Weather Bureau is not always duly appreciated, and much less is heard of it than would have been heard of the losses which would have been incurred in the absence of the warnings. Unfortunately, it is not always possible to devise protection against the danger of which the Weather Bureau gives warning.

It was estimated that property valued at $15,000,000 was saved in 1897 by warnings of impending floods. While this was exceptional, considerable sums are saved each year in this way. In 1903–4 the estimated value of the saving was $1,000,000.

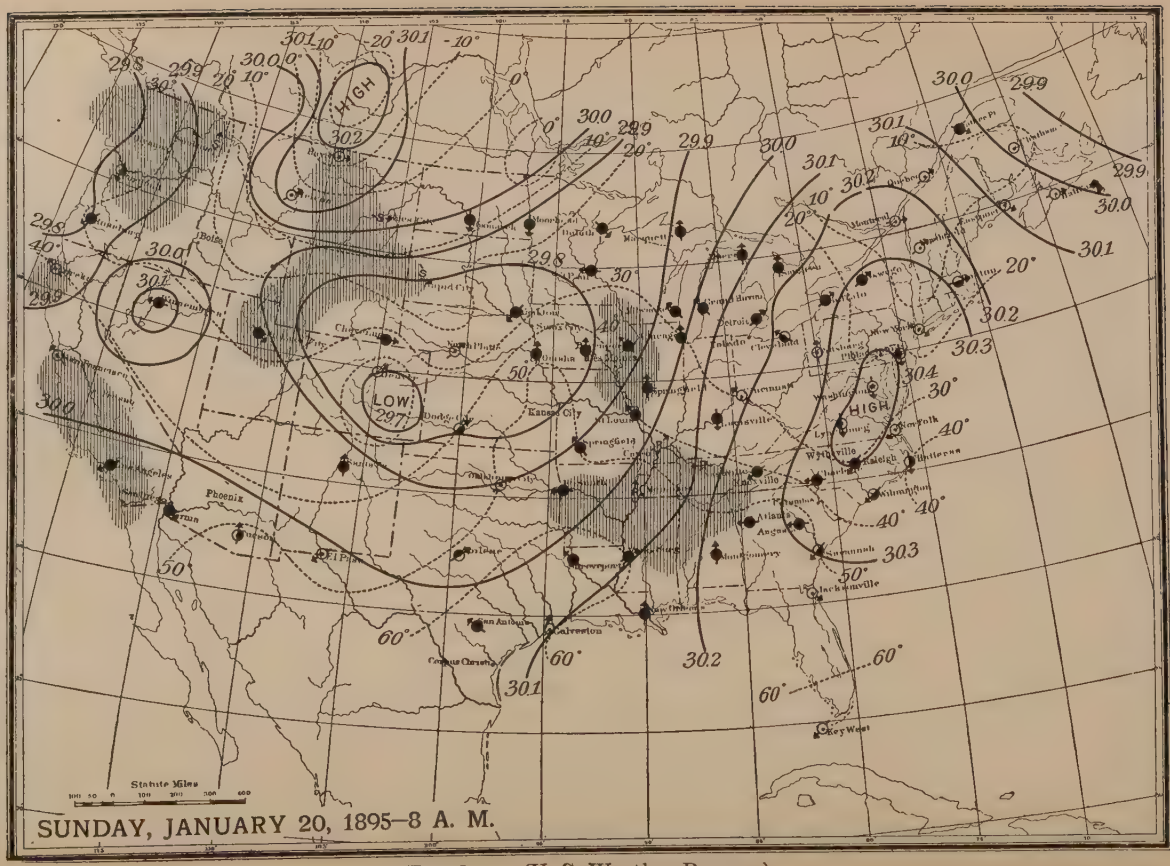


FIG. 564. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

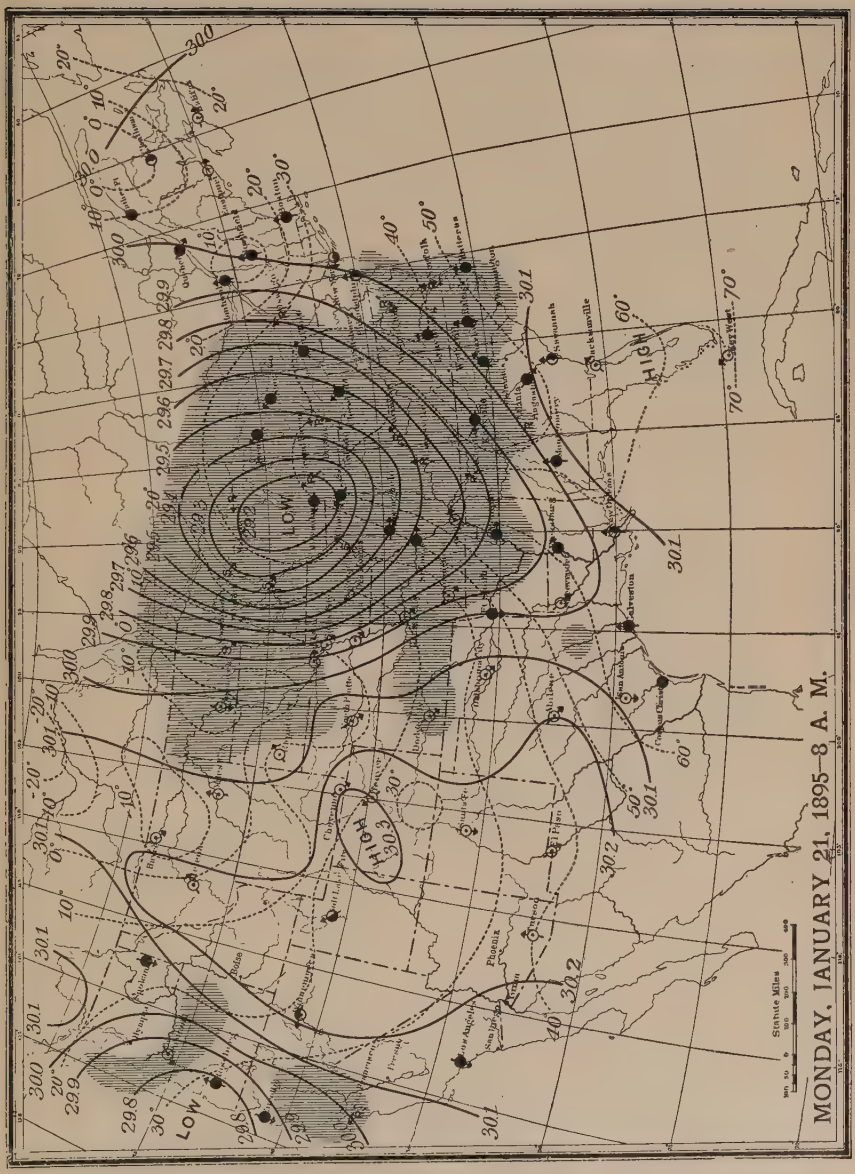


FIG. 565.—This map shows the storm of the preceding day greatly changed in character. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

Shipping interests are served by storm warnings. Thus, in September, 1903, vessels valued at $585,000 were temporarily held in ports along the coast of Florida by storm warnings.

Agricultural interests also are served by warnings of storms and "cold waves," and especially frosts. Warnings led to the protection of $1,000,000 worth of fruit about Jacksonville, Fla., in 1901, with an estimated saving of half this amount. Other warnings of cold in 1901 are estimated to have been the means of saving $3,400,000 worth of property. Fruit- and truck-farming are the phases of agricultural work most effectively served in this way.

Thunder-storms. Thunder-storms are frequent in the United States. They are most common in low latitudes, or in the summer season of middle latitudes, and they are most common on days which are unusually warm, and during the warmer parts of these days. They are, however, not confined to the summer or to the warm part of the day, for there are occasional thunder-storms in

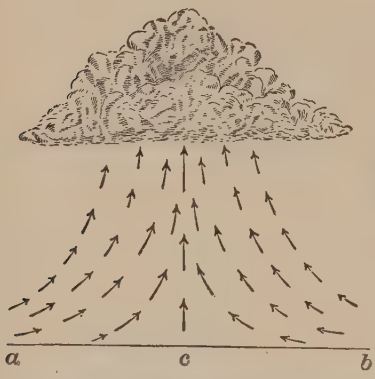


Fig. 566.—Ascending currents and cumulus clouds preparatory to thunder-storm. (After Ferrel.)

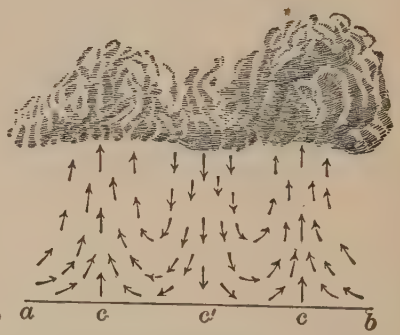


Fig. 567.—Air-currents in thunder-storm. (After Ferrel.)

the winter in middle latitudes, and even in high latitudes, and there are thunder-storms at night.

The first indication of a thunder-storm usually is a large cumulus cloud (Fig. 566) which, in the zone of the westerly winds, generally appears in the west. The cumulus cloud (or thunder-head) which yields the rain, like all cumulus clouds, appears to be generated by an ascending current of moist air. It moves eastward, and seems to rise as it approaches the observer, but the rise

is apparent only. As the cloud nears the observer, there is usually a sharp breeze, or "thunder-squall," rushing out before it. Shortly after the squall the rain begins to fall. The rainfall is often heavy and the drops large; but the downpour commonly does not last more than an hour, and in many cases much less. Sometimes, however, a second thunder-storm follows close upon the first (Fig. 567), thus prolonging the period of rainfall. After a thunder-storm has moved on to the east, the air usually is cooler and fresher, and the barometer higher.

The individual droplets of water in a thunder cloud are charged with electricity, and the charge increases as they increase in size. The lightning is due to the discharge of the electricity from one part of a cloud to another, or from one cloud to another cloud, or from the cloud to the ground.

The flash of lightning is followed by thunder, the noise being due to the vibrations in the air resulting from the disturbance caused by the electrical discharge. The thunder has been compared to the noise which follows any other violent disturbance in the air, such as the explosion of a rocket or the cracking of a whip.

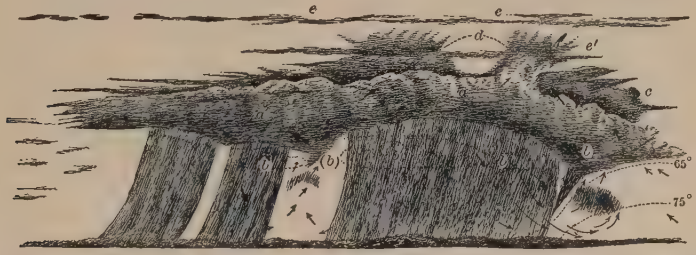


Fig. 568.—Vertical section of a thunder-storm which is moving toward the right. (After Köppen.)

Rolling thunder may follow a prolonged flash of lightning, or it may be due to a succession of flashes but slightly separated from one another, or in some cases to the echoing of the thunder from hills and mountains.

In middle latitudes most thunder-storms occur during the passage of cyclones, but they do not accompany all cyclones. They are more common on the south sides of cyclones than elsewhere, and many of them are at a considerable distance from the centre of the storm. In middle latitudes, thunder-storms, like cyclones, move in a general way from west to east; while in the zone

of trade-winds they move from east to west. In both cases they move with the prevailing winds.

The forward movement of most thunder-storms is 20 to 50 miles an hour. Many of them spread, and become weaker as they move forward (Fig. 570), and few of them run long courses before they disappear. The period of a thunder-storm is, as a rule, much shorter than that of the cyclone which it accompanies.

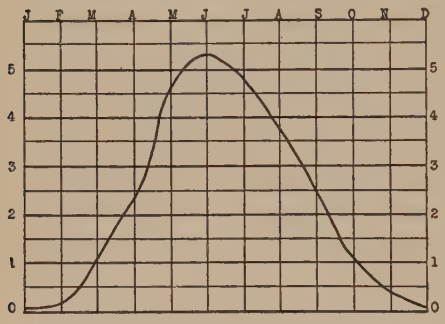


Fig. 569.—Graph showing the relative frequency of thunder-storms in Chicago in different months. (Cox, U. S. Weather Bureau.)

It sometimes happens that lightning at a great distance illuminates the clouds over a region where the lightning itself cannot be seen. Where the clouds seen from a given point are thus illuminated by lightning which is itself invisible, the lighting of the clouds is called "heat lightning," which is simply a reflection of lightning. It is more common in hot weather than at other times, because lightning is more common at such times.

Rainbows sometimes accompany or follow thunder-storms. They are always seen opposite the sun, and hence are seen in the west in the morning, and in the east in the afternoon or evening. More commonly they are seen just after the passage of a thunder-storm, while a little rain is still falling, but after the sun has appeared. They are seen on looking through falling rain. The rainbow is due to the effects of the drops of water in the atmosphere on the sun's rays. A bow is also seen through water spray, such as that at a great fall, even when no rain is falling.

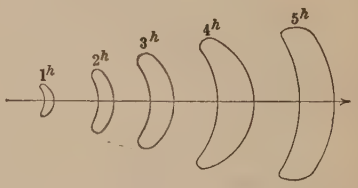


Fig. 570.—Shape of thunder-storm in ground-plan, illustrating growth and change as it progresses. (After Waldo.)

Whirlwinds. Distinct ascending whirls of air often are seen on hot days. They are especially well seen in dusty regions, for

there the dust is swept up, making the whirl distinctly visible. They often are seen in dusty roads, plowed fields, etc., but are seen at their best in deserts. From a given point in the Mojave Desert of California, as many as eight or ten of these whirls, some of them rather conspicuous and imposing, sometimes may be seen at one time from a single point. The whirlwinds probably are caused by the excessive heating of the air at some point, and this excessive heating gives rise to sharp convection currents. The whirl moves on for a time with the prevailing wind, but soon plays out.

In humid regions the whirlwinds do not usually appear to extend up to any considerable height, but in desert regions many of them reach heights of 1000 feet or more, as shown by the whirling columns of dust. The rise sometimes is so great that the air is expanded and cooled enough to cause condensation of even the small amount of moisture contained in the desert air. Sharp showers may then occur. Showers of this sort are likely to be of short duration, but the rainfall sometimes is very heavy. If exceptionally heavy, such rains are known as *cloudbursts*. In such a storm in the summer of 1898, rain enough fell in a few minutes, in the vicinity of Bagdad, in the Mojave Desert of California, to occasion serious washouts along the railroad for several miles. A cloudburst at Clifton, S. C., June 6, 1903, caused the loss of more than fifty lives, and property damage to the estimated extent of $3,500,000.

Tornadoes. When a convection current is very strong, but has very small diameter, the whirl becomes so intense as to cause great destruction. A whirling storm of this sort is a *tornado*. Tornadoes, like thunder-storms and whirl-winds, are phenomena of warm weather. They are most common in the United States in the early part of the warm season, appearing earlier in the South and later in the North.

The tornado may be looked upon as a concentrated cyclone or an intensified whirlwind. The pressure in the center of the tornado is, as a rule, much lower than in the center of a cyclone. In a strong tornado the pressure at the center may be a fourth less than that of its surroundings. Herein lies the explanation of one phase of the destructive action of a tornado. During the passage of a tornado the pressure may be reduced from the normal amount, 14.7 lbs. per square inch, or 2117 lbs. per square foot, to three-

fourths of this, that is to 11 lbs. per square inch or 1584 lbs. per square foot. If such a tornado passes over a closed building in which the air pressure is normal (2117 lbs. per square foot), the pressure on the outside becomes 1584 lbs. The walls are therefore pushed out with a force of 533 lbs. per square foot, and unless they are very strong, they will collapse outward, as if the building had exploded. It may be only the weakest part, such as a window, which yields.

Not only is the pressure at the center low, but the area of low pressure is very small. While a cyclone may be 1000 miles or more across, a tornado may be no more than one-eighth of a mile across, or even less. The result is that the pressure gradient in a tornado is very much higher than in a cyclone, and the winds are violent. Their velocities, estimated by the size and weight of the objects moved, have been thought to reach 400 or 500 miles per hour in rare cases. With this velocity, or even a velocity which is much less, the destruction is great. Trees are overturned, buildings unroofed or even blown down, and bridges hurled from their foundations.

FIG. 571.—Funnel-shaped cloud of a tornado. Solomon, Kan. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

A tornado is heralded by a funnel-shaped cloud (Fig. 571), the point of which may be far above the ground. As the funnel moves forward, its lower end may rise or fall. The tornado becomes especially destructive where the funnel sinks so as to approach or touch the ground. The cloud is due primarily to the condensation of the moisture in the strong convection current, and the funnel shape is due to the expanding and spreading of the air as it rises.

The tornado is, of all storms, the most destructive, but it has a narrow track, and does not commonly work destruction for a very great distance. After a short course it generally plays out, or rises so high as to cease to be destructive.

One of the most destructive, though not one of the most violent, tornadoes of recent times was that at St. Louis, May 27, 1896. It was an incident of a thunder-storm in the southeastern part of a cyclonic area central some distance northwest of St. Louis.

The humidity at St. Louis was exceptionally high, about 94. At noon the barometer at St. Louis stood at 29.87, the temperature was 80° F., and the velocity of the wind 12 miles per hour. By 1.45 the temperature had risen to 86°. At 2 o'clock the barometer began to fall rapidly, and by 6 P.M. it had dropped to 29.59. Meanwhile the wind had become shifting, and shortly before 6 o'clock had attained a velocity of 45 miles per hour, and by 6 o'clock the temperature had fallen to 77°.

During the earlier part of the afternoon, cumulus clouds had been abundant, but by 4.30 they had settled into a stratus cloud. Soon after 5.00, there was thunder and lightning, and rain began to fall at 5.43.

At 6.04 there was a marked increase in the violence of the wind, which shifted its direction rapidly. The barometer rose to 29.67, but fell almost instantly to 29.57, then rose to 29.67 in less than five minutes, falling again .31 inch to 29.36 in fifteen minutes, and then rose almost instantly to 29.76. Sharp oscillations of barometric pressure occurred until 10 P.M. The wind probably attained a maximum velocity of 120 miles per hour at 6.18, with numerous and rapid changes in velocity and direction. The rainfall accompanying the storm was extremely heavy, more than 2½ inches falling. The electrical display was brilliant.

The destruction began at about 6.10 P.M. and lasted for several minutes. The forward motion of the storm was at the rate of about 36 miles per hour. The width of the belt of destruction was about 1¼ miles where it entered the city, but it was constricted to less than a mile farther on.

One of the extraordinary features of the storm was the fact that its base was about 30 feet above the surface. Trees were twisted off at this level, and the principal destruction of houses was above the first floor. Evidences of great heat were visible after the storm, as shown in charred branches and twigs, a phenomenon which has been noted in some other tornadoes.

As in other tornadoes, the wind played many curious freaks. Single stones and bricks were picked out of walls, while the walls remained standing. In one case a span of horses attached to a

loaded wagon were taken away, though the wagon was not overturned. The most extraordinary recorded instance of violence was in East St. Louis, where, at the approach to the bridge, a plank 2″×8″ "was driven into .... a steel girder with such velocity that it punched a hole in the webbing and remained sticking in the girder." The destruction of property in and about St. Louis was estimated at about $13,000,000.

The interpretation put upon the storm was that "tornadic action was developed successively at different points in the track of the general storm," which was a thunder-storm belonging to the class of thunderstorms "which move broadside in a southeasterly direction."

A more violent tornado was that at Louisville on the 27th of March, 1890, just before nine o'clock in the evening. Its rate of advance was nearly 40 miles per hour, but its diameter was so slight, about 300 yards, that it took but about three-fourths of a minute for the storm to pass a point. It was accompanied by "a most terrific electric display.' Many weak buildings were wrecked, the walls falling toward the center of the storm. Seventy-six persons were killed and about 200 injured in Louisville alone, and the loss of property was estimated at about $2,500,000.

The path of the storm was traced for 75 miles, and throughout this distance its width was nearly uniform. At least five tornadoes occurred in Kentucky the same night.

Waterspouts. Waterspouts are virtually tornadoes at sea. When the base of the upward spiral movement is as low down as the surface of the water, sea-water may be drawn up to some slight extent by the ascending current. The lesser atmospheric pressure in the centre of the whirl will occasion the rise of the water to some extent at that point, and the upward current of air may catch it and carry it upward. The larger part of the water in a waterspout is, however, due to the condensation of the water vapor in the air, and not to the uplift of water from the sea.

Foehn winds, Chinook winds, etc. When warm moist air is forced up over mountains, it precipitates some of its moisture. The precipitation sets free heat, so that the air is cooled much less than it would be otherwise. Beyond the crest of the mountains it descends, and is warmed in the process. It is warmed much more

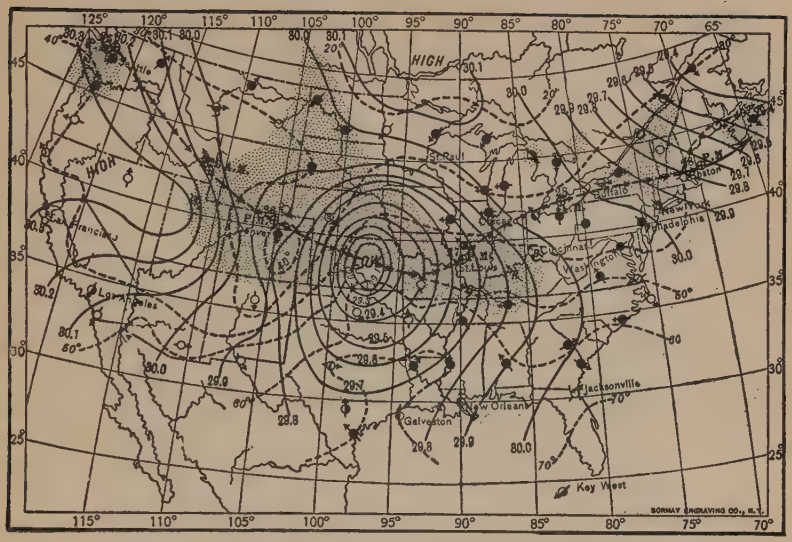


FIG. 572.—Weather map for the morning of the day (March 27, 1890) of the Louisville tornado. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

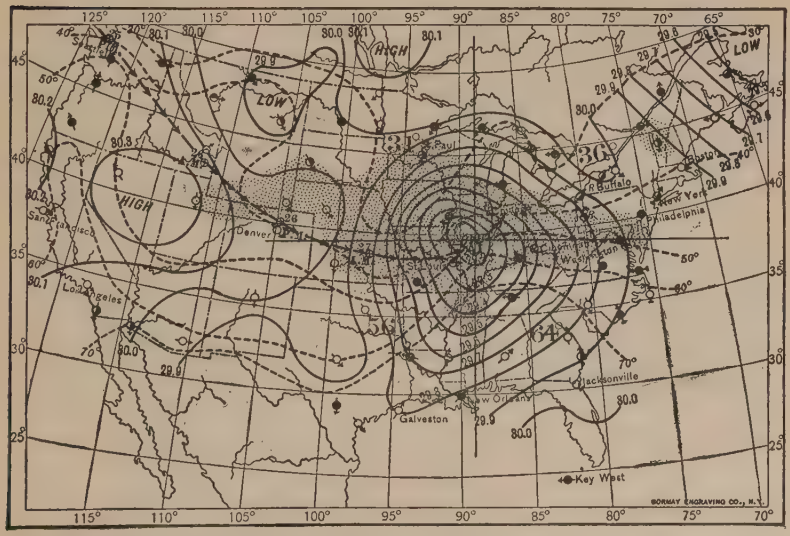


FIG. 573.—Weather map for the evening of March 27, 1890, at the time of the Louisville tornado. The tornado was an incident of the cyclone shown on the map. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

(often twice as much) in the descent than it was cooled in the ascent, because moisture is not condensed during the descent.

Fig. 574.—Wreckage of the Union Station Power-house at St. Louis, May 27, 1896 (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

Fig. 575.—Trees twisted off by tornadic winds. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

Fig. 576—Straws driven into dry wood by tornadic winds. (U. S. Weather Bureau.)

It may therefore descend as a hot wind. Such winds are known as *Foehn* winds in Switzerland and as *Chinook* winds in the United States, especially just east of the Rocky Mountains.

These winds are beneficial or harmful, according to conditions. Thus the Chinook winds temper the rigorous winters of certain parts of the Northwestern States and the Canadian provinces east of the mountains. They frequently evaporate a foot or more of snow in a very few hours. Such winds sometimes are called "snow-eaters." These winds make winter grazing possible over large areas. In Alberta the Chinook has been declared to be "the grand characteristic of the climate as a whole, that on which the weather hinges." These winds sometimes develop with great suddenness. At Fort Assiniboine, Montana, on January 19, 1892, the temperature rose 43° F., from −5.5° to 37.5°, in fifteen minutes, under the influence of the Chinook wind. In other cases the temperature has been known to rise 80° F. in six or eight hours. Chinook winds of summer are sometimes so hot and drying as to wither vegetation, and sometimes to destroy crops completely. This happens only when the ground is dry, and therefore unable to supply the needed moisture to the plants.

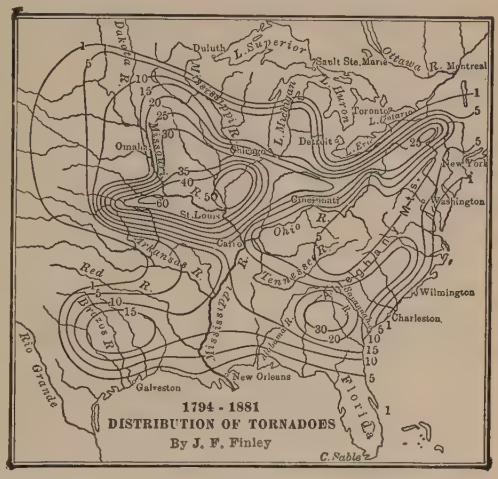


FIG. 577.—Distribution of tornadoes in the United States, 1794–1881.

CHAPTER XIX

CLIMATE*

In the preceding discussions of temperature, rainfall, winds, and weather, much has been said or implied concerning climate. The principal points involved may be summarized here and applied to the principal zones of the earth.

Definition. Climate is the average succession of weather conditions for a considerable period of time. The summer climate of a place is shown by the weather of many summers, but not by the weather of one. So with the climate of autumn or winter or spring. The average weather conditions for 10 years would give some approximation to the true climate, those for 25 years would give a closer approximation, and those for 50 or 100 years would be better still.

Climate is otherwise defined as "the sum total of meteorological conditions in so far as they affect animal or vegetable life" (Hann). According to this conception of climate, those meteorological elements which have most influence on life are most important in climate.

The principal elements of climate are (1) temperature and (2) humidity, which includes (*a*) relative humidity (p. 495), (*b*) absolute humidity, (*c*) degree of cloudiness, and (*d*) precipitation. A climate may be described as *warm* or *cold*, *dry* or *moist*. In common speech, other elements of climate often are neglected, but (3) wind, is of importance.

In characterizing the climate of a region account is taken not only of the average temperature of the year and of the several seasons, but also of the temperature of exceptional seasons and of the extremes of temperature during the season. These extremes are considered not merely for their effects on averages, but also on their own account. Other important facts about temperature have to do with the dates of latest frosts in spring, and of earliest frosts in autumn, for these two dates determine the length of the

*See De Ward. Pop. Sci. Mo., March, 1910.

growing season. *Sensible* temperature, as distinct from *absolute* temperature, also is a factor in climate. Moist air of a given degree of heat seems much warmer than dry air of the same temperature when the temperature is high, and colder when the temperature is low. Sunstroke is much more common where the relative humidity is high than where it is low. Sunstrokes are rare, for example, in the arid West, even with temperatures considerably above those of Chicago or New York. Air of a given temperature seems much cooler when in motion than when quiet.

Similarly, climate takes account not only of the average amount of yearly precipitation, but of the variations of precipitation from year to year and from season to season, of its average distribution throughout the year, and of departures from this average, and of the proportions which fall as rain and snow respectively. A climate might be characterized as windy; but there is no considerable area where the wind blows all the time. The distribution of wind throughout the year would be taken account of, just as the distribution of temperature and precipitation are.

Uniformity and variability. If the range of temperature is small, the distribution of precipitation somewhat equal, and the winds reasonably constant in direction and strength, the climate is *uniform*. If, on the other hand, the variations of these climatic elements are great, either in a year or in successive years, the climate is *variable*. The climate of the middle and northern latitudes of the United States, for example, is variable, (1) because the annual range of temperature is great, (2) because the range varies much from year to year, (3) because corresponding seasons have very different temperatures, (4) because changes of temperature may be very sudden, and (5) because the amount and distribution of rainfall vary notably and irregularly from year to year, and from season to season. It is the variability of the weather which makes weather predictions important, *and variable weather makes a variable climate.*

A variable climate varies in different ways. A climate which is regularly dry during one season and wet during another, is variable *within the year* with reference to precipitation, even though the range of temperature is not great; the climate of such a region may, however, be very constant from year to year. Such a climate is found on the borders of the equatorial calms, which shift a little north and south with the apparent shifting of the sun. A narrow

belt on each border of the calm zone therefore is alternately in the calms and in the zone of the trades. During the former times it has plentiful rain, while during the latter it is generally dry.

A region which is hot at one time of the year and cold at another is variable *within the year* with respect to temperature. In such regions, too, one winter or summer may be much cooler or warmer than the next, giving a variation from year to year rather than from season to season. A climate which is variable with respect to temperature is not necessarily variable with respect to moisture. Commonly, however, variations in temperature and moisture go together.

In some regions the winds shift regularly from season to season, as where monsoons blow. The climates of such places are variable *within the year* with respect to winds, and this makes them variable also with respect to some of the other elements of climate. Considered from year to year, the climates of such regions may be uniform. These illustrations are sufficient to show that the meaning of "variable climate" is itself variable.

Classification of Climates

As in the case of many other topics, climates may be classified in various ways, and each classification helps to emphasize some important point. One classification has already been suggested, namely, *uniform* and *variable*. Another classification has reference primarily to the *amount of heat received from the sun*. On this basis the earth is subdivided into climatic zones, the borders of which are parallels. The climatic zones based on insolation represent *solar climate*. Solar climate is so much modified by various factors other than insolation, that climatic zones bounded by lines other than parallels have been suggested. The effect of land and water on temperature already has been noted. So important is this effect that climates are also classified into *oceanic* and *continental*, and continental climates, in turn, are subdivided on the basis of (1) distance from the sea, (2) altitude, and (3) topographic relations. The controlling element in most of these classifications is temperature.

Climatic Zones

On the basis of climate, the earth is divided into several zones. Those commonly recognized are (1) the *tropical zone*, which is centered about the equator, (2) the *intermediate* (*temperate*)

zones, which occupy the extra-tropical latitudes, and (3) the *polar zones*, which lie about the poles. The limits of these zones have been defined variously. One classification defines them by *latitude*, a second by the direction of the *winds*, and a third by *temperature*.

Zones defined by latitude. Defined by latitude, the tropical zone is limited poleward by the tropics, and the polar zones are limited, equatorward, by the Arctic and Antarctic circles respectively, while the intermediate zones lie between the tropical zone and the polar zones on either hand. Stated in other terms, the *tropical zone*, according to this classification, is the zone (1) where the sun is vertical at some time during the year (except at the tropics, twice a year); (2) where variations in the length of day and night are relatively little; (3) where the annual insolation is relatively great and the average temperature high; (4) where the range of annual insolation is slight, and consequently (5) where the annual range of temperature is not great.

The greater insolation of this zone is explained by the lesser obliquity of the sun's rays. At the equator, at noon, they depart nearly 23½° from verticality at a maximum; at the tropics, they depart nearly 47° from verticality at a maximum; and at intermediate latitudes by intermediate amounts. The average inclination of the sun's rays for this zone at noon is between 17° and 18°, while the average inclination for the intermediate zones is about 45°. The sun's rays, therefore, depart much less from verticality in the tropical zone than in the intermediate zones. The slight range of temperature in this zone is explained by two facts, namely, (*a*) within the tropical zone the days and nights are never very unequal (Fig. 471), and (*b*) the change in angle of the sun's rays during the year is less than elsewhere.

The *intermediate* (temperate) *zones* are the zones (1) where the sun's rays are never vertical; (2) where the days and nights are very unequal, each ranging from 10¼ hours at the equatorward limit of the zone to nearly 24 hours at the poleward limit, in the course of the year, but where the sun never appears above the horizon for twenty-four hours consecutively; and (3) where the amount of annual insolation is less, and (4) its annual range greater, than below the tropics.

The *polar zones* are the zones (1) where the days and nights are sometimes more than twenty-four hours long. They are the zones

(2) of least annual insolation, and (3) of greatest range of insolation.

According to this definition of the zones, the tropical zone is about 47° wide, each of the temperate zones about 43°, and each of the polar zones about 23½°.

This classification has the merit of simplicity, and it has a definite astronomical basis; but the limits of the zones thus defined do not everywhere separate one sort of climate from another. As applied to actual climate, and to the things which climate affects, the subdivision is arbitrary. Thus, the climate in that part of the intermediate zones near the tropics is essentially like that of the tropical zone, while the climate of that part of the intermediate zones next to the polar zones is not very different from that of the polar zones. On this basis there is far more difference between the climate of the lowest and the highest latitudes of an intermediate zone, than between the climate of the lowest latitudes of an intermediate zone and that of the highest latitudes of the tropical zone, or between the climate of the highest latitudes of the intermediate zone and that of the lowest latitudes of the polar zones.

Zones defined by winds.[1] If climatic zones are defined by the direction of prevailing winds, the tropical (or trade-wind) zone is the zone where the trade-winds blow. It extends somewhat beyond the tropics, even to latitudes of 30° or 35° on the eastern sides of the oceans. The intermediate zones lie poleward from the trade-wind zone, and are characterized by prevailing westerly winds and variable climate, but they have no definite poleward boundaries. This definition has the merit of placing the dividing-line between the tropical and intermediate zones where the simple and uniform climate of the trade-wind zone gives place, poleward, to the more complex and variable climate of the zone where the westerlies prevail. This classification has the merit, therefore, of grouping together climates which are really similar. It takes account of climatic elements other than temperature. The poleward limits of the intermediate zones have a much less logical definition than the equatorward limits.

The lack of simplicity and of mathematical precision is an objection to the definition of zones by the direction of the winds. Thus, the zone of the trades shifts north and south with the seasons. On this basis, therefore, places near the border of the

[1] Davis' Elementary Meteorology

trade-wind zone are sometimes in that zone and sometimes in the zone of the westerly winds. As a matter of fact, this annual shifting of a place from one zone to another corresponds with actual climatic conditions, even if it is not simple. The basis of this definition of zones is therefore quite as rational as that of the preceding, and if it leaves the zones with rather vague boundaries, it is because nature has left them somewhat ill-defined.

Zones defined by isotherms. If climatic zones are defined on the basis of temperature, the dividing-lines between zones are iso-

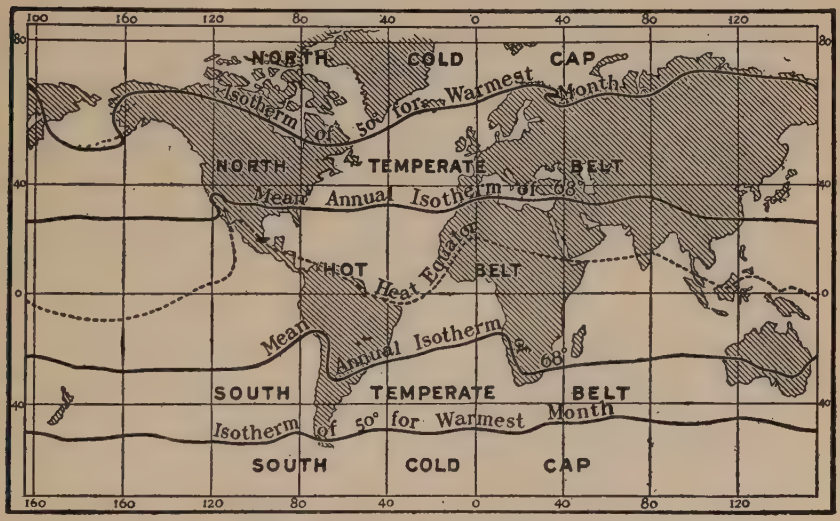


Fig. 578.—Temperature zones. Degrees Fahr. (After Supan.)

therms. One proposed division makes the annual isotherms of 68° F. the equatorward limits of the intermediate zones, while their polar limits are the isotherms of 50° for the warmest month (Fig. 578). On this basis, the tropical zone is narrowed over the eastern sides of the oceans and broadened on the western sides, as a result of the influence of the lands.

On the whole, this seems a fairly satisfactory basis for the definition of climatic zones, though it lacks the mathematical simplicity and precision of the first, and it fails to take account of some diverse elements of climate recognized by the second.[1]

[1]The classification of climates on the bases here considered is well discussed by Ward, Bull. Geog. Soc. of Am., 1906, p. 401.

Each climatic zone has at least two principal subdivisions, a continental and an oceanic. The oceanic climate of any zone prevails where there are extensive areas of water, and the continental climate prevails elsewhere.

Oceanic climates. Oceanic climates are less variable than continental climates in the matter of temperature. Between the latitudes of 0° and 40° the diurnal range of temperature is only 2° to 3° over the sea. It is far more on land. The annual range of temperature over the sea is also much less than that on land. This is illustrated by Fig. 579, which shows the annual variation on the island of Madeira (curve *M*) and at Bagdad (curve *Bd*) in Asia Minor. The former represents a marine climate, the latter a continental climate. In higher latitudes the differences are still greater, as shown by the curves *V* and *N*. The former represents the marine climate of Valentia on the southwest coast of Ireland, and the latter the continental climate of eastern Siberia.

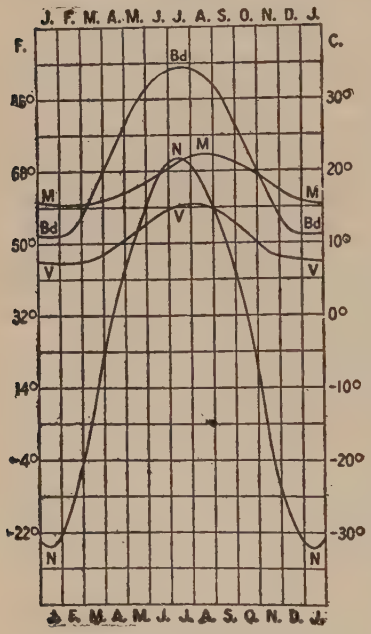


FIG. 579.—Graphs to illustrate oceanic and continental climates in different latitudes. *M*—Madeira, *Bd*—Bagdad, *V*—Valentia, and *N*—Eastern Siberia. *M* and *V* represent oceanic climates; *Bd* and *N*, continental. (After Angot.)

The sea retards the annual march of temperature more than the land does (Fig. 580). The springs on and near the sea are therefore relatively colder and the autumns warmer than on land. The humidity of oceanic climate is greater than that of continental climates. This results in more cloudiness and often more rainfall, especially in winter. The winds of the sea are, on the whole, stronger than those of the land. The leeward shores of the oceans (shores to which winds blow from the sea) have climates which are essentially oceanic. The more equable temperatures and the greater amount of moisture on such coasts have important effects on vegetation and on animal life.

These effects go beyond the mere facts of life and death, and even beyond degrees of thrift. For example, wheat has less protein in a marine climate than in a continental, and its starch decreases and its gluten increases with increase of temperature.[1] Potatoes grown in the arid West, where the necessary (but no unnecessary) water is supplied by irrigation, are more nutritious than those grown in moister climates. These are but illustrations of general facts.

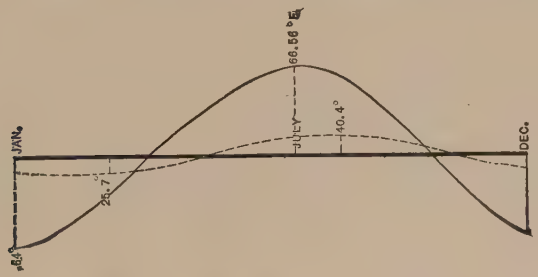


FIG. 580.—Annual march of temperature (in degrees Fahr.) in continental (full line curve) and oceanic (broken line curve) climates. The horizontal line represents the annual average. (After Hann.)

Continental climates. In contrast with marine climates, continental climates have greater annual and daily ranges of temperature, and the seasons lag less than over the sea. In high latitudes the skies are clearer and the winters colder; in low latitudes the winters are warmer than over the sea. The humidity and the rainfall are less, and the rain less frequent in the interiors of the continents than over the sea; but its amount and distribution are influenced by topography, winds, etc.

The differences between oceanic and continental climates, so far as temperature is concerned, are indicated by the following table:

Latitude.	0°.	10°.	20°.	30°.	40°.	50°.
Mean temperature of land hemisphere	44.8°	42.5°	36.4°	26.0°	15.7°	3.6°
Mean temperature of water hemisphere	22.2°	21.2°	19.6°	17.4°	12.7°	7.6°
Difference	22.6°	21.3°	16.8°	8.6°	3.0°	−4.0°

Desert climates are an extreme phase of continental climates. Here daily ranges of temperature are great. As a result, winds are

[1] Hann's Handbook of Climatology

high by day, and the air often so dusty as to make travel difficult. The nights are calmer and cooler. As a result of the great daily ranges of temperature and the high winds, rock breaking, due to changes of temperature (p. 65), and dust and sand transportation by the wind (p. 49) are at a maximum. Dryness is unfavorable for plant life, and therefore for animals.

Since *littoral* (coastal) *climate* on the windward side of the continent is very like the oceanic climate of the same latitude, the west coasts of the continents in the zones of westerly winds have oceanic climates, and east coasts have continental climates. In the zone of trade-winds the reverse is the case.

The climate of some littoral zones is controlled largely by monsoon winds. So important are these winds that it is proper to speak of a monsoon climate. Monsoons are on shore in summer, and so give summer rains; but locally the monsoons give precipitation in winter.

Mountain and plateau climates differ from other continental climates, because of (1) the increased insolation and radiation which go with increase of altitude, (2) the lesser absolute humidity, (3) the lower temperature, (4) the greater range of solar temperature, and (5) the greater frequency of precipitation, up to certain altitudes. The difference between soil temperature and air temperature is also greater than at lower levels.

Mountains, like oceans, have relatively pure air and high winds. They modify general winds and give rise to local winds, such as mountain and valley breezes. They interfere with free horizontal interchange of air, so that pressure and moisture conditions may be quite different on opposite sides of a mountain range.

Climatic effect of forests. Forests also exert a modifying influence on continental climates. They lower the summer temperature by increasing the radiating and evaporating surfaces, and perhaps by increasing cloudiness. They increase the relative humidity of the air; but it is uncertain whether they have much effect on precipitation. The data for some regions seem to point to an affirmative answer, and for others to a negative one. In any case, they tend to hold back the water after it falls and to retard the melting of snow, so that their general effect on the moisture of the region is much the same as it would be if the pre-

cipitation were increased. Forests also afford protection against winds and floods.

With these general facts in mind, we may study briefly the climates of the several zones. In this discussion, the parallels of 23½° and 66½° will be regarded as zonal boundaries.

Fig. 581. Map of the tropical regions, showing land and water areas. Poleward limit of distribution of palm trees ——. Poleward limit of tradewinds ..... Mean annual isotherm of 68° F. — —.

General Characteristics of Tropical Climates

The tropical zone includes about ⅜ of the area of the earth, and of this ⅜, about ½ is land (Fig. 581). The striking things about its climates are (1) their warmth and (2) their uniformity. The weather does not change frequently, as in middle latitudes, and atmospheric conditions are so nearly uniform that weather and climate are almost the same. In some parts of the zone occasional hurricanes and typhoons break the general monotony.

The lack of great variation of temperature is due chiefly to two facts: (1) The noon altitude of the sun varies much less than in other zones, and (2) the lengths of day and of night do not vary greatly. As a result, the amount of insolation does not vary much from season to season, and since it is always large, the temperature (at low altitudes) is always high.

In many places in the tropics there is a range of less than 10° between the mean temperatures of the warmest and coldest months, and a range of more than 15°–20° hardly can be said to be characteristic. On the oceans, and on some lands, the range is insignificant. At Bogota, Colombia, the coolest month is less than 3° cooler than the warmest, and in

some places in Java the difference is even less. Toward the edges of the tropical zone, the annual range of temperature is greater, especially inland.

The difference in temperature between day and night is greater than that between the warmest and the coolest months, in many parts of the tropical zone. Near coasts, the temperature rarely falls below 70° at night, and rarely rises above 90° by day. Inland, the daily range is much greater, and in dry regions far from coasts it is as much as 60° or 70° in some places (from 50° or 60° at night, to 120° by day). In places, freezing temperatures have been known at sea-level, as in deserts near the margins of the zone. Since the daily range is several times as great as the range between the warmest and coldest months, it is a common saying that "night is the winter of the tropics." The daily range is much the same day after day.

The highest temperatures of the tropics are no higher than those of middle latitudes. It is not high temperature, so much as *continued high temperature,* which characterizes tropical climate.

The *variability* of tropical rainfall is in contrast with the *uniformity* of temperature. Some places always are dry, and others always rainy; in some places there is no rain for months at a time, and almost daily rains during the rest of the year; some places have one rainy season each year, while others have two. Rainfall is the controlling factor in the climate where the other leading element, temperature, is nearly constant. In general, the variations of rainfall are definite and come at somewhat regular intervals.

The distribution of rain in the tropics is influenced by (1) winds (and calms), and (2) topography. The winds (and calms) of most importance in determining the distribution of rains in the tropical zone are (a) the *trade-winds*, and (b) the *equatorial calms.* The calm belt moves north and south with the sun, and its migration determines the periodic character of rains in this zone.

Seasons of rainfall. For most places within the limits of the migrating belt of calms, the rain comes when the sun is nearly overhead, or a little later. In the trade-wind zones, on either side of the calm belt, rain is likely to fall chiefly from air forced up over high elevations.

The distribution of rainfall through the year gives a basis for the division of the year into seasons. Some places have two sea-

sons, one rainy and one dry, while others have four seasons, two rainy and two dry. The lengths of these seasons vary much from place to place. In some places it is dry all the year. In such places the seasons differ somewhat in temperature, being warmer when the sun's rays are more nearly vertical.

Types of Climate within the Tropics

Rainfall and its effects furnish a basis on which different types of tropical climate are distinguished. There are: (1) the *equatorial type,* affecting a zone of 10° to 15° on either side of the equator; (2) the *trade-wind type,* affecting belts between the zone of the equatorial type and the tropics of Cancer and Capricorn; (3) the *monsoon type,* especially about lands near the sea; and (4) the modification of these types produced by high altitudes, giving what may be called *mountain climate.*

1. *Equatorial Climate* (*Latitude* 0° *to* 10° *or* 15° *N. and S.*)

Temperature. Temperature is least variable in this part of the tropical zone. Differences of temperature depend chiefly on (1) altitude, and (2) nearness to the sea, especially nearness to the sea from which wind blows to the land. The typical marine climate of this belt has only trifling change of temperature from month to month. Thus Batavia, the capital of Java, has a mean annual temperature of 78.8° F., and the coolest month is only 2° cooler than the warmest. In the interior of central Africa, on the other hand, the mean annual temperature is not very different from that at Batavia, but the warmest month is 10°or 12° warmer than the coolest. In most places the daily range of temperature is greater than the annual range. It is greater inland than on coasts, and greater at high altitudes than at low ones.

Rainfall. The rains come, for the most part, in early afternoon showers, many of them accompanied by thunder, and almost every day has a clear morning. The migration of the belt of tropical calms involves the movement of the zone of daily rains. Places alternately in and out of the belt of calms have wet and dry seasons. Near the borders of the equatorial zone there is one relatively short wet season when the sun is nearly vertical at noon, and one longer dry one, when the sun's rays are more inclined. Near the equator there are two wet and two dry seasons. The former center about the times of the equinoxes, when the sun's

rays are nearly vertical at noon; and the latter come when the sun's rays are vertical farther from the equator.

Humidity and cloudiness. Humidity is high, as a rule, during the rainy season, and low during the dry season. The distribution of rain and clouds throughout the year affects the temperatures of the different months. As a rule, the end of the dry season has the highest temperature, and the rainy season is, in many places, the coolest part of the year, though the sun is then highest. This is due to the fact that the clouds shut off the sun's rays for a considerable part of the day. The increased humidity of the rainy season may make its *sensible* temperature higher than that of the hotter dry season. In many places, therefore, the rainy season is the most disagreeable time of year.

Effects on life. The high temperature of this zone and the abundant rainfall of its central portion favor a luxuriant growth of vegetation. Dense forests, such as those in the Amazon Valley, in central Africa, and in the Malay Peninsula, are characteristic of the humid parts of the zone.

These forests are inhabited only by relatively sparse population of backward natives, who live chiefly by hunting and fishing, and on the food supplied by the forest. The moist equatorial climate is unhealthful, especially for white people. Tropical malaria and yellow fever, both of which are spread by mosquitoes, are common ills.

2. *Trade-wind Climate* (*Latitude* 10° *or* 15° *to* 25° *or* 30°)

Winds and temperature. The most distinctive feature of the trade-wind climate is the steadiness of the winds, which blow with a velocity of 10 to 30 miles an hour. The steady winds make the temperature conditions nearly uniform, especially over oceans, small islands, and windward coasts. Both annual and diurnal changes of temperature are greater than in the equatorial belt. Lowlands swept by the trades tend to be arid. They are warmed rapidly by day, and cooled rapidly at night, having in many places a daily range of 50° or 60°. Temperatures as low as 32° are not unknown. These great daily changes are felt less than equal changes near the equator, because the humidity is low. The drier air with its greater changes of temperature is more invigorating than that of the equatorial belt.

Rainfall. Though commonly drying winds (relative humidity low), the trades contain much water vapor, and yield moisture

when cooled to the dew point. They are not so cooled over low lands; hence the latter are dry as long as the trades blow. Where they blow throughout the year, the land is desert. On the other hand, where the trades blow over high lands, the air is cooled as it is forced up, and clouds may form and rain fall. For this reason, the windward sides of highlands in the trade-wind belts are likely to be rainy, while the leeward sides are dry. The leeward (westward) side of the Andes, from Ecuador to northern Chile, presents the strange spectacle of a coastal desert, and a similar condition is found on the leeward coast of southwest Africa. Highlands standing in mid-ocean also have a rainy side toward the trades, and a drier side opposite, as illustrated by the Hawaiian Islands.

In Australia (Fig. 533), a continuous highland lies close to the east coast, directly across the path of the southeast trades. The effect of this barrier is to increase the area of the interior desert sometimes called the "dead heart of Australia."

The importance of high lands in getting rain from trade-winds is seen in the fact that rain falls on local elevations even in the Sahara. Streams flow for short distances from the mountains, but soon dry up or are absorbed into the sands of the desert.

Most low lands affected by the trades are, on the whole, sunny, and trade-wind deserts are almost cloudless. Cloudiness is confined chiefly to windward slopes.

The time of the rains in the trade-wind belts varies from place to place. In some places it is distributed somewhat evenly throughout the year; in others it is seasonal. Places which get rain from the trade-winds do not have alternate wet and dry seasons if the winds are continuous throughout the year, as in the central parts of the trade-wind zones. The trade-wind type of rainfall is modified in latitudes low enough to be reached by the equatorial calms. Trade-winds are interrupted in some places by monsoon winds (p. 487), and where this is the case, the monsoons may modify the rainfall.

Cyclones. The normal weather conditions of trade-wind belts are in places interrupted by tropical cyclones, which appear to originate along the margins of the equatorial belt, and move to higher latitudes through the trade-wind zone (Fig. 561). They occur during late summer and early autumn only. They interfere with the regular daily changes of temperature, and in many cases give torrential rains.

Trade-winds and commerce. The steady, reliable trade-winds, which prevail over a wide east-west belt of the oceans, have long helped to determine the courses of sailing vessels, whose routes, going and coming, are different.

Life in the trade-wind climate. Since moisture is scanty, forests as dense as those in equatorial climates grow only on the windward slopes of certain mountains. Most low lands in the zone of trades are arid, the Sahara, more than two-thirds the size of the United States, being an example.

In parts of the trade-wind deserts, however, showers occur now and then. In some places they come regularly at certain seasons of the year, and, in favored spots, the rainfall is enough to grow grain.

3. *Monsoon Climate*

Rainfall. At the season when the sun's noon altitude is great, the trade-winds are overcome, in some places, by *tropical monsoons*. While the monsoon lasts, it may blow very steadily.

Monsoons are well developed in southern Asia, as already noted. On the eastern coast of Asia, up nearly to latitude 50°, there is a similar wind from the ocean in summer, which gives some rain to the land. For most places in the northern hemisphere, the season when the monsoon type of wind blows from sea to land, is May to October. In the southern hemisphere, especially northern Australia, it is from November to April. The wind from the sea generally brings rain, and on the windward sides of high mountains the rain is heavy. A fall of 400 to 500 inches a year occurs in a few places. Since it all falls in four or five months, this means a daily rainfall of two to four inches a day throughout the rainy season.

The Indian monsoon is a southwest wind, blowing from the Indian Ocean and the Bay of Bengal. Western and southwestern slopes therefore receive much rain, while the eastern coast, in the lee of the Deccan plateau and Eastern Ghats, gets little rain while the monsoon blows. This coast gets its rain when the northeast trade-wind blows. In northwestern India there is a large desert, not reached by the monsoon. Hence different parts of India have different types of rainfall, largely as a result of the relation of wind direction to topography.

The conditions which produce rain mean increased cloudiness, and so the rainy season may be less hot than the dry season. As

a rule, the highest temperatures occur just before the rainy season begins, for at this time the regular winds become weak, or fail altogether.

Northern Australia, and the northern coast of the Gulf of Guinea, in west Africa, have distinct tropical monsoon climates, but there are no important monsoon districts in the tropical lands of the western hemisphere. The arrangement of land and water does not favor their development.

Life responses. Monsoon lands afford rather easy conditions of life, so far as the needs of man are concerned, and they contain the larger part of the population of the tropical zone. India alone has 300,000,000 people, in an area less than two-thirds that of the United States.

4. *Climate in High Altitudes*

Effect on temperature. For most of the tropical zone, varying altitude is the one factor which causes important variations in temperature. The extent of this variation is shown by the fact that tropical mountains exceeding 16,000 feet are snow-capped.

The lower temperatures found at moderate altitudes make plateaus in the tropics more agreeable and healthful than lowlands. On the Bolivian plateau, for example, the daily temperature may range from 32°F. to 75° or 80°. The climate of tropical mountains and plateaus is somewhat like the marine climate of the temperate zones, but with much greater daily range of temperature.

The vegetation, native and cultivated, of the higher altitudes of the tropical zone resembles that at lower levels outside the tropics. There is a gradual change, with increase of altitude, from products like sugar-cane or rice on the lowlands, through a belt of temperate-zone fruits or vegetables at moderate altitudes, to cold-temperate and Arctic types of plants, and then to perpetual snow at an elevation of about 16,000 feet. The snow and ice on the heights help to supply water for irrigation below.

Climate in the Intermediate (Temperate) Zones

Extent of temperate zones. The intermediate (temperate) zones lie one on either side of the tropical zone. Defined by latitude, their equatorial limits are the parallels 23½° N. and S. respectively, and their poleward limits the polar circles, 66½° N.

and S. There is, however, no marked change in climate as these boundary lines are crossed. The intermediate zones contain a little more than half (52.7 per cent) the area of the earth.

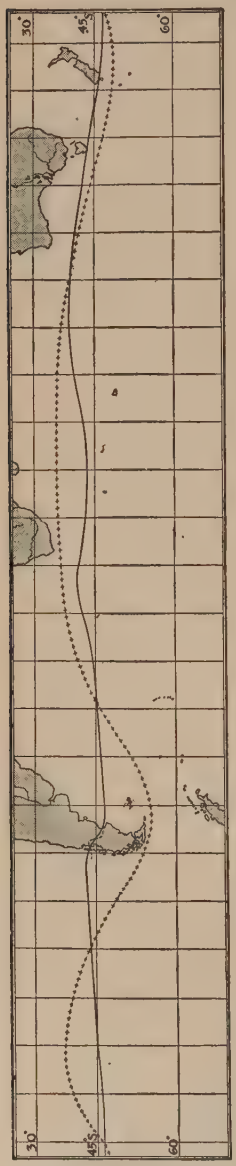


Fig. 582. Map of South Temperate Zone, showing land and water areas. Poleward limit of permanent habitations +++++. Isotherm of 50° for warmest month ——. Poleward limit of cereals, about latitude 45° in South America.

The total land area of the south intermediate zone is only about 4,000,000 square miles (Fig. 582), and the area of ocean about twelve times as great. Much of this zone, therefore, has a marine climate. Nearly half of all land is in the north intermediate zone, and the area of land there (26,000,000 square miles) is about equal to that of water (Fig. 583). In North America, all the United States except northern Alaska, most of Canada, and part of Mexico, are in this zone. So also are nearly all of Europe, most of Asia, and part of northern Africa. Because of the greater expanse of land, continental climates are more prevalent in the northern than in the southern hemisphere. Only in certain broad features are the climates of the northern and southern intermediate zones similar.

General Characteristics

Variability. There are several types of climate in these zones, and their differences are perhaps as striking as their likenesses. Variability is the distinguishing feature of most of them. They vary in (1) temperature, (2) direction and velocity of wind, and (3) amount and distribution of rainfall. In general, the variability is less in the southern hemisphere than in the northern.

Sun influence. The fundamental cause of variability in these zones, as contrasted with the relative uniformity of tropical climates, is the great variation in (1) the altitude of the sun during the year, and (2) the length of day and of night. The sun never is overhead at any place in these zones, and during at least a part of the year it is many degrees from the zenith at noon (pp. 425 and 458). There are, accordingly, great differences in the amount of heat received at different times, and the year is divided into seasons which vary much in temperature.

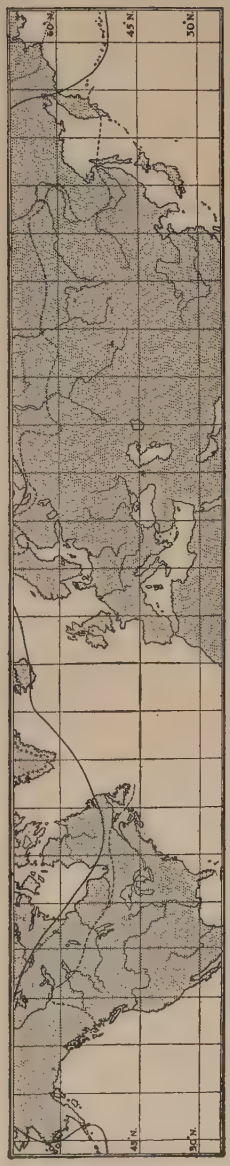


Fig. 583. Map of North Temperate Zone, showing land and water areas. Poleward limit of cereals ..... Poleward limit of permanent habitations +++++ (in Greenland). Isotherm of 50° for warmest month ——.

Winds. The prevailing (westerly) winds of these zones are much less regular in direction and velocity than the trade-winds of the tropical zone, and they are interrupted much by cyclonic storms, which vary in frequency and strength.

Temperature ranges. The factors noted above lead to great variations of temperature from day to day, from season to season, and from place to place. The great and sudden variations of temperature make the term *temperate* singularly inappropriate for these zones. The weather at least is often most intemperate. In contrast with the conditions in the tropical zone (p. 589), observations through many years are necessary to get a correct idea of the climate. The yearly range of temperature in most places is far greater than the daily range.

In the same latitude, conditions vary widely from place to place, both with respect to variation of temperature and the time of greatest heat and cold. Inland, the highest and lowest temperatures of the

year generally occur about a month after the highest and lowest noon-altitudes of the sun, and the temperatures of the warmest and coldest months may be 50° F. apart, even in middle latitudes (as Chicago). Spring and autumn are much alike in temperature. Near the sea, the highest and lowest temperatures are about two months after the solstices, while spring is cooler than autumn. In many places the maximum temperatures in summer exceed those of some tropical stations, and the lowest temperatures of winter approach polar cold. Weather and climate are therefore very unlike, in the matter of temperature. The average annual range, however, is as low as 20° in some places, even in comparatively high latitudes. Hence, in this zone, latitude is not a sure index of climate.

North intermediate zone. The great expanses of land lead to marked contrasts in temperature between the two margins of this zone, within which some of the highest as well as some of the lowest known temperatures occur. The mean annual range varies from as little as 16° in southern California (San Diego, near the sea), to as much as 81° in northwestern Canada.

Near the tropical margin of this zone, summers and winters are not extreme, and springs and autumns are long. Toward its poleward margin, on the other hand, the differences between summer and winter are great, and the transition seasons are relatively short. Hence the length of the growing season for plants differs greatly in different parts of the zone, with important effects on life.

The variations of temperature are accompanied by variations in rainfall. There are two general types of seasonal rainfall in the temperate zones, the *marine* or *winter type*, and the *continental* or summer type. In general, windward coasts and islands have the former, while interiors and leeward coasts have the latter.

South temperate zone. The limited extent of land in the south temperate zone gives it a climate far less variable than that of the corresponding northern zone.

Types of Climate

The chief types of climate in the intermediate zones of both hemispheres are determined by (1) the distribution of land and water, (2) winds, and (3) altitude. With insolation, these factors control both temperature and rainfall. The following important types of climate are recognized: (1) The *sub-tropical type* of *windward coats in low latitudes;* (2) the type prevailing on *windward*

coasts in high latitudes (above 40°); (3) the type in *continental interiors*, a type which varies much, especially in amount of rainfall; and finally, (4) the modifications, particularly of (3), brought about by altitude.

1. Windward Coasts in Low (Below 40°) Latitudes

Character and distribution. The chief features of the sub-tropical type of climate are moderate temperatures, with small annual and large diurnal ranges. In these respects it resembles the climate of the tropics. The rainfall is rather light in most places (Fig. 533), and is greatest in winter. The summers are dry. This climate is typically sunny, with a maximum of cloudiness in winter.

Some parts of coasts affected by this type of climate are affected alternately by the trade-winds, the tropical belts of high pressure, and the westerly winds. The type is developed best on islands and on the western (windward) coasts of continents between the parallels of about 25° and 40°, and is widespread about the Mediterranean Sea, extending from Spain on the west through Italy and the southern part of the Balkan Peninsula into western Asia, and over the northern part of Africa. The wide extent of the sub-tropical climate about the Mediterranean has led to the name "Mediterranean climate." In North America, this type of climate is almost confined to the coastal part of California, south of San Francisco. The climate of southern California may be taken to illustrate the type.

Southern California. The southward migration of the wind systems in winter brings southern California under the influence of westerly winds. The northward migration of the wind systems in summer brings it under the influence successively of (1) greatly weakened westerlies, (2) the tropical high pressure belt, and (3) the northern margin of the trade-winds.

Temperatures. The latitude is high enough to prevent a long continuation of temperatures as high as those of the tropics, and nearness to the sea prevents the seasonal extremes characteristic of other parts of the intermediate zones. Freezing temperatures are rare in low altitudes, and daily ranges of temperature often are greater than average yearly ranges. On the whole, the temperature of southern California is much like that of tropical lands at moderate altitudes.

In some ways the sub-tropical type of climate is the best in the world, and is described frequently as being like "perpetual spring." It is healthful, as shown by the popularity of southern California, where Pasadena, Riverside, San Diego, and other cities duplicate, on a small scale, the noted resorts in the Riviera of southern France and northern Italy. The sunny skies (68 per cent for San Diego) help greatly to make these places popular, especially in winter. The dry season (summer) may be disagreeable because of (1) the heat, (2) the drying up of vegetation, and (3) fogs and dust. Locally, fogs are so prevalent in the dry season, that there is least sunshine at that time.

The lowest temperature recorded at San Diego is 32° F., and the highest 101°. Such variations are characteristic of tropical lands where the *average* annual range is not more than 15° to 20°. Interior stations show greater average ranges and more marked extremes, because farther from the sea. Their mean maxima are higher, their mean minima are lower, and the frequency of both high and low temperatures is much greater.

Rainfall. As in most similar localities (Fig. 584) the precipitation in southern California is rather low, and there is a marked winter maximum. The summers are almost rainless for a period which varies considerably from place to place. The interior valley of California is dry at all times, because, even during the rainy season, the coast ranges take the moisture out of the winds from the ocean. The dryness increases the daily range of temperature in the valley.

Plant life. During the dry season, most vegetation dries up, unless irrigated. Where water is available, the favorable temperatures lead to extensive irrigation, as in southern California and in the favored parts of southern Europe, western Asia, and northern Africa. Many of the crops of these latitudes, however, are grown during the rainy season, and harvested in late spring or early summer.

2. Windward Coasts in Latitudes above 40°; Marine Climate

Location. The marine type of climate in this zone is controlled by prevailing westerly winds, blowing from ocean to land. The climate is cool, damp, and rainy. The transition from the sub-tropical type of climate of lower latitudes is gradual, and in some ways the two types are not very unlike.

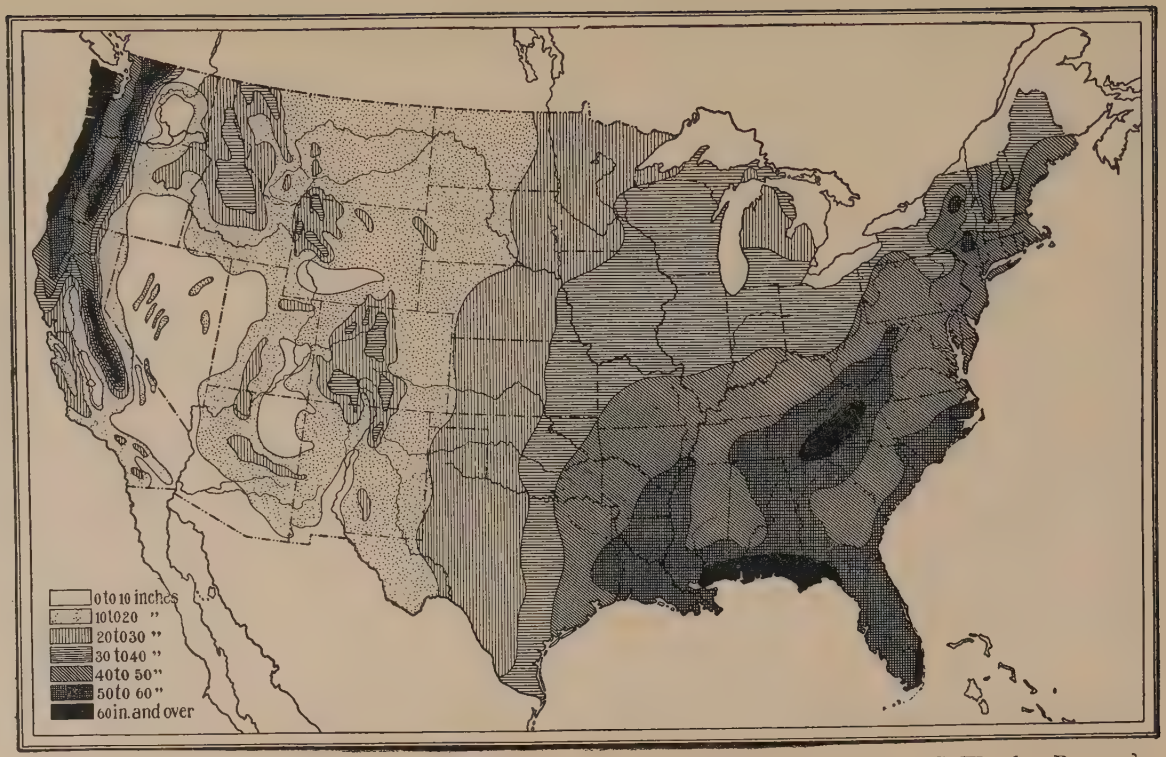


FIG. 584. Mean annual rainfall in the United States. (After Gannett, from data of U. S. Weather Bureau.)

In the western hemisphere, this type of climate is developed best (1) in Chile, south of latitude 40°, and (2) along the coast from San Francisco to the Arctic Circle. It is modified greatly east of the low coast ranges.

In the eastern hemisphere, neither Africa nor Australia extends into latitudes high enough for this type of climate; but it affects parts of Tasmania and most of New Zealand. It affects the coast of Europe from France to the Arctic Circle, and extends far inland because there is no continuous north and south mountain range to take the moisture from the westerly winds. The change from marine conditions near the coast of Europe, to continental conditions far from the coast, is very gradual. From the coast, the annual rainfall gradually decreases eastward, the winter maximum gives place to spring and summer maxima, and the ranges and extremes of temperature become more marked. The tempering effect of westerly winds on the climate of western Europe is increased by the relatively high temperature of the central and eastern parts of the North Atlantic Ocean.

Temperatures. Variations of temperature are less than in the same latitudes elsewhere. Thus the average yearly range of temperature at Sitka, Alaska, Lat. 57°, is only 25°, hardly more than that in some parts of the tropics, and at Thorshaven, in the Faroe Islands, Lat. 62°, the range is only 14.2°. In this respect, this type of climate resembles the sub-tropical type, though the actual temperatures are lower. This is the most *temperate* climate of the intermediate zone.

Regions having a marine climate have mild winters and cool summers, and their average yearly temperatures are higher than those of other regions in the same latitude. Ireland, which represents perhaps the extreme case, is 30° or 40° warmer (annual average) than normal for its latitude, 55° N.

Rainfall and humidity. Places freely exposed to westerly winds get much rain in winter, when the land is cooler than the sea. In summer, low lands are warmer than the ocean and receive little rain, though the dry season is much shorter than in lower latitudes. Mountainous western coasts in the intermediate zone have abundant rainfall, high humidity, and much cloudiness all the year. In some places fogs occur almost daily, and in extreme cases, as along the coast of Alaska, they may last for weeks at a time. Evaporation is extremely low. Though the maximum

precipitation is in winter, little of it is in the form of snow, except at high altitudes. Marine climate favors the growth of heavy forests. Good examples are found in northwestern United States.

3. Continental Climates

Regions affected. This type of climate, as its name implies, is found inland from windward coasts, but not at any fixed distance. We have seen that the marine climate extends far from the western coast of Europe because there are no high mountains near the coast, and but a short distance from the west coast of the Americas, because there are high mountains near.

In the south temperate zone, the continental climate is found only in southern Argentina. North America and Eurasia, on the other hand, are broad in rather high latitudes (Fig. 583), and so have continental climates over wide areas. In North America, there is a sharp contrast between the marine climate of the western coast, and the continental climate east of the westernmost high mountains. The continental climate affects most of the United States and Canada. In Eurasia, because of conditions already noted, the marine climate of western Europe grades into the continental climate which affects the Russian Empire and the lands east of it.

Temperatures. One of the chief characteristics of the continental climate is *extremes of temperature.* These extremes are due largely to the fact that land absorbs and radiates heat much more readily than water. *Winters* are cold, the cold increasing (1) with the latitude, and (2) with increasing distance from the sea to windward. In latitude 45°, in North America, the lowest temperatures are about −30° F., and near the northern limit of the zone they reach −60° or even less. A great area in northeastern Asia, far from the ocean to windward, has extremely low temperatures in winter. In the United States, the temperature never falls to −40°, except in the extreme northern part and in high mountains, and there but rarely; but, except in the Gulf region, there is no large area east of the Pacific coast where temperatures 10° to 20° below freezing do not occur every year.

Summers are hot. July averages of 60° are found even beyond the northern margin of the zone, and maximum temperatures of 80° to 90° are found close to the Arctic Circle. In the southern part of the zone, the summer temperatures are tropical.

The annual ranges of temperature are very great, especially in the northern part of the north intermediate zone. In northwestern Canada, the difference between the lowest and the highest temperatures of the year has been known to reach 150° F., and in northeastern Asia, 180°. In lower latitudes, extremes are not so great, the winters are milder, and the summers are not correspondingly warmer, though they are longer. In our southern states only small areas ever have temperatures above 100°, and in most parts of the zone the mean maximum temperatures are less than 90°, or no higher than those occasionally recorded near the Arctic Circle.

Cyclonic influence. A second important feature of continental climate is the variability of weather from day to day. Cyclones and anticyclones interrupt the prevailing westerly winds frequently; hence there is repeated change from clear, cool (in summer) or cold (in winter), dry days, to cloudy, hot (in summer) or warm (in winter), damp ones. Because of the frequent storms, the winds may, in the course of a day or two, blow from all points of the compass, and each wind tends to bring its own distinctive weather conditions. The northerly winds of anticyclones in winter carry freezing temperatures almost to the southern margin of the zone. Southerly winds, on the other hand, carry warm air to comparatively high latitudes, and temporarily may cause a summer-like temperature in mid-winter, even as far north as New York and Chicago.

Rainfall. A third important element of continental climate is its rainfall, which is very variable, but as a rule either moderate or scanty (Figs. 533 and 584). In few areas is it more than 40 inches a year, and most of it comes during spring and summer. The fact that most rain falls when temperatures are favorable for plant growth, is important.

Eurasia illustrates the effect on rainfall of distance from the windward coast. The western slopes of the British Islands have 80 or more inches of rain yearly; Germany and western Russia have 20 to 30 inches; eastern Russia and western Siberia, between 15 and 20 inches; while large areas of central and eastern Siberia have less than 10 inches.

Arid and humid interiors. On the basis of rainfall, there are two principal subdivisions of continental climate, the one *humid*, and the other *arid*. These types merge into each other in a belt where the climate is *semi-arid*. Forests are characteristic of

the humid climate, but they give place to grass lands where the climate is semi-arid, and to deserts where the rainfall is very slight. In a general way, moisture decreases with increasing distance from the ocean to windward; but topography and cyclonic storms modify this general relation. Altitude also is an important factor in continental climate, especially in arid regions, because highlands increase precipitation.

With but slight modification, the continental climates extend eastward to the oceans. Ranges of temperature are somewhat less near the eastern seaboard, and the rainfall is somewhat greater (Fig. 533).

Continental Climates in the United States

The interior of our country may be divided into (1) the *arid* region (Fig. 584), chiefly between the Sierra Nevada and Cascade mountains on the west and the Rocky Mountains on the east; (2) the *semi-arid* region between the Rocky Mountains and longitude 98° to 100°; and (3) the *humid* region, lying farther east. All these regions have extremes of heat and cold. They also have great changes of temperature and humidity from day to day as a result of passing cyclones and anticyclones. The difference in the amount of rainfall makes the conditions of life very different in the three regions.

(1) **The arid region.** The western margin of the arid region is near the western coast, because the high mountains (Sierras and Cascades) stop much moisture which otherwise would be carried inland by the westerly winds. The average annual rainfall in the arid belt is less than 15 inches, and over large areas, less than 10 inches (Fig. 533). Sunshine prevails throughout the year, relative humidity is low, and evaporation high. The nights commonly are cool, even when the days are hot. The heat of summer is great, but the humidity is so low that the sensible temperatures are not very high. So far as comfort is concerned, the temperature of the arid region is agreeable.

(2) **The semi-arid region.** In the semi-arid region (Fig. 584), the yearly rainfall is between 15 and 20 inches, most of which falls in spring and summer. High mountains are absent, so that there is little increase of precipitation as the result of altitude, and forests are generally absent. The region is sunny, and the temperatures are high in summer and low in winter. The sensible effects

of the extremes, however, are moderated by the dryness of the air. The daily range of temperature is great. The open character of the country favors free circulation of the atmosphere, and fairly constant winds of moderate to high velocity are characteristic of most of the region.

(3) **The humid region.** The semi-arid region merges gradually into the humid region farther east (Fig. 584). The temperatures of the two regions are not unlike, but in the humid region cloudiness and humidity are greater, and evaporation less; hence sensible temperatures are higher in summer and lower in winter. The precipitation rarely is so low as 20 inches a year, and most of it comes in summer. The amount of rain necessary for crops without irrigation varies with the latitude. More is needed in Oklahoma than in Dakota, because the higher temperature of the former causes greater evaporation. In the western part of this region, trees grow in the river bottoms; farther east, they become more abundant, and forests are found (or once were) over large areas. Throughout the humid region there is rain enough for cultivated crops, except in abnormally dry years.

Lands near the eastern coasts in nearly all latitudes of this zone feel the beneficial effects of the sea-breeze (p. 487). In the higher latitudes, the ocean affects the temperature of coastal lands chiefly by lowering the temperature in summer, because of frequent winds (sea-breezes and cyclonic winds) from the east. The July mean for Labrador, for example, is 13° or 14° lower than that at the northern end of Lake Winnipeg.

The same factors which lower the temperature and increase the rainfall along our eastern coast, increase cloudiness and fog. Places exposed freely to the sea (like Newfoundland) have conditions of humidity, cloudiness, and fog similar to those of marine climates on western coasts. Along the immediate coast, therefore, the continental climate is somewhat modified, but the effects of the sea to the east do not extend far inland.

The whole humid section in the interior of this country is exposed to sudden frost in late spring and early autumn, and in either case widespread damage to crops may result. Its southwestern part is exposed to hot winds from the south which, in exceptional cases, wither and kill vegetation. Droughts are common, though less frequent and less widespread than in monsoon countries. Almost every year some part of the humid portion of

the United States suffers from too little rain; but severe drought rarely affects a great area, or the same area frequently. In monsoon countries like India, on the other hand, a large area suffers from drought at the same time, and the same area may suffer year after year. In spite of its extremes of climate, central and eastern United States is a highly favored agricultural region, largely because of its reliable rainfall. Climatically, it has the best position of any large country.

4. Mountain Climates

Temperature. The effect of altitude on temperature is illustrated by the fact that in the plateau sections of Pennsylvania, in latitude 40° to 42°, corn cannot be depended on to ripen at an altitude of 2,000 feet. In some of the drier, hence warmer (in summer) and sunnier, parts of the arid West, corn, under irrigation, will ripen at much higher altitudes (4,000 feet about Great Salt Lake). The *timber-line* (upper limit of timber) in the United States ranges from an altitude of about 11,000 feet at the south, to 7,000 or 8,000 at the north, and the level at which snow lies most of the time is not far above these limits. So far as agriculture is concerned, the higher lands of the temperate zone are of little use.

Precipitation. The effect of altitude on rainfall is the same in the temperate zone as elsewhere. It increases the amount of precipitation, and the proportion of it which falls as snow. Thus Baltimore, at an altitude of about 100 feet, has an average of about 24 inches of snow annually, while Grantsville, Md., altitude 3,400 feet, has 71 inches. Summit, the top of the pass (7,017 feet) crossed by the Southern Pacific railroad east of Sacramento, Cal., has an average snowfall of 433 inches a year, while Sacramento, on low land to the west, has only a trace of snow each year.

Winter snowfall is an important factor in the flow of many rivers. Disastrous winter and spring floods are the result in some cases (p. 166), and in others the supply of water from melting snow is an important aid in (1) the development of water power, (2) the maintenance of a sufficient depth of water for navigation, and (3) irrigation. Heavy winter snows and snowslides offer serious problems to railroad lines which run at high levels, and at the bases of mountains. Snowslides are one of the things to be feared about mines in mountains, and mountain villages have been destroyed by them.

Mountain conditions of temperature and rainfall favor forests, which thrive far above the altitudes which limit crops. Even in arid regions, some areas 5,000 to 6,000 feet high have rain enough to support forests of commercial value.

Climate of Polar Regions

General Considerations

Extent of polar regions. The limits of the polar regions are commonly placed at the Arctic and Antarctic circles (Fig. 585); but they are sometimes regarded as being limited equatorward by the isotherm of 50° for the warmest month, an isotherm which marks the approximate limit of the growth of trees and cereals

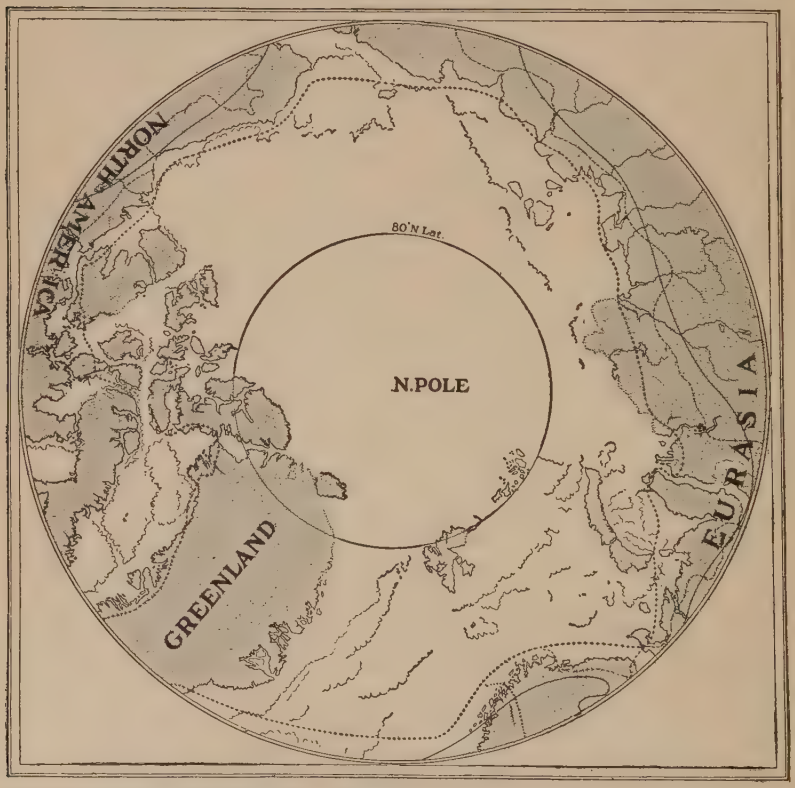


Fig. 585. Map of North Polar Zone, showing land and water areas. Poleward limit of growth of cereals ..... Poleward limit of growth of forest trees ------- Poleward limit of permanent habitations +++++ Isotherm of 50° for warmest month.

(Fig. 578). Defined by latitude, the area of the polar regions is about one-twelfth that of the earth.

General features of polar climate. All polar regions are alike in having the sun above the horizon for more than twenty-four consecutive hours, and below the horizon for a similar period, once each year. Near the margins of these zones, the longest period of uninterrupted sunlight is only a few days (of 24 hours each); but the time during which the sun does not set increases poleward, and at the poles the day (period of continuous light) is six months long (p. 461). During the period of continuous light, insolation is greater in polar regions than in low latitudes (p. 449), but the temperature of the air is not raised accordingly, because much of the heat which reaches the surface from the sun melts ice and snow, and is not effective in warming the air. The result is a low temperature for the year, and, except for lands free from snow and ice, a low temperature at all times of the year.

Temperature. Many of the recorded temperatures of January in the Arctic region range from −40° to −60° F. Maximum summer temperatures near the margin of the zone are locally as high as 80°, or even 90°; but such temperatures occur only where there are large areas of land free from snow and ice. Most of the Antarctic region has a summer temperature below the freezing point even during the warmest month, so far as present records show.

The annual range of temperature in the Arctic region is greater than that in the Antarctic, because more land in the former is without snow and ice in summer. Verhoyansk, in Siberia, just within the Arctic Circle (Lat. 67° 6′), has a July mean of +60° and a January mean of −60°. In contrast, Hammerfest (Lat. 70° 40′), on the coast of Norway, and the most northerly town in Europe, has a January mean of 23°, and a July mean of 53°. Hammerfest shows the full effect of the ocean on the temperature of windward coasts in high latitudes.

Humidity and precipitation. The low temperature affects the other elements of climate. It means little evaporation, and hence little moisture in the air. The relative humidity varies from extremely low, especially far from the sea to windward, to relatively high, particularly on windward coasts. The precipitation is light, probably averaging less than 15 inches a year except on windward coasts.

The Shackleton expedition to Antarctica found, from recording instruments left by a preceding expedition, that the average precipitation for six years had been the equivalent of 7 to 8 inches of rain. Most of the precipitation in polar regions is snow, which frequently is accompanied by violent winds. Rain is said to fall in the low altitudes of most parts of the north polar region during the warmer months, while at high altitudes, snow falls. In the south polar region the Shackleton expedition found all precipitation during 13 months to be in the form of snow.

The great fields of snow and ice in the polar regions are not due to heavy snowfall, but to the preservation of most of that which falls. In summer, fogs are common.

Changes of Climate

Within historic time.[1] There appears to be little basis for the popular notion, current especially among elderly people, that the climate has changed noticeably within the memory of living men. There seems to be a natural disposition to exaggerate the striking features of notable seasons, especially of the long ago. Thus winters of heavy snow or of intense cold come to be the only winters which are remembered distinctly. Exceptional winters come to stand for normal winters. Another reason for the notion that climate is changing appears, in many cases, to be that those who entertain this view have changed their place of residence, so that the comparison is unconsciously made between the climate of New York, for example, and that of Iowa, climates which are somewhat different. Actual records of climate, covering as much as a century for some parts of our country, do not afford much basis for the conclusion that the climate is changing materially.

Fluctuations of rainfall, temperature, etc., do occur in relatively short cycles. There seems to be a faintly marked weather cycle of about eleven years, corresponding to the sun-spot cycle; but it is not clear that one such cycle is especially different from another. Hann says that the only thing which can be considered as proved is that there are traces of a parallelism in the march of certain meteorological elements and that of the sun-spot period.[2]

[1] Huntington, Monthly Weather Review XXXVI (1908), pp. 359 and 446, and Pulse of Asia.

[2] Hann, Handbook of Climatology.

A longer cycle of 35 or 36 years is suggested for Europe, where records have been kept longer than in our own country. This conclusion is based on the weather data of more than two centuries. Within the 35–36 year cycle, there may be said to be two focal periods of a few years each, one when the rainfall is above and the temperature below the average, and the other when the rainfall is below and the temperature above. These two focal periods are not, however, symmetrically placed in the cycle. Thus the period of minimum rainfall may occur five years after the period of maximum rainfall, or it may occur thirty years after it. In view of this great irregularity, it may be doubted whether the cycle is to be regarded as based on laws which are universally applicable.

The focal periods, as set forth by Brückner, are as follows:

Wet and cool.	Interval between.	Dry and warm.	Interval between.
1671–1675		1681–1685	
	25		45
1696–1700		1726–1730	
	45		30
1741–1745		1756–1760	
	25		30
1766–1770		1786–1790	
	50		37
1816–1820		1820–1830	
	35		38
1851–1855		1861–1865	

The reader may judge for himself as to the adequacy of the basis of the thirty-five-year period. It has been suggested that there are cycles of longer period — cycles of a hundred or more years; but present data hardly warrant confident conclusions on this point.

Variations of climate reflect themselves in the movements of the glaciers. This has been observed especially in connection with the glaciers of the Alps. The glaciers advance *after* (commonly some years after) the periods of maximum precipitation and minimum temperature, and retreat after the opposite conditions are most pronounced.

Certain historic facts have been interpreted to indicate changes of climate in some regions since the beginning of the historic period. Thus regions once populous are now too arid to support an abun-

dant population. This is the case in southwestern Asia and northern Africa, where there are ruins of aqueducts and irrigating canals in places where there is now no adequate source of water. In places in Asia, lakes without outlets have been lowered notably in recent times, and traditions, and perhaps in some cases records, tell of their former greater height. If these traditions of greater height can be relied on, such lakes would seem to indicate increasing aridity since men have lived. Some facts of similar import are drawn from South America.

In geologic time. Going still further back, there is abundant evidence of profound changes of climate in the course of the earth's history. There have been several periods, widely separated in time, when glaciation took place where glaciers do not now exist. During one of these periods of cold there were extensive glaciers in low latitudes, even in regions which now have tropical and subtropical climates (South India, Australia, South Africa). The first of these periods of exceptional cold made its appearance early in the earth's history (one at the beginning of the Paleozoic era, and one perhaps much earlier), and the last (the late glacial period) has but just passed.

Warm climates, on the other hand, have persisted for long periods in polar regions, even down to relatively recent times. Thus Greenland enjoyed a warm climate not long (geologically) before the development of its present ice-sheet. The data now known seem to indicate that the climate of the present time is cooler than that which has existed throughout the larger part of the earth's history.

Repeated changes in humidity seem to be as clearly indicated as changes in temperature. Arid climates have existed at various periods of the earth's history, in regions which have moist climates at the present time (e.g., New York and Ohio), and moist climates have been enjoyed by regions which are now essentially desert (e.g., Arizona). The aridity in the one case is indicated by salt and gypsum deposits, and the humidity in the other by conclusive evidence of luxuriant plant life in regions which are now desert.

In some cases the causes of these changes were doubtless local, and due to changes in topography; but in others this explanation is not applicable. It seems clear, therefore, that causes have long been in operation which bring about variations both in temperature and humidity. These causes have been thought to be (1)

geographic, and due to the changes in the relations of land and water, or to changes in the topography of the land; (2) *astronomic*, due to changes in the shape of the earth's orbit, the precession of the equinoxes, etc.; and (3) *atmospheric*, due to changes in the constitution of the atmosphere. Still other causes have been conjectured. As the facts concerning these changes accumulate, they seem to be pointing to the third of these lines of explanation as the most plausible. It cannot be said, however, that final conclusions have been reached.[1]

[1]On this point see Chamerlin and Salisbury's Earth History. Schuchert, Carnegie Institution, Publication 192, 1914.

PART IV

THE OCEAN

CHAPTER XX

GENERAL FACTS

The ocean occupies the great depressions in the surface of the lithosphere (p. 5). The area of the depressed segments is about twice as great as that of the elevated segments. The water more than fills them, and spreads out over some 10,000,000 square miles of the continental platforms. The result is that the ocean water covers nearly three-fourths (about $\frac{72}{100}$) of the surface. All the oceans are connected at the surface, and are therefore in some sense one, though different names are applied to different parts; but the ocean basins proper are measurably distinct.

Although the depressions in which most of the ocean water lies are called *basins*, they have little resemblance to the homely vessel which this name suggests. This is readily seen by the construction of a diagram. An arc three feet long, with a radius of about four feet, represents approximately the eighth of a circle. If such a curve be drawn on the blackboard, it may be taken to represent the width of the Atlantic Ocean between the United States and Europe. If the top of the chalk-line be taken to represent the surface of the ocean, another line representing the bottom of the ocean could not readily be drawn below it with an ordinary crayon, without exaggerating the depth of the water.

Fig. 586 may help to give us some conception of the real shape of an ocean basin. It is, in general, convex upward, but locally, especially where it joins the continental platforms, it is concave upward. Fig. 587 shows the belts where the bottom is concave upward. These belts are 100 to 300 miles in width.

The sea-level. The surface of the sea is in sharp contrast with that of the land, in that the former seems to be level. We are accustomed to speak of it as if it were free from all uneven-

nesses, and it is the datum plane from which elevations on land are measured. It is, therefore, of importance to understand what the sea-level really is.

In the first place, it is a curved surface, and its curvature is approximately that of an oblate and slightly imperfect spheroid (p. 410). But its surface corresponds only approximately to that of a spheroid, for the land-masses which rise above the ocean basins, and which culminate in mountains, attract the waters of the sea to themselves, and so act somewhat against the principal attraction of gravitation, which tends to draw all objects toward the center of the earth. The Andes Mountains, for example, rise far above the sea close at hand, and the water adjacent to them is pulled up somewhat above the normal spheroid level by their attractive force. It has been estimated that the sea-water at the mouth of the Indus on the coast of India is considerably higher (that is, farther from the center of the earth) than that about the island of Ceylon at the southern end of the peninsula. This distortion of sea-level is due to the attraction of the Himalaya Mountains and the adjacent high lands. All land-masses act in the same way, and the distortion is greater the greater the mass of land above sea-level close to the shore.

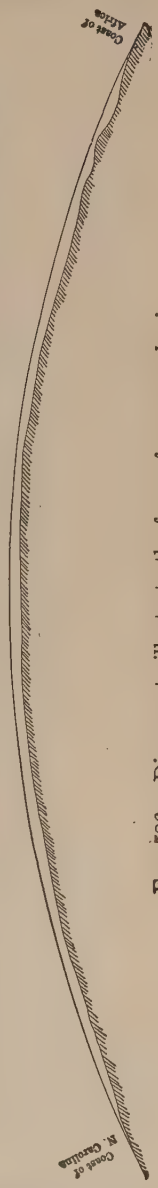


Fig. 586.—Diagram to illustrate the form of an ocean basin.

The sea-level, therefore, does not correspond exactly with the curvature of a spheroid. Furthermore, the heights and masses of mountains vary from age to age, so that their distorting effects vary somewhat in long periods of time. If it is desired to record the elevation of a place, for example in California, in a way which will be permanently accurate, it should be recorded not only that it is, say 500 feet above sea-level, but that it was 500 feet above sea-level in latitude 40° on the coast of California on January 1, 1900.

Apart from the more or less permanent distortions of the surface of the sea, due to the attraction of land-masses, there are

temporary and slight inequalities of level, which will be considered later.

What the physical geography of the sea includes. The physical geography of the sea includes many things. Among them are (1) the distribution of its waters, (2) its depth at all points, (3) the topography of its bottom, (4) the composition of the water, (5) its color, (6) its temperature at the surface and beneath it, (7) its movements, (8) its life, and (9) the material of its bottom.

Fig. 587.—The course of H. M. S. Challenger, shown by broken line on oceanic areas.

The physical geography of the sea has become known, so far as it is now known, in various ways. The distribution of its waters has been made clear by outlining the areas of the land. The character of its waters is determined by chemical analysis. The movements of its waters are studied in various ways. Some of them, such as waves, may be studied from the shore; others, such as the currents, are less readily observed, but have become known, so far as they are known, (1) by their effects in changing the courses of sailing-vessels, (2) by observations on the course of objects floating in the water, (3) by their effects on temperature, and in various other ways.

Most of our knowledge concerning the depth of the ocean, its temperature, its life, the material and the topography of its bottom, and much concerning its movements, has been gained

through expeditions which have been sent out from time to time to study these matters. The expeditions have been fitted out by governments in some cases, by societies in others, and by individuals in still others. The expedition which was carried out on the most elaborate scale was that of the Challenger, 1872–6, under the auspices of the British Government. This vessel made extended explorations in the Atlantic, the Pacific, and the Southern oceans (Fig. 587). The results of the observations made during the voyage of the Challenger, and inferences from them, have been published in a great series of large volumes which give us our most detailed knowledge of the sea.

Numerous lesser expeditions have made less voluminous but still valuable contributions to our knowledge of the ocean. Here may be mentioned the work of the U. S. S. Mercury (Barbadoes to Sierra Leone, 1871), H. M. S. Lightning and H. M. S. Porcupine (Faroe Islands to the Mediterranean, 1868–70), the German frigate Gazelle (1874–6), and the U. S. Coast and Geodetic Survey steamer Blake (Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean Sea, east coast of the United States, 1877–80), and the work of the Coast and Geodetic Survey on the Gulf Stream (1845–59.)

The expeditions of Peary, Nansen, and Stefansson into the Arctic region, and the expeditions of recent years into the Antarctic regions have given us much information concerning the waters of high latitudes. Some indication of the manner in which these expeditions do some of their work will appear in the following pages.

Distribution of the ocean waters. The ocean encircles the earth in latitude 60° S., and from this encircling sea three great bodies of water, the Atlantic, the Pacific, and the Indian oceans respectively, extend northward. In the high latitudes of the southern hemisphere lies Antarctica. It will be recalled that in the northern hemisphere the land makes an almost complete circuit in latitude 60° to 70°, whence it radiates southward in three (or two) great arms, and that north of the encircling land lies the Arctic Ocean. The waters south of latitude 40° S. often are called the Southern Ocean. The Arctic Ocean is about one-thirty-seventh of the sea area, the Indian Ocean about one-eighth, the Southern Ocean one-fourth, the Atlantic one-fifth, and the Pacific three-eighths.

The unequal distribution of land and water in the northern and southern hemispheres has an important influence on their climates, as already stated.

Depth. The average depth of the ocean is estimated to be about 2½ miles, or between 12,000 and 13,000 feet. The average depth of the Pacific is estimated at 2¾ miles; that of the Atlantic at 2½ miles; and that of the Indian and Southern oceans at 2¼ miles. The average depth of the Arctic Ocean is not known, but Nansen found a depth of more than 12,000 feet off the continental shelf of Eurasia. The greatest known depth of ocean water is nearly six miles. This depth slightly exceeds the height of the highest mountain above sea-level. There are numerous places where the depth of the ocean exceeds four miles, and the area of very deep water is very much greater than the area of very high land. The tracts which are notably below the average depth of the ocean are known as *deeps*.

The greatest known depth of water, 31,614 feet, is in the Pacific, near the Ladrone Islands. Another area of almost equal depth (30,930 feet) is in the Aldrich Deep northeast of New Zealand. A depth of nearly 28,000 feet is found in the Tuscarora deep east of Japan, and a depth of about 25,000 feet (nearly five miles) off the coast of Chile, in latitude 24° to 25° S.

None of these great depths is in the midst of the Pacific. Some of them are close to continental shores, and the others are in regions of abundant islands, in surroundings where the water is not very deep. Most of them are in the western part of the ocean. In all cases the slopes down to these great depths are steep, as submarine slopes go, and the deeps have a pronounced tendency to elongation parallel to the nearest coasts or to adjacent submarine ridges, or to ridges the crests of which rise into islands.

The only area in the Atlantic where comparable depths are known is north of Porto Rico in the Blake Deep (lat. 20° N., long. 65° to 68°), where a maximum depth of 27,366 feet has been measured. This deep, too, is elongate, has steep slopes, and is parallel to the great ridge of which Porto Rico is a part, and near which it lies. In few other places in the Atlantic is the depth so much as 20,000 feet.

The Indian Ocean is not known to have depths much exceeding 20,000 feet, and the deepest known place in the Southern Ocean is still less.

The depth of the ocean is known by soundings. Soundings are made from ships by reeling out a heavy metallic weight attached

to a fine steel wire. (Why not a rope?) The weight is so fastened to the line as to be detached when it reaches the bottom (Fig. 588) because it is much simpler to leave it than to draw it up again. A sounding of 3000 fathoms may be made in about an hour.

There is a more or less wide-spread notion that the deeper waters of the sea are so dense that weights will not sink readily, and that deep-sea sounding is attended with difficulty on this account. This is incorrect, for water is but slightly compressible. The water in the deepest part of the ocean is but little heavier (probably not a twentieth), volume for volume, than that at the surface. There are difficulties connected with deep soundings, but they are not due to the great density of the deep water.

FIG. 588.— The sounding-line. (Challenger Report.)

Volume. The average depth and the area of the oceans being known, the volume of water which they contain may be calculated. It is found to be nearly fifteen times the volume of land above sea level. If all the material of the land were carried to the sea and deposited in its basin, it would raise the level of the water about 650 feet. If the surface of the lithosphere were brought to a common level by planing down the higher parts and building up the lower, the ocean water would cover the whole of the earth to a depth of about 9000 feet, or nearly two miles.

Mass. The mass (weight) of the sea is only about five times the mass of the land above the sea, since water is much lighter than an equal volume of rock. The mass of the sea is about 265 times the mass of the air which surrounds it, and about $\frac{1}{4500}$ of the mass of the solid part of the earth.

Topography of the bottom. The larger part of the sea bottom is so nearly flat that if the water were removed the eye would scarcely detect its departure from planeness. Its topography is therefore very different from that of the land. The agent which does most to roughen the surface of the land is running water, and rivers do not flow on the bottom of the sea. The most notable difference between the topography of the sea bottom and that of the land is due to their absence.

In spite of the prevailing flatness of the sea bottom, its relief is not less than that of the land. Its irregularities of bottom are of several types. These are (1) *volcanic cones*, some of them built up from the bottom of the deep sea to the surface of the water, and even far above it (Chap. VII); (2) *relatively steep slopes or scarps*, such as those at the junction of the continental platforms with the deep sea basins, and such as those about some of the pronounced deeps; (3) *valley-like depressions*, found especially in the shallow waters about the borders of the continents; (4) pronounced *swells* comparable to the mountain ridges of the land; and (5) *broad, plateau-like areas* rising notably above their surroundings, over which the water is relatively shallow.

1. Volcanic cones are wide-spread, but are more numerous in the Pacific Ocean than elsewhere, and more numerous in its deeper western part than in its shallower eastern part. Though such cones seem to rise abruptly, their slopes are really much less steep than they seem. The summits of volcanic islands rarely have a slope of more than 30°, and their lower parts rarely more than 6° to 10°. Below the sea the slope is still gentler, rarely more than 3°, or 1 mile in 20. Figs. 589, 590, and 591 show slopes corresponding to 1 mile in 5, 1 in 10, and 1 in 20.

Fig. 589.—Diagram illustrating a slope corresponding to 1:5.

Fig. 590.—Diagram illustrating a slope corresponding to 1:10.

Fig. 591.—Diagram illustrating a slope corresponding to 1:20.

2. Though the slopes of the bottom at the edges of the continental shelves and about the deeps are steep, as slopes in the ocean bottom go, they are much less steep than many slopes on the land. A slope of 1 mile in 8 is rare, and a slope of 1 mile in 20 (Fig. 591) can hardly be said to be common. The last would make a steep railway grade. Slopes of 1 in 60 are higher than the average steep slope at the edge of the continental shelves. Even up most of these "steep" slopes, therefore, railway trains could be run.

In rare instances, slopes which would be regarded as very steep, even on land, are found on the sea bottom. Thus in the Mediter-

ranean Sea, differences of 1500 feet are said to have been found between bow and stern soundings. Such slopes or scarps are doubtless the result of faulting (p. 352).

3. Many continental shelves are affected by valleys which have the general characteristics of river valleys. Many of them seem to be continuations of valleys now in existence on the land. Thus, the Hudson, the Delaware, the Susquehanna, the St. Lawrence, and many other considerable valleys have submerged continuations beneath the sea. The valley of the Hudson is continuous out to the edge of the continental shelf, where for 20 miles it becomes pronounced, with a maximum depth of 2400 feet below its surroundings, and 2844 feet below sea-level. Elsewhere it is shallow. The others are not so deep. The submerged continuations of the Deleware and the Susquehanna on the continental shelf are less than 100 feet below their surroundings, but those of the Hudson and the St. Lawrence, both of which extend out to the edge of the continental shelf, are much deeper.

Some of the submerged valleys off the Pacific coast of the United States, do not seem to be the continuations of existing land valleys. Some of them are hundreds of miles long and a thousand feet or more (maximum) deep. Such valleys commonly are believed to have been formed by rivers when the sea did not cover the areas where they are (p. 342).

4. Examples of mountain-like swells are furnished by Cuba and the adjacent islands, which are really the crests of a great mountain system rising from deep water.

5. The plateau type of elevation is exemplified by the *dolphin ridge* of the Atlantic. This broad, low "ridge" over which the water is less than 12,000 and in places as little as 5000 feet deep, traverses the Atlantic lengthwise, as far south as latitude 40° S., and divides its basin into two troughs, the one to the east and the other to the west, where the water is somewhat deeper. In the southern Pacific, many volcanic islands rise from submerged plateaus.

From the foregoing it will be seen that great irregularities are found on the sea bottom as on the land, but that the many minor unevennesses of the land, especially those developed by running water, wind, glaciers, etc., find no analogies on the ocean's bed, except in shallow water.

Composition of Sea-Water

The most distinctive characteristic of sea-water is its saltness; but besides common salt, it contains dissolved mineral matters of many other sorts. One hundred pounds of sea-water contain nearly 3½ (3.44) pounds of mineral matter. Of this mineral matter, common salt makes up more than three-fourths (77.76%). Other important mineral substances are magnesium chloride (10.88%), magnesium sulphate (4.74%), calcium sulphate (3.60%), potassium sulphate (2.465%), and calcium carbonate (.345%). Many other substances are present in very small quantities. These substances in the sea-water make it a little heavier than fresh water. If the weight of the latter is taken as 1, the weight of salt water is about 1.026.

A cubic mile of fresh water weighs about 4,205,650,000 tons of 2240 pounds each, while a cubic mile of normally salt water weighs 4,314,996,900 tons. The mineral matter in a cubic mile of sea-water weighs about 151,025,000 tons. This, it will be seen, exceeds the difference between the weight of a cubic mile of fresh water and a cubic mile of sea-water. If follows, therefore, that a cubic mile of sea-water does not weigh the same as a cubic mile of fresh water plus the weight of the salts in the former. When mineral matter is dissolved in water, it increases the volume of the water, but not by an amount equal to the volume of the mineral matter dissolved. If all the salts were taken out of the sea-water and removed from the ocean basins, the level of the sea would be drawn down more than 100 feet. If all the salts of the sea were taken out of solution and laid down as a layer of solid mineral matter on the ocean bottom, they would make a layer about 175 feet thick, and would raise the surface of the water (then without the salt) about 75 feet. If all the mineral matter in solution in the sea were extracted from it, the volume of the mineral matter would be equal to about one-fifth the volume of all lands now above sea-level.

Source of mineral matter. Mineral matter is being brought to the sea by rivers constantly. Rivers are fed largely by springs, and spring water, while underground, dissolves various sorts of mineral matter from the rocks, as we have seen. Rivers are probably the chief source of the mineral matter in the sea, but sea-water also dissolves mineral matter from the rocks beneath it.

The amount of mineral matter carried in solution to the sea by rivers each year is estimated to be nearly half a cubic mile.

Rivers do not carry mineral matters to the sea in the proportions in which they exist in sea-water. Of the mineral matter dissolved in river water, calcium carbonate is by far the most abundant, while common salt is one of the minor constituents, so small in amount as not to be detected by the taste. Yet the amount of the latter in sea-water is more than 200 times that of the former. This great difference is one of the things to be explained.

It is to be noted that the mineral matters which are most abundant in the sea are not those which are most abundant in the rocks of the land. Those minerals of land rocks which are readily soluble, such as calcium carbonate, get into river water, and thence to the sea, in greater quantity than those which are less soluble. Many minerals in the sea-water do not exist as such in the common rocks of the land, but are made by the combination of matter in the rocks with gases (especially CO_2) in the air. Thus many volcanic rocks contain calcium in complex combinations. These complex compounds are broken up, and the calcium unites with the carbon dioxide of the air to form calcium carbonate. This is one of the prolific sources of this material carried by rivers to the sea. Again, common rocks do not contain salt, but some of them, such as granite, contain sodium, one of the elements of salt. When the sodium unites with chlorine, which is present in trivial quantity in much ground water, the result is salt. It takes much rock to yield a little salt. The great quantities of salt in the sea, therefore, must mean the decay of very much greater quantities of rock.

Some mineral substances in the sea, on the other hand, are derived from rock by simple solution. This is true of much of the lime carbonate, which is the dissolved substance of limestone.

Withdrawal of mineral matter from the sea. Some of the substances in solution in the sea-water are extracted from the water by animals to make their shells, tests, etc. Most shells are made of calcium carbonate, but animals appear to be able to use the sulphate of calcium also in the making of their shells, transforming it into calcium carbonate. In spite of the abundance of calcium carbonate carried to the sea, therefore, the amount of this substance in the sea is relatively small, because animals, and

some sea-plants, take it out to make shells and other hard parts about as fast as it is brought in. Silica also, though found in sea-water in small quantities only, is extracted by some animals and plants, as calcium carbonate is by others. Salt, on the other hand, is not used by any of the animals or plants of the sea, and so remains in solution, and most of all that has gone to the sea in past time appears to be there still.

The age of the ocean. At the rate at which salt is now being taken from the land to the sea by rivers, it would take some 370,000,000 years for the salt of the sea to have accumulated. It is by no means certain, however that salt always has been carried to the sea at the present rate, and it is certain that some of the salt which has been carried to the sea has been taken out again to make the great salt beds which are present in various parts of the earth. While, therefore, 370,000,000 years is not to be taken as the age of the ocean, it may give us some hint of the length of time during which it has been in existence. Some considerations which cannot be detailed here have led to the conclusion that the above figure is likely to be too small, rather than too large.

Gases in sea-water. Besides the solids in solution in sea-water, there are numerous gases. The most abundant are those which exist in the air in abundance, namely, nitrogen, oxygen, and carbon dioxide. The amounts of these gases in solution vary from place to place and from time to time, but the average of many analyses shows that, of the total amount of gas in sea-water, nitrogen makes up about $37\frac{1}{2}\%$, oxygen about $33\frac{1}{3}\%$, and carbonic-acid gas about $16\frac{1}{4}\%$. In the aggregate, the amount of oxygen dissolved in the ocean water is rather more than $\frac{1}{3\,0\,0}$ of the amount in the air; that of the nitrogen about $\frac{1}{1\,1\,0\,0}$; while the amount of carbon dioxide is about 18 times that in the air.

The gases in the sea-water are dissolved chiefly from the atmosphere, in proportions determined by the pressure of each gas, by its solubility, and by the temperature of the water. Gases are more soluble in cold water than in warm, and carbon dioxide is more soluble than oxygen, and this in turn is more soluble than nitrogen. Once dissolved at the surface, these gases are distributed through the ocean water by the movements of the water and by diffusion. Carbon dioxide also is supplied to sea-water by the animals which live in the sea, and it issues from submarine volcanic vents.

The oxygen of the water is being consumed constantly by the animals in the sea, and its supply is being as constantly renewed by solution from the air. The amount in sea-water decreases with increasing depth, and its paucity at great depths probably is one reason why animal life is not more abundant there. Though constantly diffused downward, diffusion is a very slow process. The nitrogen of the water is little used, and the same nitrogen probably stays in solution from year to year and from age to age. The carbon dioxide of the sea is consumed by some of the plants of the sea, and some of that exhaled by the marine animals and volcanic vents escapes into the air. This is one of the sources of the carbon dioxide of the air.

The gases dissolved in the water do not greatly affect its volume, though they increase it slightly.

Salinity, density, and movement. The waters of different parts of the seas contain slightly different amounts of salt and other mineral matters. The variation comes about in different ways. (1) Evaporation is more rapid in some places than in others. Since the dissolved salts are left behind when sea-water evaporates, the water becomes more saline where evaporation is great. The greater the amount of mineral matter in solution, the greater the density of the water. (2) Where rainfall is great, the water is freshened and so made lighter. (3) Where rivers enter the sea, they bring in fresh water, which, mingling with the salt water, makes it lighter.

In all the above ways the salinity of the sea-water at the top of the ocean is being altered continually. Every alteration in salinity changes the density of the water, and unequal density causes movement. When surface water becomes more dense than that beneath, it sinks, and the lighter water comes in over it from all sides. When the surface water becomes less dense than the surrounding water at the same level, the heavier water displaces the lighter, causing it to spread out on the surface, for the same reason that oil spreads on water. Since variations in the salinity of water are being produced constantly, motion due to inequalities of density resulting from inequalities of salinity, is constant. Movements brought about in this way are partly vertical and partly horizontal. They are usually so slow as to be imperceptible, and may appropriately be called *creep*.

Density of Water under Certain Conditions

Pure water at 39.6° F	1.00
" " " 212° F	.95
Surface sea-water at 60° F	1.024 to 1.03
Sea-water five miles down	1.06

Salinity and color. The water of the sea is generally blue or green, but its color varies from point to point and from time to time. It seems to be indicated by numerous observations that the blue color of sea-water is intensified by increase of salinity. The Gulf Stream is distinctly bluer than the less salty cold current off Labrador, and inland seas, such as the Mediterranean, which are more salty than the open ocean, are of deeper blue. The cold and less salty waters of high latitudes often are distinctly green. Some variations of color are due to the solid matter in suspension in the water. Microscopic animals and plants, and the sediment washed or blown out from the land or furnished by explosive volcanoes beneath the sea, all contribute to the observed variations. Clearness of the sky also affects the color of the water, which has very different hues when the sun shines, and when there are heavy clouds.

Temperature of the Sea

In considering the temperature of the sea, account must be taken of the temperature both at the surface and beneath it.

At the surface. In general, the temperature of the surface of the ocean water decreases from the equator toward the poles, as the temperature of the land does (Fig. 473). It varies from about 80° F. in the equatorial regions, to about 28° F. in the polar regions. When the temperature falls below the latter figure, sea-water freezes, and the temperature of the surface of the ice may sink as low as the temperature of the air above it; but the temperature of the water immediately beneath the ice does not fall much below 28° F. The decrease of temperature with increase of latitude is by no means regular, as shown by the isothermal charts. In Figs. 474 and 475, for example, the isothermal lines over the ocean are far from parallel with the parallels of latitude.

The notable departures of isotherms over the ocean from the parallels of latitude are due to various causes. In the open ocean they are due chiefly to currents in the ocean water. Some of these

currents are of water which is flowing into waters warmer than themselves, and some are of water flowing into waters cooler than themselves. The former are *cold currents*, and the latter *warm currents*. A cold current deflects an isotherm equatorward, and a warm current deflects it poleward. Fig. 474 furnishes a good illustration of the effect of the warm current in the North Atlantic on the position of isotherms.

There are other reasons why the temperature of the surface water of the ocean does not decrease steadily from equator to poles. (1) Rivers entering the sea sometimes (especially in summer) are warmer and sometimes (especially in winter) colder than the sea-water which they enter. Rivers, therefore, help to produce inequalities of surface temperatures. (2) Enclosed or partially enclosed arms of the sea in low latitudes are warmer than the open ocean in the same latitude, and in such situations the highest temperatures of the sea are found. The surface temperature of the Red Sea is sometimes 90° or even 100°.

Temperature and movement. Warm water is lighter than cold, if both are equally salt. Unequal surface temperatures therefore cause movement of the surface waters. The tendency of the resulting movement is to cause the colder waters of the higher latitudes to displace the warmer waters of the same level in lower latitudes, while the warmer waters of the lower latitudes spread widely over the surface. The movement is, therefore, circulatory. The movements due to this cause are always slow, but since the surface temperature is constantly kept unequal by unequal heating, by the inflow of rivers, and by melting ice, there must be constant movement of the surface waters as a result of the constantly renewed inequality of temperature.

The surface of the sea is subject to both seasonal and daily changes of temperature. Both are much less than the corresponding changes on land in the same latitude (p. 454).

Temperature beneath the surface. Except where the surface waters of the sea are at or near the freezing-point, the temperature becomes cooler with increasing depth. Even where the surface water is warmest, its temperature at the depth of a few hundred fathoms (rarely more than 800, and generally much less) is below 40° F., and that at the bottom still colder. The following table shows the average temperature of the sea at various depths:

Depth.	Temperature.
600 feet	60.7°
1,200 "	50.0°
3,000 "	40.1°
6,000 "	36.5°
13,200 "	35.2°

It is estimated that not more than one-fifth of the water of the ocean has a temperature as high as 40° F., while its average temperature probably is below 39° F. At the bottom of the deep sea the temperature is mostly below 35° F. The only parts of the ocean-bottom where the temperature are areas of shallow water, and is as high as 40° F., are areas of relatively low latitudes. the enclosed seas constitute more than 8% of the Such areas do not Fig. 592 represents a temperature curve for the South Atlantic, and is fairly typical for the area of the sea ocean in general. It shows a

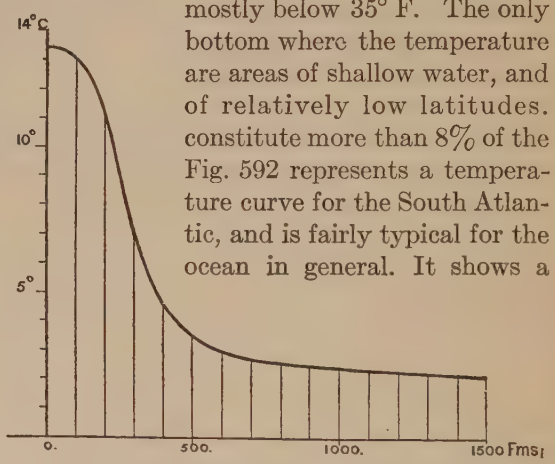


Fig. 592.—A temperature curve in the South Atlantic; latitude 35° 59′ S., longitude 1° 34′ E. The numbers at the bottom represent depths in fathoms. (Challenger Report.)

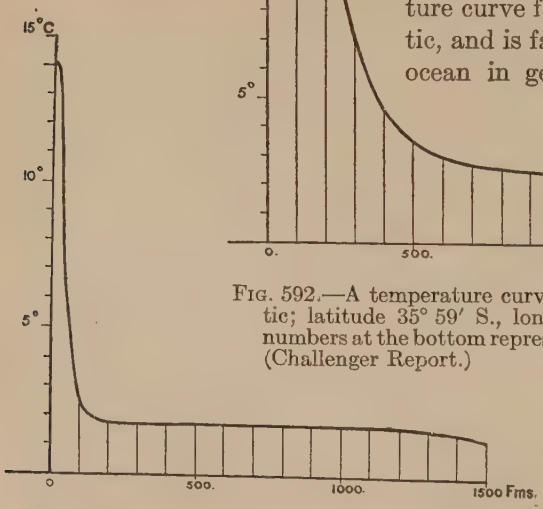


Fig. 593.—Temperature curve for the South Atlantic, where the water is affected by the Antarctic current; latitude 42° 32′ S., longitude 56° 27′ W. (Challenger Report.)

great lowering of temperature between the depths of 200 and 400 fathoms. Fig. 593 is a more striking but less normal curve. In this locality, the cold water comes close (100 fathoms) to the surface.

The temperature of the sea does not everywhere decrease steadily from the surface down. There are more or less well-

defined currents beneath the surface, some of them warmer and some colder than their surroundings.

The temperatures of the deeper parts of enclosed seas in low latitudes present striking contrasts to the temperatures of the deeper parts of the open sea. Thus the temperature of the Red Sea decreases from 90° F. or more at the surface, to 70° F. at a depth of 1200 feet, and then remains nearly constant to the bottom at 3600 feet (Fig. 594). In the Mediterranean, the temperature falls from about 75° F. at the surface to 55° F. at a depth of 750 feet, and then remains essentially constant to the bottom, 13,000 feet, while the temperature of the ocean outside falls to 37° F. in

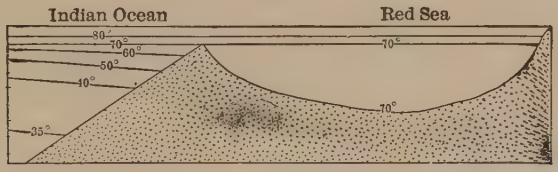


FIG. 594.—Diagrammatic section of Red Sea and the adjacent part of the Indian Ocean, to illustrate the effect of a barrier on the temperature of the waters. The temperature is expressed in degrees Fahrenheit. The numbers at the left show depth in fathoms.

its deeper parts. The high temperature of the deep waters of these enclosed seas is due to the submerged barriers which partially shut them off from the ocean, and do not allow the colder and therefore denser waters outside to flow in and displace the warmer and lighter waters below the top of the basin (Fig. 594). The temperature of the bottom of enclosed seas is, in general, approximately the temperature of the adjacent open-sea water at the level corresponding to the top of the submerged barrier.

The phenomena of these and other similarly situated basins show that the sun shining on an enclosed body of water in low latitudes may, in the course of time, warm it to the bottom, even where the water is deep. The low average temperature of the ocean therefore, is not due to the inability of the sun to heat it.

The reasons for the low temperature of the great body of the sea-water are readily understood. (1) The heat of the sun has little *direct* effect below some such depth as 200 to 300 feet, and none at all below 600 feet. Taken alone, this does not account for the low temperature of the body of the ocean, as the phenomena of the enclosed basins show, but it is one of the elements of the

problem. The sun has been shining long enough to have warmed the ocean to its bottom, even by the slow (in water) process of conduction. (2) The bottom of the sea, though warmed by conduction from the lithosphere below, is warmed with extreme slowness. As the temperature of its bottom rises, the expanded water is crowded up by the colder, heavier water which gets beneath it. (3) The cold waters of the surface, whether produced by contact with the cold air or by the melting of ice and snow, tend constantly to sink. The supply of ice-water from the polar regions, especially from the Antarctic region, is very great, and though that which comes from the land is fresh, and therefore lighter than sea-water at the outset, it soon becomes salt by diffusion and by mixing with salt water. This enormous supply of ice-water is the great cause of the low average temperature of the sea. Without the polar ice-caps, the average temperature of the ocean would in time be raised perceptibly. If the ice-caps were melted off, it would probably go far toward restoring the genial climates of earlier times in high latitudes, when temperate and even subtropical plants and animals lived in Greenland and in Antarctica.

Since the pressure in the sea increases a ton per square inch for a little less than a mile of descent, it will be seen that the ordinary thermometer would not be serviceable, in determining the temperature at great depths. For this purpose, a special thermometer is used. It is so made that it will withstand the great pressure of deep water without having the position of the mercury in the tube influenced seriously by it, and (2) register the temperature of any desired depth. It was not until 1869, just before the departure of the Challenger expedition, that a thermometer satisfactory for this purpose was perfected.

The ice of the sea has been referred to in other connections (pp. 180 and 233). Its movements are controlled partly by winds, and partly by the movements of the water in which it is floating.

CHAPTER XXI

MOVEMENTS OF SEA-WATER

Causes of Movements

We have seen the inequalities of density in sea-water arise chiefly from (1) unequal salinity, and (2) unequal temperature, and that these inequalities, taken by themselves, insure a constant, though slow, circulation of the waters of the sea. There are other causes, also, which produce movement. Chief among them are (3) inequalities of level, (4) the wind, and (5) the differential attraction of heavenly bodies, especially the moon and the sun. There are also (6) occasional causes, such as earthquakes, volcanic explosions in the sea, landslides on coasts, etc., which produce temporary and sometimes disastrous movements. The effect of (1) and (2) have been noticed already (pp. 180 and 633).

Movements due to inequalities of level. The inequalities of level which produce movement are brought about by (1) the inflow of land waters, which raise the surface at the point of inflow; (2) winds, which tend to pile up the waters along the shores against which they blow; (3) unequal rainfall, which tends to raise the surface most where most falls; (4) unequal evaporation, which tends to lower the surface most where it is greatest; and (5) variations in atmospheric pressure, the surface of the water being slightly depressed where atmospheric pressure is high.

All such inequalities of level in the surface of the sea cause movement. Such movements are generally slow. So far as they are due to rainfall, to inequalities of evaporation and to atmospheric pressure, they are as a rule imperceptible. The movement occasioned by the inflow of rivers is more noticeable, and in the case of large rivers is distinctly felt for some distance from shore. When waters are piled up against a shore by winds, there is sooner or later a return movement which tends to make the surface level again. During a storm on the coast of India in 1864 (Oct. 5), the water was raised 24 feet at Calcutta, drowning 48,000 people. The raising of the surface of the water was the most destructive

element in the storm at Galveston, already referred to (p. 563). The rise of the water was due partly to wind, and partly to the low atmospheric pressure at the city.

Since the several causes producing inequalities of level are in constant operation, it follows that movements due to inequalities of level are constant.

It will be recalled that there are inequalities of level due to the attraction of land masses (p. 621). These inequalities are in some sense permanent, and therefore do not produce circulation of the sea-water.

Movements due to wind. Winds not only produce temporary inequalities of level, as indicated above, but they affect the water in other ways. Their most familiar effect is in the generation of waves, but when air moves rapidly over water, it drags the surface water along beneath it. Since winds always are blowing, the movements to which they give rise always are taking place. When winds have a more or less constant direction, as in the zone of trades, there must be a somewhat constant movement of the surface water in the same direction. A constant movement in one direction necessarily involves a return movement, and the two movements constitute *circulation.*

Movements due to differential attraction of sun and moon. Bodies attract each other in proportion to their masses, and inversely as the squares of their distances from each other; that is, a body twice as massive as another has twice the attractive force *at the same distance,* and if one of two bodies of a given mass be twice as far from a third body as the other is, their attractive forces on the third are to each other as $\frac{1}{4} : 1$ ($\frac{1}{2}^2 : 1$).

The side of the earth towards the moon is nearer to the moon than the center of the earth is, and so is attracted more strongly than the center. The opposite side is attracted less than the center. Because of these inequalities of attraction, the mobile waters of the surface are disturbed. The attraction of the sun produces similar but less pronounced effects. These inequalities of attraction of moon and sun on different parts of the earth cause the movements known as *tides.*

Movements due to occasional causes. The aperiodic and more or less accidental causes of movement which belong in this class sometimes produce violent wave movements which last but a short time. Illustrations of their nature and effects already have

been given in connection with earthquakes. Landslides along coasts, submarine volcanic eruptions, etc., also occasion violent but temporary movements of the water of the sea.

Types of Movement

The general types of movement resulting from these various causes are (1) *waves*, with their accompanying *undertow*, and *shore* or *littoral currents*, (2) *ocean currents*, (3) *drift* (slow ill-defined currents), (4) *creep* (movements too slow to be observed), and (5) *tides*. The first two and the last are more obvious than the third and fourth, and the importance of the less obvious is often overlooked.

Waves

The nature and the work of waves already have been outlined (p. 276). Since the water in waves commonly does not move forward, waves do not involve a general circulation of the ocean water. In addition to what has been said concerning the work of waves, it may be added that in the aggregate the sea destroys more land by erosion than it makes by deposition, so that if nothing else interposed, the sea, by its continued gnawing at the shores, ultimately would destroy all land. It has been pointed out that wave erosion tends to do away with large irregularities of coasts, though not with small ones (p. 278). In the long run, too, deposition along coasts tends to develop regularity of outline, but temporarily the coasts may be made very irregular by deposition (p. 284). On the whole, the final effect of coastal activities is to make coasts more regular if they had great irregularity at the outset.

Currents

There are more or less distinct currents in various parts of the ocean. They became known first through the effect of the moving water on the courses of sailing vessels. Their direction has been confirmed in various other ways, as by following the course of floating bottles placed in them.

The better-known currents are at the surface, extending down to depths of several hundred feet; but there are also currents beneath the surface, as shown by variations of temperature and by some other phenomena. Ocean currents are much less well defined than currents of running water on the land, because the former flow through a liquid, while the latter flow over a solid

bed between solid banks. The currents of the ocean are the most distinct element, though not the only one, of oceanic circulation.

Fig. 595 shows the general course of movement of the surface waters of the seas. The figure represents a large part of the surface water as in movement. There is a westward movement of surface water in low latitudes in both the Atlantic and the Pacific oceans. These are the *equatorial currents*, or *drifts* as they are sometimes called. In each ocean the drift is double, and a narrow

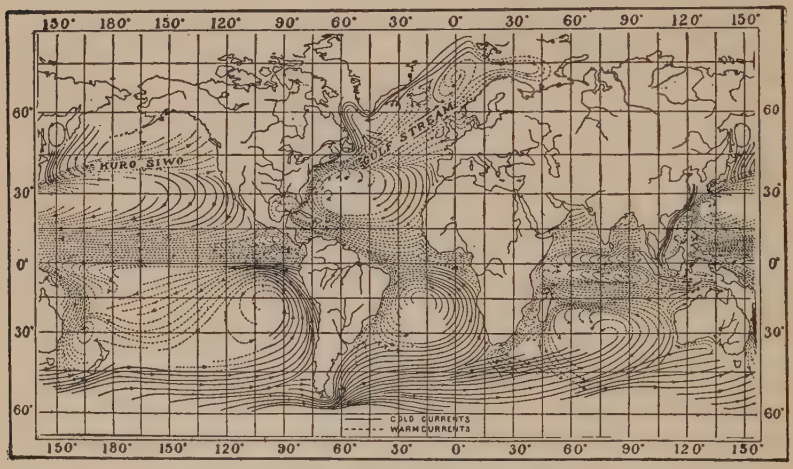


Fig. 595.—Ocean Currents and Drifts.

counter-current moves eastward between them. The equatorial currents of the Atlantic are separated as South America is approached, one part being deflected to the southwest and the other to the northwest. A part of the latter flows through the Caribbean Sea and into the Gulf of Mexico. From this Gulf a distinct current, the *Gulf Stream*, issues through the narrow passageway between Cuba and Florida. It is fed partly by the water which enters the Gulf from the equatorial drift, and partly by the large amount of water which enters the Gulf from the land. The stream issuing from the Gulf has a velocity of more than four miles an hour where it is swiftest.

Escaping from its narrow shallow passageway between Florida and Cuba, the Gulf Stream becomes wider and deeper. The

current tends to drag along the mobile water beneath and beside it, and as more water becomes involved in the movement, its rate of progress becomes slower, and in the open ocean the rate of movement is perhaps no more than 10 to 15 miles per day. As the current becomes slow, its boundaries become less well defined. In the open ocean it is detected by its temperature, its color, its life, etc., more readily than by its motion.

After leaving the Gulf, the Gulf Stream manifests a pronounced tendency to turn to the eastward. Following this tendency, it crosses the Atlantic, approaching the coast of Europe in a latitude higher than that where it leaves America. Here it divides and spreads widely. Long before this point is reached, it has ceased to be a definite stream, and is to be looked upon rather as a general, wide-spread *drift*.

That part of the equatorial drift which is turned southward on the coast of South America first follows the coast of that continent, but soon shows a tendency to turn to the left (Fig. 595).

The equatorial drifts of the Pacific follow similar courses. The part corresponding to the Gulf Stream of the Atlantic is known as the Japan Current. The Indian Ocean has a distinct equatorial drift south of the equator, and its course corresponds to that of the southern part of the corresponding drifts of the other oceans.

All currents moving poleward from low latitudes consist of warm water moving into cooler water, and are called *warm currents*.

The poleward movement of warm currents necessitates a return equatorward movement, and this movement is strengthened by the inequalities of temperature in high and low latitudes. The cold waters moving equatorward are deflected to the right in the northern hemisphere and to the left in the southern, and the tendency of this deflection is to concentrate them on the eastern coasts of the continents in both hemispheres. In the Southern Pacific Ocean, the cold drift makes itself felt even to the equator, on the West coast of South America.

The equatorward movements start from latitudes where ice abounds. They are cold, but not so salt (in summer) as normal sea-water. By virtue of their temperature, therefore, they would be denser than average sea-water; but by virtue of their deficiency in salt, they tend to be less dense than normal sea-water. As they flow equatorward, they become warmer and more salty, and finally

attain such a degree of salinity that they sink and continue their courses toward the equator as cold undercurrents. On the other hand, the poleward (warm) currents start in low latitudes as surface currents, kept at the surface by their high temperature in spite of their slight excess of salt. But in their poleward journey, they may sink beneath the cooler though fresher water, and continue as warm undercurrents. Undercurrents of both types have been detected by thermometers which record the temperatures below the surface.

Cause of ocean currents. The equatorial drifts in the Atlantic and Pacific oceans correspond somewhat closely, both in position and direction, with the trade-winds. Since winds which are constant in direction will cause a general movement of the surface waters beneath them, it is believed that the equatorial currents or drifts are generated by the trade-winds. The effect of the westward-moving equatorial drifts is to bank up waters on the east coasts of the continents, especially South America. Some water moves back eastward between the north and south west-bound currents, constituting the narrow *counter* current of the equatorial calms. This counter current of warm water is felt on the coast of Africa, and south of India.

In extra-tropical latitudes the winds are less constant, and therefore less effective in generating currents. But in regions of strong monsoon winds, as about India, the drift of the surface waters changes with the shifting winds, thus showing the competency of winds to generate surface movements.

Were the ocean universal, the westward drift of the equatorial waters under the influence of the trade-winds doubtless would correspond with the trade-winds themselves; that is, they would encircle the earth. But where the waters of the equatorial drift reach a continent, as, for example, South America, they are deflected from their westerly course.

After the moving waters pass out of the control of the trade-winds, they are directed (1) by the continental borders, (2) by the configuration of the ocean bottom, (3) by the prevailing winds of the latitudes which they reach, and (4) by the rotation of the earth. Their courses therefore are determined partly by the causes which *generate* them, and partly by other causes which *direct* them.

Another factor in the development of ocean currents is inequality of temperatures. This alone would not give rise to

distinct currents, but movements thus generated (p. 633) may be concentrated and directed so as to emphasize the currents generated by winds.

Climatic effects of ocean currents. The air over a warm ocean current is warmed by contact with the warm water. In middle latitudes the prevailing westerly winds carry the warmed air over to the coasts of the continents to leeward, giving them, in winter, temperatures higher than they otherwise would have, and giving them, at the same time, an abundant supply of moisture. Thus the winter temperature of the west coast of northern Europe is much less severe than it would be but for the Gulf Stream.

The amount of heat which the Gulf Stream carries northward from low latitudes has been estimated by Croll to be "one-fourth of all the heat received from the sun by the North Atlantic, from the tropic of Cancer up to the Arctic Circle." Its benefit, so far as the land is concerned, is primarily to Europe.

The similar warm current in the North Pacific lessens the severity of the winter climate of the northern part of western North America. Similar results would be seen in the southern hemisphere, were there land so situated as to feel the effects of the corresponding currents in the southern oceans.

It is not to be understood that the milder climate of northwestern Europe, as compared with severer climate of northeastern North America in the same latitude, is due wholly to the Gulf Stream. The ocean, without any warm current, would make the winters of northwestern Europe less severe than those of the same latitude on the east coast of North America. The Gulf Stream, however, increases the difference which would exist otherwise.

One other atmospheric effect of currents should perhaps be mentioned. When the wind blows over a warm current, such as the Gulf Stream, it is warmed and takes up a goodly supply of moisture. On blowing from the warm current over colder water, its temperature is lowered, and some of its moisture may be condensed, resulting in fog. Fogs are common along the leeward side of the Gulf Stream, in latitudes where the adjacent land or water is much cooler than the current itself. Fogs are more abundant in the latitude of Newfoundland than farther south, because the difference in the temperature of the Gulf Stream and its surroundings is greater here than farther south. Fogs also occur about the Gulf Stream when there is no wind. This appears to be due

to the chilling of the warmer air by proximity to cooler air above and on either side, and to diffusion of water vapor from the air over the Gulf Stream, to the cooler air on either side.

Fogs, often grading into mist or into clouds which yield rain, are rather common in the northwestern parts of North America and Europe, especially in the cold season.

Gradational effects of ocean currents. Currents have relatively little effect on the ocean bottom, and almost none on coasts, because they rarely touch either. Where the water is shallow, however, as between Florida and Cuba, the Gulf Stream reaches and scours its bottom effectively, somewhat as a great river might. Since ocean currents do little eroding, except locally, they carry but little debris. They do, however, transport considerable quantities of matter of organic origin. The waters, especially of warm currents, teem with minute organisms, and these organisms, or their shells after the organisms are dead, may be carried far.

Historical suggestions. The currents of the Atlantic played an important part in the early history of America. After Iceland was colonized by the Northmen, the currents southwest from the Arctic insured the early discovery of North America. The south equatorial current carried the Portuguese, bound for India, in 1500, to the shores of South America.

Drift and Creep. Where currents become very feeble, they are called drifts. Thus where a current spreads out over a great area, and its rate of flow becomes slight, it becomes drift. Creep is insensible movement, such as that which results from unequal density of different parts of the water.

Tides

The level of the ocean water rises and falls twice every day or, more exactly, every 24 hours and 52 minutes. This periodic rise and fall of the water constitutes the *tides*. The tide rises (*flood-tide*) for about six hours, when it is *high*, and then falls (*ebb-tide*) for about six hours, when it is *low*.[1] In many places the tide "comes in" as a series of waves, the water after each wave failing to sink to its former level; in other places it rises quickly, without distinct waves.

Tides are not perceptible in the open ocean, for there is nothing there to mark the slight rise of water; but they are seen about

[1]The ebb-tide usually is somewhat longer than the flood-tide.

islands on the shores of which the rise and fall may be measured. The rise in the open sea has been estimated at two to three feet. Along coasts, the variation in the water level between high and low tides is several feet in many places. In bays which open broadly to the sea but narrow toward their heads, the range is sometimes 20 or 30 feet, or in rare cases 50 feet or more, as in the Bay of Fundy. Where the tide runs in among islands or passes through narrow straits, it gives rise to distinct currents which scour the channels through which they flow.

In places the tide runs up a broad open river. As it advances up the channel, its progress is retarded by the shallowness of the water, and its front may become a steep and even wall-like wave. Such a wave is called a *bore*. The bore is felt in the Severn and the Wye of England, in the Seine of France, in the Petit-Codiac of Canada, in the Hugli of India, and the Tsien-Tang-Kiang of China. In the last-named river the waves sometimes are 25 feet high, and disastrous to navigation. On one occasion, it was estimated that 1¼ million tons of water went by a point in the river in a minute in the bore wave. Trading ships at Calcutta formerly hastened to the middle of the stream for safety on the approach of the bore.

Bores do not appear, even in the rivers subject to them, with every high tide. Favoring winds seem to be an important factor in their development, and they are stronger in *spring tides* (p. 653) than at other times.

High tides make themselves felt, though not as bores, up the Hudson River to Troy, where the range of the tide is more than two feet, and up the Delaware nearly to Trenton. The salt water does not run up to Troy and Trenton, respectively, but the tide raises the sea-level at the debouchures of the streams, and so dams back their waters. The tide runs 70 miles up the St. Johns River in New Brunswick, and is felt where the elevation of the river is 14 feet above mean sea-level. The tide is felt up the estuary of the St. Lawrence 283 miles to Three Rivers, near Montreal.

Tides are imperceptible in small lakes, and feeble even in large lakes and enclosed seas. In Lake Michigan, for example, there is a tide of about two inches. Tides are feeble in all bodies of water connected with the open sea by a narrow passageway. Thus, at Galveston, Texas, the range of the tide is less than a foot.

In many harbors, especially where the water is shallow, the rise and fall are enough to have an important effect on navigation. Vessels arriving at such harbors at low tide often are obliged to wait for high tide before entering. Tidal currents or *races* sometimes are so strong as to interfere with navigation. The race through Hell Gate near New York City is a case in point.

Periodicity and cause of tides. The time between successive high or successive low tides is about half the time of the apparent revolution of the moon around the earth. It appears to have been this fact which suggested a connection between the tides and the apparent motions of the moon, a connection which was known, or at any rate suspected, some 2000 years ago, though not fully understood until the time of Newton, about 200 years ago.

The law of attraction between heavenly bodies has already been stated (p. 638). Without attempting to give a detailed explanation of the tides, the essential principles involved may be readily understood. We may consider first the tide produced by the moon.

If a weight is attached to a string and whirled, the string is put under tension. The weight constantly tends to move forward in a straight line, but it is prevented from doing so by the string. The tendency of the weight to depart from the circle in which the string holds it, often is called *centrifugal force*, though it is only inertia. The pull of the string which holds the weight is a *centripetal force*. The taut string therefore is affected by two opposite and equal forces.

The motion of the moon about the earth is not unlike the motion of the weight at the end of the string in the above illustration. In place of the string there is the attraction of gravitation, and the moon goes about the earth at such a rate that her centrifugal tendency is just balanced by the attraction of the earth. The center about which the moon revolves is not, however, the center of the earth, but the center of gravity of earth and moon. Since the earth is about 80 times as massive as the moon, the center of gravity of the two bodies is much nearer the center of the earth than the center of the moon. It is, in fact, 1000 miles below the surface of the earth, and 3000 miles from its center (Fig. 596). Both the moon and the earth revolve about this common center, as they travel together about the sun. The earth's center describes

[1] For further accounts of the tides, see astronomies referred to on p. 431.

a circle with a radius of 3000 miles about the common center of gravity, while the moon describes a circle with a radius of about 237,000 miles about the same point. The conception may be made more definite by conceiving two very unequal weights at the opposite ends of a stiff but extremely light rod. These weights may be such that the two will be balanced, if the point corresponding to *g*, Fig. 596, is supported. If now the couple (*E* and *M*) be rotated, the center of *E* will revolve about *g* in a small circle, while

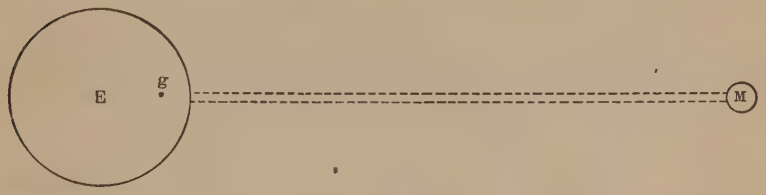


FIG. 596.—Diagram showing the position of the center of gravity, *g*, of the earth-moon system.

the center of *M* will revolve about it in a much larger circle. In the case of the moon, the period of revolution is about 28 days.

The earth and the moon attract each other and would fall together, but for the centrifugal tendency developed by the revolution. The distance of the two bodies from each other is determined by the balance between (1) their mutual attractions on the one hand, and (2) their centrifugal tendencies on the other. This balance is perfect at the center of the earth and at the center of the moon. But on the side of the earth nearest the moon the attraction of the moon is stronger than at the center of the earth and overbalances the centrifugal tendency. *The attraction therefore tends to make the earth bulge up under the moon.* On the opposite side of the earth the attraction is weaker than at the center, and is overbalanced by the centrifugal tendency. Here, also, there is therefore a tendency for the earth to bulge out, as a result of the differential attraction of the moon. The solid part of the earth is essentially rigid, and yields but little to the attraction of the moon, too little to be sensible. But it is now known that the solid part of the earth does yield a little; in other words, it has tides. The surface waters are much more mobile and respond to the distorting effect of the moon's differential attraction, with the result that the water is bulged up on opposite sides of the earth, so as to

produce a slight elongation of the earth's diameter, theoretically in the direction of the moon. These bulges of water are the *high tides*, and between them the tides are *low*.

The fact of the differential attraction of the moon may be stated in other terms. The distance of the center of the moon from the center of the earth is about 240,000 miles. The side of the earth nearest to the moon is therefore about 236,000 miles from the center of the moon, while the side farthest away is about 244,000 miles distant.

If the mass of the moon be taken as 1, the average pull of the moon on the earth is represented by the fraction $\frac{1}{240000^2}$. The fraction which represents the moon's pull on the side of the earth nearest the moon is $\frac{1}{236000^2}$, and the fraction which represents the pull on the opposite side is $\frac{1}{244000^2}$. The solid part of the earth acts essentially as a unit, since its parts are not free to move on one another. The effect of the attractive force of the moon on the solid part of the earth is therefore essentially the same as it would be if it were all exerted on its center, that is, the same as the average pull of the moon on the earth, $\frac{1}{240000^2}$.

The waters on the side of the earth nearest the moon, are pulled with a force stronger than the average pull on the solid part of the earth, and are bulged up a little. The force of the moon's pull here is represented by the fraction $\frac{1}{236000^2}$ and $\frac{1}{236000^2} - \frac{1}{240000^2}$ represents the moon's tide-producing force on the side of the earth nearest to it. The waters on the opposite side of the earth are farther from the moon than the center of the earth is, and so are pulled less strongly than the latter, and are allowed to bulge out. Mathematically the pull on the side of the earth most distant from the moon is $\frac{1}{244000^2}$, and the tide-producing force there is $\frac{1}{240000^2} - \frac{1}{244000^2}$. The result is a rise of water on opposite sides of the earth at the same time. These are the *high* tides. Midway between the places where the tides are high the water is correspondingly lowered and the tides are *low*.

The explanation of the tides is so troublesome that another statement of their cause is added:

"Let E (Fig. 597) represent the center of the earth, and M the moon. (The distance of the moon is greatly minimized.) Consider the tendency of the moon to displace the particle P on the surface of the earth. Let $\overline{EB}$ represent the acceleration of M on E (the solid earth) in direction and amount.

In the same units, let $\overline{PA}$ represent the acceleration of M on P in direction and amount. Since P and M are nearer together than E and M, it follows that $\overline{PA}$ is greater than $\overline{EB}$.

"Let the acceleration $\overline{PA}$ be resolved into two components so that one of them shall be equal and parallel to $\overline{EB}$. It is $\overline{PK}$ in the figure. The other component is found by using $\overline{PA}$ as a diagonal and $\overline{PK}$ as a side, and completing the parallelogram. It is $\overline{PQ}$ in the figure. By the law of the parallelogram of forces $\overline{PA}$ is exactly equivalent to $\overline{PK}$ and $\overline{PQ}$, and conversely. By the preliminary theorem, $\overline{EB}$ and $\overline{PK}$ being parallel and equal do not tend to change the relative positions of E and P, and therefore cause no tide. The remaining acceleration $\overline{PQ}$ cannot be paired with any other, and is the tide-raising acceleration.

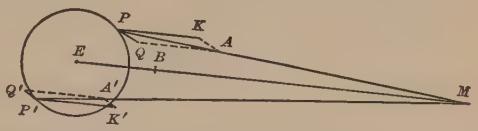


FIG. 597.—Diagram to illustrate the cause of tides. Explanation in text. (From Moulton's Introduction to Astronomy. By permission of The Macmillan Company.)

"The part of the figure with accents is drawn from precisely the same principles. $\overline{P'K'}$ is parallel and equal to $\overline{EB}$, and $\overline{P'Q'}$ is the tide-raising acceleration.

"Suppose figures are constructed for points all the way around the earth. The lines representing the tide-raising accelerations will be as given in Fig. 598. The method of drawing them is the geometrical counterpart of the rigorous mathematical treatment of the subject, and may be relied upon as giving the full explanation of the reason for the tides."[1]

Tides if the ocean were universal. If the earth were completely covered with a deep ocean, its surface would have two extensive tidal bulges or waves at the same time. The highest part of each would be a point, the one directly under the moon, and the other directly opposite it. Each wave would be hemispherical, and their borders would meet in a great circle, where the tide would be low. This circle may be conceived of as the trough between the two hemispherical bulges.

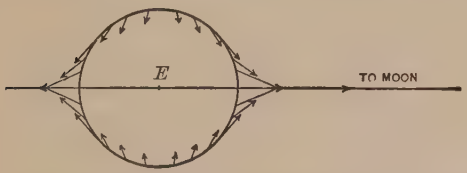


FIG. 598.—Diagram to illustrate tides. (From Moulton's Introduction to Astronomy. By permission of The Macmillan Company.)

The period of the earth's rotation is a little shorter than that of the revolution of the moon about the earth. The result is that rotation tends to carry the high tides on beyond the position which

[1]Moulton's Introduction to Astronomy.

the moon would give them. The moon tends to hold them back, and so they seem to travel about the surface of the earth in a direction opposed to its rotation. The tides are therefore said to *lag* (Fig. 599).

Theoretically, successive high tides are 180° (12 hours) apart, and rotation of the earth alone considered, high tides at any place should recur every 12 hours. The longer period (12 hrs. 26 min.) is the result of the forward movement of the moon in its orbit about the earth (Fig. 600).

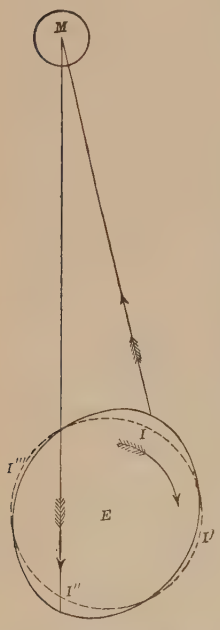


FIG. 599.—Diagram to illustrate the lagging of the tides. (After Comstock.)

There are two points, *the tidal poles*, where the tide does not rise and fall. When the moon is vertical at the equator, it will be seen that the highest point of the high tide should be on the equator continuously, and that the great circle marking the position of the low tide will pass through the geographic poles. The poles will therefore have low tide continuously so long as the moon is vertical at the equator. Whatever the latitude where the moon is vertical, there will be a point, the *tidal pole*, 90° from the latitude where the moon is vertical, where there would be no rise and fall of the tide. Since the latitude where the moon is vertical varies from time to time, the position of the tidal poles varies.

The simplicity of the tidal movements outlined above is interfered with by many things, especially by (1) the continents, which stop the tidal wave, and (2) the shallowness of water in many places. The tidal wave travels more slowly in shallow water than in deep, for the same reason that other waves do. Since tides are retarded most in this way near continents and islands, their advance is most irregular in such places. Irregular tidal waves often interfere with one another.

Solar tides. The sun also attracts the earth and tends to cause tides. If there were no moon we should have tides produced by the sun.

In spite of its great distance from the earth (about 93,000,000 miles), the sun, because of its great size, attracts the earth much

more strongly than the moon does. If the moon's attraction were the stronger, the earth would revolve about the moon instead

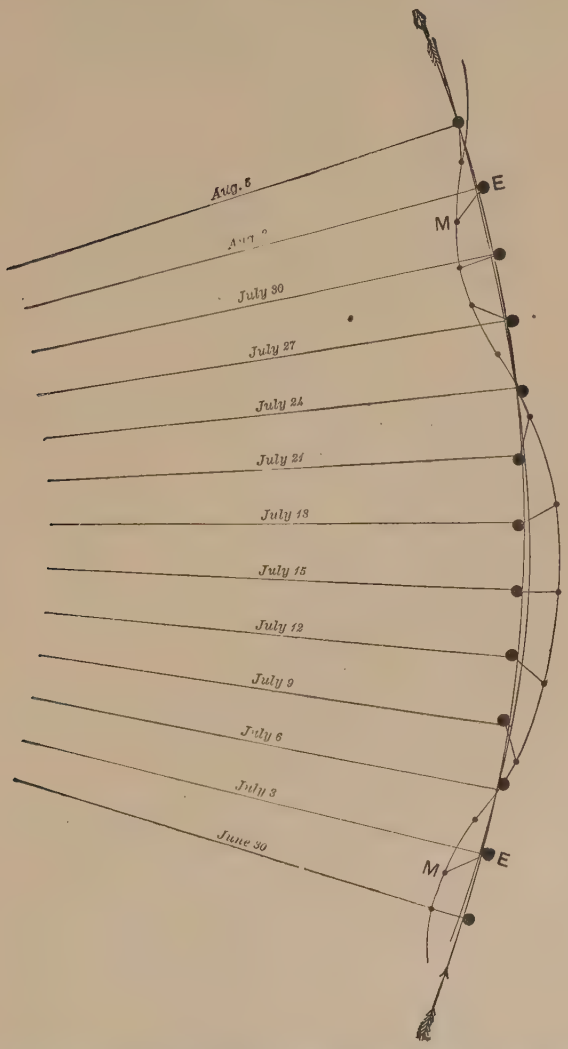


FIG. 600.—Diagram illustrating the motion of the moon about the earth. The larger circles represent the earth, and the smaller ones the moon, on the line which represents its orbit.

of the sun. But in spite of its greater attraction, *the tide-producing force* of the sun is less than that of the moon. It is not difficult

to calculate their relative attractions. If the moon's mass be taken as 1, the mass of the sun is 26,648,000. Mass alone considered, the sun should attract the earth 26,648,000 times as strongly as the moon. The sun is about 389 times as far from the earth as the

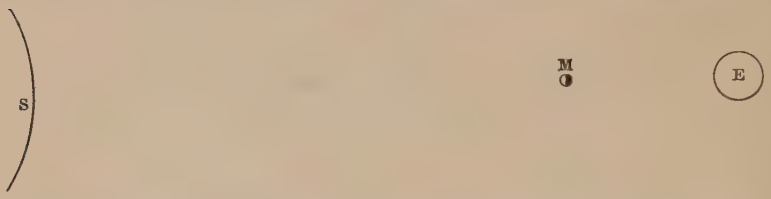


FIG. 601—Diagram to illustrate the relative positions of earth, moon, and sun at the time of new moon. Spring tide.

moon is. Distance alone considered, its pull should therefore be $\frac{1}{389^2}$ $(=1/151321)$ of that of the moon. $1/151321 \times 26{,}648{,}000 = 175$ approximately. That is, the sun pulls the earth with 175 times the force that the moon does.

It has been seen that the tide produced by the moon is due *to the difference between the pull of the moon on the center of the earth and on the parts nearest to and farthest from it.* Any tide which the sun produces must also be due to the difference between its pull on the center of the earth and on the sides nearest to and farthest from it.

The sides of the earth nearest to the sun and farthest from it are 4000 miles nearer to and farther from the sun than the center

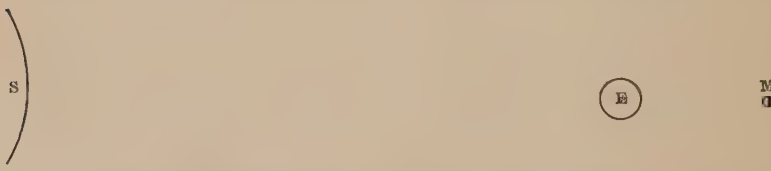


FIG. 602.—Diagram to illustrate the relative positions of earth, moon, and sun at the time of full moon. Spring tide. It is not to be inferred, from Figs. 601 and 602, that the earth is nearer the sun at time of full moon, than at time of new moon.

of the earth is; but 4000 miles is a very much smaller part of 93,000,000 miles than it is of 240,000 miles. Hence the *difference* between the attractive force of the sun on the center and on the side of the earth nearest it, is much less than the difference in the attractive force of the moon on the same points. In other words,

the differential pull of the sun is less than the differential pull of the moon. The moon's tides are therefore higher than the sun's. Their ratio is 0.0342 : 0.0151. If the sun were as near the earth as the moon is, its tidal effect would be enormously greater than now.

Some of the tides are the result of the combined influence of the moon and the sun, but since the lunar tides are the stronger, the solar tides serve merely to modify them. The solar influence strengthens the tides when sun and moon work together, and weakens the tides when they work against each other.

Spring tides and neap tides. When the sun and the moon stand in the relation to each other and to the earth shown in Fig.

FIG. 603.—Diagram to illustrate the relative positions of sun, moon, and earth at the time of neap tides.

601 (*new moon*), each tends to make high tides at the same points. When the relations are those shown in Fig. 602 (*full moon*), the result is the same. At these times, and each occurs once a month, the high tides are higher, and the low tides lower, than at other times. The tides of such times are called *Spring Tides.* Spring tides therefore have no relation to the spring season.

When the earth, moon, and sun sustain the relative positions shown in Fig. 603, and this occurs twice each month, the tidal influences of the sun and the moon are opposed, and the result is that the high tides are not so high, or the low tides so low, as under other conditions. The tides of such times are known as *Neap Tides.*

Other variations in the height of high tides. There are several other causes of variation in the height of high tides. Two of

these causes show themselves daily, two have monthly periods, and one an annual period. There are other unimportant variations.

Successive high tides of a given place often are unequal. One daily variation in the height of high tides is due to the fact that the high tide on the side of the earth away from the moon is slightly lower than that on the side next the moon, for $\frac{1}{2360000^2} - \frac{1}{240000^2} > \frac{1}{240000^2} - \frac{1}{244000^2}$. The difference, however, is slight, and not commonly noticed.

Again, if the high tide on one side of the earth is highest at A (Fig. 604), the highest point on the high tide on the opposite side would be at B, if the ocean were universal and of uniform depth.

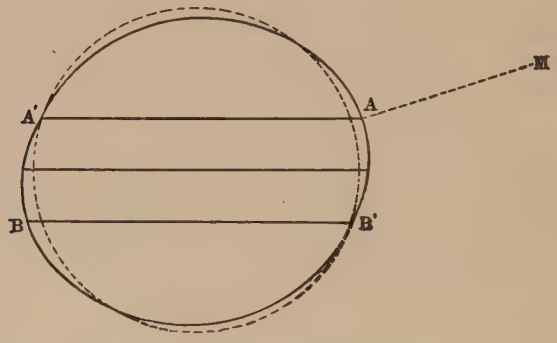


FIG. 604.—Diagram showing why successive high tides often are unequal.

From A on the one side, and from B on the other, the height of the high tide diminishes in all directions. The point A' has high tide at the same time that A and B have, but the tide at A' is not so high as that at A. Twelve hours (and twenty-six minutes) later, point A will have the same position relative to the moon that A' now has, because of the rotation of the earth and the revolution of the moon. The high tide which will occur at A when this point shall have reached the position A' will not be so high as that which it had when in the position A. Similarly the high tide which the point A' will have when it reaches the position A, will be higher than the preceding high tide at the same place. The amount of daily variation due to this cause often is considerable. Locally at least it is several feet. It is to be noted that it would not occur when the moon is vertical at the equator, for then points 180° apart

on the same parallel, stand in the same relation to the highest parts of the tidal wave.

The *monthly variations* in the height of the high tide are less notable. One is due to the variation in the distance of the moon from the earth. This distance decreases from its maximum for about two weeks, and then increases from its minimum for about the same length of time. The variation in the distance of the moon from the earth makes a slight difference in the height of the tides, the high tides being highest and the low tides lowest when the moon is nearest. Another monthly variation at any

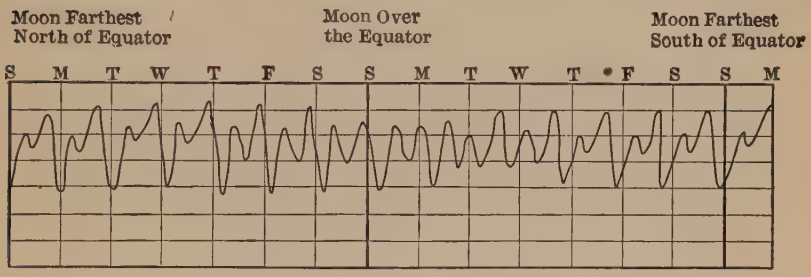


FIG. 605.—Diurnal inequality of the tides at San Francisco. The space between the vertical lines represents a day. The several crests of the curves represent high tides and the troughs low tides. Successive high tides are seen to be of very unequal heights, except at the time when the sun is vertical at the equator.

given place is due to the fact that the moon is vertical in different latitudes at different times.

The distance of the earth from the sun also varies during each year, and this variation has its appropriate effect, small though it is, on the height of the solar tides, and so on the height of the observed tides. Other variations in the distance of the sun from the earth occur in much longer periods of time, but they need not be considered here. The variations for any given place, produced by the apparent annual motions of the sun, are trivial.

The highest high tides in any given place should occur, theoretically, when the sun and the moon work together (spring tides), at that time of day when the moon is most nearly in the zenith, at that time of the month when the moon is nearest to the earth, and at that time of year when the sun is nearest to the earth.

Cotidal lines. If a line were drawn on the ocean surface, connecting all points which have the crest of the same high tide

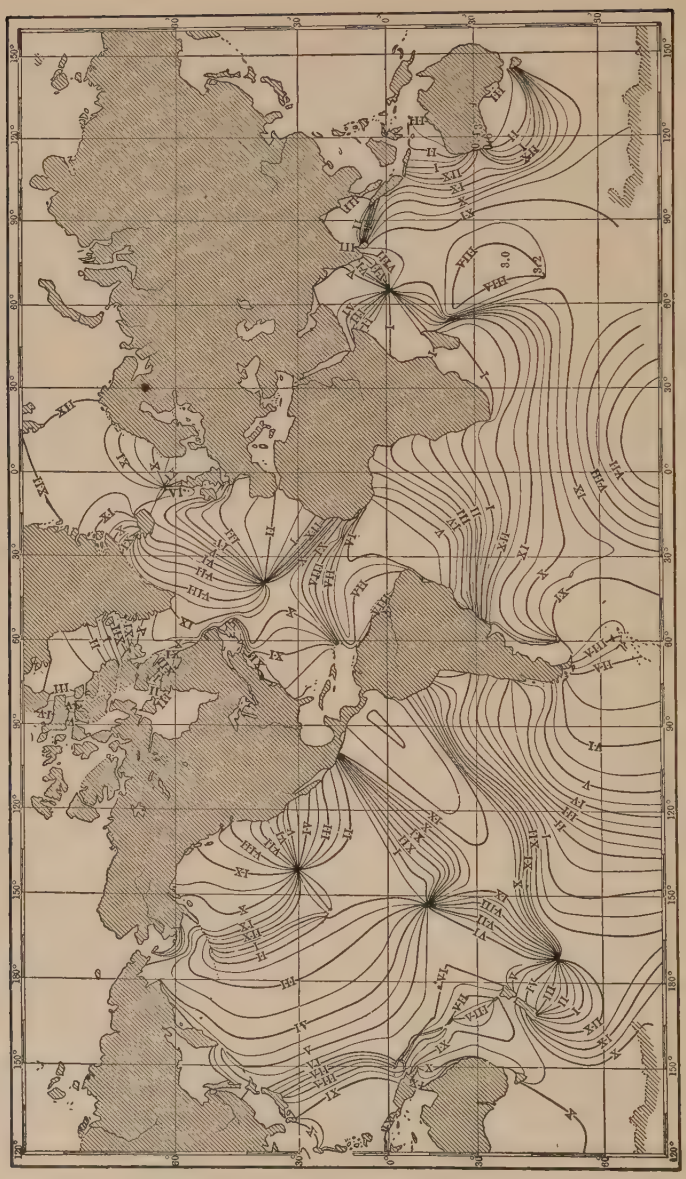


FIG. 606.—Cotidal lines for the world. (Nat. Geog. Mag., June, 1906.)

at the same time, it would be a cotidal line. Any line connecting points having the trough of the same tidal wave at the same time would also be a cotidal line; or in general, any line connecting points having the same phase of the same high tide at the same time, is a cotidal line. If the ocean were universal and equally deep, the cotidal lines would be the halves of great circles; but the continents and the shallow waters, the islands and the straits, cause many irregularities in them (Fig. 606). The tide runs ahead, relatively, where the water is deep, and lags when it is shallow.

Rate of movement. Theoretically the tide should move forward, from east to west, so as to complete a circuit in 24 hours and 52 minutes. This would give it great velocity in low latitudes, a velocity nearly equal to that of the rotation of the earth. This velocity is nearly reached in the deep and open sea, but nowhere else.

Effects of tides on shores. Since tides commonly rise in a series of waves, they affect shores much as wind waves do. The erosion effected by tidal currents among islands, and through straits has been referred to. Tidal scour keeps thoroughfares open through tidal marshes to which the tide has access through bays. Illustrations are found on the coast of New Jersey. Tidal scour also maintains deep waterways in some bays to the great advantage of navigation.

CHAPTER XXIII

LIFE—SEDIMENTS—RELATIONS

The sea teems with plants and animals. The latter abound at and near the surface nearly everywhere, and at the bottom in shallow water. Animals occur, though far less abundantly, at the bottom of even the deep sea, and sparsely in the great body of water intermediate between the uppermost 100 fathoms and the bottom. It has been estimated that the amount of life in the sea exceeds that of the land, square mile for square mile; but there is probably no one level in the sea where life is so abundant as on the surface of the fertile parts of the land. Murray has estimated that the weight of the lime carbonate of the shells of organisms in the uppermost 100 fathoms of sea-water is something like 16 tons per square mile. This is far less than the weight of the plant and animal life per square mile on some forest lands.

The abundance of life in the sea-water may be shown in another way. If a bucket of water be dipped up from the surface of the ocean almost anywhere, it will be found to contain hundreds or even thousands of minute organisms, though most of them are too small to be visible to the unaided eye.

The distribution of the plant life of the sea differs somewhat from that of the animal life. Plant life is plentiful at the surface nearly everywhere, and at the bottom, down to the depth of about 50 fathoms. Where conditions are favorable, it occurs somewhat sparingly down to depths of nearly 200 fathoms, but below some such depth it is absent, probably because of the absence of sun-light.

The most important physical factors which influence the distribution of the various types of sea life are (1) temperature, and (2) depth of water. Other less important factors are (3) the clearness, (4) the degree of saltness, (5) the quietness or roughness, and (6) the presence or absence of ice. The relations of various types of life to one another also are important. Some are dependent on others for food, some are hostile to others, and some are competitors for the same sorts of food.

The manner in which most of these factors influence the distribution of life will be understood readily from analogy with the factors which control the distribution of land life. One factor, however, which finds no analogy in connection with the distribution of land life, is the depth of the water. Land life is almost restricted to the surface of the land, while sea life has a wide vertical range. The depth of the water affects the distribution of those plants and animals which rest on the bottom, but it has little effect on the range of those which float or swim near the surface.

The most important influence of depth appears to be in connection with the penetration of light, and with the supply of oxygen. Light is so rapidly absorbed by the water that vision is virtually cut off at a depth of some 50 fathoms, though a little light penetrates to somewhat greater depths. But in the great body of the ocean darkness reigns. No form of plant life which depends directly on sunlight can live in darkness. This includes all forms of green plants, and some others. At the bottom, too, the water is not stirred, and any oxygen it contains must pass down from the surface after being dissolved there. As it is consumed below by the animals, the supply is renewed by diffusion from above, an extremely slow process.

Since the several factors which influence the distribution of sea life vary widely, the distribution of various types of life also varies widely. Some animals, such as coral polyps, are restricted to warm regions where the water is shallow, clear, and normally salt, while others, such as narwhales, seals, etc., are found in cold waters only. Still others range through great differences of temperature.

The plant life of the sea varies less with latitude than the plant life of the land, and less than the animal life of the sea.

The life of the sea is in strong contrast in many ways with that of the land. Thus most plants with which we are familiar on land are fixed in position, while many of the plants of the sea float. Most animals on the land are free to move about, while a very considerable proportion of sea animals, such as coral polyps, barnacles, crinoids, etc., are fixed through most of their lives. Many others, though not fixed, move about but little, either lying on the bottom or burrowing into it. Some, on the other hand, such as many of those in the surface waters (pelagic life), appear to be always in motion.

The pressure of the water at the bottom of the ocean is very great, but the animals living there withstand it, because their tissues are full of liquids under equally high pressure, and these high internal pressures counterbalance the external pressure. If an animal from the bottom of the deep sea were brought suddenly to the surface it would explode. This has indeed happened in raising animals from the deep sea, even when the raising was by no means instantaneous.

Deep-sea animals have some notable peculiarities. Some are blind; but some have eyes, implying sight and therefore light. It has been conjectured that the phosphorescence of the animals themselves supplies the light. Some of the deep-sea animals also are ornamented, a fact which seems to have no rational explanation, unless the ornamentation is seen.

All the great groups of animal life are represented in the sea-water. Even warm-blooded mammals (whales, narwhales, seals, walruses, etc.) abound in the frigid waters, among icebergs and ice-floes. Some of these animals, like the seals and walruses, do not spend all their time in the water, but frequently crawl up on the floes of ice to warm themselves and sleep in the sun. From this highest class of animals (mammals) down to the lowest, every important subdivision of the animal kingdom is represented, though no birds spend all their time in the water. The variations of plant life also are great, but the higher forms of plants, such as we are most familiar with on land, are wanting.

It is to be noted not only that the range of marine plants and animals is great, but that the largest living animals, the whales, are marine. Many of the marine plants, too, are of great size. Some seaweeds are six inches in diameter, and some are hundreds of feet long, exceeding in length the height of the tallest trees. They are, however, not so bulky as large trees, and the amount of solid matter which the largest seaweed contains is far less than that of the largest tree.

The life of the sea is important in many ways. Many of the animals,—fish, oysters, clams, crabs, lobsters, etc., are used for food. The total value of food products derived from the sea is probably not less than $500,000,000 per year. Other animals furnish other articles of commerce; for example, the seal furnishes fur and oil; the whale, oil and whalebone; the walrus, exceptionally

strong leather. Corals and sponges, the products of animal life, also are articles of commerce.

Many of the animals of the sea have shells or other hard parts. These hard parts accumulate on the bottom of the sea when the animals are through with them, and this is a chief source of the sediments of the sea bottom. When the shells, etc., accumulate with little admixture of other material, they may in time be solidified by cementation and form limestone. Most of the limestone now found on land was formed in this way beneath the sea, when the sea covered the areas where it now occurs. The animals which make the heavier shells or other secretions of calcium carbonate live chiefly in shallow water, and the seas in which the limestones of the land were formed were shallow.

Materials of the Sea Bottom

Dredging. The material on the bottom of the sea has been made known by dredging. Various forms of apparatus have been used to bring up matter from the bottom. One, known as the Cup Lead, is shown in Fig. 607. *B* is a hollow inverted cone on a spike. Above the cone is a sliding disc, *D*, somewhat larger than the base of the cone. This piece of apparatus is let down and the cone sinks into the soft sediment and is filled with it. On being raised, the disc shuts down and prevents the escape of the contents of the cup, and also the access of new matter from higher levels.

Fig. 607.—The cup lead. (Challenger Report.)

Fig. 608 shows a dredge. The flaring strip of metal *E* is dragged along the bottom, and directs the surface sediment into the sack. Swabs are attached below to entangle animals missed by the dredge.

The bottom of most of the sea is covered with sediment which is, for the most part, in a loose or uncemented condition. This sediment has come from various sources. Some of it was carried to the sea by rivers, some of it was worn from the shores by the waves, some of it was blown out from the land, some of it is made up of the shells, etc., of the organisms which live in the water, and some of it is composed of fine debris

thrown out from submarine volcanoes. Cosmic ("shooting-star") dust is also an element, though a very minor one.

The sediments derived from the land came from the disintegration of land rock. In their present state, however, they are to be looked upon as rock in the making, for all sediments in the sea may become solid rock by cementation, and cementation is now taking place at many points in the bottom of the sea. Locally, it takes place as fast as the sediments accumulate.

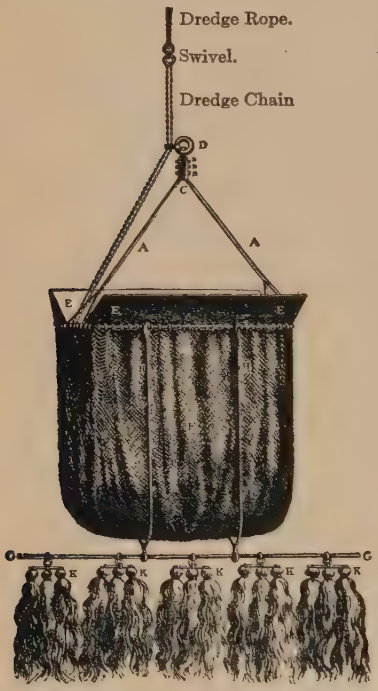


FIG. 608.—The dredge. (Challenger Report.)

Physically, the materials of the sea bottom may be grouped into several classes, namely: gravel, sand, mud, shells, coral, etc., and ooze.

Gravel is found chiefly along the borders of the land out to depths of a few fathoms, or at most a few scores of fathoms. Gravel and bowlders, carried out by icebergs, occasionally are found at great depths and far from land. Sand also is confined chiefly to relatively shallow water, but it occurs out to depths beyond that reached by gravel, though rarely out to 100 fathoms. Mud is much more widespread. While it occurs in shallow water in many places, it also extends out to a depth far beyond that reached by gravel and sand. In general, land-derived mud is not washed far from the land, but in exceptional cases, as off the mouths of rivers, it is carried hundreds of miles.

Ooze is the name applied to the loose materials of the sea bottom composed primarily of the minute shells and tests of organisms which live in the water. Many of these organisms live near the surface of the water, and their shells, etc., sink when they die. The distinctive names of the oozes are derived from the names of the organisms which are most abundant in them. Thus, *foramini-*

feral ooze is the ooze in which shells of *foraminifera* are abundant. *diatom ooze* is ooze in which tests of *diatoms* predominate, etc. Foraminiferal ooze has a composition very similar to that of chalk. Other oozes, such as diatom ooze, radiolarian ooze, etc., are made up largely of silica.

In the deepest part of the ocean, below the depth of some 2200 fathoms, the surface is covered with *red clay*. The origin of this clay has long been in question, but it probably is made up of material derived from many sources. A considerable part was doubtless derived from the fine material ejected from volcanoes; another part probably was carried out from the land by the wind, a part probably was derived from the shells and tests of animals which lived in the ocean, and cosmic dust doubtless enters into its composition. The materials from all these sources, so far as they enter into the composition of the red clay, probably are only the insoluble parts of the original material.

On the lands there is rock (conglomerate) composed of cemented gravel, rock (sandstone) composed of cemented sand, rock (shale) composed of cemented mud, and rock (limestone) composed of material derived from shells, corals, etc. None of these correspond to the deep-sea oozes, and none correspond to the red clay of the abysmal depths. In the lands, therefore, there are varieties of rock corresponding to all the sediments now making in the shallow water of the sea, but, so far as known, none corresponding to those of the deep waters. This suggests that the lands have been at some time beneath the sea, a conclusion which is borne out by the finding of the shells of marine species imbedded in the sandstone, shale, etc., of the land; but it also indicates that, *so far as now known, no part of the present continents was ever at the bottom of the deep ocean.*

Relation of the Sea to the Rest of the Earth

The ocean has an important influence on the rest of the earth. This is felt in various ways, some of which have been noted. By way of summary they may here be brought together.

1. Waves affect the coast-line; they wear away the land in some places and build new land in others. Since destruction exceeds construction, the tendency of the ocean is to extend itself at the expense of the land.

2. Oceans modify the climate of the land, affecting both temperature and precipitation. The general influence on temperature arises from the fact that water is heated and cooled more slowly than land is. The air over the sea, therefore, has a lesser range of temperature than that over the land, and blowing to the land tends to carry the temperature of the sea, as well as abundant moisture, over to it. Winds from the ocean therefore temper the climate of the land both in summer and winter. Warm currents enhance the general effect of the sea in this respect. The climatic effect of the sea on the land is felt especially on the west sides of the continents in the temperate zones, because of the westerly winds, and on the east sides of the continents in the zone of easterly winds. In most places, the cold currents of the sea have less effect than warm ones on the climate of the land, because they tend to hug the east sides of the continents, so far as they stay at the surface; and in the latitudes where they occur the winds blow from them to the sea rather than to land. On the west coast of South America, the cold currents have a chilling effect (Fig. 595).

3. The ocean is the great source of the water for rain and snow, and its precipitation from the atmosphere furnishes the conditions necessary for life on the land.

4. Through its effects on rainfall, snowfall, and temperature, the ocean has an important effect on the degradation of the land.

The total amount of rainfall for the earth is not accurately known. If it is as much as three feet per year, on the average, for the whole earth, and if all this were derived directly from the ocean, an amount equal to all the water in the ocean would be evaporated in about 3000 years. Since most of the water evaporated from the ocean falls again into the sea, or runs to it in rivers, or issues beneath it as springs, the amount of the ocean water is not, so far as known, growing less.

5. The ocean affords an enormous harvest of foodstuff annually and many thousands of people depend on this harvest for their livelihood. Fisheries were among the earliest industries.

6. The ocean also plays an important part in the commerce of the world by serving as a great highway. The obstacle which the oceans long seemed to interpose to quick communication between continents separated by them, has been overcome during the last sixty years, and several cables now connect Europe and

America, so that all the important news of either continent is known in the other almost as soon as it is at home. The Pacific, too, is bridged by cables, though their number is small.

Some conception of the rôle which the ocean plays in the affairs of the earth may perhaps be gained by picturing the conditions which would exist if there were no oceans.

REFERENCES

1. Wild, *Thalassa:* Marcus Ward & Co., London.

2. Maury, *Physical Geography of the Sea.*

3. Chamberlin and Salisbury, Chapter VI, Geologic Processes; also other text-books of Geology.

4. Agassiz, *Three Cruises of the Blake:* Houghton Mifflin & Co.

5. Thomson, *The Depths of the Sea*, and Voyage of the Challenger: Macmillan.

6. *Challenger Reports*, especially *Narrative*, Vol. I, and *Summary*, First Part: Eyre & Spottiswoode, London.

7. Murray, Important articles on oceanography in Geog. Jour., Vol. XII, pp. 113–137, and Vol. XIV, pp. 34–50, and 426–441; and Scot. Geog. Mag., Vol. XV, pp. 505–522.

8. Bigsbee, *Deep-sea Soundings and Dredgings:* U. S. Coast Surv., Washington.

9. Tanner, *Deep-sea Exploration:* U. S. Fish Commission, Washington.

10. Belknap, *Deep-sea Soundings in the North Pacific:* U. S. Hydrographic Office, Washington.

11. Flint, *Oceanography of the Pacific:* Smithsonian Institution.

12. Jour. of Geol., Vol. XIII, pp. 469–484.

INDEX

Abnormal temperature, 471
Accidents to streams, 150
Adirondack Mountains, 385
Adriatic Sea, 398
Aggradation, 41
Agonic line, 407
Agriculture in mountains, 391
Air, chemical work of, 63
Air, circulation of, 520
  moisture of, 489
  temperature of, 445
  transfer from one hemisphere to another, 523
Alaska, climate of, 608
Aldrich Deep, 624
Aletsch glacier, 192
Alluvial cone, 157
Alluvial fan, 158
Alluvial plains, 161
    fertility of, 165
Alluvial terraces, 170, 172
Alpine glaciers, 190
Alps, structure of, 37
Altitude and temperature, 462, 471
Altitude, effect on climate, 601
Amundsen, 406
Andes Mountains, height of, 380
Aneroid barometer, 506
Antarctic circle, 428
Antarctica, map of, 206
Antecedent streams, 153, 154
Anticlinal folds, 351
Anticyclone, 540
Anticyclones and weather, 561
Antillean mountain system, 380
Ants, work of, 68
Aphelion, 417, 462
Appalachian Mountains, 37
Arabian Sea, 398
Aral Sea, 257, 272
Arctic circle, 428
Argon, 438
Arid climates of past, 618
Arid region of the United States, 611
Artesian wells, 83
Asteroids, 431
Atmosphere (see also air), 49
  constitution of, 438
  density of, 433
  effect on evaporation, 493
  general conception of, 432
Atmosphere — *continued*
  heating of, 446
  height of, 434, 435
  history of, 436
  hydrogen in, 438
  impurities in, 438
  mass of, 436
  part of earth, 433
  volume of, 436
Atmospheric dust, constituents of, 444
Atmospheric moisture, function of, 489
Atmospheric pressure, 505
Atmospheric temperature and movement, 486
Atolls, 403, 404
Aurora, 435
Autumn, 456
Autumnal equinox, 425
Avalanches, 219

Bacteria in atmosphere, 444
Bad Lands, 138, 139
Balloons, height reached by, 434
Barometer, 505
Barometric gradient and wind velocity, 533
Barrier reef, 404
Barriers, 283, 286
Bars, 283
Base-level, 113
Basin Range type of mountains, 387
Basins, 37
Batholiths, 325
Bay of Bengal, 398
Bay of Fundy, tides in, 645
Bayous, 163
Bays, 392
Beaches, 282
Black Forest mountains, 388
Black Hills, 21, 385
Blake Deep, 624
Blizzards, 561
Block mountains, 37, 386
Blue Hill Observatory, 534
Blue Mountains, 323
Bolivian plateau, temperature of, 601
Bore (tidal), 645
Bowlders, 216
  in streams, 110

Braided stream, 160
Bryant Glacier, 189
Buttes, 148

Calcium carbonate in the sea, 629
Calderas, 264, 331
California, rainfall of, 538, 606
  relief of, 35
Canyons, 134
Capes, 392
Carbon dioxide, 438
  in air, loss and supply, 440, 441
  in sea-water, 630
Carbonation, 64
Cascade Pass, 33
Caspian Sea, 257, 272
Caves, 86
Centigrade thermometer, 445
Challenger expedition, 622
Change of seasons, 458
Changes of level, 339, 340
  of land, 344, 348, 349
  of sea, 344
Charleston earthquake, 358, 359
Charleston, S. C., daily range of temperature, 484
Chesapeake Bay, 150, 397
Chicago, winds of, 530, 531
Chinook winds, 585
Cinder Buttes, Idaho, 316
Cinder cone, 292, 295
Circle of illumination, 423, 424
Circulation and precipitation, 535
Circulation of air, affected by land and water, 528
Circulation of sea-water, 638
Cirques, 212, 213
Cirro-cumulus clouds, 500, 503
Cirro-stratus clouds, 500, 503
Cirrus clouds, 500, 503
Cliff glaciers, 190
Climate, 586
  changes of, 616, 618
  classification of, 588
  definition of, 586
  in geologic time, 618
  in intermediate zones, 601
  of trade-wind zone, 598
  types of in the tropics, 597
Climate *vs* weather, 587
Climatic effect of forests, 594
Climatic effects of ocean currents, 643
Climatic zones, 588
  defined by isotherms, 591
  defined by latitude, 589
  defined by winds, 590
Cloudbursts, 579
Cloudiness in equatorial regions, 598
Clouds, 498
  forms of, 499, 500
Coastal irregularities, 394
Coastal plains, 15
Coastal lakes, 255
Coasts, relief of, 394
Cold currents, 633
"Cold waves," 561
Colima, volcano, 317
Colorado mountains, height of, 379
Columbia River, 107
Columnar structure, 336
Comets, 431
Compound alluvial fan, 158
Condensation of water vapor, 497
Conduction, 450, 451
Conglomerate, 45
Consequent falls, 146
Consequent streams, 153
Continental climates, 593
  of intermediate zones, 605, 609
Continental glaciers, 202, 234
Continental platforms, 5, 9
Continental shelves, 627
Continents, grouping of, 10
  outlines of, 391
Contour map, explanation of, 17
Convection, 450, 451
Coon Butte, 330, 332
Coral islands, 402, 404
Coral reefs, 402, 404
Cordilleran ice-sheet, 235
Corrasion, 111
Coseismic lines, 368
Cosmic dust, 662
Cotidal lines, 655
Counter currents in sea, 642
Crater, 293
Crater Lake, Oregon, 257, 263, 265, 331
Creep, 94, 114, 644
  of sea-water, 631
Crete, 340
Crevasses, 192
Croll, cited, 470
Crustal deformation, 350
Crustal movements, 339
Cuba, 627
Cumulo-nimbus clouds, 503
Cumulo-stratus clouds, 500
Cumulus clouds, 500, 501, 502
Currents of ocean, 639
Cup lead, 661
Cycle of erosion, 131
Cyclone, 541
Cyclones and anticyclones, movements, of, 549, 552
  and rainfall, 548
  and weather, 561
  structure of, 545
  tropical, 563, 564, 599
  winds in, 542

Cyclonic influence in intermediate zones, 610
Cyclonic winds, 538

Daily rains, 597
Daily range of temperature, 482
David, Professor, cited, 406
Day and night, 416
  length of, 426
Dead Sea, 257, 262, 263, 272
Death Valley, Yellowstone Park, 439
Deeps, 624
Deep-sea animals, 660
Degradation, 41
  of land, rate of, 132
Degrees of latitude, length of, 421
Degrees of latitude, measurement of, 423
Degrees of longitude, length of, 421
Delaware Water Gap, 147
Delta lakes, 260, 269
Deltas, 171, 172
Deposition by streams, causes of, 155
Deposition from water, principles, 88
Desert climates, 593
Deserts of trade-wind zone, 599
Dew, 497
De Ward, on climate, 586
Dew-point, 495
Diastrophism, 42, 339, 347
  effect on coasts, 396
Dikes, 335
Dip of magnetic needle, 409
Distribution of heat, secondary, 455
Doldrums, 537
Dolphin ridge, 627
Drainage, modified by glaciation, 243
Dredge, deep sea, 661, 662
Drift, 639, 644
  and relief, 224
  in ocean, 641
Driftless area, 236
Drift topography, 225
Drowning of streams, 150
Drumlins, 229, 241
Dune Park, 57
Dunes, 56
Dunes bury forests, 59
Dunes, distribution of, 56
  migration of, 59
Dust, 49
  in atmosphere, 443
Dust-wells, 195

Earth, distance from sun, 416
  form of, 410
  motions of, 412
  orbit of, 416, 417
  revolution of, 416
  rotation of, 412
Earth—*continued*
  size of, 412
Earthquake fissures, 372
Earthquake, San Francisco, 362, 364
Earthquakes, 309, 355
  beneath sea, 366
  causes of, 370
  changes produced by, 373
  distribution of, 369, 370, 371
  frequency, 369
  in India, 363
  in Italy, 361, 365
  in Mississippi Valley, 363
Earthquake wave, 366
Earthworms, work of, 68
Ebb-tide, 644
Elk Mountains, 34
Enchanted Mesa, 148
Entrenched meanders, 151
Eolian sand, 55
  destructiveness of, 57
Epicontinental seas, 7
Equatorial calms, 525, 537
Equatorial climate, 597
Equatorial currents, 640
Equatorial rainfall, 597
Equatorial temperature, 597
Equinoxes, 425
Erosion by glaciers, 207
Erosion, conditions affecting rate, 133
Erosion defined, 111
Eskers, 231, 232, 250
Estuary, 150
Europe, ice-sheet of, 238
Evaporation, 490
  effect of atmosphere on, 493
Evaporation map, 492
Evaporation, rate of, 491
  and temperature, 493
Expansion and contraction of rock, 65
Extinct lakes, 289
Extra-tropical belts of high pressure, 522

Fahrenheit thermometer, 445
Fall Line, 19
Falls, 141
  of Yellowstone, 142
Faults 350, 352, 357, 371
"Fetch" of waves, 279
Fiords, 212, 287, 288, 392, 398
Fissure eruptions, 322
Floe-ice, 182
Flood plain deposits, 159
Flood-plain meanders, 162
Flood plains, 117
Flood-tide, 644
Floods in Ohio, 166, 169

Floods of Passaic River, 170
Floods of rivers, 166
Florida, 398
Florida lakes, 255, 271
Flowing wells, 73, 83
Fluvio-glacial deposits, 230
Foehn winds, 585
Fog, 498, 539, 643
Fogs of London, 443
Folding, 350
Food from sea, 660
Foraminiferal ooze, 663
Forests, effects on climate, 594
Foucault's pendulum, 413
Freezing and thawing, 64
Frost, 497
Full moon, 653
Funnel-shaped cloud, 580

Galveston storm, 563, 569
Gases in sea-water, 630
Gases, volcanic, 319
Geography, defined, 4
Geology, defined, 4
Geysers, 80
Glacial deposits, 239
Glacial drift, 216, 239
Glacial epochs, cause of, 237
Glacial erosion, 238
Glacial lakes, 255, 270
Glacial period, 234, 618
Glacial striæ, 215
Glaciation and drainage, 243
Glaciation and human affairs, 250
Glacier erosion, 209
Glacier ice, layers in, 218
Glacier movement, nature of, 198
Glaciers, 40, 188
  ancient, 234
  changes produced by, 237
  continental, 202
  deposition by, 220
  effect on coast line, 287
  effect on valleys, 210
  erosion by, 207
  movement of, 196, 197
  of Switzerland, 201
  shearing in, 201
  size of, 201
  types of, 188
Gorges, 134
Gradation, agents of, 41
Gradation, effect on coast lines, 396
Gradational effect on ground water, 87
  of rivers, 132
  of winds, 55
Gradient of wind, 533
Graham Island, 329, 331
Grand Canyon of the Colorado, 136
Great Basin, rainfall of, 538
Great Bear Lake, 257
Great Lakes, 256
  history of, 246
Great Plains, 20
Great Salt Lake, 272
Green Lake, Wis., 258
Ground-ice, 183
Ground moraine, 222, 241
Ground-swell, 277
Ground-water, 72
  amount of, 73, 75
  deposition by, 87
  descent of, 74
  movement of, 75, 77
  solution by, 85, 87
  source of, 73
  surface of, 74, 76
  temperature of, 79
  work of, 85
Gulf of California, 398
Gulfs, 392
Gulf Stream, 640, 643
  climatic effect of, 470
Gullies, 101

Hail, 501
Hanging valleys, 226
Hann, cited, 586, 616
Hawaii, 313
Hawaiian volcanoes, 312
Heat and latitude, 449, 450
Heat from sun, primary distribution of, 447
Heating and cooling, 450
Heating of land surface, 464
Heat lightning, 578
Heat of volcanoes, 326
Henry Mountains, 324, 385
High-latitude glaciers, 190
High-pressure belts, 516, 522
Highs, isobaric, 540
Hogbacks, 147
Hot Springs, 80
Hot waves, 561
Humid region of United States, 612
Humidity, 495
  absolute, 495
  average annual, 496
  in equatorial regions, 598
  relative, 495
Humphreys, cited, 438, 456
Huntington, cited, 616
Hurricanes, 563
Hydration, 63, 92
Hydrography, 3
Hydrosphere, 3

Iberian Peninsula, 398
Ice, effect on surface temperature, 463

Iceberg, 205, 233
Ice-caps, 190, 202
Ice columns, 196
Ice-fields, 187
Ice-foot, 182
Ice in rivers, 182
  in soil, 177
  on lakes, 178
  on sea, 180, 636
Ice-packs, 182
Ice-sheet in North America, 235
  of Greenland, 203
Ice-sheets, 190
Igneous phenomena not volcanic, 322
Igneous rocks, 48
Immediate run-off, 72
Imperial Valley, 173
Impurities in air, 438
Inclination of earth's axis, 423, 425
India, famine in, 539
  rainfall of, 600
Insolation, 446, 448
  curve of, 483
  of land, 468
  of sea, 468
Interior plains, 20
Intermediate zones, 588, 589
Intermittent streams, 101
Irregularities of coasts, distribution, 394
Irrigation, 167
Irrigation canal, 164
Is-abnormal isothermal lines, 471
Is-abnormal temperatures, 472, 473
Islands, 399
  climate of, 485
  origin of, 399
Isobaric gradients, 510, 522
Isobaric lines, 510
  for January, 514
  for July, 515
Isobaric surfaces, 509, 510, 518
Isobars, 506, 540
  and humidity, 516
  and latitude, 511
  and temperature, 511, 512
  courses of, 511
  relations to land and water, 512
Isogonic lines, 407
Isothermal chart of United States, 478
Isothermal charts, 465
Isothermal layer, 456
Isothermal surfaces, 471, 482
Isotherms, 464
  annual, 465
  courses of, 466
  relations to highs and lows, 544
  seasonal, 465
Italian earthquakes, 365
Italy, 398
  earthquakes in, 361

Jetties, 110
Jordan craters, Ore., 315
Jupiter, 430
Jura Mountains, 385

Kamchatka, 398
Kames, 232, 250
Karst topography, 87
Kaskaskia, 163
Keewatin ice-sheet, 235
Kilauea, crater of, 314, 315
Krakatoa, 50, 301, 303

Labrador ice-sheet, 235
Laccoliths, 323, 325
Lacustrine plains, 289
Lag of seasons, 459
Lag of tides, 650
La Jolla, Calif., 280
Lake Agassiz, 245, 290
  Albert, 262
  Algonquin, 247
  Baikal, 257
  Balkash, 257
Lake basins, filling of, 260
  origin of, 262–264
Lake Bonneville, 273, 289, 290
  Chad, 257
  Chelan, 257, 258
  Chicago, 246, 247
  Como, 257
  Duluth, 246
  Erie, 257
  Garda, 257
  Geneva, Switzerland, 258, 262
  Huron, 256, 257
  ice, 178
  Iroquois, 247
  Katrine, Scotland, 258
  Lahontan, 274, 290
  Maggiore, 257
  Maumee, 246, 247
  Mendota, Wis., 180
  Michigan, 256, 257
  Nyassa, 257, 262
  Ontario, 256, 257
  Pontchartrain, 269
  Rudolf, 262
  Stefanie, 262
  Superior, 256, 257
  Tahoe, 257
  Tanganyika, 257, 262
  Titicaca, 257
  Victoria Nyanza, 257
  water, movements of, 259
  water, sources of, 260
  Winnipeg, 257

Lakes, 253
advantages and disadvantages, 274
along coasts, 255
along Red River of Louisiana, 254
altitude of, 256
changes taking place in, 260
climatic effects of, 274
conditions for, 259
depth, 256
distribution, 254
due to glacial erosion, 270
due to ice barriers, 270
due to slumping, 271
extinct, 289
fate, 261
glacial, 243
of Florida, 262
on plateaus, 255
volume of water in, 259
Land- and sea-breezes, 487, 528
Land and water, heating and cooling of, 454
Land-breezes, 487
Landslide, 93
Land-tied islands, 285
Lassen Peak, Calif., 293
Lateral moraines, 219, 222
Latitude, 417, 418
Latitude and sun altitude, 428
Lava, 292, 318
Lava plateaus of Washington, 322
Levees, natural, 161
Light, penetration into sea, 659
Lightning, 577
Limestone, 46
Limestone sinks, 86
Lisbon earthquake, 357
Lithosphere, 3, 5
Littoral climate, 594
Littoral currents, 277, 283, 639
Load of streams, 104
Loess, 51
Longitude, 417, 418
Longitude and time, 419
Louisville tornado, 581
Lower California, 398
Lows, isobaric, 540

Magnetic declination, 406
intensity, 409
needle, dip of, 409
Magnetism, terrestrial, 406
Malaspina Glacier, 206, 207, 208
Mammoth Cave, 86
Mantle rock, 42
Marjelen See, 270
Mars, 430
Martinique, 304, 305
Maryville Buttes, 333
Materials of sea bottom, 661
Matteo Tepee, 147
Mature topography, 131
Mature valley, 128
Mauna Kea, 380
Mauna Loa, 292, 312, 313, 316
Maximum temperatures, 475, 476
Meanders, flood-plain, 162
Medial moraine, 219
Medicinal springs, 79, 80
Mediterranean climate, 605
Mediterranean Sea, temperature of 635
Mercury, 430
Meridians, 412
Mesa, 150
Metamorphic rock, 47
Meteorites, 440
Meteors, 434
Migration of dunes, 59
Mineral matter of sea, 628
withdrawal of, 629
Mineral springs, 79, 80
Minimum temperatures, 562
Mississippi delta, 156
Mississippi River, sediment carried by, 103, 132
Moisture of air, 489
effect on winds, 494
Monadnocks, 131, 147, 149
Monsoon climate, 600
Monsoon rains, 539
Monsoons, 487, 528, 529
Mont Pelée, 302, 303, 305, 306, 308
Monument Park, Colo., 62
Moon, cause of tides, 647
Moon, distance of, 648
Mountain and plateau climates, 594
Mountain and valley breezes, 488
Mountain chain, 378
Mountain climates of intermediate zones, 613
Mountain group, 378
range, 378
ridge, 378
Mountains, 14, 31, 377
agriculture in, 391
and ores, 389
and transportation, 389
as barriers, 389
changes taking place in, 380
distribution of, 379
climatic effects, 388
effect on mankind, 388
of Colorado, height of, 379
origin of, 383–86
Movement of glaciers, conditions affecting, 196–198
Movement of sea-water, 631, 637, 638
Mt. Baker, 312
Hood, 183, 333

Mt. Baker—*continued*
Lassen, 309, 312
McKinley, 379
Pelée, 319
Rainier, 312, 330, 333, 379
Shasta, 312, 330, 332, 333
St. Helens, 312
Whitney, 379
Mud Volcanoes, 338

Nahant Island, 285
Nansen, cited, 623, 624
Narrows, 146
Natural Bridge of Virginia, 140
Natural bridges, 139
Natural levees, 161
Neap tides, 653
Needle Mountains, 32
Neptune, 430
New Madrid earthquake, 364
New moon, 653
New Zealand, climate of, 608
Niagara Falls, 142, 144
Nile delta, 174
Nimbus clouds, 500
Nipissing lakes, 248
Nitrogen, 438, 439
in sea-water, 630
North America, ice-sheet of, 235
North Magnetic Pole, 406
North Polar Zone, map of, 614
North Temperate Zone, map of, 630
Northern lights, 435
Northers, 561
Nunatak, 204

Obsidian, 318
Ocean, 620
Ocean, age of, 630
Ocean and rainfall, 664
Ocean as a highway, 664
Ocean basins, 5, 620, 621
arrangement of, 10
depth of, 8
Ocean currents, 469, 633, 639
agents of erosion, 644
and fogs, 643
cause of, 642
cold, 633
effect on climate, 643
warm, 633
Ocean, depth of, 624
life of, 658
mass of, 625
volume of, 625
Oceanic climates, 592
Oceanic mountains, 380
Oceanography, 3
Oceans and climate, 664
Old topography, 131
Old valley, 129
Olympic mountains, rainfall in, 539
Oneonta Gorge, 135
Ooze, 662
Orbit of earth, 416, 417
Ores, relation to mountains, 389
Ouachita Mountains, 21
Outer Hebrides, waves on, 279
Outwash plains, 230, 231, 249
Ox-bow lakes, 163
Oxidation, 63
Oxygen, 438, 439
Oxygen in sea-water, 630
Ozark Mountains, 21

"Paint-pots," 338
Palisade Ridge, 335
Panum crater, Calif., 293
Parallax, 416
Parallels, 417
Peary's Arctic explorations, 623
Pendulums and rotation, 414
Peneplain, 131
Peninsulas, 392
Perched bowlders, 228, 229
Periodic winds, 520
Petrifaction, 92
Petrified tree-trunks, 91
Permanent divide, 121
Permanent lows, 518, 523
Permanent streams, 101
Perihelion, 417, 462
Phoenix, Ariz., range of temperature, 484
Physiographic divisions of the United States, 16
Physiographic features, origin and history of, 375
Physiography, definition of, 3
Piedmont alluvial plain, 158
Piedmont glaciers, 190, 206
Piedmont Plateau, 26
Piracy, 152
Plains, 14, 375
coastal, 15
topography of, 22
types of, 376
Planetary winds, 525
Plant life of sea, 659
Plateaus, 14, 26, 377
origin of, 30
relief of, 27
Polar climate, 615
Polar regions, climate of, 614
Polar zones, 589
Polyps, 402
Pompeii, 295
Pond, 254
Ponding of streams, 151
Pore space, 72

Pot-holes, 145, 146
Precipitation, 70, 501
  map of, 537
Prevailing winds, 520, 525
Provincetown harbor, 283
Puget Sound, 398

Radiation, 450, 451
  curve of, 483
Radiolarian ooze, 663
Rain, 501
Rainbow, 578
Rainfall, amount of, 491
  and cyclones, 548
  and mountains, 536, 538
  and winds, 636
  east of Rocky Mountains, 538
  in Andes Mts., 636
  in United States, 389, 607
  in tropical zone, 596
  in zones of westerly winds, 538
  necessary for agriculture, 535
  of British Isles, 610
  of Germany, 610
  of Russia, 610
  of trade-wind zone, 598
Rain-making, 504
Rain-water, fate of, 70
Raised beaches, 341
Range of temperature, daily, 482
  seasonal, 485
Rapids, 141
Rate of land degradation, 132
Ravines, 101
Recessional moraines, 240
Reconstructed glacier, 191
Red clay of sea-bottom, 663
Red River (La.) lakes, 264, 267
Red River of Louisiana, 254
Red Sea, temperature of, 635
Red snow, 204
Reefs, 283
Reelfoot Lake, 263
Regolith, 42
Rejuvenation of streams, 151
Relief, 8, 17
Relief affected by drift, 224
Relief features, 5
  first order, 11
  second order, 14
Relief of coasts, 394
Revolution of earth, 416
Rhone Glacier, 189
Rift-valley lakes, 262
Ripple-marks, eolian, 62
River ice, 182
River floods, 166
River lakes, 264
River system, history of, 122
Rivers and valleys, 111
Rock, 43
  classes of, 45
Rock-breaking, due to change of temperature, 65, 96
Rock decay, 96
Rock terraces, 146, 149
Rock waste, 42
Rotation of earth, 412
  effect of, 415
Running water, deposition by, 154
Running water, work of, 98
Rustic Falls, 143

Salt lakes, 272
"Salt-licks," 274
San Antonio, range of temperature, 484
Sand, eolian, 55
San Diego, daily range of temperature, 484
Sandstone, 45
Sand storms, 58
San Francisco earthquake, 362, 367
San Francisco Mountain, Ariz., 330, 334
Saturation of air, 494, 495
Saturn, 430
Scarps in sea, 626
Sea bottom, materials of, 661
Sea bottom slopes, 626
Sea bottom, topography of, 625
Sea breeze, 487
  rain from, 539
  strength of, 531
  value of, 532
Sea caves, 342
Sea cliffs, 280, 281, 341, 342
Sea ice, 180, 636
Sea-level, 620, 621
  changes in, 346
  rise near high lands, 621
Sea, physical geography of, 622
  temperature of, 632
  See also ocean.
Seasonal range of temperature, 485
Seasons, 456, 459
  change of, 458, 461
Sea-water, circulation of, 638
  color of, 632
  composition of, 628
  density of and movement, 631
  gases in, 630
  movements of, 637
  salinity of and movement, 631
  temperature of, 633
Sea-waves, 355, 356
Secular changes of level, 339
Sedimentary rocks, 45
Sedimentation, cause of change of sea-level, 346

Seepage, 78
Seiches, 259
Seismometers, 356
Semi-arid region of United States, 611
Seneca Lake, N. Y., 258
Sensible temperature, 587
Seracs of glaciers, 195
Shackleton expedition, 616
Shadow Lake, Calif., 271
Shale, 45
"Shooting stars," 440, 662
Shore currents, 276
Shore deposition, 284
Shore drift, 282
Shore ice, 288
Shore lakes, 269
Shores, topographic features of, 275
Sinking of land, 342
Slumping, 93, 115
Snag Lake, California, 263
Snow, 184, 501, 502
Snow and ice, work of, 177
"Snow-eaters," 585
Snowfall, relative to altitude, 613
Snow-fields, 185
Snowflakes, 71
Snow-line, 186
  height of, 187
Soil, 42
Solar climate, 588
Solar System, 430
Solar tides, 650
Solstices, 426
Sufrière, 51, 302, 308, 309, 311
Sounding-line, 625
Southern California, climate of, 605
South Magnetic Pole, position of, 406
South Temperate Zone, 602
Spanish Peaks, Colo., 335
Specific heat, 455
Spits, 283, 286
Spring, 78, 456
Springs, 78
  mineral and medicinal, 79
Spring tides, 645, 653
Standard-time zones, 421
Stefansson's Arctic explorations, 623
Storms, 540
St. Louis tornado, 581
St. Pierre, 303, 304, 307
Stratified drift, 249
Stratus clouds, 500
Stream eddies, 106
Stream load, 104
Stream piracy, 152
Streams, erosive work of, 103
  transportation by, 109
Stream water, amount of, 99
  sources of, 100
Striæ, 227
Striated rock, 214
Stromboli, 294
Struggle for existence among valleys, 124
Submarine volcanic extrusions, 347
Submerged forests, 342
Submerged valley of the Delaware, 627
  of the Hudson, 627
  of the Saguenay, 627
  of the St. Lawrence, 627
  of the Susquehanna, 627
Submerged valleys, 342, 343, 626, 627
Subsequent falls, 145
Sub-tropical type of climate, 604
Summer, 456
Summer and winter, differences between, 457
Summer solstice, 426
Sun, apparent motion of, 426, 448
Sun cracks, 115
Sun, distance of, 416, 648
Sunstrokes, 587
Sun, tidal force of, 652

Talus, 66, 68, 117
Tampa, Fla., daily range of temperature, 484
Tasmania, climate of, 608
Temperature, 635
  about highs and lows, 543
  affected by altitude, 462, 471
  and ice, 450
  and latitude, 467
  curves of sea-water, 634
  of sea-water, and movement, 633
  of space, 446
  of trade-wind zone, 598
  seasonal range of, 485
Temperate zones, 588, 589, 591
Terminal moraines, 220, 224, 240
Terraces, wave-cut, 281
  alluvial, 172
  rock, 142
Terrestrial magnetism, 406
Texas, relief of, 34
Thermal equator, 365
Thermometer, 445
Thunder, 577
Thunder-squall, 577
Thunder-storms, 531, 576
Tiberias Lake, 263
Tibet, 31
Tidal poles, 650
Tidal scour, 657
Tides, 638, 639, 644
  at Galveston, 645
  cause and periodicity of, 646
  effects on shores, 657

Tides—*continued*
in Bay of Fundy, 645
in Lake Michigan, 645
in rivers, 645
lag of, 650
rate of movement, 657
variations in, 653-655
Time zones, standard, 421
Topographic unconformity, 289.
Topography of drift, 228
Topography of sea bottom, 625
Tornado in St. Louis, 581
Tornadoes, 532, 579
distribution of, 584
freaks of, 583
Trade-wind climate, 598
Trade-winds, 525
and commerce, 600
and rainfall, 536
Trade-wind zone, 598
Tropical calms, 523
Tropical climates, general characteristics, 595
Tropical cyclones, 532, 563, 564, 568, 599
Tropical regions, map of, 595
Tropical zone, 588, 589
Tropic of Cancer, 427
Tropic of Capricorn, 427
Turtle Mountain landslide, 93
Tuscarora deep, 624
Twilight, 434
Typhoons, 570
Typhoon tracks, 570
Unconformity, topographic, 289
Undertow, 276, 277
Uranus, 430

Valley flats, 117
Valley glaciers, 190, 192
Valleys, courses of, 125
widening of, 113
Valley trains, 230, 231, 249
Veins, 88
Venus, 430
Vernal equinox, 425
Vessuvius, 295
Volcanic action, topographic effects of, 328
Volcanic "ash." See volcanic dust.
Volcanic cinders, 319
Volcanic cones, 329, 331
destruction of, 331
in sea, 626
Volcanic dust, 50, 295
Volcanic eruptions, 317
Volcanic extrusions, submarine, 347
Volcanic gases and vapors, 319
Volcanic mountains, 383
Volcanic necks, 334
Volcanoes, 292
distribution of, 319, 320
heat of, 326
in past time, 321
number of, 319
products of, 318
recent, 329
types of, 294
Vosges Mountains, 388
Vulcanism, 42, 292
causes of, 325
effect on coasts, 397

"Walled lakes," 179
Ward, on climate, 591
Warm currents, 633, 641
Warping, 350
Warping and folding, 351
Water-gap, 146
Waterspouts, 584
Water surface, 75
Water vapor, 438
distribution of, 494
in atmosphere, 443, 493
sources of, 490
Wave-built terraces, 283
Wave-cut terraces, 281, 341
Waves, 276, 277, 639
erosion by, 278
Weather Bureau, 541, 573
value of, 573
Weather cycles, 617
Weathering, 64, 66, 68, 95
Weather maps, 540
Weather predictions, 570, 572
Weather *vs.* climate, 587
Westerly winds, 525
Whirlwinds, 532, 578
Wind, abrasion by, 63
Wind equator, 524
Wind-gap, 152
Wind, gradational effects of, 55, 62
Winds, affected by moisture of air, 494
caused by temperature, 486
direction of, 524
effects on temperature, 469
prevailing and periodic, 520
result of unequal insolation, 520
velocities, 534
Winter, 456
Winter solstice, 426
Wyandotte Cave, 86

Yellowstone canyon, 137
Yellowstone falls, 142
Young valley, 128
Youthful topography, 131
Yucatan, 398

551.4 Sa34p c.1
Salisbury, Rollin D. 150101 000
Physiography, by Rollin D. Sal
3 9315 00050555 9
MANCHESTER COLLEGE LIBRARY

551.4
Sa34p
Salisbury
Physiography

FEB 1569 65324

WITHDRAWN
from
Funderburg Library